

# Historic Structures Report for Bacon's Castle Surry, Virginia



*Prepared for:*  
Preservation Virginia

*Created / Last Revised:*  
Submitted 19 December 2016

*Prepared by:*  
Bryan Clark Green, Ph.D.  
Commonwealth Architects  
101 Shockoe Slip, Third Floor  
Richmond, Virginia 23219

John A. Matteo  
John Dumsick  
MCC=1200 Architectural Engineers, PLLC  
210 North Lee Street, Suite 210  
Alexandria, Virginia 22314

Nicholas M. Lucchetti  
James River Institute for Archaeology  
223 McLaws Circle  
Williamsburg, VA 23185

John Dunlap  
Dunlap & Partners Engineers  
2112 W. Laburnum Avenue, Suite 205  
Richmond, VA 23227

James Akers  
ACG  
8085 Norwich Court  
Port Tobacco, Maryland 20677

[ This page left intentionally blank]

# Table of Contents

## Part I: Introduction & History

- Chapter 1: Introduction
  - Executive Summary
  - Team Organization & Methodology
  - Acknowledgements
- Chapter 2: Design and Construction of Bacon's Castle
- Chapter 3: Archaeology at Bacon's Castle
- Chapter 4: Furnishing and Interpretative Recommendations

## Part II: Conditions and Recommendations

- Chapter 5: Existing Conditions, Architectural

Chapters 6-8 redacted for public dissemination

- Chapter 9: Bibliography

## Appendices

- Appendix 1: Commonwealth Architects Drawings (2016)
- Appendix 2: Commonwealth Architects, Quarters Drawings (2008)
- Appendix 3: This section redacted for public dissemination
- Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis
- Appendix 5: Historic Images

**Appendix 6: Historic Architectural Drawings**

**Appendix 7: Outbuildings – Photographs and Drawings**

**Appendix 8: Historic Site Plans**

**Appendix 9: Historic Maps**

**Appendix 10: Existing and Proposed Museum Tour Routes**

## Chapter I

### *Executive Summary*

Preservation Virginia commissioned Commonwealth Architects to compile a historic structure report and maintenance recommendations for Bacon's Castle, located in Surry County, Virginia. The original, Jacobean-style dwelling was built ca. 1655 by Arthur Allen, a prosperous planter who served as a justice for Surry County. Following Allen's death in 1669 the house and property passed to his son, Arthur Allen II, a member of the House of Burgesses. Allen II was also a loyalist, a position that resulted in his being expelled from the property by partisans of Nathaniel Bacon, who used the house as a garrison for several months during his eponymous rebellion in 1676. Although Bacon himself is not known to have even visited the property, and in spite of the house and property remaining in Allen family ownership until the mid-19<sup>th</sup> century, it was thereafter known as Bacon's Castle.

The house remained in private ownership until it and a surrounding forty acres were acquired in 1972 by the Association for Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, which organization oversaw a restoration of the property for use as a public house museum. The property includes the original 17<sup>th</sup> century Bacon's Castle (expanded in 1864 with a Greek Revival-style wing and hyphen), a formal parterre garden, a frame smokehouse, a double-pen frame slave quarter, and barns, as well as multiple discrete archaeological sites and deposits associated with the historic use and occupation of the property. The building is listed on both the Virginia Landmarks Register and the National Register of Historic Places, and is a National Historic Landmark.

When establishing a new benchmark for well-informed future work, it is essential to distinguish original from merely old conditions whenever possible. During generation of this report, Commonwealth addressed this central need by utilizing three methodologies: investigation of extant documentary materials, clarification of the historical narrative and timeline, and assessment of present physical conditions. We investigated archival holdings and examined the property with an eye toward both cause and effect of natural aging and decay processes. We also worked closely with professional engineers to assess existing structural, mechanical, and utility systems, and provide recommendations for their maintenance or replacement.

We commend Preservation Virginia for sponsoring this research and documentation effort. As architectural historians, we are honored to add our support to this organization's stewardship of historic Bacon's Castle.

### *Team Organization & Methodology*

The team for this historic structure report effort was led by architectural historian Bryan Clark Green, PhD, with welcome assistance from Preservation Virginia's Louis Malon, Jennifer Hurst-Wender, and Mike Adams. Green surveyed the building to record present conditions and assess its current state, and performed documentary research in the collections of Preservation Virginia, the Virginia Department of Historic Resources, the Library of Virginia, and other repositories.

Investigation began in July 2015. Initial efforts focused upon the collection of documentary evidence, beginning with the collections at Preservation Virginia. We collected all of the available documents on Bacon's Castle, including generations of architectural drawings, historic photographs, previous studies and reports, periodic conditions assessments and inspections, archaeological investigations, and landscape restoration efforts, as well as a wide range of documentary and

historical studies produced by and for Preservation Virginia. Documents were also collected from archives at Preservation Virginia, the Virginia Department of Historic Resources, the Library of Virginia, the Library of Congress, the Colonial Williamsburg Foundation, the College of William and Mary, and other sources of information related to Bacon's Castle. These documents were scanned as portable document formula (.pdf) documents and organized into an electronic archive, which has since been presented to Preservation Virginia so that future preservation and maintenance efforts will have the benefit of an easily accessible electronic archive. In addition, we reorganized the Preservation Virginia physical archives to reflect this organizational system, so that the materials will be easily accessible. This collection of electronic documents will allow Preservation Virginia staff to easily adapt this material for educational purposes, future researchers, or posting on the Preservation Virginia web site. This material was made available to the HSR research team at the beginning of the process, and has been fully incorporated into this report. It has proved to be an invaluable resource for understanding previous repair and restoration efforts, and has shaped and informed our restoration recommendations throughout this report.

Following the collection and organization of archival materials, team members conducted a detailed physical survey of building fabric on all floors of the building as well as survey of exterior fabric. Preservation Virginia generously allowed the team complete access to the interior and exterior of the building, including the roof, and for that we are grateful. A structural analysis was performed by John Matteo, PE, and John Dumsick, PE, of 1200 Architectural Engineers. A mechanical, electrical, and plumbing evaluation was performed by John Dunlap of John Dunlap & Partners. Architectural analysis was performed by Bryan Green and Lisa Bricker of Commonwealth Architects.

We also undertook a 3-D building scan in order to better document the physical construction of Bacon's Castle. Hunter McGuire and Scott Reed of Prologue scanned the building and created a three-dimensional point cloud model of the building that was then transitioned into a 3-D Revit model. Once in Revit, Lisa Bricker and Tyler Carter of Commonwealth Architects took the 3-D mass model and provided custom modeling of the unique architectural features of Bacon's Castle, in order to produce accurate plans and elevations. One of the great advantages of this process is that it allows us to return to this model in the future to add additional detail, such as individual room elevations, or to tag to specific locations, photographs and conditions information. This data may thereafter be used to develop a fully-interactive, data-rich 3-D model of Bacon's Castle that can be collaboratively developed as we move into the future. One of the immediate advantages of the three-dimensional model was that, early in the process, the highly-accurate results allowed the team to identify two structural issues: the rotation of the west chimney mass, and the displacement of the summer beam in the first floor east room (parlor). This allowed us to initiate a series of discussions with Preservation Virginia staff Louis Malon and Mike Adams (in one case coordinated via conference call and video to guide the probes) about additional investigative efforts and repair paths for these issues. In fact, the combination of the 3-D scan, the scanned archival information, and selected physical probes allow us to collaboratively address each issue, a process that included the identification of previously unknown repair efforts, which shaped and informed our repair recommendations.

The various repair recommendations were assembled, discussed, and prioritized into four categories that addressed the severity, nature, and recommended time frame for each repair. These recommendations were then studied by our cost estimator, James Akers of Akers Cost Group, and from them a series of cost estimates were developed. The cost estimates reflect the repair recommendations as a series of *individual* repairs, designed to allow Preservation Virginia to group

these repairs into packages that reflect their severity, as well as institutional priorities and available funding. This format offers Preservation Virginia the greatest flexibility in designing a financial approach to the repairs. To accompany the prioritized repairs, the report includes a series of detailed descriptions of repair techniques for the various repairs recommended. These repair techniques were designed in consultation with the Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation and historic preservation best practices. These recommendations will assist Preservation Virginia by providing guidance for repairs of all kinds – from minor to major – whether they are performed by Preservation Virginia staff, or by outside contractors, and will help insure consistency on approach and result. Finally, the repair section contains a maintenance schedule, to help to organize periodic maintenance and upkeep at Bacon's Castle, to support the physical recommendations contained within this report.

While the physical investigations were underway, Bryan Green assembled a history of Bacon's Castle. The history, which included physical and documentary evidence as well as extensive analysis of the various repair and restoration campaigns, created a detailed documentation of the design, construction, enlargement, alteration, restoration and repair of Bacon's Castle. In parallel with this history, archaeologist Nick Lucchetti of the James River Institute for Archaeology assembled a detailed archaeological history of the property, drawing on his decades of experience in designing and conducting archaeological investigations at Bacon's Castle. Together, Nick Lucchetti, Bryan Green, and Lisa Bricker assembled a site plan of Bacon's Castle which, for the first time, records all of the known archaeological sites at Bacon's Castle into a single map, to assist Preservation Virginia's efforts to maintain the site while preserving and protecting archaeological sites.

Several previous reports and publications were particularly helpful in preparing this HSR. One of the earliest reports Victor C. Sloane's "Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia" (Jamestown Island Colonial National Historical Park, 20 September 1937), was undertaken when the NPS was considering acquisition of Bacon's Castle, and provided a thorough examination of the building at a time just before several significant alterations were undertaken. During the 1970s and 1980s, several important studies were produced that advanced the understanding of both the history and architecture of Bacon's Castle. Kevin P. Kelly's "The Allens of Bacon's Castle." (Report, Institute of Early American History and Culture, 1 April 1974) provided a detailed examination of the Allen family and role in the creation and adaptation of Bacon's Castle. Ransom B. True's "A Brief History of Bacon's Castle." (Report, Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, October 1982), is an excellent summary of the history and architecture of Bacon's Castle. Under the sponsorship of the APVA, Stephenson B. Andrews edited Bacon's Castle. (Richmond, VA: Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984), which was the first publication to tell the full story of Bacon's Castle, examining history, archaeology, architecture, furnishings, and, importantly, the restoration of the building. More recently, Virginia Barrett Price's "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," (MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998) examined the critical and previously overlooked role of Elizabeth Allen in the maintenance and adaptation of Bacon's Castle. These studies, each in different ways, richly informed this HSR.

After the physical investigation was conducted and the repair recommendations were assembled, we developed a series of interpretive recommendations. These recommendations proposed both physical improvements to support both interior and exterior interpretation, as well as a series of programmatic adaptations to tours to help enhance the visitor experience. Conservator Bly Straube

of the James River Institute for Archaeology and Bryan Green created a series of interpretive recommendations.

Our hope is that this Historic Structures Report will support and inform Preservation Virginia's long-term commitment to the preservation and care of Bacon's Castle. The preservation of historic structures is always a challenge, never more so when the structure is the oldest masonry dwelling, and one of the oldest surviving buildings, in the United States. Preservation Virginia is to be commended for its long-term commitment to preserving and protecting Bacon's Castle and interpreting it for generations of Virginians who have visited the building and learned about life within its walls and on its grounds. We hope that our efforts will help to sustain and support Preservation Virginia's efforts to preserve and protect Bacon's Castle.

#### *Acknowledgements*

Commonwealth Architects wishes to gratefully acknowledge the assistance of following institutions and individuals:

Preservation Virginia: Louis Malon, Jennifer Hurst-Wender, Mike Adams  
Virginia Department of Historic Resources: Joanna Wilson Green  
Colonial Williamsburg Foundation: Carl R. Lounsbury  
The Library of Virginia  
The Library of Congress  
The Earl Gregg Swem Library, College of William and Mary,

This project was funded by the *Hurricane Sandy Disaster Relief Assistance Grants for Historic Properties*, administered nationally by the U.S. Department of the Interior, National Park Service, and in Virginia, by the Department of Historic Resources.

#### *Disclaimer*

*This material is based upon work assisted by a Emergency Supplemental Historic Preservation Fund Hurricane Sandy grant from the Department of the Interior, National Park Service. Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the Department of the Interior*



## Chapter Two History

Bryan Clark Green, Ph.D.

<b>Bacon's Castle Timeline</b>	
Date	Activity
<b>Period I: 1665-1726</b>	
1650	Arthur Allen I patented 200 acres in Surry County
1665	Construction of Bacon's Castle
1669	Arthur Allen I died, Arthur Allen II inherited Bacon's Castle
1676	Bacon's Rebellion, Bacon's Castle occupied
1710	Arthur Allen II died; Arthur Allen III would eventually inherit the property
1711	First furnishings inventory conducted
<b>Period II: 1727-1853</b>	
1727	Arthur Allen III died intestate, property passes to his wife, Elizabeth Bray
1728	Second furnishings inventory conducted
1730	Elizabeth Bray married Arthur Smith
E18C	Construction of story-and-a-half frame addition to east end of Bacon's Castle
Ca. 1750	Insertion of partition in hall to create central passage
1754	Arthur Smith died, Elizabeth Bray and her son Arthur Allen IV inherit Bacon's Castle
1755	Third furnishings inventory conducted
1774	Elizabeth Bray died
1774	Grandson Allan Cocke inherited Bacon's Castle
1833	Allan Cocke died, granddaughter Indiana Allan Henley and husband Dr. Robert Emmet Robinson.
<b>Period III: 1854-1972</b>	
1854	Construction of two-story brick addition to east end of Bacon's Castle (and removal and relocation of E18C frame addition)
1844	John Henry Hankins purchases Bacon's Castle
1874	John Henry Hankins died
1874-76	Edwin White purchases Bacon's Castle, living there only briefly, dying in 1876

1876	William Allen Warren purchases Bacon's Castle
1931	William Allen Warren died. William Allen Warren died. William Allen Warren died. Walker Pegram Warren and his wife Violet inherit Bacon's Castle, living there intermittently between 1931 and 1972
1936	Frances Benjamin Johnston photographs of Bacon's Castle
1937	NPS photographs of Bacon's Castle (report studying acquisition of Bacon's Castle)
1938	Historic American Building Survey (HABS) photographs made of Bacon's Castle
1940	HABS drawings made of Bacon's Castle
1960	Bacon's Castle listed as a National Historic Landmark
1966	Bacon's Castle listed on the Virginia Landmarks Register and the National Register of Historic Places
1972	Additional HABS photographs of Bacon's Castle
1972	Death of Walter and Violet Warren, last private owners of Bacon's Castle
<b>Period IV: 1973 - Present</b>	
1973	Acquisition by APVA
1974	Bacon's Castle opens to the public
1978	Restoration work begins
1984	Restoration work ceases
2015	350 <sup>th</sup> anniversary of construction of Bacon's Castle



## Period I: 1665-1727

The house known as Bacon's Castle was built in or shortly after 1665 for Colonel Arthur Allen. It was originally known simply as "Arthur Allen's brick house", a name which accurately reflected the rarity of brick dwellings in the colony. The name Bacon's Castle was applied after 1769 to the dwelling when the Virginia Gazette published three articles in that year describing the events of Bacon's Rebellion in 1676. The name Bacon's Castle remains etched in the public memory as the name for the imposing brick residence. When the Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities (APVA) acquired the dwelling in 1973, they elected to continue the use of the popular name by which the dwelling had become known.



Figure 2.1: Bacon's Castle, South elevation (primary). Photograph 26 July 2015. The 19C addition is concealed by trees, suggesting the 17C appearance when approaching Bacon's Castle.



Figure 2.2: Bacon's Castle, South elevation (primary). Photograph 26 July 2015. As originally design and constructed, the central porch tower contained the entry door into the hall of the main building. When the 1854 addition was constructed, the door was replaced by a window, and the main entry shifted to the hyphen.

On March 1, 1650, Arthur Allen patented 200 acres in Surry County, the first installment of a larger property upon which he would build the manor house known as Bacon's Castle, and where he would live with his wife Alice (Tucker) and an array of servants. The patent is the first evidence of Allen's existence, and his life prior to early 1650 remains a mystery, as do the years between this initial patent and the construction of Bacon's Castle.

Arthur Allen was part of Lawnes Creek parish, later known as Lower Southwark parish, having staked his claim around 1650.<sup>1</sup> At this time, courthouses and churches served as community centers, connecting the widely-dispersed farmsteads<sup>2</sup> As settlements continued to move inland, church sites shifted with them.<sup>3</sup> At about the time that Allen

<sup>1</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 28.

<sup>2</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 28.

<sup>3</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 29.

patented his lands, Lower Southwark (Lawne's Creek) parishioners had recently replaced the original wood-frame church near Hog Island with a larger, brick building.<sup>4</sup> The parish later abandoned Hog Island and moved to a new site near the main road through Surry County, closer to Lower Chippokes Creek and property that would later be patented by Allen's son, Major Allen. By 1673 the parish had constructed another church.<sup>5</sup> In 1774 Elizabeth Allen, wife of Arthur Allen's grandson and herself an owner of Bacon's Castle, would bequeath money for the purchase of interior fittings and vessels for the church liturgy.<sup>6</sup>

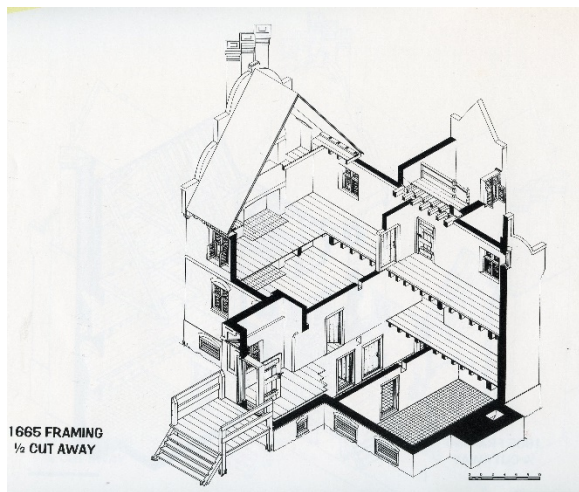


Figure 2.3: Bacon's Castle, Isometric drawing, 1665 framing, 1984. Preservation Virginia.

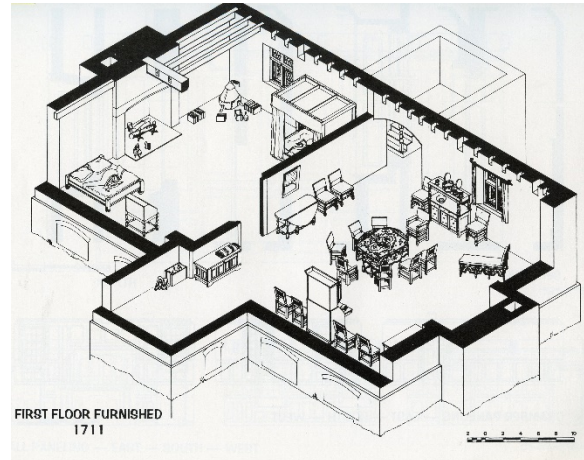


Figure 2.4: Bacon's Castle, Isometric drawing, conjectural drawing of first floor, furnished 1665, 1984. Preservation Virginia.

Successful planters were those who escaped the labor-intensive, year-long tobacco cycle, which required considerable investment of resources (financial and otherwise).<sup>7</sup> Divesting from tobacco allowed planters to move from impermanent earthfast buildings characteristic of the earliest settlements to dwellings and farm buildings of wood or brick.<sup>8</sup> Arthur Allen initially lived in a small, earthfast house, constructing Bacon's Castle as his new home after diversifying his agricultural activities.<sup>9</sup> Allen's level of success was atypical in Surry County, where people rarely escaped the oppressive cycle of tobacco cultivation and taxation.<sup>10</sup> Given that the average house was a one-room timber dwelling, the multi-room,

<sup>4</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 28.

<sup>5</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 29.

<sup>6</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 30.

<sup>7</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 30.

<sup>8</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 30.

<sup>9</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 31.

<sup>10</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 31.

masonry-built Bacon's Castle served as a visual representation of Allen's success and prosperity.<sup>11</sup> The house's prominence played a major role in the acquisition of its unusual name. Although many properties were seized by Nathaniel Bacon's partisans, the dwelling now known as "Bacon's Castle" remained a symbol of power on the level, open Surry County landscape.<sup>12</sup>

Using his inheritance from his father<sup>13</sup>, Major Allen patented multiple properties in the interior of Surry County.<sup>14</sup> Between 1679 and 1701, Major Allen acquired several parcels of land around the area known as Blackwater Swamp. These parcels had been previously patented or claimed in the 1660s, but never settled (deserted).<sup>15</sup> His portfolio of Surry County properties eventually grew to encompass 150 acres at the headwaters of Parker's Creek, 1000 acres on both sides of Second Swamp in Lawnes Creek Parish, and 2000 acres in greater Surry County, as well as the lands surrounding Bacon's Castle.<sup>16</sup> Major Allen also shared two patents with William Newsam for a total of 892 acres, and shared a

patent with two other men for 337 acres.<sup>17</sup> Major Allen would eventually sue those involved with Bacon's Rebellion for redress, as the house had been damaged and both household goods and livestock stolen during the rebels' brief occupation. Damages at the time were estimated at 800 pounds sterling<sup>18</sup>

Eleven years later Allen purchased an additional 500 acres from the sons of John Dunstan, owner of the adjacent Lower Chippokes Plantation and, in 1665 at the age of 57, he began construction of Bacon's Castle. Like most of Allen's life there is much about the design and construction of this iconic house that remains a mystery, including the names of the architect or designer, the masons and other workmen, and the length of time between initiation and completion. What is known is that Allen only lived in the house for four years, dying in the summer of 1669 at the age of 61.

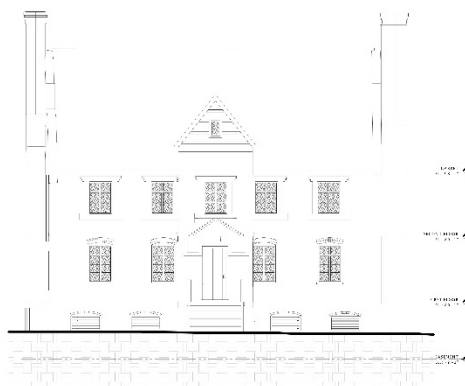


Figure 2.5: Bacon's Castle, South Elevation, Reconstruction of ca. 1665 appearance. Commonwealth Architects.

<sup>11</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 32.

<sup>12</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 33.

<sup>13</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 25.

<sup>14</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 25.

<sup>15</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 25.

<sup>16</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 25.

<sup>17</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 25.

<sup>18</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 34.

His March 10, 1669 will left Bacon's Castle to his only son, Arthur Allen II (known as Major), then approximately 18 years of age. At 24, Allen II was named Justice of the Peace for Surry County by Colonial Governor Sir William Berkeley. As such, he was present at the pivotal August 10, 1676 session when the Surry justices voted to supply Nathaniel Bacon, then in active rebellion against Berkeley's Colonial government. Researchers have concluded that Allen II opposed this decision, as shortly thereafter he left his home to follow Berkeley to Jamestown, remaining at Berkeley's side until the rebellion was quashed.

In his absence the events that gave the property its non-Allen-related name took place. On September 15, 1676, Allen II's overseer John Finley was arrested by Bacon partisans as he returned home from a trip to Jamestown. After questioning he was released, then arrested a second time and had his horse and other belongings confiscated. He would later be incarcerated in Charles City County for nearly a year. Three days after Finley's arrests, 70 Bacon partisans (including Allen II's brother-in-law Arthur Long) seized Bacon's Castle and occupied it for nine days, during which time they damaged both the house and the property, destroying crops and stealing a laundry list of personal and household goods. Only the approach of the British warship Young Prince caused them to flee, absconding with pillowcases full of books, fine linens, pewter, and other expensive items. Upon his return Allen II sued the rebels in the courts of both Surry and Charles City Counties, recouping some of his losses.

In spite of the predations of Bacon's men, Allen II remained one of Surry County's wealthiest residents, increasing his lands to over 10,000 acres and marrying Katherine Baker, daughter of a neighbor. He was also reappointed Justice of the Peace and served

four terms in the House of Burgesses, where he was twice elected Speaker. In later years he also served as county surveyor and Customs Collector and Naval Officer for the Upper James River district. Allen II died on May 19, 1710, leaving everything to his wife Katherine and their seven children. Eventually his son, Arthur Allen III, would assume control of Bacon's Castle.

In 1711 the history of Bacon's Castle took an interesting turn when Major Allen's son, Arthur Allen III, inherited the property from his older brother James.<sup>19</sup> He then married Elizabeth Bray of James City County.<sup>20</sup> Their marriage marked the transition of both the Allen family and the property from the 17<sup>th</sup> to the 18<sup>th</sup> centuries, with changes in interior decoration reflecting both this transition and the family's desire to both display and reinforce their social and economic status.<sup>21</sup>

Allen III died in 1727, intestate.<sup>22</sup> As his widow, Elizabeth was entitled to one-third of his real property as well as absolute rights to a child's portion of Allen's personal property.<sup>23</sup> As their two children were minors, it was Elizabeth's prerogative to stay on the

---

<sup>19</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.

<sup>20</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 36.

<sup>21</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 36.

<sup>22</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.

<sup>23</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.



property.<sup>24</sup> Legal documents show that she protected this status assiduously.<sup>25</sup> This legal arrangement held firm through her second marriage to Arthur Smith in 1729, and her third to a Mr. Stith, whom she also outlived.<sup>26</sup> In 1763 the will of Benjamin Cocke, her cousin, specified that his children be sent to stay at Bacon's Castle with Elizabeth Allen, even though at that time she was Elizabeth Stith.<sup>27</sup> Elizabeth would spend her entire adult life at Bacon's Castle, ably administering both the home and surrounding plantation as a capable businesswoman.<sup>28</sup>

Throughout her adult life, her personal and financial circumstances changed depending on whether she was classified as "wife" or "widow".<sup>29</sup> When married, her husband owned her services, wages, and property rights. Elizabeth had no independent legal voice because she technically owned nothing – legally, "femme covert" status.<sup>30</sup> When widowed, however, empowerment to act

legally came through her position in her late husband's estate, that being the legal entity through which widows acted to be their own economic agents.<sup>31</sup>

Elizabeth Allen maintained a degree of autonomy even during those periods in which she was confined by "femme covert" status.<sup>32</sup> Following her father's death in 1725, Elizabeth inherited real property, later selling part of it to her brother Thomas.<sup>33</sup> She also inherited property on Chickahominy River from father – used terms of his will to bequeath it to her daughter, Catherine, who married Benjamin Cocke & their heirs.<sup>34</sup> Legal documents record that she expressed herself in judiciary proceedings independent from her second husband, Arthur Smith.<sup>35</sup> When she became administrator of Arthur Allen's estate, she ensured that the money received from her father was her own by having him sign a pre-nuptial agreement designed to protect her inherited assets and those of her children. The document, written in 1729, was not recorded until 1749.<sup>36</sup>

---

<sup>24</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.

<sup>25</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 36.

<sup>26</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.

<sup>27</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.

<sup>28</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.

<sup>29</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.

<sup>30</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.

---

<sup>31</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.

<sup>32</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.

<sup>33</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.

<sup>34</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 39.

<sup>35</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 37.

<sup>36</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 38.

Upon her son James's death in 1744, he bequeathed part of his estate to the vestry of Southwark parish for educating poor children with the stated wish that it be called the "Allen School"<sup>37</sup> In 1753 Elizabeth wanted the same thing, but was more explicit about what both the funding and school should do.<sup>38</sup> She endowed Smithfield Free School with own money, for the purpose of educating poor children and orphans without means until at least age 10.<sup>39</sup> Male children would be given three years of reading, writing, and arithmetic.<sup>40</sup> Female children would have two years of reading and writing only.<sup>41</sup> After completing their allotted education, boys would be apprenticed for a trade, and girls would be bound to another woman to learn household skills.<sup>42</sup>

Elizabeth allocated funds for purchase of a half-acre town lot for the school, and instructed trustees to build a 28' by 16' wood-frame schoolhouse with 2 brick end chimneys on a brick foundation. The plaster-walled building contained two rooms, one for school

and one for lodging.<sup>43</sup> Knowing that the school could not be as impressive as her home, she specified that it be a simple building.<sup>44</sup> Renovations at Bacon's Castle in the first half of the 18<sup>th</sup> century may have taught Elizabeth something about construction costs and finishes.<sup>45</sup>

As at the time married women could not manage an institution's finances, Elizabeth established a board of trustees to ensure that her money was spent as she desired.<sup>46</sup> Installing the board was a clever way of exerting her authority in a period in which women typically had neither the capital nor the power to do so.<sup>47</sup>

It is unclear why Arthur Smith allowed his wife to maintain such an atypically strong sense of herself both legally and personally.<sup>48</sup> It may be that his comfortable financial situation allowed him to do this without concern for the family's overall prosperity.<sup>49</sup>

---

<sup>37</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 39.

<sup>38</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 39.

<sup>39</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 39.

<sup>40</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 39.

<sup>41</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 39.

<sup>42</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 40.

<sup>43</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 40.

<sup>44</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 40.

<sup>45</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 40.

<sup>46</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 40.

<sup>47</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 41.

<sup>48</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 40.

<sup>49</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 40.



Regardless, it appears that Elizabeth was, for the time, quite unusually assertive and proactive in her participation in architectural decisions – a supposition supported by surviving legal documents and historical, architectural and archaeological evidence.<sup>50</sup>

Elizabeth's involvement in legal matters pertinent to Bacon's Castle suggests that she maintained a role in creating a polite, cultured setting in her home.<sup>51</sup> Traditionally wives would not have been involved much, if at all, in the construction or interior design of a house, as these elements were intended to signify their husbands' wealth and social standing.<sup>52</sup> In contrast, Elizabeth's financial maneuvers led to her moving away from the Allen family's 17<sup>th</sup> century legacy and molding the house to her 18<sup>th</sup> century tastes.<sup>53</sup>

Interestingly, the Allen family's court records consist of probate and real estate transactions only. These property-related documents comprise the extent of the public record on this family.<sup>54</sup> There is only one extant reference to Elizabeth in direct relation to Bacon's Castle, and this is found in the diaries of William Byrd II of Westover Plantation.<sup>55</sup>

In February 1728 Byrd embarked on survey of the Virginia/North Carolina border.<sup>56</sup> Two of the men commissioned to complete this project arranged to meet with Byrd and his party at Bacon's Castle at the beginning of the journey from Southside Virginia to Coratuck (now Currituck) Inlet on the coast of North Carolina.<sup>57</sup> Byrd's notes on Bacon's Castle said that Elizabeth "entertain'd us elegantly, & seem'd to pattern Solomon's Housewife if one may Judge by the neatness of her House, & the good Order of her Family..."<sup>58</sup>

The commissioners ended up missing their appointment with Byrd, but the choice of Bacon's Castle as a meeting place indicates that the men knew it was large enough to accommodate them as well as about 15 woodsmen, servants, and horses.<sup>59</sup> Southside Virginia was then perceived as relatively remote, both geographically and culturally, home to many Native American tribes but few gentleman farmers. Bacon's Castle was in that context.<sup>60</sup> It was also a prominent landmark on the way from John Allen's house to Coratuck Inlet.<sup>61</sup> John Allen was one of

---

<sup>50</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 40.

<sup>51</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 42.

<sup>52</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 42.

<sup>53</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 42.

<sup>54</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 43.

<sup>55</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA

---

Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 43.

<sup>56</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 43.

<sup>57</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 43.

<sup>58</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 43.

<sup>59</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 44.

<sup>60</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 45.

<sup>61</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA



commissioners that Byrd initially selected to make the journey but, after Byrd met with him at his home, John Allen declined to accompany Byrd on the historic trek.<sup>62</sup> Byrd left Allen's home and traveled directly to Bacon's Castle.<sup>63</sup>

As Byrd's notes contain the only mention of Elizabeth in the context of Bacon's Castle, actual evidence of how Elizabeth kept house and entertained must be gleaned from examination of architectural and other evidence.<sup>64</sup> Two 19<sup>th</sup> century illustrations of Bacon's Castle, an 1815 RH Cocke watercolor and an 1866 woodcut from a southeast perspective, allow a certain degree of understanding.<sup>65</sup> In a travel log kept during a ca. 1732 journey, Hugh Grove observed that "in places where there are no Ordinarys you ride in where 2 brick Chimbles [chimneys] shew there is a spare bed and lodging and Welcome" – based upon this description, Bacon's Castle would have been a good place to stop.<sup>66</sup>

Three 18<sup>th</sup> century probate inventories show room names within Bacon's Castle, as well as outbuildings, service buildings and

component farms (sometimes called quarters).<sup>67</sup> These inventories say what was in the rooms but do not indicate where specific objects were located, how they were used, or who selected them for the household.<sup>68</sup> Elizabeth's financial decisions and court-recorded gifts indicate that she had money and opinions on how it should be used, as well as a working knowledge of building specifics, none of which were in evidence until her first husband died.<sup>69</sup> Her first widowhood gave her freedoms previously denied to her. Elizabeth could be her own person, legally and financially – able to hold and convey property, write a will, and enter into contracts.<sup>70</sup>

The Allen family inventories indicate that they owned basic agricultural tools and related resources, to be expected in a family of planters.<sup>71</sup> The inventories include hoes (used to till the land), ox carts, chains and rings (for hauling), and evidence that corn, tobacco, swine and cattle were raised on the property.<sup>72</sup>

---

Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 44.

<sup>62</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 44.

<sup>63</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 44.

<sup>64</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 45.

<sup>65</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 45.

<sup>66</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 46.

---

<sup>67</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 47.

<sup>68</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 48.

<sup>69</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 48.

<sup>70</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 48.

<sup>71</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 52.

<sup>72</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 52.

By 1755 the inventory contained a plow as well.<sup>73</sup>

Between 1711 and 1728, Arthur and Elizabeth increasingly brought status-bearing consumer goods to their home, including tools, yards of cloth, plate, a clock, a large looking glass, a “scriptore” for reading, glasses and cups, and china.<sup>74</sup> However, by 1755 the inventory shows an increase in true luxury items, including a “parcel” of pictures (46 in the hall alone, with others stored in the porch chamber and the room over the hall), indicating that the family’s financial circumstances and desire to present a refined appearance had meshed.<sup>75</sup> Elizabeth’s 1774 inventory suggests that an even higher standard of living had been achieved.<sup>76</sup> Evidence from the inventory includes mention of a gold watch, several pictures, and silver items bestowed upon grandchildren.<sup>77</sup> Elizabeth also had a bookcase, indicating that she owned more than a Bible or prayer book. Secular books were a luxury available to those with the cultural inclination, leisure time, and financial ability to purchase them.<sup>78</sup> The

inventory contains multiple beds and bed furniture, linens, tables, chairs, candlesticks, and a variety of tableware and cookware, depicting a fine standard of living.<sup>79</sup> Other inventory items indicate a focus on cleanliness, including chamber pots, close stools, and laundry equipment.<sup>80</sup>

The Allen family inventories also show how their income had diversified from the earliest days of tobacco farming. Arthur Allen III, Elizabeth’s first husband, was a merchant and tobacco middleman. Elizabeth and her second husband, Arthur Smith, built on a legacy of diversified household economy, necessary due to diminishing returns on tobacco and a resulting reduction in their personal income.<sup>81</sup> Like many planters, they exported corn and wheat crops to weather fluctuations in tobacco market.<sup>82</sup> Elizabeth clearly felt constrained by the vagaries of the tobacco market, as the addition to Bacon’s Castle built during her tenure was constructed of wood rather than the more high-status (and expensive) brick.<sup>83</sup>

Allen family inventories show how income was diversified.<sup>84</sup> The mention in the 1755

---

<sup>73</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, “Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon’s Castle 1711-1774,” MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 52.

<sup>74</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, “Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon’s Castle 1711-1774,” MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 94.

<sup>75</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, “Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon’s Castle 1711-1774,” MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 53.

<sup>76</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, “Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon’s Castle 1711-1774,” MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 53.

<sup>77</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, “Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon’s Castle 1711-1774,” MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 53.

<sup>78</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, “Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon’s Castle 1711-1774,” MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 53.

---

<sup>79</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, “Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon’s Castle 1711-1774,” MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 53.

<sup>80</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, “Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon’s Castle 1711-1774,” MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 53.

<sup>81</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, “Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon’s Castle 1711-1774,” MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 57.

<sup>82</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, “Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon’s Castle 1711-1774,” MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 57.

<sup>83</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, “Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon’s Castle 1711-1774,” MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 58.

<sup>84</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, “Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon’s Castle 1711-1774,” MA

inventory of the newly-acquired plow marks a shift from tobacco/corn production to wheat. This transition was confirmed by the inventory of a grindstone, wheat sieves, and sifters.<sup>85</sup> The presence of spinning, woolen, and linen wheels, a mill spindle, yards of cloth, and sheep suggest production of linens and other cloth goods on the property.<sup>86</sup> The family's livestock holdings expanded to turkeys, geese, and bees as well.<sup>87</sup>

18<sup>th</sup> century Virginia's gentry showed authority both through ownership of luxury items and work performed on their lands.<sup>88</sup> The contents of buildings and scale and materials of their construction helped emphasize the gentility of their owners.

The Bacon's Castle plan ensured that family members had a great deal of contact with servants and laborers on the property.<sup>89</sup> On the house's interior, primary living and leisure spaces accessed by a single stair tower that led from the utilitarian spaces of the cellar to the equally utilitarian garret level.<sup>90</sup> The cellar was

a simple space, its bare brick, exposed ceiling beams, and plain fireplace in direct contrast with the carefully-finished family spaces above.<sup>91</sup> A brick floor assisted with fireproofing around the large hearths, and whitewashed walls brought as much light as possible into the semi-subterranean rooms.<sup>92</sup> Windows allowed ventilation. The space housed both kitchen and laundry until the 1740s, when kitchen functions were relocated to an outbuilding.<sup>93</sup> Thereafter the cellar served mainly as storage.<sup>94</sup>

The garret, or attic, was plainly finished, unheated, and not well-lit.<sup>95</sup> Inventories, however, show there were beds and equipment for making textiles in the garret, indicating that servants or slaves probably worked and slept there.<sup>96</sup>

Elizabeth and family members would have entered the cellar using stairs connected to the house, but slaves and servants entered through a bulkhead at the northeast side of the building which linked the workspaces of the rear yard to the kitchen, bypassing the

---

Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 58.

<sup>85</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 58.

<sup>86</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 58.

<sup>87</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 58.

<sup>88</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 59.

<sup>89</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 63.

<sup>90</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 63.

---

<sup>91</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 90.

<sup>92</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 91.

<sup>93</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 67.

<sup>94</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 67.

<sup>95</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 63.

<sup>96</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 63.

family's quarters and main social areas.<sup>97</sup> Architectural evidence suggests that there were originally two bulkhead entrances, one at the northwest corner of the house (closed ca. 1775-1800) and the other at the northeast corner.<sup>98</sup> Elizabeth's chamber closet was located above the northwest bulkhead.<sup>99</sup> Despite the large size of Bacon's Castle, outbuildings such as corn lofts, barns, and tobacco sheds were still necessary, and their location on the landscape reinforced a separation between domestic life and service functions.<sup>100</sup> A milk room and storage building also existed, where work was likely performed by either servants or slaves under Elizabeth's supervision.<sup>101</sup> An inventory mention of tobacco, corn, and grindstones supports the need for tobacco warehouses and granaries at Bacon's Castle, but no 18<sup>th</sup> century structures survive.<sup>102</sup>

A large garden was located west of the house. Elizabeth benefited from the garden's produce and likely determined what was

planted there, but as likely did not plant it herself.<sup>103</sup>

## Exterior

Allen's house was substantial in size, one of the largest dwellings in the colony. The brick is laid in English bond, and rises over a high plinth with distinctive water table. While the dwelling was substantial in size, the workmanship was uneven, reflecting the uneven nature of the masonry trade in colonial Virginia. The brickwork is uneven in color, quality, and construction: the mortar joints were sloppy. The bricks themselves vary in dimension. The bricks in the below-grade brick foundation are the largest and most irregular, ranging in size from 4 1/2" to 5" x 3 1/2" to 4" x 10". The bricks in the above-grade walls are smaller and more regular in size, though with some variation, ranging from (3 3/4" to 4" x 2 1/2" x 8 1/2".

---

<sup>97</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 91.

<sup>98</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 91.

<sup>99</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 91.

<sup>100</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 67.

<sup>101</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 90.

<sup>102</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 68.



Figure 2.6: Watercolor of Bacon's Castle, by unknown artist, ca. 1815. Preservation Virginia.

---

<sup>103</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 68.

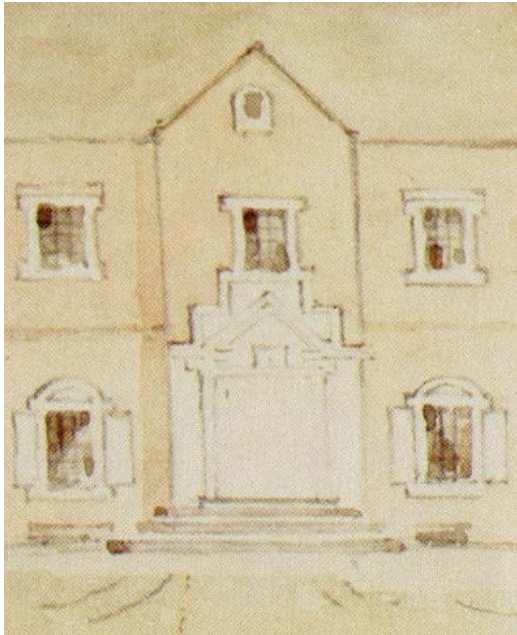


Figure 2.7: Detail, watercolor of Bacon's Castle, by unknown artist, ca. 1815. Preservation Virginia.

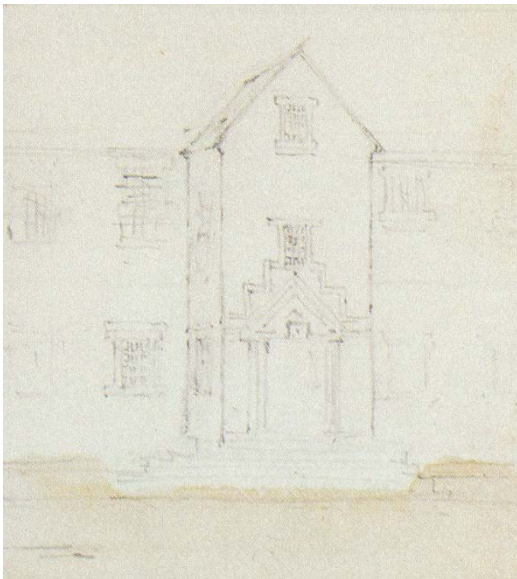


Figure 2.8: Watercolor of Bacon's Castle, by unknown artist, ca. 1815. Preservation Virginia.



Figure 2.9: Watercolor of Bacon's Castle, by unknown artist, ca. 1815. Preservation Virginia.

While the building has been repointed extensively, some original joints survive, particularly in areas immediately beneath the eaves, where they were protected from the full impact of the elements. The joints (the oldest of which appeared to be scored) are very wide and irregular, averaging  $\frac{3}{4}$ " wide. The protected joints retain traces of a red lime wash over the entire surface with portions of white penciling over the joints themselves surviving. This technique, commonly associated with late 18<sup>th</sup>- and early 19<sup>th</sup>-century masonry as a means to bring regularity to uneven masonry (by regularizing the color of the masonry and creating the impression of thinner, more regular joints) was clearly employed at Bacon's Castle at an early point in its history, apparently for exactly same purposes, to impose a greater degree of regularity upon an otherwise irregular masonry surface.



Figure 2.10: Bacon's Castle, South elevation (primary), immediately under eaves. Note irregular mortar joints, uneven brick margins, large aggregate. Photograph 26 July 2015.



Figure 2.13: Bacon's Castle, South elevation (primary), immediately under eaves. Note surviving red lime wash on joints with white penciled joints on top. Photograph 26 July 2015.



Figure 2.11: Bacon's Castle, South elevation (primary), immediately under eaves. Note irregular mortar joints, uneven brick margins, large aggregate. Photograph 26 July 2015.



Figure 2.14: Bacon's Castle, South elevation (primary), immediately under eaves. Note surviving red lime wash on joints with white penciled joints on top. Photograph 26 July 2015.



Figure 2.12: Bacon's Castle, South elevation (primary), immediately under eaves. Note surviving red lime wash on joints with white penciled joints on top. Photograph 26 July 2015.

A molded brick stringcourse runs between the first and second stories of the South elevation. Some of what appears to be an early two-layer parge coat of oyster-shell stucco parging over the stringcourse appear to survive.



Figure 2.15: Bacon's Castle, South elevation (primary), stringcourse with some surviving oyster-shell stucco parge coat. Photograph 26 July 2015.

The distinctive triple-stack brick chimney stacks, set on the diagonal, along with the shaped gable end parapet walls of the building, are perhaps its most enduring image.



Figure 2.16: Bacon's Castle, West elevation. Photograph 26 July 2015.



Figure 2.17: Bacon's Castle, West elevation. Photograph 26 July 2015. Two of the three chimney stacks reveal evidence of nineteenth-century restoration / reconstruction, as the two end stacks (on in part, the other in whole) have been reconstructed with modern pressed brick. The earliest surviving photographs of Bacon's Castle (late nineteenth-century) reveal this reconstruction to already have occurred by that date.

Archaeological research (see the accompanying chapter which summarizes archaeological research at Bacon's Castle for more details on this and other archaeological research) revealed that Bacon's Castle was originally covered with roofing stones, rather than wood shingles, which might have been expected. The roof was covered with a grey sandstone, and the valleys appear to have been covered with slate, as fragments of both were found in the earliest archaeological deposits on the site.<sup>104</sup> In addition, broken

<sup>104</sup> Angus Murdoch, "Restoration," in Stephenson B. Andrews, *Bacon's Castle*. (Richmond: The Association Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia Historic Structures Report Preservation Virginia 19 December 2016 Page 2.15

stone shingles were used as shims and filler in the original brick wall construction.<sup>105</sup> The stone resembles Aquia freestone, from Stafford County, but does not quite have the same irregular bedding layers that characterized Aquia freestone. It has been surmised that if the Aquia freestone was not employed, the stone may have arrived as ballast on transatlantic ship arriving from England, and carried up Chippokes Creek to Castle Mill Run, and from there transported to the building site.<sup>106</sup>



Figure 2.18: Bacon's Castle, North elevation fragments of stone roofing shingles recovered at Bacon's Castle. Photograph 26 July 2015.

Unfortunately, no original window frames or sashes survive at Bacon's Castle. Presumably, the original windows were cross-mullioned casement windows with leaded glass. The inventory of 1711 (see appendix 4 for a comparative analysis of the 1711, 1728, and 1755 inventories) lists in the Still House "Some window lead and glass."<sup>107</sup> Similarly, the 1755 inventory for Arthur Smith lists "about 50 feet work't Diamond Glass in 19 lights with some broken Glass" located "In

the Store."<sup>108</sup> These two inventory entries suggest that not only were casement windows with leaded glass installed, they were maintained for some considerable period of time. Archaeological research, however, has not produced any glass fragments with identifiable came marks, such as ghosts or fragments of connecting leadwork.<sup>109</sup> Fragments of lead, however, have been discovered within the house. The removal of a squirrel's nest in the garret revealed two sides of 3 1/2" square or rectangular panes, as well as one clearly defined piece of a diamond quarrel with an angle of 102 degrees. These fragments apparently originated in a window in the west garret room (unless they fell from window lights stored in the attic), and were gathered up at some point by a nesting squirrel.<sup>110</sup>

## Garden

One of Bacon's Castle's most intriguing features is the extensive garden located adjacent to the manor house. Under Preservation Virginia's ownership, the gardens have been subjected to both archival and archaeological investigation, resulting in the documentation of a surprisingly intact late 17<sup>th</sup> century garden overlaid by 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> century modifications. The garden, one of the earliest and most complete known to exist, has been partially restored and is interpreted for visitors to the historic site.

---

for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 22.

<sup>105</sup> Angus Murdoch, "Restoration," in Stephenson B. Andrews, *Bacon's Castle*. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 22.

<sup>106</sup> Angus Murdoch, "Restoration," in Stephenson B. Andrews, *Bacon's Castle*. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 22.

<sup>107</sup> Estate Inventory for Arthur Allen, 20 November 1711; Surry County Deed Book 1709-1715, pp. 84-88; An Inventory & Appraisal of the Estate of Maj. Arthur Allen deceased taken in May & June 1711, p. 84. Transcription R.L. Hurst, 1982.

---

<sup>108</sup> Estate Inventory for Capt. Arthur Smith, 24 January 1755; Isle of Wight County Will Book 6, pp. 144-151. An Inventory and Appraisal of the Estate of Capt. Arthur Smith Cede'd in Surry County January 24 1755, p. 144. Transcription R.B. True, re-transcription R.L. Hurst, 1982.

<sup>109</sup> Angus Murdoch, "Restoration," in Stephenson B. Andrews, *Bacon's Castle*. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 22.

<sup>110</sup> Angus Murdoch, "Restoration," in Stephenson B. Andrews, *Bacon's Castle*. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 22.



Archaeological investigation indicates that the original ca. 1680 garden was designed in a grid pattern, with a ten-foot-wide perimeter walkway and a twelve-foot-wide central walkway extending from the northern boundary of the garden to its southern end. Crosswalks approximately 8 feet wide were set perpendicularly to the central walk, at intervals along its length, and all were laid with white sand. The walkways were crowned, or curved at the top, to direct water away from the walking surface, much as walkways and streets are constructed today.

Within the grid established by these walkways were rectangular planting beds, each 7 feet in width but of differing lengths (the two northern and two central beds were each 98 feet long, while the two southernmost beds were 97 feet long), with a six-foot-wide perimeter planting border around the edge of the outermost walkway. Two additional beds were located at the north end of the garden. These beds were not straight-sided like the others, but had curved borders that together formed a bell shape at the end of the central walkway. Archaeological investigation confirms that the beds were furrowed, suggesting that planting focused on food crops rather than a formal parterre of shrubs or ornamentals. The furrows in the six rectangular beds ran east-west, while the furrows in the northernmost two beds ran north-south. This alteration in the direction of furrows, as well as the curved rather than straight boundaries of the northernmost beds, may have served multiple purposes: as a visual terminus to the garden, as a whimsical design element, and as a place suited for small or tender crops. This is supported by additional archaeological evidence for a brick wall at the north end of the garden. Such a structure would protect more delicate plantings from wind. The bricks, after absorbing a day's worth of sun, would serve as a heat source during cooler months. The remainder of the garden does not appear to have been walled

or fenced, although fences were added in later alterations.

The 17<sup>th</sup> century garden at Bacon's Castle also contained small structures that both complimented its formal design and supported its eminently practical purpose. Archaeological investigation identified the signatures of three three-sided brick enclosures on the west side of the garden, one at the end of each crosswalk. Although their function cannot be conclusively determined from the archaeological record, these have been tentatively identified as possible exedra (var. exedra), or enclosed sitting areas common in Classical architecture. In addition to these niches, a large (20 feet by 32 feet) brick structure with a clay-floored cellar occupied the eastern end of the northern crosswalk. Archaeologists recovered numerous fragments of glass cloches, or bell jars, traditionally used to protect young or delicate plants, from the area containing this structure. Archaeological investigation also identified a concentration of well bricks at the eastern end of the southern crosswalk as well as evidence of an arbor located at the center of the garden. The presence of both a cemetery and privy pits – the sacred and the profane – completes the vision of the gardens at Bacon's Castle as a feature serving both aesthetic and practical purposes.

### **Interior**

Bacon's Castle, the oldest surviving building in the Chesapeake region, is also notable for having its interior unusually well documented by a series of room-by-room inventories. While the spaces themselves have undergone a series of changes over time (including the 1980-82 restoration), and all of the original furnishing of the house were long ago removed and dispersed, these three inventories, dating to 1711, 1728, and 1755 open a window into the furnishing, use, and adaptation of Bacon's Castle. The first inventory, dating to 1711, records the interior



of the dwelling in a condition very nearly that of its 1665 construction. The second inventory, dating to 1728, records a condition that changed little from 1711. The 1755 inventory, however, records a series of significant changes to the interior of Bacon's Castle. By 1755, Arthur Allen IV (and his mother) inherited Bacon's Castle, and a series of alterations had been made to the then-nearly-one-hundred-year-old residence. By 1755, the house had undergone substantial alteration, the older (possibly original) furnishings had been relegated to lesser rooms, and new furnishings installed to suit the expectations of a mid-18<sup>th</sup> century Chesapeake planter.<sup>111</sup> While the names of the rooms, hall and chamber remained the same, by 1755 the uses and furnishings had undergone substantial change. (For a comparison of the 1711, 1728, and 1755, see inventory 4, which organizes the three inventories into a spreadsheet that allows for direct room-by-room comparison of objects, organized by function and use.)

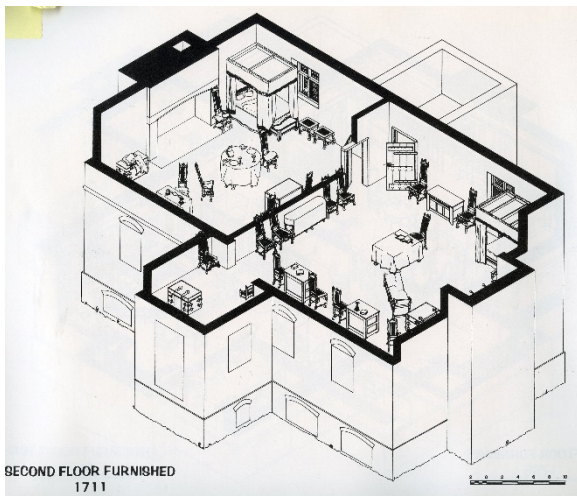


Figure 2.19: Bacon's Castle, Isometric drawing, conjectural drawing of second floor, furnished 1711, 1984. Preservation Virginia.

<sup>111</sup> Cary Carson, "Architecture as Social History," in *The Chesapeake House: Architectural Investigations* by Colonial Williamsburg, Ed. Cary Carson and Carl R. Lounsbury (Chapel Hill: The University of North Carolina Press, 2013), pp. 21-22.

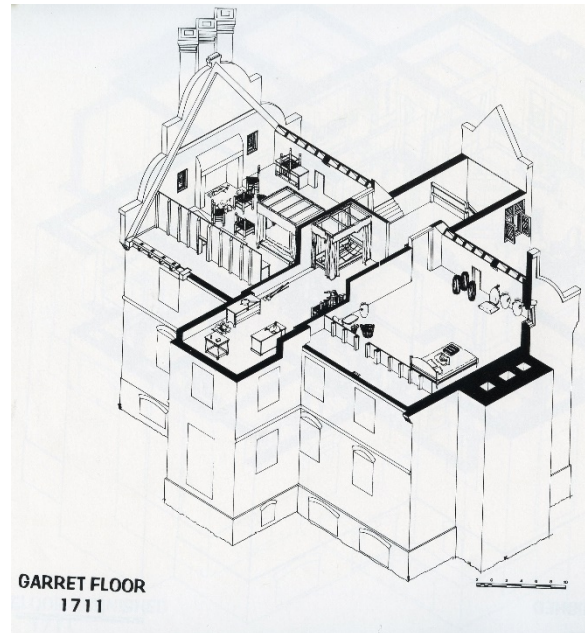


Figure 2.20: Bacon's Castle, Isometric drawing, conjectural drawing of garret, furnished 1711, 1984. Preservation Virginia.

During the 17<sup>th</sup> century, visitors to Bacon's Castle entered the dwelling through the central porch directly into the hall, the larger of the two rooms on the first floor. The hall was busy, crowded room, containing no less than eighteen chairs and two tables, as well as a cupboard with a variety of plate and tablewares, a day bed, a desk, a bookcase, and two trunks. The best way to envision the hall is to use Cary Carson's description, calling it an "all-purpose living room and the nerve center of the plantation."<sup>112</sup>

The smaller of the two rooms on the first floor, the chamber, was a far less public room. While the chamber contained two beds, it was primarily a storeroom for valuables, including such linens as sheets, pillowcases, napkins, and tablecloths. The chamber also contained

<sup>112</sup> Cary Carson, "Architecture as Social History," in *The Chesapeake House: Architectural Investigations* by Colonial Williamsburg, Ed. Cary Carson and Carl R. Lounsbury (Chapel Hill: The University of North Carolina Press, 2013), p. 22.

a mortar and pestle for grinding spices, two sugar bowls. This room contained valuable items that needed to be located near to the kitchen (in the cellar) or the dining area (in the adjacent hall), but in a place where they could be secured.

The principal bedrooms were located on the second floor. The two rooms were called chambers, though as Cary Carson describes them, they were “in effect a great chamber and an anteroom or dressing chamber.”<sup>113</sup> The rooms were not used only for sleeping, but also for entertaining: the dressing room contained six high-backed cane chairs, and Allen’s bedchamber contained twelve.

---

<sup>113</sup> Cary Carson, “Architecture as Social History,” in *The Chesapeake House: Architectural Investigations* by Colonial Williamsburg, Ed. Cary Carson and Carl R. Lounsbury (Chapel Hill: The University of North Carolina Press, 2013), p. 22.

## Period II: 1727-1853

Unlike his father, relatively little is known about Arthur Allen III. Born in or around 1869, he too served as Justice of the Peace for Surry County. Perhaps more importantly, however, he married Elizabeth Bray in 1711, then died intestate in 1727, leaving Elizabeth to run Bacon's Castle as her own. Elizabeth later sold acreage inherited from her father and, uncharacteristically for the time, insisted that the proceeds belonged solely to her. Elizabeth remarried in 1730 to Arthur Smith, himself a wealthy man, but insisted on a detailed marriage contract that protected her financial interests by requiring Smith to pay £300 to Elizabeth and to each of her children upon his death or their marriages, that amount to remain separate from the rest of his estate. When Smith died in 1754, Elizabeth inherited one third of his estate as well as the requested £300, which remained hers alone. Elizabeth would marry (and outlive) one more husband, but little is known about him.

Elizabeth's productive life, following her inheritance of Bacon's Castle, included the endowment of a school in the town of Smithfield, where girls and boys were to receive academic instruction before being apprenticed. She also made a habit of successfully suing individuals who owed her money, and was once sued by her own servant over a claim of mistreatment. In that instance the servant won. Elizabeth spent the last few years of her life living alone in Bacon's Castle, dying on or around February 20, 1774, but only after recording a very detailed set of instructions for her funeral and burial. Her November 1773 will left Bacon's Castle to her grandson, Allan Cocke.

Cocke raised stallions at Bacon's Castle and, like his male ancestors, served as Justice of the Peace and as a member of the House of Burgesses, where he was a member of all five

Virginia Conventions and helped to write the Commonwealth's first constitution. When Cocke died in December 1780, his will bequeathed Bacon's Castle to his son Benjamin Allen Cocke, who would inherit at the age of 21. Allan Cocke's widowed sister, Rebecca Eaton, became interim manager of the property and guardian of his children. Benjamin formally inherited in 1794 but lived only five years longer, willing the property to his wife Susannah. She died in 1802 and the property passed to Benjamin's brother Allen Cocke, who himself died later that year. Cocke's widowed sister Ann Hunt Bradby inherited Bacon's Castle, marrying twice thereafter. Bradby's third husband, Richard Herbert Cocke, was also her second cousin. The family moved into Bacon's Castle in 1810, and within the year Cocke was named the first postmaster of the newly-created Bacon's Castle Post Office. Cocke made several improvements to the property, including construction of a mill and icehouse, and owned about 40 slaves. He would go on to establish a stage route between Portsmouth and Petersburg, using Bacon's Castle as a supply center, and was responsible for mail delivery between the two towns. At the time of his death in 1833, Cocke owned 84 slaves, ran a cotton gin, and had two boats. His wife Ann inherited the property and lived there until her own death in 1838, at which time the property passed to their granddaughter Indiana Allen Henley and her husband, Dr. Robert Emmet Robinson.

## Exterior



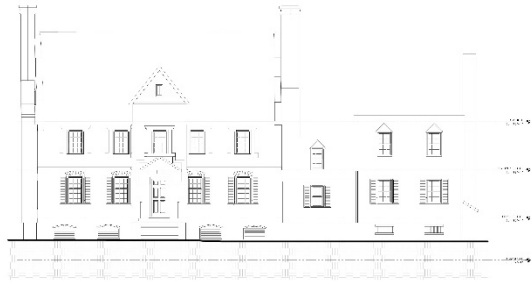


Figure 2.21: Bacon's Castle, South Elevation, Reconstruction of early 18<sup>th</sup> century appearance. Commonwealth Architects.

### Early 18<sup>th</sup> Century Addition

Although expanded with two end wings and the recipient of other 20<sup>th</sup> century improvements the center section of the frame tenant house is the surviving late (third quarter) 18<sup>th</sup> century wing of Bacon's Castle, removed and relocated prior to construction of the existing 1854 wing. Evidence includes a ca. 1815 watercolor and an 1866 engraving found in *Leslie's Illustrated News* (likely made before the addition was removed and replaced but not published until later, or made as a reconstruction of a condition that no longer physically existed, as was true of so many 20<sup>th</sup> century drawings of Bacon's Castle) that depicts a two-bay addition with asymmetrical gable, connected to the masonry building by a frame hyphen. The south (primary) elevation of the addition is shown on a raised cellar with two windows in both the cellar and main floor and two dormers above. What is visible of the north (rear) elevation appears to indicate that the roof was shallower and without a dormer in this location. Leslie's engraving indicates that a small pent-roof projection on the southeast corner was a bulkhead cellar entrance. As with the 1854 addition that replaced it, the early 18<sup>th</sup> century addition contained no door in the south elevation. The inclusion of a broad exterior end chimney and asymmetrical east gable indicate that the addition was two rooms deep

(with a narrow rear room) and attic, and that the ground floors and at least one attic room were heated.<sup>1</sup> The existing tenant house matches the depiction of the addition in both the watercolor and engraving, including the two windows and dormers, as well as lack of evidence for an (original) front door. Although there is no cellar currently beneath the tenant house, Edward Chappell stated that the lowest joists are whitewashed in a fashion similar to those in the 17<sup>th</sup> century building, and have cut nails inserted in a manner indicating the intent to use them for hanging. Both appear to support the assumption that the building was set over a cellar at one time.<sup>2</sup>

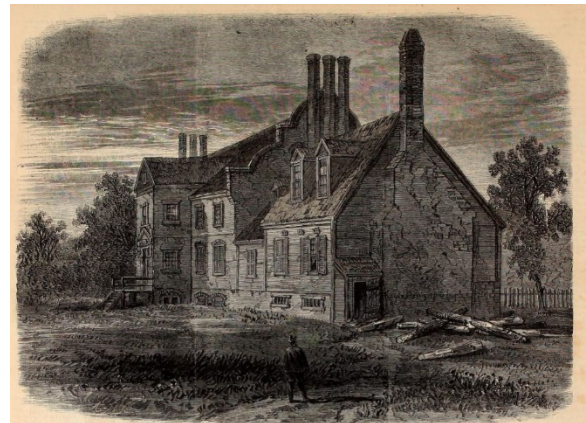


Figure 2.22: Bacon's Castle, from Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper, 8 September 1868. While published in 1868, the view depicts a pre-1854 condition, before the relocation of 18C wing and the construction of the 1854 wing.

<sup>1</sup> Chappell, Edward to Bruce McDougal. 19 March 1990. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

<sup>2</sup> Chappell, Edward to Bruce McDougal. 19 March 1990. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.



Figure 2.23: Detail, Bacon's Castle, from Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper, 8 September 1868. While published in 1868, the view depicts a pre-1854 condition, before the relocation of 18C wing and the construction of the 1854 wing.



Figure 2.24: Detail, Bacon's Castle, from Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper, 8 September 1868. While published in 1868, the view depicts a pre-1854 condition, before the relocation of 18C wing and the construction of the 1854 wing.

The tenant house retains its asymmetrical gables and has not been altered to accommodate an addition of its own. The existing chimney is a replacement, while Chappell indicated that the framing of the east wall was set to accommodate a much broader chimney similar to that pictured in the watercolor and engraving. The two easternmost joists beneath the house are also replacements designed to infill the area no longer occupied by the original chimney.<sup>3</sup> Chappell points out that this is supported by the presence of a joist pocket in the intermediate sill designed to accommodate a header for the front room hearth. The corresponding header exists, surmounted by

<sup>3</sup> Chappell, Edward to Bruce McDougal. 19 March 1990. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

an early 19<sup>th</sup> century pit-sawn replacement floor that outlines the original corner hearth.<sup>4</sup>

The early 18<sup>th</sup>-century addition's lack of a front door is supported by the interior circulation pattern of the tenant house. Chappell stated that there are two doorways in the south corner of the west wall, one leading into the main room and one to an enclosed attic stair. The stair could never have been accessed directly from the room as the original winders face *away* from the room itself and toward the place where the original connection to the hyphen would have been. An understanding of outside access to the narrow rear room is made difficult by generations of change to the north (rear) wall of the tenant house. Chappell stated that, at one time, a central doorway existed in the north wall, between two windows, and was itself converted to a window at some point in the first half of the 19<sup>th</sup> century. Examination of weatherboards and framing on this side of the building noted the presence of rosehead nails in siding, window frames, and support framing as well as oversized mortises intended to support the original door framing. The sill plate was replaced in the twentieth century.<sup>5</sup>

The south and west walls contain the most surviving original exterior details, including more of the wrought-nailed siding noted above, as well as soffit and fascia, a beaded corner board, and two tapered and beaded rake boards. A narrow window near the back of the east wall appears to be a replacement as it contains cut rather than wrought nails.

Surviving interior finishes in the tenant house, like those in the 17<sup>th</sup> century Bacon's Castle, are a clue to the builder's intent for each room. Chappell believes that the interior spaces were "respectable but modest," and

---

<sup>4</sup> Chappell, Edward to Bruce McDougal. 19 March 1990. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

<sup>5</sup> Chappell, Edward to Bruce McDougal. 19 March 1990. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

definitely not meant to be as fine as those in the original house.<sup>6</sup> All interiors are finished, however, with plaster walls and ceilings throughout, even in the stair enclosure, and a chair rail in the downstairs rooms. Chappell notes that two windows in the front room have two-part architraves, as do the doors on the first floor. Upstairs door surrounds are simple beaded boards. The stair itself is finished with beaded stringers.<sup>7</sup>

According to both watercolor and engraving the one and one-half story hyphen contains a door and a dormer window. Three generations of hyphens are represented by scarring and other "ghosts" on the east end of the 17<sup>th</sup> century building, including chiseled channels in the face of the chimney above the existing masonry hyphen that outline a peaked and somewhat off-center roof. Infilled beam pockets are similarly visible in the south side of the chimney and adjoining wall, representing more than one episode of alteration. Chappell believes that the infill in the south face of the chimney represents the removal of the 18<sup>th</sup> century attic joists.<sup>8</sup>

### **Bacon's Castle Grounds**

As early as 1680 the family maintained a flower and vegetable garden just west of the house, measuring approximately 362 feet by 192 feet, with outbuildings along the eastern fenceline.<sup>9</sup>

A pair of "advance buildings" constructed between 1740 and 1800 created a formal entry to the property. This established an architectural hierarchy along the road to

---

<sup>6</sup> Chappell, Edward to Bruce McDougal. 19 March 1990. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

<sup>7</sup> Chappell, Edward to Bruce McDougal. 19 March 1990. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

<sup>8</sup> Chappell, Edward to Bruce McDougal. 19 March 1990. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

<sup>9</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 101.

Bacon's Castle, displaying the family's knowledge of Classical symmetry and further confirming the presence of gentility at Bacon's Castle.<sup>10</sup>

### Outbuildings

During the eighteenth- and early-nineteenth-century, the road east to the mill site was developed with a series of enslaved quarters. Only one of these quarters buildings survives, a two-story frame building, divided into living space for three enslaved families. The two ground floor rooms (each apparently intended for a separate family) opened into each other, and in the attic two small adjoined rooms were reached by a steep stair. All other enslaved quarters at Bacon's Castle are no longer extant.

### Interior

Family inventories provide information about the interior distribution of living and work spaces at Bacon's Castle as well as the items within them, with the earliest indicating that Arthur Allen's home was quite different from those of his ancestors.<sup>11</sup> The probate inventory taken following Allen's death in 1711 showed that Bacon's Castle contained 11 separate rooms. The raised basement contained service areas (kitchen, cellar, pantry, and entry area) for the use of slaves or servants. The first floor contained a hall and chamber, and the second floor over-hall and over-chamber rooms, all dedicated to the use of the family. The garret or attic contained east, west, and over-porch spaces, again for the use primarily of slaves and servants.<sup>12</sup>

---

<sup>10</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 104.

<sup>11</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 96.

<sup>12</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA

Spaces referred to as "closets" were actually intended for retreat, study, or writing.<sup>13</sup> Such rooms likely served as storage spaces in earlier homes, and often such spaces were found at the head of stairways in otherwise-unused space.<sup>14</sup> The inventory also contains mention of two outbuildings: a milk house and still house (distillery).

Few changes were made to Bacon's Castle between the 1711 and 1728 inventories, possibly an indication that Arthur Allen III and his wife Elizabeth focused upon acquisition and public display of goods rather than additions or alterations to their home. According to the 1728 inventory that followed the death of Allen III, the family possessed of a wide array of dishes, utensils, and food preparation equipment in numbers sufficient for multicourse meals.<sup>15</sup> The presence of certain items is a direct reflection of the Allen family's position as Virginia gentry, and their determination to maintain a certain social position. These include wheat sieves (indicating production of refined wheat breads rather than the coarser meals) as well as china or ceramic dishes and a variety of glassware necessary for formal entertaining.<sup>16</sup>

The 1728 inventory listed the kitchen first, probably because the appraisers chose to

---

Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 96.

<sup>13</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 97.

<sup>14</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 97.

<sup>15</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 95.

<sup>16</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 95.



begin in the cellar and work their way up through the house. The first floor inventory centered on the hall, the most elaborate (and public) room in the house. Prior to the inventory the Allens had added a closet, a post-in-ground construction, which opened into the adjacent chamber and which was used to store special serving pieces, a tea service, glasses, and soap. It is possible that this space was added to the chamber, rather than the hall where the items would actually be used, in order to disguise the work necessary for entertaining.<sup>17</sup>



Figure 2.25: Bacon's Castle, view of west elevation, watercolor and ink, by Virginia Wilson Hankins, ca. 1850-1888. Preservation Virginia.



Figure 2.26: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, Warren Family Photographs, ca. 1920s-1930s. The wood closet addition at the north side of the chimney was removed by ca. 1940.

Most of the changes to Bacon's Castle took place following Elizabeth's marriage to Arthur Smith in 1730. Over the following decades the house was altered to better accommodate a refined lifestyle focused in large part on entertaining.<sup>18</sup> It is probably that much of this refurbishment was engineered by Elizabeth, who had already indicated a strong will by both protecting and dictating the use of her own finances.<sup>19</sup> Although she never owned

<sup>17</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 98.

<sup>18</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 104.

<sup>19</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 105.

Bacon's Castle, she exerted her influence over its form and function, and it is unlikely that much happened on the property without her involvement and consent. Elizabeth managed the household from 1711 to 1774, through the deaths of three husbands and in spite of having no legal ownership of the property.<sup>20</sup> Under her supervision Bacon's Castle became the refined, fashionable, and high-status home she desired it to be.<sup>21</sup>

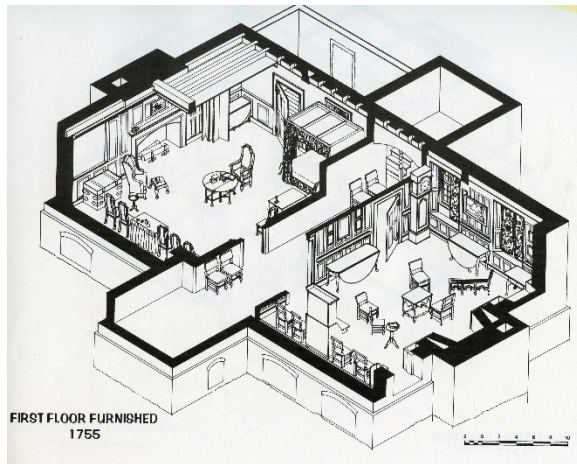


Figure 2.27: Bacon's Castle, Isometric drawing, conjectural drawing of first floor, furnished 1755, 1984. Preservation Virginia.

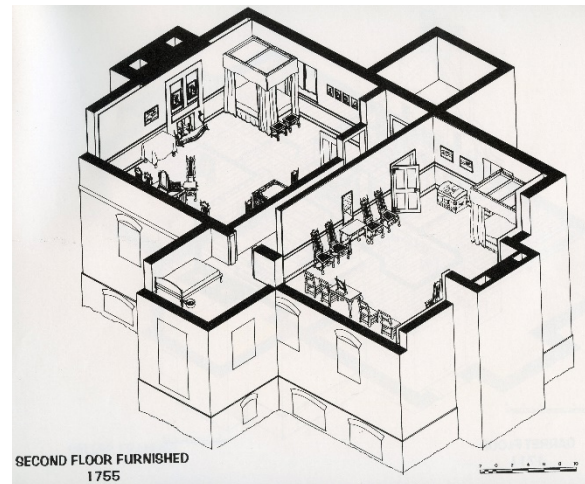


Figure 2.28: Bacon's Castle, Isometric drawing, conjectural drawing of second floor, furnished 1755, 1984. Preservation Virginia.

At some point prior to the 1755 inventory the closet was enlarged and enclosed with brick.<sup>22</sup> Other changes include the addition of a window to the north elevation, increasing the house's exterior symmetry and bringing it closer to the Classical style fashionable at the time. Casement windows were replaced with glazed sash throughout. A passage was cut out of the hall portion of the first floor, making the hall and chamber less accessible while also separating the stair tower from these rooms.<sup>23</sup> The hall and chamber themselves were altered by the addition of paneling and the reduction of the fireplace openings, rendering the rooms at once more attractive and less utilitarian. With the construction of a frame addition to Bacon's Castle a new parlor for entertaining was created. The hall became a dining room, and the adjacent chamber became the new hall.<sup>24</sup> The existing floorboards and plaster

<sup>20</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 105.

<sup>21</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 105.

<sup>22</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 99.

<sup>23</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 99.

<sup>24</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA

ceilings were retained, as were the ceiling beams although the beam in the hall was decorated with a carved roundel marking the center of the original hall.<sup>25</sup>

The 1755 room-by-room inventory of the estate of Arthur Smith (Elizabeth Allen's second husband) indicates that, at this time, each room in Bacon's Castle served many purposes.<sup>26</sup> The items located in each room, however, did not necessarily define the use of an individual space.<sup>27</sup> For example, the inventory indicates the presence of beds and bed linens in several rooms throughout the house.<sup>28</sup> The hall was used for entertaining guests, and also served as a place of storage for tools, cloth, and linens.<sup>29</sup> The chamber contained a bedstead and linens, close stool, and chest of drawers needed for a sleeping space, but also contained 8 leather chairs, 2 tables, a leather screen, and a looking glass, all indicating that it was the finest chamber in the house.<sup>30</sup> It was likely both a public and private space, as the many chairs and tables would

have served for both casual dining and entertaining. The chamber closet had, by 1755, become an extension of the room and possibly a small retreat for Elizabeth.<sup>31</sup> Interestingly, the 1755 inventory includes reference to a store but not a kitchen.<sup>32</sup> This may be because kitchen functions were handled in a nearby outbuilding, but the size of the cellar renders it likely that the kitchen was located in the main house, regardless of its omission from the inventory.<sup>33</sup> A desk, however, received individual mention.<sup>34</sup>

Around 1760 the parlor in the addition replaced the hall as the "best" room in the house.<sup>35</sup> The addition also contained bedchambers, likely intended to accommodate their many houseguests.

---

Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 100.

<sup>25</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 100.

<sup>26</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 97.

<sup>27</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 97.

<sup>28</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 97.

<sup>29</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 97.

<sup>30</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 100.

---

<sup>31</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 99.

<sup>32</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 97.

<sup>33</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 97.

<sup>34</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 97.

<sup>35</sup> Virginia Barrett Price, "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998. P. 100.



### Period III: 1854-1972

The Robinsons only lived at Bacon's Castle for about a year before returning to their home in Petersburg, after which the property was mortgaged. Indiana died in 1841 and the mortgage was foreclosed two years later. Bacon's Castle left the ownership of the Allen descendants in 1844 when it was purchased by John Henry Hankins, a planter from James City County. Hankins farmed the property with the labor of 74 slaves, raising grain and food crops as well as livestock. During his ownership about 800 acres were added to the overall property, most in the form of woodlands. Hankins also altered Bacon's Castle by, among other things, constructing the large masonry addition and connecting hyphen and replacing window frames.

Following the Civil War, however, the family's fortunes changed as they attempted to farm using hired workers rather than slave labor. At the end of his life, Hankins was forced to again mortgage Bacon's Castle, dying in 1870 and leaving the property to his surviving children. They were unable to meet the payments and the property was sold at auction to the mortgage holder, Edwin White, who moved to Bacon's Castle in 1872 and promptly died.

Following settlement of White's estate in 1876, William Allen Warren purchased the property and, by 1880, had paid the mortgage and received the deed. He farmed the property for many years, selling it to his son Charles William Warren, who willed it to his son Walker Pegram Warren upon his death in 1931.

During the Warren ownership, Bacon's Castle began to receive federal and state recognition for its architectural significance. The federal Historic Sites Act, signed into law in 1935, established what would later become the National Historic Landmark (NHL) program. The legislation authorized the Secretary of the

Interior to formally record and organize historic properties, and to designate resources having "national historical significance." The legislation further authorized the National Park Service (NPS) to administer historically significant federally--owned properties. The program received relatively little attention until 1960, at which point the NPS began to administer survey data gathered under this legislation, resulting in formalization of the National Historic Landmark program. On 9 December 1960 in one of its first acts, the NHL program announced the listing of 92 historic resources from around the United States as National Historic Landmarks. Six were located in Virginia. These first NHL designations were actually made on 9 October 1960, though not announced until 9 December 1960, and included Bacon's Castle, Greenaway Court in Clarke County, Mount Airy in Richmond County, the Adam Thoroughgood House in Virginia Beach, Westover in Charles City County, and the Wren Building at the College of William and Mary in Williamsburg.

On 15 October 1966, the National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA) (Public Law 89-665; 16 U.S.C. 470 et seq.) was signed into law by President Lyndon B. Johnson. The NHPA created, among other institutions, the National Register of Historic Places. On that day, 672 National Historic Landmarks from around the United States were entered into the new National Register, which was established by naming for inclusion previously-designated NHLs including 31 Virginia properties.

Today the National Register of Historic Places includes more than 1.7 million historic buildings, districts, sites, structures and objects in more than 89,000 listings; however, the initial list was far more modest. On 15 October 1966, the initial 31 Virginia buildings placed on the National Register included such well-known buildings as Arlington House,

The Robert E. Lee Memorial, Monticello, Mount Vernon, Montpelier, Stratford Hall, and the Virginia State Capitol. Notably, the inaugural National Register list from Virginia included four properties owned by APVA: Bacon's Castle, the Cape Henry Lighthouse, Jamestown National Historic Site (shared with NPS), and the John Marshall House.<sup>1</sup>

Interestingly, as early as 1931 Bacon's Castle was under strong consideration for purchase by the NPS for integration as part of the Colonial National Park. Perhaps not as interestingly, however, their long-term plan for the property included removal of all post-17<sup>th</sup> century buildings, including the 1854 wing. The goal, as described in the 1937 NPS evaluation of Bacon's Castle, was to restore the building as a house museum and "shrine to Nathaniel Bacon Jr."<sup>2</sup> The advent of World War II derailed these plans and, in spite of its early interest in the property, the NPS was unable to procure sufficient funding for the purchase.

Walker Pegram Warren and his wife Violet were the last private owners of Bacon's Castle, living there intermittently between 1931 and

1972, when an automobile accident killed Violet. Warren died later that year and, in September 1973, the Association for Preservation of Virginia Antiquities purchased the Bacon's Castle manor and 40 surrounding acres from the Warren estate.

## Exterior



Figure 2.29: Bacon's Castle, South Elevation, Reconstruction of early-20<sup>th</sup> century appearance. Commonwealth Architects.

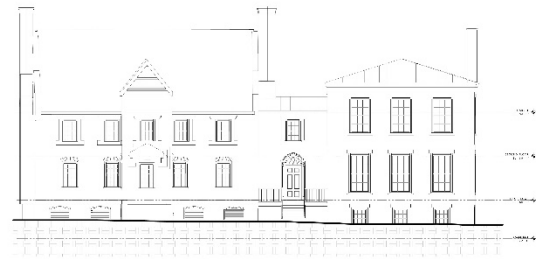


Figure 2.30: Bacon's Castle, South Elevation, Reconstruction of mid-20<sup>th</sup> century appearance. Commonwealth Architects

<sup>1</sup> The full list of the first 31 buildings placed on the National Register from Virginia are: Fredericksburg and Spotsylvania County Battlefields Memorial National Military Park; Monticello; Appomattox Court House National Historical Park; Greenway Court; Five Forks Battlefield, Petersburg National Battlefield; Gunston Hall; Mount Vernon; Booker T. Washington National Monument; Scotchtown; Richmond National Battlefield Park; Edmund Ruffin Plantation; St. Luke's Church; Colonial National Historical Park; Jamestown National Historic Site; Christ Church; Oak Hill; Montpelier; Mount Airy; McCormick, Cyrus, Farm and Workshop; Belmont, Stafford County; Bacon's Castle; George Washington Birthplace National Monument; Stratford Hall; Cape Henry Lighthouse; Virginia State Capitol; Fort Monroe; Gadsby's Tavern; Lee Chapel, Washington and Lee University; and The John Marshall House.

<sup>2</sup> Victor C. Sloane, "Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 16.

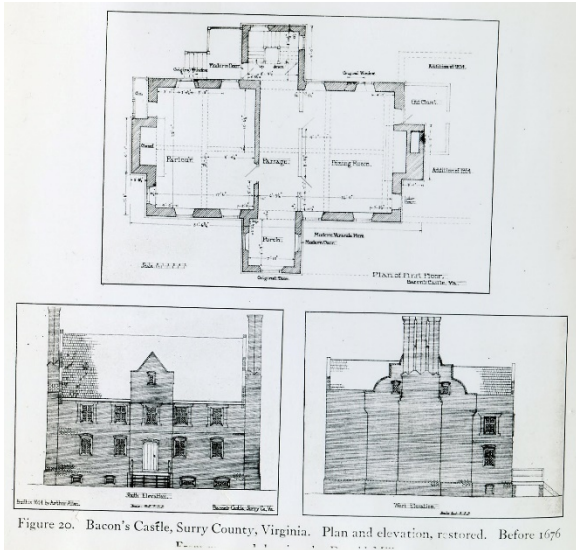


Figure 20. Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. Plan and elevation, restored. Before 1676

Figure 2.31: Bacon's Castle, from Donald Millar, *Measured Drawings of Some Colonial and Georgian Houses*. Three volumes [Volumes I and II 1916, Volume III 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930. Millar's measured drawings of Bacon's Castle are dated August 1919.



Figure 2.32: Bacon's Castle, from Donald Millar, *Measured Drawings of Some Colonial and Georgian Houses*. Three volumes [Volumes I and II 1916, Volume III 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930. Millar's measured drawings of Bacon's Castle are dated August 1919.

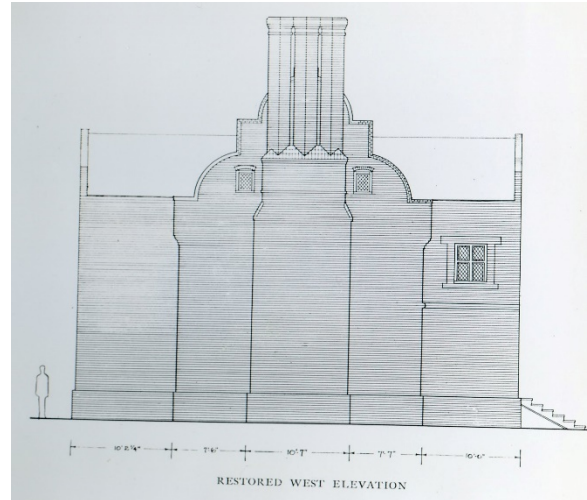


Figure 2.33: Bacon's Castle, from Donald Millar, *Measured Drawings of Some Colonial and Georgian Houses*. Three volumes [Volumes I and II 1916, Volume III 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930. Millar's measured drawings of Bacon's Castle are dated August 1919.

Bacon's Castle was extensively documented in the early and mid-20<sup>th</sup> century. The first set of measured drawings of Bacon's Castle were produced in by Donald Millar in August 1919, though they were not published until 1930.<sup>3</sup> The Millar drawings are very useful, as are the Thomas T. Waterman measured drawings of 1932, but both sets of drawings require a caveat: they are as much restoration drawings of what both Millar and Waterman believed (not without some justification) was the 17<sup>th</sup> century appearance of Bacon's Castle, as they are the reflection of the physical extent of the building that Millar and Waterman examined. For example, both sets of drawings omitted the 1854 addition, and drew a restored east elevation as if the 1854 addition did not exist. Both left off the 18<sup>th</sup> century frame closet construction on the northwest corner of Bacon's Castle, and both drew what they believed were the 17<sup>th</sup> century windows. The HABS measured drawings, created in 1940,

<sup>3</sup> Donald Millar, *Measured Drawings of Some Colonial and Georgian Houses*. Three volumes [Volumes I and II, 1916; Volume III, 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930.

largely follow the methodology of these earlier drawings, leaving out the 1854 addition. Interestingly, even the measured drawings and restoration drawings created by Torrence, Dreelin, Farthing & Buford for the restoration do not depict the 1854 addition.

An extensive amount of alteration to Bacon's Castle occurred during the 20<sup>th</sup> century, including a number of changes made by private owners before acquisition and restoration by APVA. Particularly useful historic photographs were made by Frances Benjamin Johnston in 1936; the NPS (for the Victor Sloane report) in 1937; and HABS in 1938 and 1972. HABS drawings made in 1940 are somewhat confusing in two respects: they included an undated photograph of the west elevation (believed to have been taken in 1940) which records changes to the west elevation made between 1938 and 1940, as well as the drawings themselves, which focus only on the early features of the house and omit later alterations known to have been in place in 1940 (including, as previously noted, the entire 1854 addition).

As a part of its consideration of the property for possible acquisition as a unit of the National Park Service, the NPS undertook an evaluation of Bacon's Castle. That report, prepared in 1937 by architect Victor C. Sloane, provides a thorough examination of the physical conditions of Bacon's Castle. This report, combined with Frances Benjamin Johnston photographs made in 1936, and a HABS recordation project at the building (photographs in 1938, measured drawings and a single photograph in 1940), provide a comprehensive view of Bacon's Castle in the early 20<sup>th</sup> century. The pre-APVA acquisition documentation is further enhanced by a return visit by HABS to photograph Bacon's Castle in 1972.

The 1937 NPS report contains a wide array of information, both descriptive and

photographic, and conveys a rich sense of Bacon's Castle before a series of early- and mid-20<sup>th</sup> century alterations changed its appearance. The description of the building corresponds with both the 1937 NPS photographs and the Frances Benjamin Johnston photographs taken just a year earlier. There are two versions of the report. An architectural description by Victor Sloane, Jr., appears to have been produced first. The second report, which contains an edited and condensed version of Sloane's architectural descriptions, also contains a historical essay and photographs of Bacon's Castle not contained in the Sloane draft. Most references and all of the photographs come from the final version of the report; some references will be made to the earlier draft where it contains descriptive material not included in the second version.

Sloane described Bacon's Castle as containing a two-story veranda on the south (primary) elevation, composed of sawn balusters and superimposed piers.<sup>4</sup> His description conveys his distaste for the later additions: "The effect of the house as a whole is difficult to describe because the medieval atmosphere of the old part clashes with the Nineteenth Century addition on the east side, the tawdry built-on closets of timber on the west side, and the two story veranda on the south side, with its sawn balusters and crudely designed superimposed piers."<sup>5</sup>

Sloane further described Bacon's Castle as "recognized by authorities today as a unique structure, owing to its cusped (curvilinear)

---

<sup>4</sup> "Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior". (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 1.

<sup>5</sup> "Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior". (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 4.

gables, its late Elizabethan or Jacobean chimney stacks, its tower-like wings, huge fireplaces, and general medieval atmosphere.”<sup>6</sup> Sloan stated “The heavy walls are of hand made brick while the framing is of heavy rough-sawn timber of squarish cross-sections.”<sup>7</sup> The walls were elaborated with a water table, which Sloane described as “a simple setback about two and three-quarters feet wide,” and a belt course “which is on the south façade only, is of two bricks rubbed to a semi-circular profile”<sup>8</sup> “The cornice,” observed Sloane, “was probably simple, but is now replaced by one of the same design as that of the addition; however the brick corbels, that receive the present one as they received the former, are ‘true earmarks of the seventeenth century.’”<sup>9</sup> “The copings,” he continued, “are simply capped with brick which may once have been protected by a mortar wash.”<sup>10</sup> The roof, as described by Sloane, consisted “the original roofing, that which rested on the wide fourteen-to-seventeen inch sheathing, is yet to be

determined, and may have been tile, slate, or shingles.”<sup>11</sup>

The original entrance door, removed ca. 1854 and replaced by a window, was a problematic feature at Bacon’s Castle. “Authorities differ on the probable appearance of the original doorway,” wrote Sloane. “One claims that it was a simple segmental arch, while others, following the now famous Nineteenth Century woodcut, claim that it had an ‘embryonic pediment,’ and breaking belt course.”<sup>12</sup> Sloane suggested that “After the plaster has been scraped from the wall, this may likely be determined by the brickwork.”<sup>13</sup> “Originally the exterior doors,” wrote Sloane, “were undoubtedly of the battened type with the large-headed studs, as shown in the restoration drawing by Donald Miller and found elsewhere in the colonies.”<sup>14</sup>

The windows, as observed by Sloane, “some of which have been altered, are now filled with Nineteenth Century double-hung sash and frames where they once contained hinged casements and transoms with small leaded panes.”<sup>15</sup>

---

<sup>6</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 5.

<sup>7</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 6.

<sup>8</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 7.

<sup>9</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 8.

<sup>10</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 8.

---

<sup>11</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 6.

<sup>12</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 6.

<sup>13</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 6.

<sup>14</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 7.

<sup>15</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior,



Sloane was careful to identify alterations to Bacon's Castle, including the alteration of the original door surround, the stucco coating added to the much of the south elevation, the enlargement of many window openings, the reduction in size of most fireplace openings, and the addition of new paneling, stairs, doors, paint, and trim.<sup>16</sup>

On the exterior, he noted that the early frame addition to the east end of Bacon's Castle had been removed and relocated slightly to the east and north, to make room for the existing 1954 brick addition. He also noted the presence of the two-story frame veranda added to the south elevation in the late 19<sup>th</sup> century. Similarly, he noted the presence of the frame closet addition on the north side of the west chimney, though apparently did not recognize its early date. He noted the reorientation of the main entrance of Bacon's Castle, stating "The front entrance door was changed to the east side of the tower...the doorway and the window architraves were cut flat"<sup>17</sup> He also recorded that the original door into Bacon's Castle had been removed and replaced by a window, and the wood-framed porch and steps to the original entrance (recorded in the Harper's Weekly engraving discussed previously) were removed entirely.<sup>18</sup> Among the other 19<sup>th</sup> century alterations noted by Sloane were the alterations to the window openings to accommodate replacement of casement windows with double-hung wood-sash windows, along with

the window surrounds and corner blocks.<sup>19</sup> He also noted that both triple-stack chimney masses had undergone repair: the west chimney stack had clearly been repaired, as had the east chimney stack, though less obviously.<sup>20</sup> Finally, Sloane noted that the roof covering had been replaced several times, and at the time of his survey was covered with late 19<sup>th</sup> century standing-seam tin.<sup>21</sup>



Figure 2.34: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, East Room (Hall). Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.

---

National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 6.

<sup>16</sup> Victor C. Sloane, "Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 17.

<sup>17</sup> Victor C. Sloane, "Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 14.

<sup>18</sup> Victor C. Sloane, "Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 14.

---

<sup>19</sup> Victor C. Sloane, "Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 14.

<sup>20</sup> Victor C. Sloane, "Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 14.

<sup>21</sup> Victor C. Sloane, "Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 14.

Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia  
Historic Structures Report  
Preservation Virginia  
19 December 2016  
Page 2.33



Figure 2.35: Bacon's Castle, Second Floor, West Room, detail of ceiling. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.



Figure 2.36: Bacon's Castle, First Floor West Room (Hall). Note turned wooden post inserted to support the floor above. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.

### Exterior alterations, 1938-1972

A series of alterations to Bacon's Castle, largely made after the 1937 NPS report, but before the 1972 HABS photographs. These alterations were primarily made to the exterior of Bacon's Castle. This is not to suggest that interior alterations were not made to the building during this period – they most certainly were – but because of the nature of the photographic coverage, we can date them with less precision. Interior alterations will be documented in more detail in the final section of this chapter, in the discussion of the APVA restoration of Bacon's Castle.

### South Elevation



Figure 2.37: Bacon's Castle, South Elevation (detail). Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.

A great many exterior alterations were made to Bacon's Castle during the 20th century. The hyphen connecting the 1665 house and the 1854 addition was much altered. Alterations included a mid-19<sup>th</sup> century two-story porch installed shortly after the construction of the 1854 addition. Alterations to the hyphen culminated with a final alteration by the Warrens in 1950, when the front wall and roof were completely rebuilt (visible in the Warren family photo, below) and a paneled dado installed in the first-floor entrance room. The new 1950 hyphen porch was a much smaller brick porch with steps and wrought iron handrails.



Figure 2.38: Bacon's Castle, South Elevation. Undated Warren family photograph (prob. 1940s). Preservation Virginia.

A close examination of surviving photographs suggests that the hyphen roof was lowered during the mid-20<sup>th</sup> century. It appears that the southern portion of the roof was actually taller than the window sill of the southeastern garret window at one point. See images (see HABS photographs "165956pu" and "165971pu" from 1940.



Figure 2.39: Bacon's Castle, east elevation, view to west (detail). Photograph HABS, 1940. The Library of Congress.

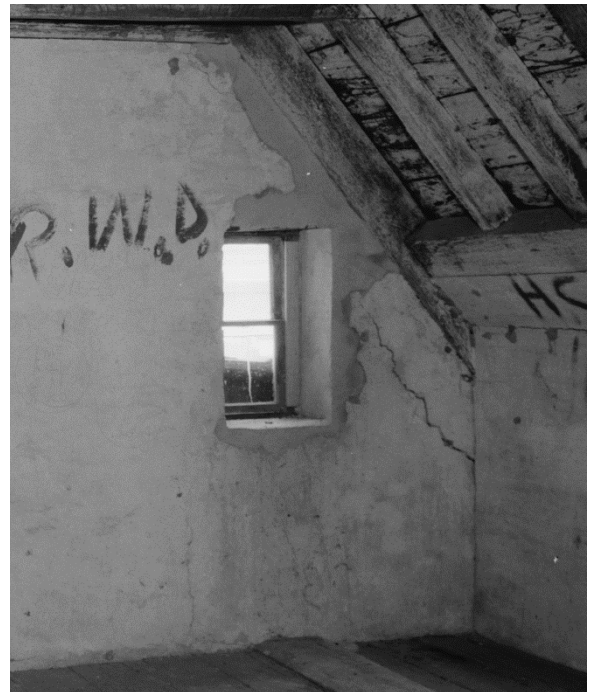


Figure 2.40: Bacon's Castle, garret, view to east (detail). Photograph HABS, 1940. The Library of Congress.

It appears that the mid-20<sup>th</sup> century alterations to the hyphen were extensive, and included alteration of the roofline and fenestration.

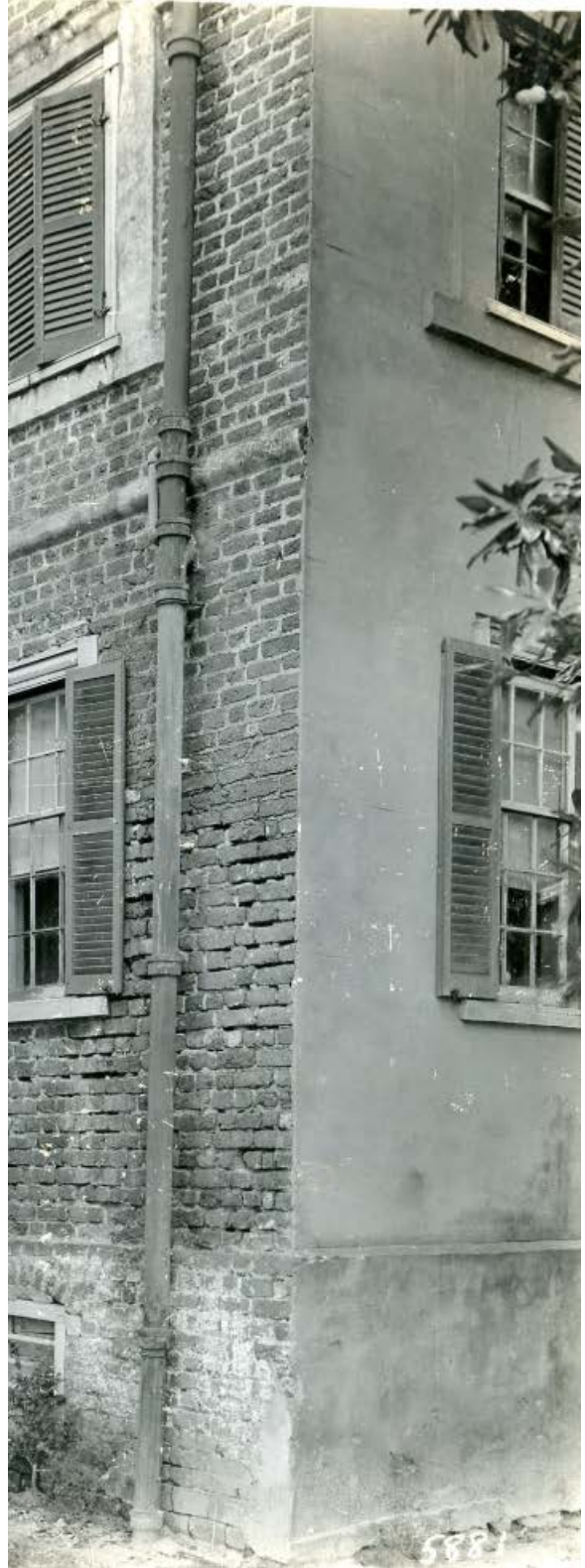


Figure 2.41: Bacon's Castle, South Elevation, detail of southwest corner of south tower (detail). Photograph by NPS, 1937. Preservation Virginia.



Figure 2.42: Bacon's Castle, South Elevation (detail). Photograph by HABS, 1972. The Library of Congress.

The stucco parge coat, presumably applied to the central portion of the south elevation after the removal of the door (and its replacement with a window) sometime after the construction of the 1854 addition and the relocation of the entrance to the hyphen, remained in place as late as 1937, when it was photographed by HABS.

Other exterior alterations include the removal of the circular window in the gable end of the south tower. The window is visible on several interior photographs, including photographs taken by Frances Benjamin Johnston in 1936. It was removed and replaced by the time of the HABS photograph taken in 1972 ("05637u").

### West elevation



Figure 2.43: Bacon's Castle, west elevation, view to east. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.

The two the most significant alterations to the west elevation was the removal of the ca. 1715 frame closet addition to the northwest corner of the west elevation and the replacement of the pointed-arch second story garret windows. The removal of this closet can be dated with some precision. HABS photographed Bacon's Castle in 1937, at which point the closet remained in place. HABS returned in 1940 to produce measured drawings of the building. The 1940 HABS drawings do not record the closet, but, as we have discussed earlier, much later fabric was left out of the drawings, so the drawings are not entirely reliable. A second, undated photograph of the west elevation is in the HABS collection, this image recording the west elevation without the ca. 1715 frame closet and with the pointed-arch window openings on the second floor replaced. We believe that the second photograph was probably made while Bacon's

Castle was being measured in 1940, suggesting that the closet additions were removed and the arched window openings replaced between 1937 and 1940.



Figure 2.44: Bacon's Castle, west elevation, view to east. Photograph HABS, 1940. The Library of Congress.

### North elevation

Among the early 20<sup>th</sup> century changes to the north elevation are the removal of the mid-19<sup>th</sup> century screened porch, which consisted of brick piers, thick square columns, and a sawn, wooden balustrade. This remained in place in 1937, but was removed by 1972, likely by the Warrens when the ca. 1950 kitchen was constructed.



Figure 2.45: Bacon's Castle, 1854 addition, view to southwest (detail). Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.

When the ca. 1950 kitchen was constructed, it received a distinctive wood balustrade. The balustrade remained in place in 1972, but is no longer extant.



Figure 2.46 Bacon's Castle, north elevation, view to south (detail). Photograph HABS, 1972. The Library of Congress.

Among the other alterations to the north elevation were the infill of the first floor door located on the western side of the north tower. A 1937 HABS photograph records a wooden screen door/wooden door and simple wooden porch. By 1972, a pair of HABS photographs reveal that door replaced by a mid-20<sup>th</sup> century aluminum screen door with a brick stoop with wrought iron railing and aluminum awning.



Figure 2.47: Bacon's Castle, west elevation, view to east (detail). Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.48: Bacon's Castle, west elevation, view to east (detail). Photograph HABS, 1972. The Library of Congress.

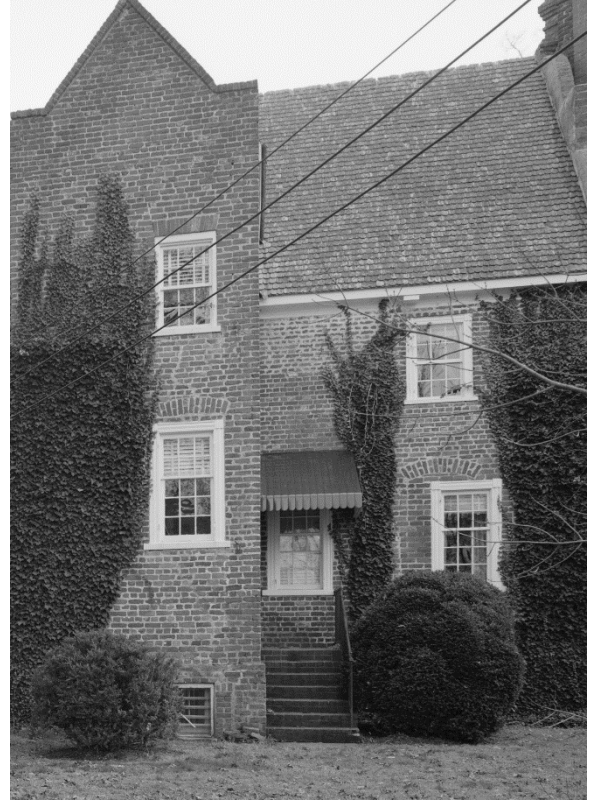


Figure 2.49: Bacon's Castle, north elevation, view to south. Photograph HABS, 1972. The Library of Congress.





Figure 2.50: Bacon's Castle, north elevation, view to south (detail). Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.

A final set of exterior alterations include the removal of gutters and downspouts from the 1665 portion of Bacon's Castle. The 1937 HABS photographs record the presence of gutters and downspouts. By 1972 they had been removed. The standing seam metal roof visible in the 1937 HABS photographs was replaced by 1972 with wood shingles.

## Interior

The plan of Bacon's Castle was described in 1937 as "A brick bearing-wall and a frame partition divide the first floor into two large rooms and a wide hall leading from the entrance to a stairway in the rear tower."<sup>22</sup> The east room (hall), was described as being "paneled on all sides," while the west room (chamber) "has a dado around three sides and simple paneling on the fireplace wall."<sup>23</sup> Sloane believed that "All of the paneling has been inserted since the house was built."<sup>24</sup> Sloane additionally believed that "The first floor fireplaces were added even after the paneling was inserted, judging by their late type and the remodeling marks on the paneling."<sup>25</sup> "Early large fireplaces," wrote Sloane, "as shown on a restoration drawing of the first floor plans, are behind these and are, in all probability, similar to the huge one found in the basement."<sup>26</sup>

<sup>22</sup> "Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior". (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 5.

<sup>23</sup> "Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior". (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 7.

<sup>24</sup> "Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior". (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 7.

<sup>25</sup> "Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior". (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 7.

<sup>26</sup> "Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior". (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 7.



Figure 2.51: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Stair Hall. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.



Figure 2.52: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Stair Hall (detail). Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.

Sloane described the stairs as being “in the rear tower” and “although quite old, are of a later period, the newels especially being too light for Jacobean work.”<sup>27</sup>

At the time of the NPS inspection in 1937, when describing the interior, Sloane noted that “A complete description of Bacon's Castle is out of the question at present, because the house serves as living quarters for tenants who farm the land. Excavations and the removal of detail of later insertions would damage the present appearance and usefulness

<sup>27</sup> “Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 7.

of the building.”<sup>28</sup> Sloane observed that “The walls are plastered with oystershell lime, split wood lath being used over the timber framing,”<sup>29</sup> “None of the trim on the first and second floors,” wrote Sloane, “appears to be original.” He continues “Baseboards are obviously modern. The best door trim is the six-inch trim around several hall doors, which appears to be of a contemporary date with the paneling.”<sup>30</sup> “All of the flooring,” Sloane wrote, “is apparently recent except for some of the stair treads.”<sup>31</sup>

“Most of the interior doors,” wrote Sloane, “are of the same date as the paneling, some having HL hinges about twelve inches square. However, there are three doors of an earlier type, two in the basement and one in the attic, which though somewhat repaired, contain typical battens, wood locks, and early HL hinges and strap-and-pintle hinges and heavy frames.”<sup>32</sup>

The second floor was described as being “laid out much as is the first, except that the

hallway is subdivided into three small sections, the stair hall, a small room, and the ‘porch chamber.’”<sup>33</sup> “The beams at second floor ceiling have edges chamfered in an ogee shape, ceiling is plastered so only one-half of the depth of beam is visible.”<sup>34</sup> “The second floor fireplaces, wrote Sloane, are like the one in the west room of the first floor [the chamber].”<sup>35</sup>

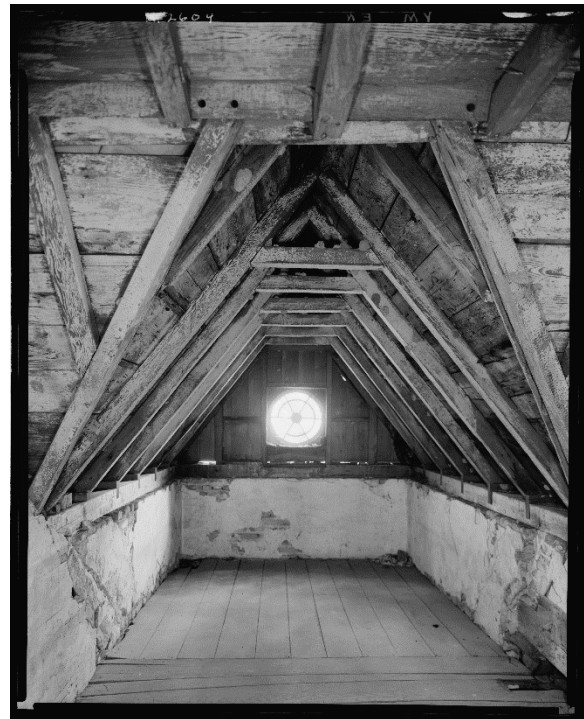


Figure 2.53: Bacon’s Castle, Garret, view to north. Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.

<sup>28</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 8.

<sup>29</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 8.

<sup>30</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 8.

<sup>31</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 8.

<sup>32</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), pp. 7-8.

<sup>33</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 6.

<sup>34</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 14.

<sup>35</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 7.



Figure 2.54: Detail, Bacon's Castle, Garret, view to north (detail of northwest wall). Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.55: Detail, Bacon's Castle, Garret, view to north (detail of northeast wall). Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.56: Bacon's Castle, Garret, view to west. Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.57: Bacon's Castle, Garret, view to southwest. Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.

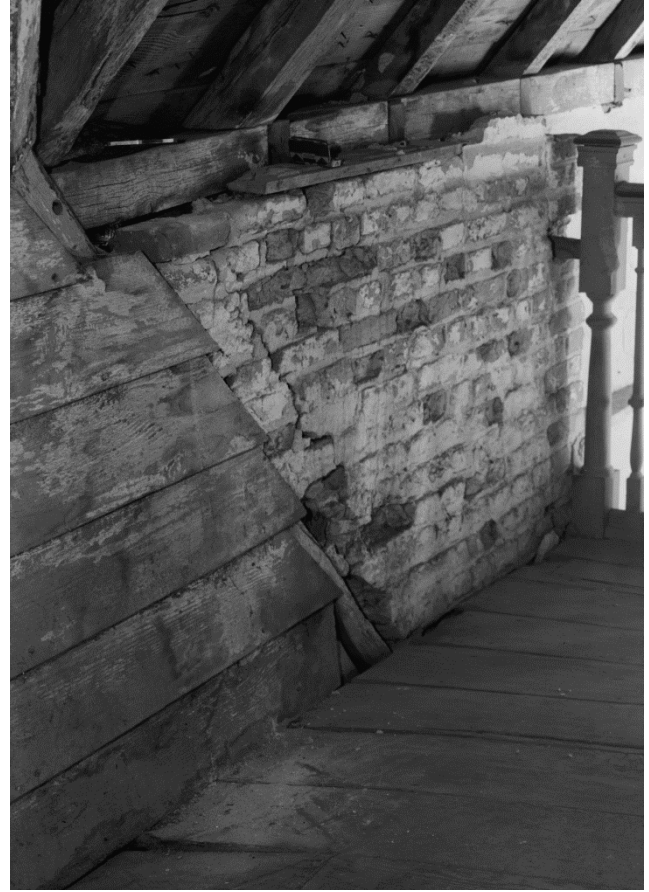


Figure 2.59: Detail, Bacon's Castle, Garret, view to north. Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.58: Bacon's Castle, Garret, view to north. Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.60: Bacon's Castle, Garret, detail of attic framing. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.



Figure 2.61: Bacon's Castle, Garret, Fireplace in west wall, west room of attic. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.

The garret, as described by Sloane, was “like the second floor except that its hallway has only two small sections, the stair hall and one long room.”<sup>36</sup> “The comparatively small attic fireplace,” wrote Sloane, “is very crude and is similar to others of the period.”<sup>37</sup>

<sup>36</sup> “Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 6.

<sup>37</sup> “Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 7.



Figure 2.62: Bacon's Castle, Basement, fireplace in east wall. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.



Figure 2.63: Bacon's Castle, Cellar, door to west room of cellar. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.

The basement, according to Sloane, “was originally divided into only two main rooms,

one under the first floor's west room and one under the east room. These divisions, no doubt, were partially separated by a central pier and heavy side-pilasters. An opening with a round-headed arch leads into the stair hall, and a large opening gives access to a small room under the entrance.”<sup>38</sup> Basement beams have simple chamfers; ceiling under east room is plastered<sup>39</sup>

Sloane recorded a series of interior alterations to Bacon's Castle. While recording a series of interior alterations, he noted that much of the original structural framing appeared to remain intact.<sup>40</sup> He noted that the fireplaces on both the first and second floors had been reduced in size, and “poorly designed wood mantels” were added in place of the originals.<sup>41</sup> The exception to this was in the first floor east room (hall), in which the wooden mantle was “replaced by a white marble one.”<sup>42</sup> Sloane believed that most of the interior flooring had been replaced, except for two areas in the cellar (with brick floors), and one area in the garret (with wooden floorboards).<sup>43</sup> Similarly, he believed that the stairs, while early, were not original.<sup>44</sup>

---

<sup>38</sup> “Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 6.

<sup>39</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 14.

<sup>40</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 15.

<sup>41</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 15.

<sup>42</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 15.

<sup>43</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 15.

<sup>44</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 15.



Figure 2.64: Bacon's Castle, West Elevation.  
Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.65: Bacon's Castle, North Elevation.  
Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.66: Bacon's Castle, North Elevation. Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.67: Bacon's Castle, North Elevation. Photograph by Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.



View of Bacon's Castle in the early twentieth-century with attached bathroom tower.

Figure 2.68: Bacon's Castle, north elevation, view of 18C closet addition (removed in restoration). Photograph 1937, National Park Service



Figure 2.69: Bacon's Castle, North elevation. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.





Figure 2.70: Bacon's Castle, South elevation. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.



Figure 2.72: Bacon's Castle, South elevation. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.



Figure 2.71: Bacon's Castle, West elevation. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.

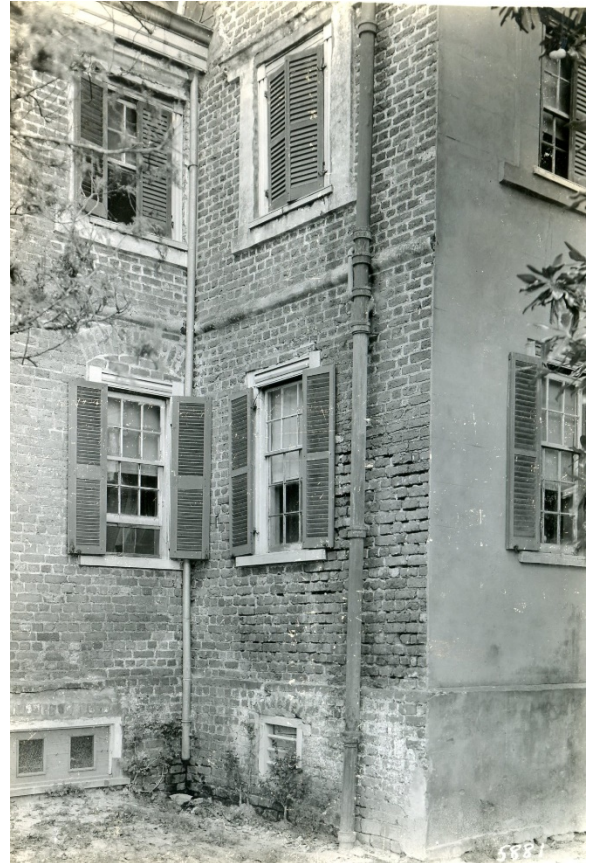


Figure 2.73: Bacon's Castle, South elevation (detail of area to left of original entrance door; note stucco on central bay). Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.

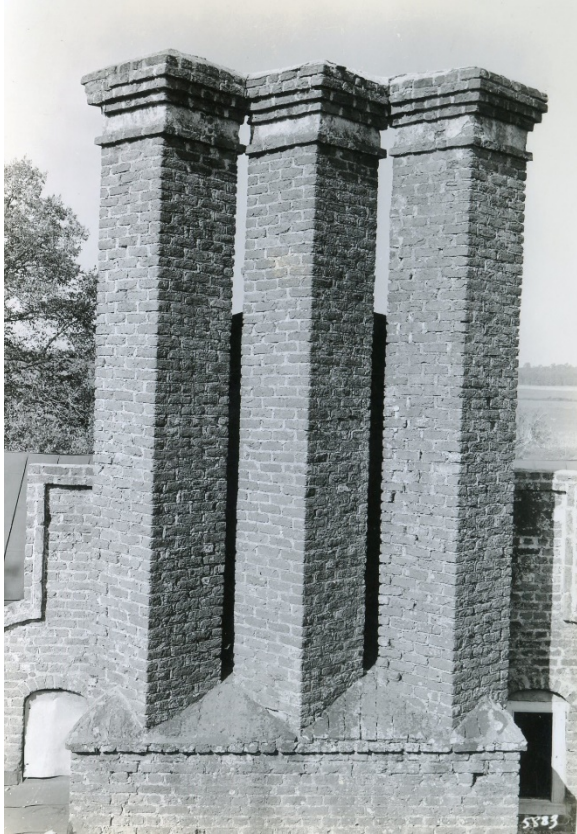


Figure 2.74: Bacon's Castle, East elevation, detail of triple-chimney stacks. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.

### Site

Sloane described several dependencies, including a small frame structure several yards to the east of the main building which he correctly suspected was the early 18<sup>th</sup>-century frame addition removed in 1854. Sloane described the frame building as: "A few yards to the east of the main structure stands a small frame house which, as the tradition says, was removed to make way for the present large brick addition. It is covered with a tin roof and is not painted. Despite its almost ruinous appearance, it is probably not of a very early date."<sup>45</sup> This frame building would be moved

<sup>45</sup> "Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior". (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 4.

once more, into its present location, although the 1937 photographs do not depict it in relationship to Bacon's Castle.



Figure 2.75: Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.



Figure 2.76: Bacon's Castle, Site, agricultural buildings along west side of service yard. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.

Sloane described the site as containing a row of agricultural and dependent buildings behind (north of) Bacon's Castle. Sloane described the existing smoke house in its current location, though in no detail.<sup>46</sup> Sloane also described another frame building "to the west of it [the smoke house] and to the rear of the old portion of the main house" (not

<sup>46</sup> "Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior". (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 4.

photographed in the NPS report), a two-room structure described as the “so-called kitchen.” Sloane described the building as “not old,” with a “cellar under part of it,” possibly “the site of an early kitchen since there are remains of another foundation found under it.”<sup>47</sup> Sloan’s description of the remainder of the agricultural buildings is “The barnyard lies behind the kitchen and the smoke house. Most of the structures in it appear to be recent, namely the long row of sheds along the east side, the large barn at the north [demolished] and which is gaily decorated with ornaments of the latter part of the Nineteenth Century, and the high sheet metal storage building on the west [also demolished].”<sup>48</sup>



Figure 2.77: Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.



Figure 2.78: Bacon’s Castle, site, agricultural buildings along east side of service yard. Note the early-nineteenth-century slave quarters in foreground. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.

The early 19<sup>th</sup> century slave quarter is described as a “simply constructed house directly behind the smoke house has good end chimneys, which are not of the Seventeenth Century.”<sup>49</sup> Sloane elaborated that “according to the memory” of Jesse Goodin “who has lived on the place for fifty years and in the vicinity many more, the slave quarters stretched off to the east along a line starting near this house.”<sup>50</sup> Sloane concludes the discussion of the immediate environs of the house by describing the well, which “has been re-bricked and is, according to the tenants, as old as the house. It is forty-five feet deep, has an inside dimension of thirty-nine inches, contains from twelve to twenty feet of water, and is surmounted by a quaint post and lintel arrangement.”<sup>51</sup> The well is no longer extant.

<sup>47</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 4.

<sup>48</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 4.

<sup>49</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), pp. 4-5.

<sup>50</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 5.

<sup>51</sup> “Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior,



Figure 2.79: Former mill, Bacon's Castle. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.



Figure 2.80: Former mill, Bacon's Castle. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.

Sloane also described what remained of the mill. He described it as “The ruins of a mill on the edge of a wild swampy mill pond, over a mile to the northeast of the Bacon's Castle house, is not included in the present proposed boundaries. It is reached by a winding wagon tract, the old mill road, is impossible except on foot.<sup>52</sup> The primary framing members

---

National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 5.

<sup>52</sup> “Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia: Historic Site Survey, National Park Service, Department of the Interior”. (United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Colonial National Historical Park, September 29, 1937), p. 5.

were heavy “pegged and braced in an early manner,” though he believed the cladding, hardware, brickwork, and most of machinery to be more recent. The mill was in ruins; much of it was already in the stream bed, and photographs depict the rest about to follow.

Sloane noted a series of changes to the site during his 1937 survey. He noted that, with one exception, the slave quarters (and many other structures) shown on 1844 map were no longer extant in 1937.<sup>53</sup> He correctly believed that none of existing outbuildings and landscape features dated to the original period of construction of Bacon's Castle.<sup>54</sup> Sloane also thought that the site appeared to have been developed together with construction of the 1854 addition, a largely correct supposition.<sup>55</sup>

### Garden

At the time of the 1937 NPS report on Bacon's Castle, the garden was barely present, consisting of “ancient box trees at corners” bounded by fences on three sides and used as a pasture, as was the grove and the area around the house.<sup>56</sup> The report also noted “The little cemetery adjacent to it [the garden] contains a double row of large wild cherry trees and an old tree box. It is overrun with ivy and is surrounded by an old sturdy iron picket fence.”<sup>57</sup> At the time of the 1937

---

<sup>53</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 17.

<sup>54</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 17.

<sup>55</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 17.

<sup>56</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937). P. 3.

<sup>57</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937), p. 3.

survey there was only a single marked grave within the enclosure.



Figure 2.81: Bacon's Castle, site, south, view of graveyard. Iron fence has been removed. Victor C. Sloane, Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. National Park Service, 20 September 1937.

#### **Period IV: 1973-present (including restoration)**

Walker Pegram Warren and his wife Violet were the last private owners of Bacon's Castle, living there intermittently between 1931 and 1972, when an automobile accident killed Violet. Warren died later that year. With the untimely deaths of the Walkers, sale of the property became necessary. The President and Executive Director of the APVA met with the President of the Colonial Williamsburg Foundation (CWF) and the Director of the NPS to discuss the future of the property. The APVA stepped in and, in September 1973, acquired the house, garden, several outbuildings, and forty acres of land for \$185,000.

The organization immediately took multiple steps to secure the property, which had been vacant since the Walker's deaths. These included hiring an on-site staff, attending to badly-outdated electrical systems and other necessary repairs. APVA also embarked on the long process of appropriately documenting this historic resource. Unlike many historical organizations, APVA has always recognized the importance of archaeological investigation to a holistic understanding of historic properties, and has undertaken multiple investigations of the historic garden and building surrounds. Bacon's Castle was opened to and interpreted for the public for the first time during Garden Week 1974, and has been open since.

When APVA acquired Bacon's Castle in 1973, the organization decided to retain the 1954 addition. This was by no means a forgone conclusion at the time, especially given the results of the 1937 NPS study indicating that the addition had no value and should be

demolished: "The effect of the house as a whole is difficult to describe because the medieval atmosphere of the old part clashes with the tawdry 19<sup>th</sup> century work on the east side."<sup>1</sup> Planning for restoration efforts focused on the 17<sup>th</sup> century portions of the building, and subsequent alterations to Bacon's Castle were to be minimized or removed. The original lime stucco render (scored to imply ashlar masonry) on the 1854 wing was neither maintained nor restored, and when shutters deteriorated they were removed and not replaced. Two trees were planted in front of the south elevation of the 1854 wing to further screen it from approaching visitors.

Rooms in the 1854 wing were repurposed as functional rather than interpretive spaces, and remain in this use today. A portion of the hall is used for a visitor check-in. The two rooms of the double parlor are used as a small lecture and orientation space (at one point a film was shown here) and interpretive gallery. To the rear of the interpretive space, a 20<sup>th</sup> century kitchen extension was converted into a gift shop with public restrooms. The two second-floor rooms 1854 are used for a variety of back-of-house functions, including classroom, storage, and general staff use.

The organization of restoration efforts at Bacon's Castle was rather ad hoc in nature, rendering it somewhat difficult to clearly discern the philosophy and approach behind the work undertaken and the design of the restoration work, and to track the exact work completed. No architect was employed on the project, and there was never a unified set of architectural drawings or underlying report to design the work. Engineering drawings were provided by Carl L. Torrence, a structural engineer and founder of Torrence, Dreelin, Farthing & Buford (TFD&B) of

---

<sup>1</sup> Victor C. Sloane, "Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937).

Richmond, VA.<sup>2</sup> Torrence (who worked as a structural engineer for restoration projects at Colonial Williamsburg, Stratford Hall, and the Rotunda at the University of Virginia) had retired from the firm in 1976, and appears to have taken the Bacon’s Castle work largely as a favor to Angus Murdock, an architectural historian and Executive Director of APVA. Specific drawings were created to solve specific solutions (such as electrical upgrades, structural steel insertion, chimney underpinning), but there was no unified set of drawings for engineering repairs, or for architectural repairs or finishes. The work was largely led by Murdock, who led the work largely through in-person meetings with team members. His annotated earlier drawings, as well as a series of letters to Derek Ogden, a millwright and timber-framer, survive. Ogden lived on-site during the restoration. In one of the earliest surviving letters (15 April 1983), Ogden wrote to Murdock accepting the offer to serve as “clerk of works” for the restoration.<sup>3</sup> Ogden was in charge of the day-to-day work on site, and undertook much of the framing repairs himself. The contractor was Virtexco of Norfolk, with Ogden working directly for APVA.<sup>4</sup>

Because no architectural drawings were created to either design or record the restoration work, the chronicling of work in this section is recorded through a combination of letters, selected engineering drawings, historic photographs, and physical investigation.

### Exterior (including restoration)

<sup>2</sup> Ellen Robertson, “Carl L. Torrence, Former Structural Engineer for City of Richmond, Dies,” Richmond *Times-Dispatch*, 27 October 2011.

<sup>3</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 4.25.1983, APVA, Bacon’s Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>4</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 4.25.1983, APVA, Bacon’s Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia. Donald Millar, *Measured Drawings of Some*

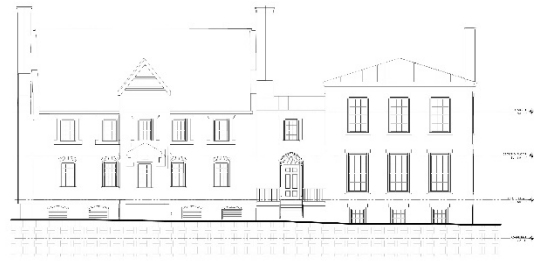


Figure 2.82: Bacon’s Castle, South Elevation, Reconstruction of mid-20<sup>th</sup> century appearance. Commonwealth Architects



Figure 2.83: Bacon’s Castle, South Elevation, 2015 existing conditions. Commonwealth Architects

One of the challenges immediately faced by the APVA when planning for the restoration of Bacon’s Castle was how to approach the 1854 masonry addition. As discussed earlier, measured drawings produced by Donald Millar (1919, published 1930), Thomas T. Waterman (1932), and HABS (1940) did not include the 1854 addition at all. The prevailing opinion about the 1854 addition

Colonial and Georgian Houses. Three volumes [Volumes I and II 1916, Volume III 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930. Millar’s measured drawings of Bacon’s Castle are dated August 1919, Preservation Virginia; see Appendix for those drawings.

was that it added nothing to the understanding of Bacon's Castle, and the best course of action would be to remove it. Long before APVA's acquisition of the property, that opinion was clearly expressed by Lawrence Vail Coleman in his Historic House Museums (1933), in which he discusses Bacon's Castle as an example of the appropriateness of removing the 1854 addition, referred to as the "gross disfigurements of recent years."<sup>5</sup>

That low opinion of the 1854 addition was reflected in the 1937 NPS report on Bacon's Castle, in which architect Victor Sloane, Jr. complained that "The effect of the house as a whole is difficult to describe because the medieval atmosphere of the old part clashes with the tawdry 19<sup>th</sup> century work on the east side."<sup>6</sup> Sloane recommended the demolition the wing and all outbuildings, including the ca. 1800 smokehouse and the barn that is now recognized as one of the oldest in Virginia.

When planning the restoration of Bacon's Castle, APVA executive director Angus Murdock took a broader look at Bacon's Castle. Instead of recommending a restoration to a single time period (the time of Bacon's Rebellion, as recommended by NPS in 1937), he instead "opted for a policy that puts stabilization and security for the structure as a prime goal."<sup>7</sup> Murdock argued for a more expansive look at the life of Bacon's Castle: while acknowledging the importance of Bacon's Rebellion in the narrative of

Bacon's Castle, his recommended course focusing on the preservation of the whole building.

In developing this preservation philosophy, Murdock undertook a methodological, practical approach to the matter, which allowed for project planning while accommodating the opening of the un-restored Bacon's Castle for tours (and to generate much-needed revenue): "While deciding how to accomplish this end, we quietly opened the unembellished plantation to the public in 1974 to see how the public would react to what essentially was an architectural tour (with Bacon's Rebellion thrown in for good measure)."<sup>8</sup>

Murdock found that the response to this preservation approach at Bacon's Castle was favorable, writing that "People *were* interested in the structural evolution at Bacon's Castle and the social implications behind the changes in room usage and decoration [*italics his*]"<sup>9</sup> According to Murdock, "Between 1974 and 1980, thousands of visitors came to Bacon's Castle and only one person asked for an admission refund because we had few 'pretty things.'"<sup>10</sup>

Murdock recognized the challenges in such an approach. A similar position had been undertaken by the Society for the Preservation of New England Antiquities (SPNEA) in the 1970s and 1980s, sometimes to the point of exposing structural members in walls and

---

<sup>5</sup> Lawrence Vail Coleman, Historic House Museums. (Washington, DC: American Association of Museums, 1933): p. 57.

<sup>6</sup> Victor C. Sloane, "Architectural Report on Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937): 1.

<sup>7</sup> Angus Murdock, "Restoration," in Stephenson B. Andrews, Bacon's Castle. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 20.

<sup>8</sup> Angus Murdock, "Restoration," in Stephenson B. Andrews, Bacon's Castle. (Richmond: The Association

for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 20.

<sup>9</sup> Angus Murdock, "Restoration," in Stephenson B. Andrews, Bacon's Castle. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 20.

<sup>10</sup> Angus Murdock, "Restoration," in Stephenson B. Andrews, Bacon's Castle. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 20.





leaving rooms unfurnished, with the goal of presenting the construction and alteration of the building over time as clearly as possible, sometimes appearing to view interpretation of furnishings and social history as distractions from the underlying architecture. Murdock rightly concluded that “There is a danger of being too elitist in using a stabilization approach to restoration projects and ignoring one’s educational responsibilities. The challenge is how to bring your visitor to an appreciative understanding of your evolutionary building without boring him or her to tears with architectural and sociological jargon or, at the other extreme, ignoring the subtleties and sending your tour back home with the belief that seventeenth-century houses had claw-footed tubs and tin roofs.”<sup>11</sup> One of the challenges, persisting to the present day (addressed in the following chapter on interpretation) is how, in the general absence of furnishings, to interpret Bacon’s Castle.

In spite of an approach designed to maximize retention of physical fabric, some physical losses are unavoidable: “Even a policy favoring maximum conservation efforts can involve destruction of original fabric. Environmental systems and almost all structural repairs result in some demolition of brick, mortar or wood. One must be conservative in applying technology and careful to document all changes in the historic structure.”<sup>12</sup> While the decision to minimize physical removals was laudable, APVA nonetheless decided to de-emphasize the 19<sup>th</sup> century additions to Bacon’s Castle. As shutters deteriorated on the 1854 addition,

they were simply removed from the building. Over time, the scored stucco finishes on the 1854 have either deteriorated and fallen from the building or have been consciously removed (except for the chimneys, where they remain) in an attempt to minimize the distinctive 19<sup>th</sup> century characteristics of the building. Similarly, the interior finishes of the nineteenth century addition have been painted in neutral colors, and generally minimized in character and appearance.

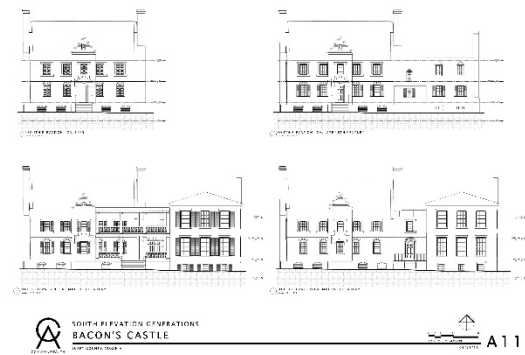


Figure 2.84: Bacon’s Castle, South Elevation, evolution of ca. 1665 appearance through 2015 existing conditions. Commonwealth Architects

The approach to the restoration of the interior of Bacon’s Castle was very similar to that taken with the exterior. The goal was to retain as much surviving interior fabric as possible: “The original craftsmanship of whatever era has been undisturbed, except where necessary as part of the structural stabilization work.”<sup>13</sup> The plan was to “zone” the interior into different periods and functions.”<sup>14</sup> There were two significant exceptions to this: the second floor west room (Over the Chamber) and the hyphen. In the

<sup>11</sup> Angus Murdock, “Restoration,” in Stephenson B. Andrews, *Bacon’s Castle*. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 20.

<sup>12</sup> Angus Murdock, “Restoration,” in Stephenson B. Andrews, *Bacon’s Castle*. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 20.

<sup>13</sup> Angus Murdock, “Restoration,” in Stephenson B. Andrews, *Bacon’s Castle*. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): pp. 20-1.

<sup>14</sup> Angus Murdock, “Restoration,” in Stephenson B. Andrews, *Bacon’s Castle*. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): pp. 20-1.

second floor “Over the Chamber” bedroom, the 17<sup>th</sup> century fireplace was restored, the 1854 lath and plaster removed from the ceiling to expose the 17<sup>th</sup> century joists, and reconstructed 17<sup>th</sup> century leaded-glass casement windows were inserted on the interior behind the existing 19<sup>th</sup> century sash.<sup>15</sup> This departure was explained as necessary “purely for educational reasons.” Murdock explained that “We felt the need to show at least one of Bacon’s Castle rooms as it appeared in the seventeenth century.”<sup>16</sup>

The second interior area of departure from the stated restoration philosophy was the hyphen, a much-altered space that connected the 1665 house to the 1854 addition. The hyphen had undergone a series of alterations, culminating with the final alteration by the Warrens in 1950 when the front wall and roof were completely rebuilt and a paneled dado installed in the first-floor entrance room.<sup>17</sup> Murdock argued that “State fire codes and the practical demands of group tourism dictated a need for better access to and circulation within the 1665 house than provided by the old stair tower. Thus, we chose to install a totally modern steel stairway within the hyphen that gives access to the cellar, first- and second-floor levels of the house.”<sup>18</sup> (A strong argument could be made that, today, a historic building with two means of egress extending through all floors in a fully-sprinkled building would not require a third

means of egress. “Some might be shocked at the modernity of the staircase with its stainless steel handrail,” argued Murdock, “but no one will ever confuse it with the more venerable fabric.”<sup>19</sup> Murdock further stated that the hyphen serves as “a protective fire barrier between the 1854 wing and the 1665 house,” as “Automatic fire doors cover all adjoining openings in the hyphen, and a Halon fire suppression system offers further safeguards to the old wing.”<sup>20</sup> Finally, “All heating and cooling equipment and electrical panels are located in the cellar of this connecting wing within a zone of protection.”<sup>21</sup>

One of the challenges to understanding the restoration of Bacon’s Castle is the lack of a comprehensive set of architectural drawings documenting the work, as described above. The partial drawings available must be compared with surviving project correspondence and the building itself in order to fully chronicle the work undertaken in the restoration. While much of the communication between Angus Murdock and Derek Odgen no doubt took place in person on site, and were not recorded, some letters between them do survive and allow some insight into the restoration process.

---

<sup>15</sup> Angus Murdock, “Restoration,” in Stephenson B. Andrews, Bacon’s Castle. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): pp. 20-1.

<sup>16</sup> Angus Murdock, “Restoration,” in Stephenson B. Andrews, Bacon’s Castle. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): pp. 20-1.

<sup>17</sup> Angus Murdock, “Restoration,” in Stephenson B. Andrews, Bacon’s Castle. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 21.

<sup>18</sup> Angus Murdock, “Restoration,” in Stephenson B. Andrews, Bacon’s Castle. (Richmond: The Association

for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 21.

<sup>19</sup> Angus Murdock, “Restoration,” in Stephenson B. Andrews, Bacon’s Castle. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 21.

<sup>20</sup> Angus Murdock, “Restoration,” in Stephenson B. Andrews, Bacon’s Castle. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 21.

<sup>21</sup> Angus Murdock, “Restoration,” in Stephenson B. Andrews, Bacon’s Castle. (Richmond: The Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984): p. 21.





Figure 2.85: Bacon's Castle, west elevation, 1976. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

Murdock appears to have undertaken some work at Bacon's Castle soon after acquisition, utilizing APVA maintenance staff. On 3 February 1975, Murdock issued a work order to APVA maintenance staff to "Remove mantel and paneling on the east wall in Hall. Do this without destroying the masonry or paneling or possibly woodwork behind it."<sup>22</sup> The work summary at the bottom of that work order describes the work as "'Arrived 11:00AM and removed mantle. Found new nails holding mantle. Removed sconces on either side of mantle (new) and taped wires. Investigated paneling for starting the complete dismantling. Got key to SE dependencies. Arrived next day with Angus and started dismantling. Removed panel (flat plain) from above left door. Removed panel right side of door. Found old nails in places but some new finishing (over)." The work was identified completed on 6 February 1975,

<sup>22</sup> R.A. Murdock, Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities Work Order, issued 3 February 1975.

<sup>23</sup> R.A. Murdock, Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities Work Order, issued 3 February 1975.



requiring 24 hours to complete, with a total labor cost of \$60.00.<sup>23</sup> Sadly, this incredibly detailed level of documentation is the exception, rather than the rule.

A second work order, possibly related to restoration work at Bacon's Castle and dated 3 January 1974, requested the maintenance staff to "Stack Cyprus [sic] logs (approx. 3,000 board feet) on the ground behind the old barn at Bacon's Castle. Take some of the smaller logs to the mill, to be milled into some 1" x 6" boards. It has been recommended to spray logs with woodwork preventative and build roof over them. Also pick up pruning saw and planks for the scaffolding in the Marshall House."<sup>24</sup> The work summary records that, from 8:00am until 12:00pm, maintenance staff "stacked logs on 8" x 8" beams near fence around the back field. Hauled approx. 500 board feet of smaller logs to the mill to be milled. Picked up planks for the scaffolding."

<sup>25</sup> It is not clear if this cypress was used in Bacon's Castle or in another APVA project.)

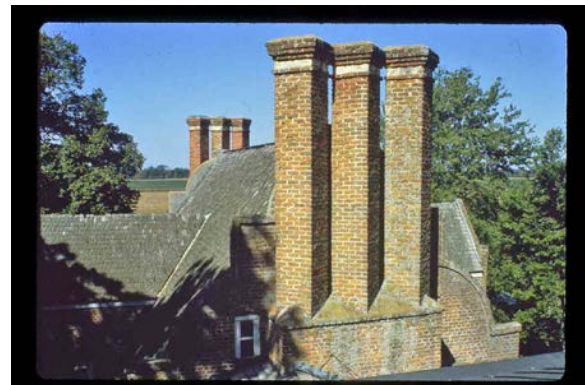


Figure 2.86: Bacon's Castle, east elevation, view to west, 1976. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

The earliest surviving letter relating to the restoration process at Bacon's Castle is one

<sup>24</sup> R.A. Murdock, Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities Work Order, issued 3 January 1975.

<sup>25</sup> R.A. Murdock, Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities Work Order, issued 3 January 1975.

from Ogden to Murdock dated 14 January 1978, requesting information on when APVA might wish to undertake repairs to timbers in the cellar at Bacon's Castle.<sup>26</sup> He noted that he was interested in undertaking the work, while also noting that he and wife "are getting settled in well at Bacon's Castle."<sup>27</sup> This appears to indicate that Ogden was in residence at Bacon's Castle (he rented the former frame addition as living quarters, and the used a barn as a workshop) before he was formally working for APVA at Bacon's Castle.

This early letter between Ogden and Murdock was a structural survey of beams supporting the first floor east room (Hall). Ogden noted seven pairs of floor beams with the pair at the far west end of the room missing entirely.<sup>28</sup> Each pair of beams were supported at center by a summer beam.<sup>29</sup> The primary beam was hewed of white oak and was in good condition.<sup>30</sup> The summer beam was comprised of two pine beams fitted side-by-side. They were in fairly good condition but did not properly support floor beams. There was evidence of former mortise with pegs in the center of the span, in the location of the original summer beam. Ogden noted that a new main beam of similar dimensions (to replace the missing one) was required.<sup>31</sup> He further noted that the floor beams rested on the summer beam, and were not seated within it. Ogden noted that some floor beams

appeared to be older than others, and suggested that perhaps older ones would have been seated into the summer beam as expected.<sup>32</sup>

Ogden noted that the cellar windows were in poor condition, and recommended that a window lintel in the north wall was weak and should be replaced.<sup>33</sup> Ogden recommended that the floor support (except the east main beam) should be completely renewed, that a new main summer beam be installed at west end of floor, that all new material be white oak, and that six pairs of new floor beams (but not floor boards) be installed.<sup>34</sup>

While Ogden appears to have been living at Bacon's Castle and operating his shop there, it appears that he was not engaged in any immediate repair work at Bacon's Castle. Almost a year later, on 8 August 1979, Ogden wrote to Richard Rennolds, APVA's site manager for Bacon's Castle, to note that the Hall first floor beams appeared to have further deteriorated since his August 1978 inspection, suggesting that no repair work had been undertaken.<sup>35</sup> Ogden noted that the damage was worst in the southeast corner of the supports for the first floor east room (Hall), and suggested that either a better temporary support system or a systematic repair of the entire floor structure was required. Ogden noted that the "original

---

<sup>26</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 14 January 1978, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>27</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 14 January 1978, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>28</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock (Structural Report), 31 August 1978, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>29</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock (Structural Report), 31 August 1978, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>30</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock (Structural Report), 31 August 1978, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>31</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock (Structural Report), 31 August 1978, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>32</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock (Structural Report), 31 August 1978, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>33</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock (Structural Report), 31 August 1978, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>34</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock (Structural Report), 31 August 1978, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>35</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Richard Rennolds, 8 August 1979, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

floor beams are continuing to decay and will eventually float away from the wall sockets altogether.”<sup>36</sup> Ogden recommended a systematic repair, suggesting that a new temporary frame supporting the floor could not be expected to last more than two to three years. This suggests that at least some temporary repair was already in place.<sup>37</sup>

Nearly two more years would pass before Ogden was formally engaged by APVA to undertake repair work at Bacon’s Castle. In a 23 June 1981 letter to Murdock, Ogden confirmed that he would be undertaking repairs at Bacon’s Castle, and offered hourly rates for himself and an apprentice as well as the cost of materials to be employed.<sup>38</sup> From that point until May 1984, Ogden appears to have been employed by APVA at Bacon’s Castle on an informal, time and materials basis.

In a letter dated 12 September 1981, Ogden indicated that he was at work investigating the main beam in the east room of the cellar (beneath the Hall).<sup>39</sup> Ogden identified several problems with this beam. He noted evidence of earlier fire damage in and around the mortise that secured the original summer beam. He believed that it would not be possible to bolt a steel channel to the beam beneath the hearth of the first-floor fireplace because there already was an existing wooden plate attached to the beam. Ogden believed that this beam would have to support a new summer beam and floor, and recommended fitting in a new beam.

The pace of work appears to have increased in December 1981, and continued briskly through the autumn of 1982. On 3 December 1981, Ogden wrote to Murdock informing him of work underway. Some of it was fairly simple, such as sweeping the chimney in the 1854 wing. Other work was more complicated, such as repairing the first floor east room (Hall) joists. In that area, Ogden was able to retain and repair three joists on one side of the floor by scarfing them, and planned to attempt the same on the other side.<sup>40</sup> He described a repair to the summer beam to be undertaken later. Ogden also decided that one damaged roof truss was too deteriorated to repair by plating and recommended some means of replacement; he noted a second damaged roof truss near the east end of the original building as well. Later that month, Murdock confirmed that he wanted Ogden to seek a solution to the roof truss damage.<sup>41</sup>



Figure 2.87: Bacon’s Castle, first floor, east room (Hall). Material has been removed in vicinity of ceiling plaster crack and beam crack to reveal steel

<sup>36</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Richard Rennolds, 8 August 1979, APVA, Bacon’s Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>37</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Richard Rennolds, 8 August 1979, APVA, Bacon’s Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>38</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 3 June 1981, APVA, Bacon’s Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>39</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 12 September 1978, APVA, Bacon’s Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>40</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 3 December 1981, APVA, Bacon’s Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>41</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 18 December 1981, APVA, Bacon’s Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

reinforcement. 31 July 2015. Commonwealth Architects



Figure 2.88: Bacon's Castle, first floor, east room (Hall). Material has been removed in vicinity of ceiling plaster crack and beam crack to reveal steel reinforcement. 31 July 2015. Commonwealth Architects

January 1982 found Ogden reporting a series of repairs either completed or underway.<sup>42</sup> Ogden wrote that brickwork repairs progressed, especially at the cellar chimney (apparently the east cellar room, under the hall) where there was a fault from earlier "abortive repairs." Ogden wrote that the existing steel angle repairs were of insufficient length for adequate support, and added a new beam. In addition, Ogden removed a modern (ca. 1920s) mantelpiece in the east cellar room, rebuilt the brick arch that supported that masonry opening, and constructed and installed a new oak lintel.<sup>43</sup>

<sup>42</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 31 January 1982, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.



Figure 2.89: Bacon's Castle, North jamb of hall fireplace, ca. 1982. Preservation Virginia.

While investigating a crack in the summer beam and ceiling plaster in the first floor east room (Hall), we revealed a series of steel plates applied to the second floor structure. The surviving structural drawing calls for making the repair by attaching steel cables to the north and south beams at the second floor level and tightening them, as one would if constructing a post-tensioned beam. This repair was never completed. However, on 31 January 1975 Ogden invoiced APVA for repairs to the east room of the cellar, using steel very similar to that used in the hall above. The repairs in the cellar, described as "Iron to repair the fireplace girder" included "12.ft. - 3/4" x 2" cold rolled C108 flat steel," "12.ft - 3/4" x 4" cold rolled C108 flat steel,"

<sup>43</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 31 January 1982, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

and “12.ft x 1” round cold rolled C108 steel” repairs that might be these repairs.<sup>44</sup>

Work continued in the east room of the cellar throughout the winter. On 2 March 1982, Ogden wrote that the scarfing on old fireplace girder was complete, as was the new fireplace lintel and a rebuilt brick arch. He was then in the process of fitting the new summer beam, and was preparing to connect the floor joists.<sup>45</sup> Later that same month, Ogden wrote that “Work for the summer will involve constructing a new staircase between cellar and first floor” and “repairing the staircase itself.” Ogden described his wish to delay until the winter of 1982-83, and was working on plans to repair the roof structure without removing roof covering.<sup>46</sup>



Figure 2.90: Bacon's Castle, Cellar, East Room, view to northeast. Photograph HABS, 1972. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.91: Bacon's Castle, Cellar, East Room, view to east. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

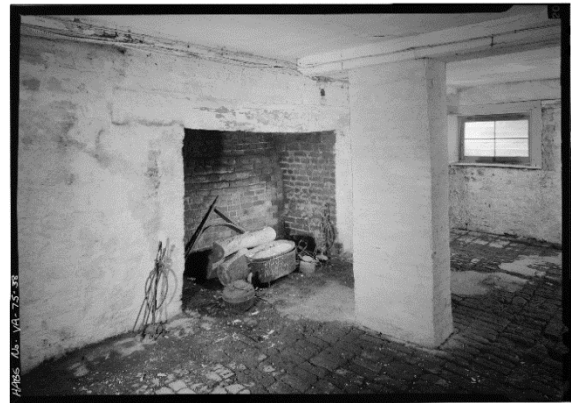


Figure 2.92: Bacon's Castle, Cellar, East Room, view to southeast. Photograph HABS, 1972. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.93: Bacon's Castle, Cellar, East Room, view to east. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

<sup>44</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 31 January 1982, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>45</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 3 December 1982, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>46</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 3 December 1982, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

A comparison of photographs of the east room of the cellar between 1972 and 2015 reveals some of the extent of repairs made to the cellar during the restoration. At some point, additional brick piers were added to the cellar, both to support the early eighteenth-century frame wall added on the first and second floors to create a central passage, and in front of the fireplace to provide additional support for the first floor above. A brick pier in front of the fireplace was removed. During the restoration, the additional support pier was removed as the summer and beams above it were repaired, the header at the at the fireplace opening was replaced, and the nineteenth- and early-twentieth century plaster ceiling and paint were removed. Reproduction brick floor tiles were installed.

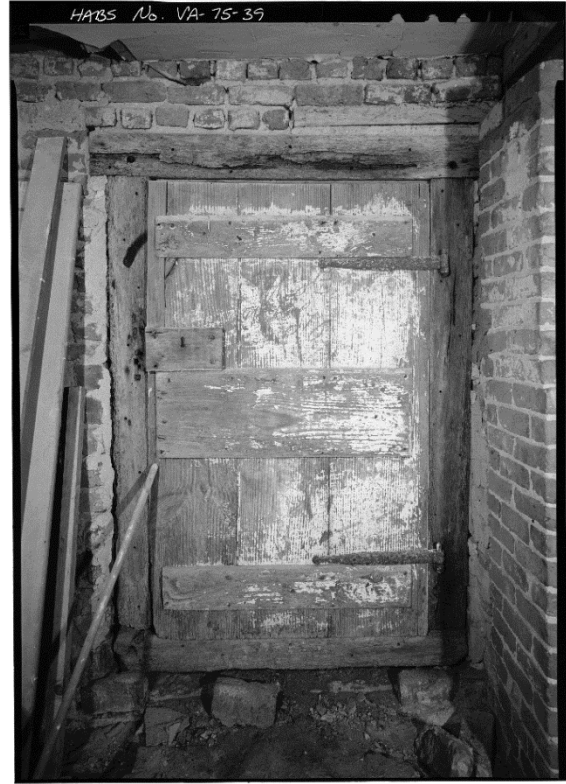


Figure 2.94: Bacon's Castle, Cellar, West Room, detail of door, view to north. Photograph HABS, 1972. The Library of Congress.

Restoration work in the cellar included repairs to the two board-and-batten doors in the cellar space (below the central passage) and the west room (below the chamber), including in-kind wood repair, painting, and removal of the nineteenth-century box lock.





Figure 2.95: Bacon's Castle, Cellar, East Room, detail of door, view to north. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.



Figure 2.96: Bacon's Castle, Cellar, under central passage, detail first floor framing, view to south. Photograph HABS, 1972. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.97: Bacon's Castle, Cellar, under central passage, detail first floor framing, view to south. Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

During the restoration, extensive work on the framing of the cellar itself included the introduction of new framing members, sintering, and extensive splicing in the space beneath the central passage.

By the spring of 1982, work appears to have settled into a regular pace. On 29 April 1982, Ogden itemized work completed during that month. During April, Ogden completed preparation of oak beam for the partition wall in the cellar, fitted a new beam underneath the early 18<sup>th</sup> century partition installed on the first floor to divide the central passage from the hall, completed refitting the floor boards in first floor east room (Hall), and finished the brickwork in the cellar.<sup>47</sup>

<sup>47</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 29 April 1982, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

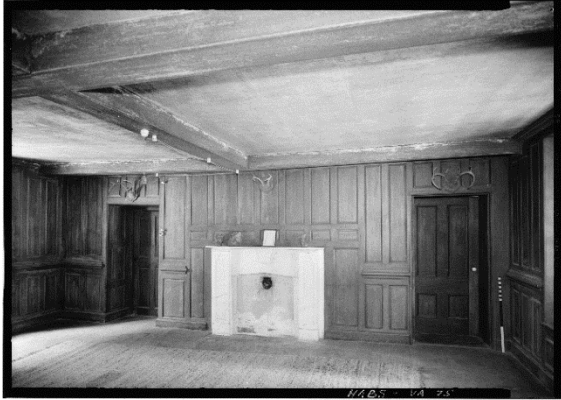


Figure 2.98: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Hall, view to east. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.101: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Hall, view to north. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.99: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Hall, view to east. Photograph HABS, 1972. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.102: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Hall, view to west. Photograph Commonwealth Architects. 2015.



Figure 2.100: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Hall, view to west. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.103: Bacon's Castle, first floor, east room (hall), 1974. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

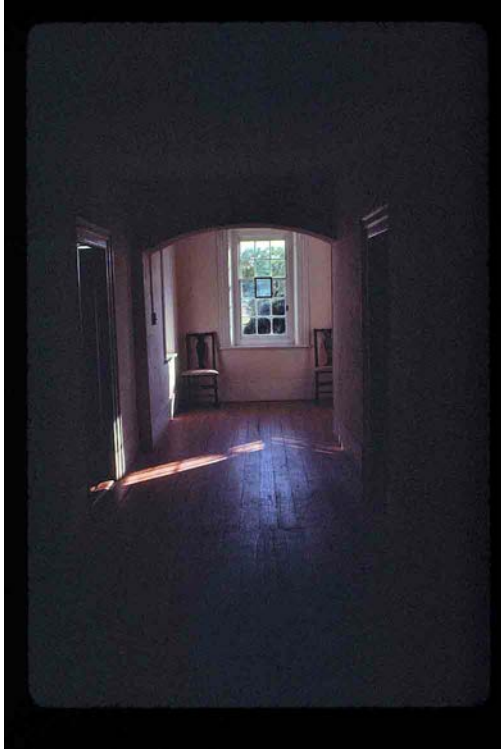


Figure 2.104: Bacon's Castle, central passage, view to south, 1976. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

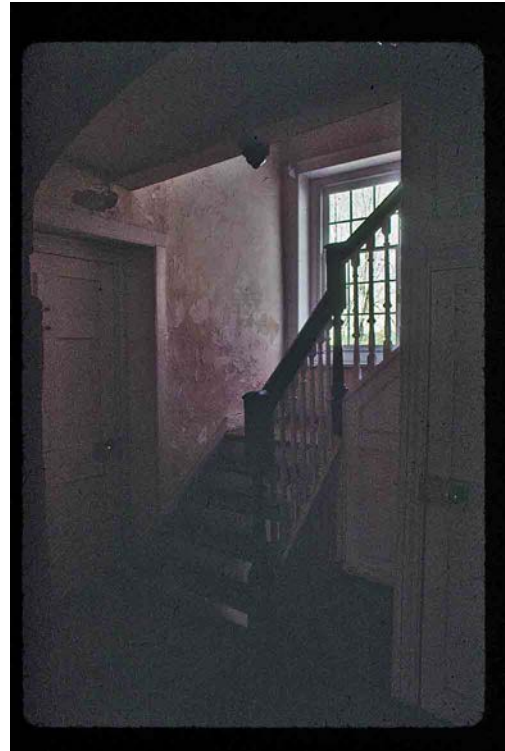


Figure 2.106: Bacon's Castle, first floor, stair, view to south, 1976. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

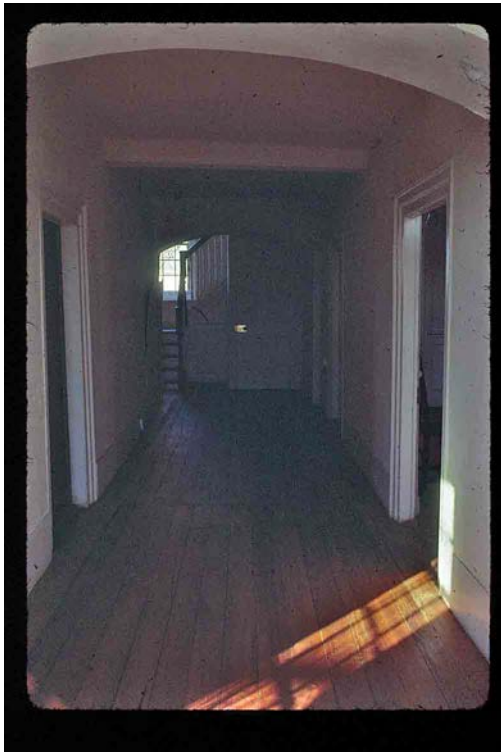


Figure 2.105: Bacon's Castle, central passage, view to north, 1976. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

A comparison of photographs taken in 1937, and 1972, of the first floor east room (hall) are informative. The 1937 image shows the encasements around the ceiling beams had been removed by 1972, along with any surface-mounted electrical fixtures and wires. The mantel that was in place in 1937 was replaced by another mantle by 1972

A comparison of photographs taken by HABS in 1937 with current photographs helps to illustrate the extent of restoration activity within the first floor of Bacon's Castle.



Figure 2.107: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Hall, view to east. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

A comparison of photographs taken in 1937, 1972, and 2015 of the first floor east room (hall) are informative. The 1937 image shows that encasements around the ceiling beams had been removed, along with any surface-mounted electrical fixtures and wires. The mantel had been removed along with the firebox infill and flue.

Images taken between 1972 and the present indicate that the southern four-panel door was replaced with a metal hollow-core door, likely in support of the Halon fire suppression system. The four-panel door was moved to the west and fixed in place. A modern light fixture was added to the northeast corner of the ceiling. A small closet was located from the staff office within the thickness of the outer wall.



Figure 2.108: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Hall, view to north. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.109: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Hall, view to north. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

A comparison of photographs from 1937 and 2015 record the removal of the encasement and plaster ceiling in the hall.



Figure 2.110: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Hall, view to south. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress



Figure 2.111: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Hall, view to south. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

A comparison of photographs of the first floor east room (hall) from 1937 and 2015 record the removal of the encasement and plaster ceiling in the hall, along with the removal of surface-mounted electric wiring and a light fixture. By 2015, a modern light fixture was added to the northeast corner of the room.



Figure 2.112: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Chamber, view to northwest. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.113: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Chamber, view to northwest. Photograph HABS, 1972. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.xx: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, Chamber, view to northwest. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.



Figure 2.114: Bacon's Castle, first floor, west room (chamber), view to west, 1974. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 2.115: Bacon's Castle, first floor, west room (chamber), view to west, 1976. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

Comparison between the 1937 and 1972 HABS images and later photographs indicates that, like the hall, the ceiling beams in the chamber were relieved of their encasements. The turned column visible in the 1937 image was removed, as was the mantel. The firebox

mantel shape was modified to fit a segmental arch, and the hearth was rebuilt. The room currently has changes little from 1972, with most of the changes related to paint colors.



Figure 2.116: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, 1854 addition, central passage, view to north. Photograph HABS, 1972. The Library of Congress.

With regard to the central passage of the 1854 addition, comparison between 1972 HABS images and present conditions notes the removal of wallpaper and insertion of a tension rod between the stair runs at the balusters.



Figure 2.117: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, 1854 addition, central passage, view to north. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.



Figure 2.117: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, 1854 addition, south room, view to east. Photograph HABS, 1972. The Library of Congress



Figure 2.118: Bacon's Castle, First Floor, 1854 addition, south room, view to east. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

Comparison of the 1972 HABS images with present conditions finds that wallpaper was removed, as was the globe from an overhead. On 17 June 1982, Ogden wrote to describe the completed work, including adjustment of the floorboards in first floor east room (hall), and work on the staircase to the cellar.<sup>48</sup> On 4 August 1982, Ogden submitted drawings for stairs to connect the cellar and first floor.<sup>49</sup> Work on the stairs and first floor east room (hall) floor continued through September.<sup>50</sup>



Figure 2.119: Bacon's Castle, repointing work on South elevation, 1982. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

<sup>48</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 17 June 1982, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>49</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 4 August 1982, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>50</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 4 August 1982, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.



Figure 2.120: Bacon's Castle, archaeological excavations along north elevation, 1982. Preservation Virginia.

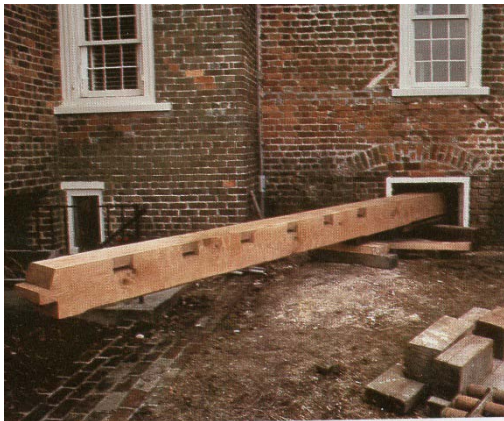


Figure 2.121: Bacon's Castle during restoration, north elevation. New summer beam for cellar kitchen being moved into place, 1982.

On 1 November 1982, Ogden wrote to update APVA on work undertaken during the previous month. Work included repair of stairs, repairs to the first floor east room (Hall) floor, and plumbing alterations. Other work undertaken included additional repairs to the cellar floors, adzing cellar beams, and plumbing work in the cellar. Specific work

included fitting floor beams at the north tower, rerouting incoming water pipes, and removing disused plumbing in the cellar.<sup>51</sup> During the fall and winter 1982-83, work appears to have stopped. Correspondence about restoration at Bacon's Castle ceased in November of 1982 and did not resume again until April 1983.

On 15 April 1983, correspondence regarding the restoration of Bacon's Castle resumed. On that date, Ogden wrote to Murdock to confirm a meeting between the two of them to "undertake the work of Clerk of the Works for you on this phase of the restoration and that of Phase II." This is the first time that the position "Clerk of Works" was mentioned, and also the first time that a division into Phase I and II was mentioned. The division into two phases appears to be related only to funding made available through the Virginia Historic Landmarks Commission (now the Virginia Department of Historic Resources).<sup>52</sup> In this letter, Ogden stated that among his duties he would be required "to approve the certificate for payment for the Contractor." Also in the letter, Ogden stated that he had visited the architects, Torrence, Dreelin, Farthing & Buford, "discussed the presentation situation with them at length," and stated that "it is also my intention to now visit the Contractor [Virtexco] in Norfolk." Ogden wrote that "It is also my intention to make a detailed study of the work so far completed by the Contractor as the architect has not done this. I will report on my findings shortly and will keep you informed." In addition, Ogden wrote that he would "make contact" with

<sup>51</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 1 November 1981, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>52</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 15 April 1983, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.



John Gray, a mason, “to make sure he gets to work as soon as possible.”<sup>53</sup>



Figure 2.121: Bacon’s Castle, Generations of repointing, noted by Angus Murdock, Preservation Virginia, no date (ca. 1983).

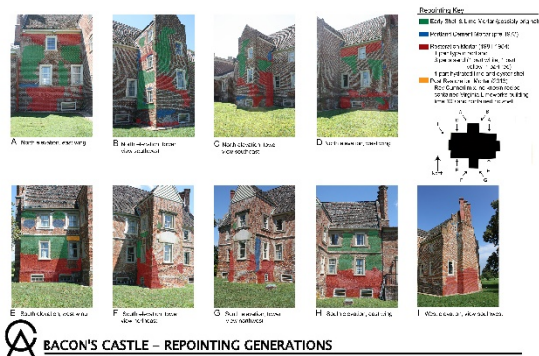


Figure 2.122: Bacon’s Castle, Generations of repointing, based on photographs noted by Angus Murdock and current field observations. Commonwealth Architects, 2016.

As discussed in the existing conditions portion of this report, one of the challenges faced by Preservation Virginia at Bacon’s Castle is the repointing mortars at Bacon’s Castle. The building contains three distinctly different types of mortar: one that appears to be more or less original (or very early, discussed earlier in this chapter; and two very different repointing mortars. The two repointing mortars include 1) a dense, hard

gray Portland cement-based mortar that appears to have been used before 1973 for repointing; 2) a Medusa Stoneset-based repointing mortar used during the restoration, and 3) a lime-based mortar from the former Virginia Limeworks used by mason Ray Canetti for repointing work after 2013.

The only specific reference to a mortar mix in the surviving Preservation Virginia documents for Bacon’s Castle is a handwritten note dated 29 May 1981, titled “Bacon’s Castle Mortar Sample,” in what appears to be Angus Murdock’s handwriting. The recipe given is: (1) part yellow sand [blank space] Norfolk, (2) parts gray sand (Lee Hall pit), (1) part Medusa Stoneset mortar, (1/4) part lime, (3/4) part crushed oyster shell. Note: original sand is slightly darker than yellow gray combination and as it might be advisable to add 1/4 measure red sand. Check in field.”<sup>54</sup>

The restoration mortar mix is easily identifiable in the walls of Bacon’s Castle by the large amount (and size) of sand and oyster shell aggregate, and by its general failure throughout the building.



Figure 2.123: Bacon’s Castle, South elevation, restoration repointing failure; note size of aggregate. Commonwealth Architects, 16 July 2016.

<sup>53</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 16 April 1983, APVA, Bacon’s Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>54</sup> “Bacon’s Castle Mortar Sample,” unsigned memo in what appears to be Angus Murdock’s handwriting, 29 May 1981, Preservation Virginia Files.

The restoration mix contains an unusually high percentage of aggregate (sand and oyster shell), and a relatively small percentage of lime. The mix also contained Medusa Stoneset Cement, a Portland cement-based product described by Medusa as “A non-staining waterproofed mortar cement for setting, pargeting, and pointing of cut stone and for paying up face brick”, as the primary binder.<sup>55</sup> Medusa Cement was founded in Cleveland in 1892 as the Sandusky Portland Cement Company; shortly after founding, the name was changed to the Medusa Portland Cement Company. The attraction to Medusa Stoneset Cement may have been its plasticity (workability) and its white color, which would not interfere with other efforts to color the repointing mortar to match the existing mortar in the walls of Bacon’s Castle. Medusa Stoneset mortar was promoted as a way to prevent moisture from migrating through mortar joints (which in fact must occur in a mass brick wall, as at Bacon’s Castle). In Medusa’s literature, Stoneset is described under “Waterproofing mortar for masonry.” The mortar mix given is: “1 part Medusa Waterproofed Portland Cement, 3 parts clean, well graded mason’s sand, 10 pounds hydrated lime per bag of cement or one-fifth part by volume of the cement used,” very nearly the mortar mix specified by Murdock.<sup>56</sup>

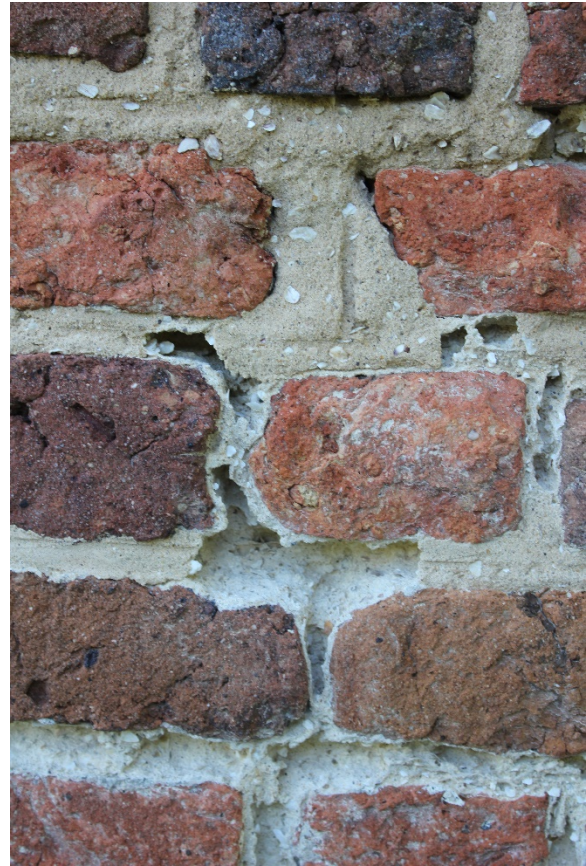


Figure 2.124: Bacon’s Castle, South elevation, restoration repointing failure. Commonwealth Architects, 16 July 2016.

---

<sup>55</sup> “How to Make Good Waterproofed Concrete,” (Cleveland, OH: Medusa Portland Cement Company, 1939), p, 30.

<sup>56</sup> “How to Make Good Waterproofed Concrete,” (Cleveland, OH: Medusa Portland Cement Company, 1939), p, 15.



Figure 2.125: Bacon's Castle, South elevation, restoration repointing failure. Commonwealth Architects, 16 July 2016.

When preparing Medusa Stoneset mortar, the mason was directed as follows: "If a contractor has the proper equipment he will find it quite advantageous to have his batches mixed ahead of time, using just enough water in the preliminary mix to make a damp earth consistency and allowing this mortar to set for any period of time up to one hour after the mixing, and then when required for use, more water is added to bring the mortar mix to the proper consistency."<sup>57</sup> Because of the high Portland cement content of Medusa Stoneset mortar, it sets rapidly and absorbs large

amounts of water from the masonry around it, requiring careful hydration as it sets. It appears that the mortar was not properly hydrated, either with too little water in the mix or insufficient hydration as it set, and it appears to have simply failed to set in many locations. While this has certainly created moisture problems for Bacon's Castle, if the mortar did indeed fail to set properly it will make continued repointing potentially less-damaging to existing masonry. Portland cement is difficult to remove from bricks because of the strength of its bond, and often removal can do considerable damage to early brick units. If the mortar failed to set, the failure will occur at the face of the brick unit to which it attempted to bond, failing because it drew insufficient moisture from the brick surface and then dried too quickly. As such mortar would never bond to the brick, it might be removed fairly easily and replaced with a more appropriate lime-based repointing mortar.

On 16 April 1983, Ogden wrote Murdock about his efforts to restart work at Bacon's Castle. He wrote that "On the 15<sup>th</sup> April I visited Virtexco Inc. in Norfolk and spoke with Mr. Robert Wells, President about the contract problems at Bacon's Castle. Having received no response from Mr. Ray Mangus for a meeting I decided to visit the Contractor in Norfolk."<sup>58</sup> During the meeting, Wells "explained at length their side of the troubles," and "told me they had difficulty in working with T.D.F.&B. as they took considerable time in getting a response to a query or instruction. Evidence was produced to substantiate this problem, in particular items relating to door frame detailing."<sup>59</sup> The contractor "had not recommenced work at

<sup>57</sup> "How to Make Good Waterproofed Concrete," (Cleveland, OH: Medusa Portland Cement Company, 1939), p. 15.

<sup>58</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 16 April 1983, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>59</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 16 April 1983, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

Bacon's Castle because they had not received instructions in writing from T.D.F.&B. until today (15<sup>th</sup> April)." "I was further mystified," wrote Ogden, "by a letter from T.D.F.&B. outlining instructions to the Contractor to modify the lower metal stairs after brickwork to the chimney was repaired, together with a change order for \$1300. Mr. Wells stated that T.D.F.&B. were aware at the time the bricks were taken out of the water table and did not raise objections to the demolition at the time." Ogden continued "All of this is, of course, very irritating for the A.P.V.A. but I made it clear that I wanted the bad work put right at the earliest date and this promise was given to me. Mr. Wells welcomed the appointment of a Clerk of the Works at the site and said that he thought work should be netter completed, particularly if they could eliminate delays from the Architect" <sup>60</sup>

The letter concludes with Ogden's assessment of the situation; he wrote that "it is my opinion that the Architects must accept much of the blame for the problems we now have. Had T.D.F.&B. been more diligent in visiting the site regularly and satisfying themselves as to the exact state of the work, much of the problem could have been avoided." <sup>61</sup> Ogden concluded "One point I find very hard to understand is how Ed Donbrosky could tell me that he had not inspected the works in fine detail to see whether it complied exactly with the requirements of the Contract. Surely this is an admission of neglect of the Architects [sic] duty to protect his client." <sup>62</sup>

Restoration work appears to have restarted at Bacon's Castle in April of 1983. On 26 April 1983, Ogden reported that Virtexco had removed metal staircase sections in cellar, and that arrangements have been made with John Gray to repair chimney brickwork. Ogden also reported that work had resumed on the roof; inactivity for several weeks with the roof in an incomplete state allowed for significant amounts of rain to enter the 1854 addition, particularly in the kitchen.<sup>63</sup> On 3 May 1983 Ogden reported that masonry repairs to the chimney area in cellar were complete, and he requested that steelworkers to return to finish constructing the steel fire stair.<sup>64</sup>



Figure 2.126: Bacon's Castle, Second Floor, east room (over the Hall), view to southwest. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.

---

<sup>60</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 16 April 1983, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>61</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 16 April 1983, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>62</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 16 April 1983, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>63</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Angus Murdock, 26 April 1983, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>64</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Robert H. Wells, Virtexco, 3 May 1983, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.



Figure 2.127: Bacon's Castle, Second Floor, east room (over the Hall), view to southwest. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

Review of HABS images from 1937 and the present (there are no HABS photographs from 1972 for the second floor of Bacon's Castle) for the second floor east room (over the hall) finds that, as in other rooms, the plaster and lath ceiling was removed, and the paint stripped from joists, decking, and beams.



Figure 2.128: Bacon's Castle, Second Floor, west room (over the Chamber), view to northwest. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.129: Bacon's Castle, Second Floor, west room (over the Chamber), view to northwest. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

Review of HABS images from 1937 in comparison with present conditions for the second floor west room (over the chamber) finds that, as in other rooms, the mantel has been removed. The fireplace infill and flue were also removed, and a new fireplace projection from the exterior wall constructed and given a new header. The hearth was rebuilt using square brick pavers similar to those found on the floor of the cellar. The plaster and lath ceiling was removed, and the paint stripped from joists, decking, and beams. Faux 17<sup>th</sup> century-style diamond-pane windows were installed on the interior side of the existing double-hung sash windows. Plaster was removed from the south wall to expose a section of the interior brick and stone construction.



Figure 2.130: Bacon's Castle, Garret, stair tower (north) view to north. Photograph Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.131: Bacon's Castle, Garret, stair tower (north) view to north. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.132: Bacon's Castle, second floor, west room (over the chamber), view to west, 1976. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 2.133: Bacon's Castle, garret, 1976. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 2.134: Bacon's Castle, garret, 1976. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 2.135: Bacon's Castle, Garret, stair tower (north) view to north. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

Comparison of HABS images taken in the 1936 and 1937 with present conditions finds that the brick has been plastered and all components have been painted. The base trim on the eastern side has been removed. Collar

ties were added to protect against thrust, and a Halon fire suppression system was installed.



Figure 2.136: Bacon's Castle, Garret, south tower (south) view to south. Photograph Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.137: Bacon's Castle, Garret, south tower (south) view to south. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.138: Bacon's Castle, Garret, south tower (south) view to south. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

Comparison between HABS images of the west garret taken in the 1936, 1937, and the present conditions indicate that the floor has been patched in some locations, and wooden surfaces and walls painted. A circular window and the clapboards on the west wall were removed.





Figure 2.139: Bacon's Castle, Garret, west garret (west) view to west. Photograph Frances Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.140: Bacon's Castle, Garret, west garret (west) view to west. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.142: Bacon's Castle, Garret, west garret (west) view to west. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

Review of photographic documentation indicates that, between the 1930s and the present, east garret plaster was repated and vertical tension rods installed. All wooden components were painted.



Figure 2.143: Bacon's Castle, Garret, east garret (east) view to east. Photograph HABS, 1937. The Library of Congress.



Figure 2.144: Bacon's Castle, Garret, east garret (east) view to east. Photograph Commonwealth Architects, 2015.

Photographs indicate that the slope of the hyphen roof was altered so that it no longer blocks the lower portion of the southern window. HVAC ductwork was installed, and all wooden component were painted.

Other interior items not evidenced in pictures include conversion of the 1950s kitchen into a gift shop, and the bathroom into a public restroom, as well as insertion of a modern fire stair in the hyphen.

If everything seemed to be progressing smoothly in the spring of 1983, that situation did not seem to last long. By summer, letters indicate a series of new difficulties. On 5 August 1983, Ogden wrote Robert H. Wells of Virtexco with a series of complaints with the work done by the contractor at Bacon's Castle. Ogden complained that the standing seam tin roof on the 1854 addition was improperly constructed: the standing joints were properly formed, but the joints were not double-locked, and were otherwise badly worked. Metal sheets have good standing joints but subsequent joints are not double locked and are badly worked. Furthermore, the roof felt was laid over substrate in poor weather conditions and had deteriorated, requiring replacement.<sup>65</sup> Ogden also complained that two door lintels had not yet been installed, and an area of damaged bricks near a door had not been repaired.<sup>66</sup> The fire stair in the hyphen was another source of complaints. Ogden stated that the steel stairs had not been properly constructed, that the stairs themselves were not level, and that the newel posts were out of line. In addition, the steel angle bracket would not allow the wooden trim to be replaced correctly and was be exposed.<sup>67</sup> Finally, the steel fire doors were problematic: one door could not be fully opened because the closing fixture badly set, large gaps existed below doors, a potential risk in the event of fire, and brickwork above fire doors needed to be repaired.<sup>68</sup>

The 5 August 1983 letter is the last surviving correspondence regarding restoration work at Bacon's Castle. There was apparently some

<sup>65</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Robert H. Wells, Virtexco 5 August 1983, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>66</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Robert H. Wells, Virtexco 5 August 1983, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

sort of falling out between Ogden and Murdock, after which Ogden appears to have ceased working as Clerk of the Works for the Bacon's Castle restoration. On 16 May 1983, Murdock wrote to Ogden to inform him "As you appear to have abandoned all restoration work at Bacon's Castle, I take this opportunity to terminate any contractual obligations between you and the APVA." Murdock continued "I will appreciate your designating to Chuck Rackley all materials purchased by the APVA, including plans, patterns and unfinished work," and concluded "Please remove your personal property from the Bacon's Castle buildings and grounds no later than 30 June 1984."<sup>69</sup>

### Garden (including restoration)



Figure 2.145: Bacon's Castle, agricultural buildings, view to northeast, 1975. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

In the years since the restoration, several agricultural buildings have been demolished, fell into disuse, or, on one case, was struck by lightning and burned. The eighteenth- and early-nineteenth century agricultural buildings

<sup>67</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Robert H. Wells, Virtexco 5 August 1983, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>68</sup> Letter, Derek Ogden to Robert H. Wells, Virtexco 5 August 1983, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

<sup>69</sup> Letter, APVA to Derek Ogden, 16 May 1984, APVA, Bacon's Castle Collections, Preservation Virginia.

remain, as do some of the late-nineteenth century agricultural buildings.



Figure 2.146: Bacon's Castle, view to northeast, 1969. Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

In the 1980s, using the data obtained through archaeological and documentary analysis of the garden, Preservation Virginia embarked on a lengthy campaign to restore and appropriately interpret it. This effort included the reestablishment of the perimeter and interior walkways, delineation of identified structures through placement of bricks on the ground surface, establishment of period-appropriate plantings, and placement of interpretive signage.

## Chapter Three

### Summary of Archaeological Investigations at Bacon's Castle

Nicholas M. Lucchetti, M.A., RPA  
The James River Institute for Archaeology

Over the past fifty years the Bacon's Castle property has been subjected to multiple archaeological investigations, both professional and amateur. In the early 1970s, students taking Anthropology classes at the College of William and Mary engaged in several episodes of surface collection in the east field of the property. Since then, eight professional archaeological investigations have been performed at Bacon's Castle. These are briefly described below.

#### 1978 Survey

This survey, undertaken by the Virginia Research Center for Archaeology (a division of the Virginia Landmarks Commission) and supervised by Nicholas Lucchetti, examined all four yards around Bacon's Castle principally by the excavation of 2' test squares in both linear transects and in blocks. Some survey and testing was also conducted in the east field.

#### 1982 Excavation around the Mansion

This project, undertaken by the Division of Historic Landmarks Research Center for Archaeology and supervised by Nicholas Lucchetti, was performed prior to the installation of a French drain around the 17<sup>th</sup>-century building. A 5'-wide area was completely excavated around the north, west and east sides of Bacon's Castle, and expanded between the northwest corner and the stair tower.

#### 1983 Survey of the Garden in the West Yard

This project, undertaken by the Division of Historic Landmarks Research Center for Archaeology and supervised by Nicholas Lucchetti, was intended to determine if archaeological remains of a 19<sup>th</sup>-century, and

possibly earlier, garden survived in the west yard as suggested by various historical records.

#### 1984-86 Garden Excavation

This project involved excavation of the remarkably intact footprint of a 1.4-acre garden constructed by Major Arthur Allen II, son of the property's original owner, ca. 1680. The excavation began under the Division of Historic Landmarks Research Center for Archaeology, and was completed by the James River Institute for Archaeology, Inc. The entire excavation was supervised by Nicholas Lucchetti.

#### 1991 Smokehouse Testing

Test trenches were excavated against the south and east foundations of the existing smokehouse to determine whether the building was constructed upon 18<sup>th</sup>-century foundations. The testing was conducted by the James River Institute for Archaeology, Inc., under the supervision of Nicholas Lucchetti.

#### 1997 19<sup>th</sup>-Century Well Documentation

During removal of a large boxwood shrub, a brick-lined 19<sup>th</sup>-century well was exposed. The well was recorded by Jamestown Rediscovery under the supervision of Nicholas Lucchetti. During this process a portion of the well shaft was excavated to obtain artifacts for the purpose of determining when the well was abandoned and filled in.

#### 2013 Septic Line Replacement Documentation

Replacement of a septic line extending off the northeast corner of the 1854 wing revealed the presence of an extensive colonial kitchen midden in the east yard. Deposits along the septic line were excavated and documented by the James River Institute for Archaeology, Inc., under the supervision of Nicholas Lucchetti.

#### 2015 Kitchen Documentation

Construction of a handicapped ramp and parking area uncovered a large H-shaped



chimney base in the east yard. The chimney base, as well as a newly-discovered adjoining brick-lined root cellar, was tested and documented by the James River Institute for Archaeology, Inc., under the supervision of Nicholas Lucchetti.

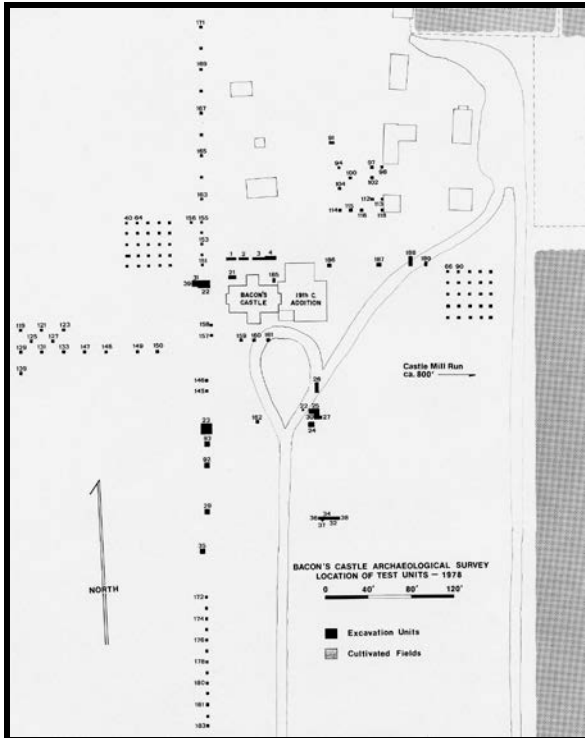


Figure 3.1: Plan of 1978 survey test units around Bacon's Castle.

## Known Archaeological Resources at Bacon's Castle

### East Field: Arthur Allen I Site, ca. 1649-1665 (44SY0137)

Although Arthur Allen I received his first land grant in 1649, historian Kevin Kelly believes that Allen was well established by that time and likely was living in Surry for several years beforehand. A survey of the field, located east of the house, identified a concentration of early and mid-17<sup>th</sup> century artifacts at the head of a branch of Castle Mill Run, a perennial stream that bisects the agricultural field. Subsequent test pits uncovered postholes and sections of narrow ditches. Artifacts recovered by the investigation indicate that the site was occupied during the second and third quarters of the 17<sup>th</sup> century. The narrow ditches at Site 44SY0137 may quite possibly represent the footprint of a fence-like fortified enclosure or palisade; similar slot trenches for wooden palisades have been found at several other fortified 17<sup>th</sup>-century sites in southeastern Virginia. Given that Surry County was still a frontier in the mid-17<sup>th</sup> century, the presence of a fortified settlement would not be unusual. It was reported that 280 Powhatan warriors were living just outside the Surry County borders in the late 1660's (Morgan 1975: 230), so the need for some form of defensive structure seems credible.



Figure 3.2: Slot trench (?) and pit features uncovered at Site 44SY0137.

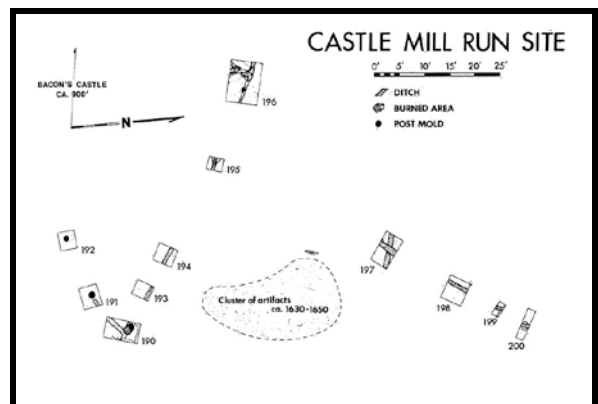


Figure 3.3: Plan of features found at Site 44SY0137 by 1978 survey.



Figure 3.4: Location of Site 44SY0137.

### **Bacon's Castle (44SY0117): 17<sup>th</sup>-century Garden**

An astonishingly well-preserved 1.5-acre garden was found in the west yard at Bacon's Castle. Constructed ca. 1680-1690 during the tenure of Arthur Allen II, the garden was comprised of six large core planting beds, and two small starter beds, both sited against a brick wall at the north end of the garden in order to take advantage of early-season warmth and shelter provided by the masonry. Packed-sand garden paths, perimeter border beds, and a general purpose garden building (see below) provided structure and utility. Of greatest interest, however, is the presence of foundations for at least two extraordinary three-sided open structures with interior benches, called *exedras*. These classically-inspired structures would have provided sheltered and elegant spaces for conversation while viewing the gardens.



Figure 3.5: Aerial photograph of the garden at Bacon's Castle, facing north.



Figure 3.6: Archaeological footprint of single bench exedra in the Bacon's Castle garden; the bench footprint at the bottom of the image faces the main garden beds at the top of the image.



Figure 3.7: Example of an exedra (Sir Frank Crisp, Medieval Gardens, 1924).

### Bacon's Castle (44SY0117) South Yard: Matching Forecourt Buildings

Two matching forecourt buildings have been found about 100' south of the mansion. The western outbuilding, located immediately next to the garden, has a 20' x 32' brick-lined cellar with an entrance centered on the south end. The cellar was originally partitioned into two rooms by a brick wall that was later removed, as evidenced by racking in the west wall. No external chimney base was found. This, along with hundreds of bell glass fragments found just outside the foundation, indicate that the structure may have been an unheated garden building. Test excavations into the backfilled cellar recovered artifacts indicating that the building was dismantled ca. 1820.



Figure 3.8: Cellar entrance of the garden advance building, facing south ER23.



Figure 3.9: Test excavation into the garden advance building cellar, facing west.

The partially-intact foundation of a matching outbuilding was found in the corresponding location off the east side of Bacon's Castle. The excavation of four test squares (44SY0117/24, 26, 27, and 28) uncovered a chimney base, rubble walls, and robbed wall trenches indicating a structure that measured approximately 16' x 28'. The function of this outbuilding is unclear, although the relatively small size of the chimney base suggests that the building was not used as a detached kitchen.





Figure 3.10: Chimney base of second advance building facing south, ER24.

### **Bacon's Castle (44SY0117) South Yard: Southeast Corner of the Garden**

Because the garden excavation revealed evidence of structures located at either end of each of the four garden crosswalks, two test trenches were excavated at the southeast corner of the garden (then occupied by a large pecan tree which has since been removed). The test trenches discovered a quantity of whole brick rubble, nails, ceramic sherds, and bottle glass, suggesting the presence of another garden building that was likely abandoned in the late 18<sup>th</sup> century or early 19<sup>th</sup> century.



Figure 3.11: Excavation of test square at the southeast corner of the garden, ER176.



Figure 3.12: Expanded excavation of ER176 showing brick rubble and artifacts.

### **Bacon's Castle (44SY0117) South Yard: Possible Southeast Outbuilding**

20' south of the southeast corner of the garden, one test unit in a survey transect that aligned with the garden building and the possible building at the southeast corner of the garden produced brick rubble, cut nails, wine bottle glass, and ceramics suggesting the possibility of another outbuilding. Artifacts indicated that the deposit dated to the late 18<sup>th</sup> century or early 19<sup>th</sup> century, but no additional testing was undertaken.



Figure 3.13: Brick and mortar rubble exposed by Test Square ER 178.

### **Bacon's Castle (44SY0117) East Yard: Burned 19<sup>th</sup>-century Building**

Approximately 80' due east of the northeast corner of the 1854 addition, Test Trench ER188 uncovered the remains of what appeared to be a burned frame building. A black wood-

ash layer was found beneath a thick layer of orange clay (possibly the bed or paving of a later road). The ash layer contained fragments of burned wood with numerous rusted cut nails suggesting that the possible building dated to the first half of the 19<sup>th</sup> century.

**Bacon’s Castle (44SY0117) North Yard: 18<sup>th</sup>-century Cellar or Ice House**

A large, shallow circular depression was located about 50’ west of the existing slave quarters. A test trench, ER91, was excavated across the depression to a depth of 5.5’ below modern grade, at which point excavation was suspended without reaching the base of the feature. The circular feature was filled with layers of mixed loam, clay, and sand. The layers were relatively horizontal, indicating that the feature probably was not a backfilled well (which features usually exhibit sloping layers of backfill).

Accordingly, this feature likely represents a cellar or perhaps an ice house. Bricks and mortar were found in the lowest layer, as well as transfer-printed pearlware, suggesting that this feature was filled in sometime after 1795.



Figure 3.14: Location of Test Trench ER91 across large circular depression in the North Yard.



Figure 3.14: Test Trench ER188 showing layer of black ash and heavily burned board fragments, facing west.

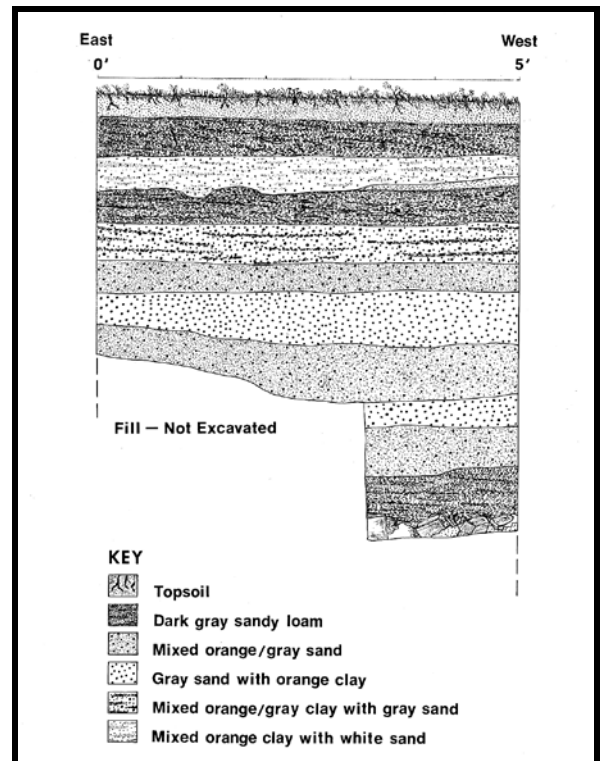


Figure 3.15: Stratigraphy in Test Trench ER91.

**Bacon’s Castle (44SY0117): 18<sup>th</sup>-century Closet**

The 1978 survey first identified this shell-mortared foundation, 1.5 bricks wide, off the northwest corner of the Castle. The 1982 excavation around the Castle foundation completely exposed and excavated the area. The foundation connected the north corner of the Castle to the northwest corner of the stair tower, forming an 8’ x 9.5’ space around the bricked-up cellar entrance. Further, the

excavation uncovered the intact original exterior cellar steps that led to the now bricked-in cellar entrance. A two-tined bone-handled fork and complete stone roofing tile were recovered from the builder's trench, while other artifacts indicated that the foundation was constructed during the 2<sup>nd</sup> quarter of the 18<sup>th</sup> century, probably when the house was remodeled and a doorway was built into the north wall of the 1<sup>st</sup> floor chamber to allow access to this room. This room is most probably the "closet" reference in probate inventories.



Figure 3.15: 18<sup>th</sup>-century closet foundation and original cellar entrance at the northwest corner of Bacon's Castle, ER21, 214 and 215.

### Bacon's Castle (44SY0117): Original Cellar Kitchen Entrance

The 1978 survey and 1982 excavation identified the presence of a brick-paved walkway and partial foundation for the steps that led to the now bricked-in original entrance to the cellar kitchen. The brick steps had been severely disturbed and survived only as a few jumbled remnants, however the cheeks of the cellar entrance were relatively intact. Perhaps indicating the heavier use of the cellar kitchen, the cheek foundations were 2 bricks wide in contrast to the 1-and 1.5-bricks-wide foundation of the closet entrance.



Figure 3.16: Bone-handled fork and stone roofing tile recovered from excavation of closet foundation off the northwest corner of Bacon's Castle.



Figure 3.17: Brick-paved walkway and step foundations for cellar kitchen.

### Bacon's Castle (44SY0117): Basement: Original Brick Partition Footing

The 1978 survey and 1982 excavation partially exposed a section of brick footing for an original partition that formed the west wall of the cellar kitchen. The brick footing is thought to be original because it is composed of oversize bricks that measure 9.5" x 4.625" and

between 3.5” to 3.75” thick, which are only found below modern grade in the foundation of the Castle.



Figure 3.18: Footing of oversized brick at the south end of the west side of the cellar kitchen.

### **Bacon’s Castle (44SY0117): Basement: Original Sump**

The 1984 excavations also discovered a small sump hole in the northeast corner of the cellar kitchen beneath the brick paved floor. Some of the original brick lining survived, including part of the floor of the sump hole, covered with square brick pavers of the type used to cover the original kitchen floor.



Figure 3.19: Brick lined sump in northeast corner of cellar kitchen.

### **Bacon’s Castle (44SY0117): South Yard 19<sup>th</sup>- century Well**

In 1997, a revised visitor plan for Bacon’s Castle included moving the main access to the house to the back of the 19<sup>th</sup>-century wing addition. During removal of a large boxwood shrub

located in the path of the planned access route, articulated bricks were identified. Jamestown Rediscovery archaeologists excavated a 4’ by 7’ test unit over the articulated bricks and found a brick-lined oval well shaft within the partial remains of a foundation for a well head. The bricks were reused, many of them had sand mortar attached. One half of the well shaft was excavated down approximately 1 foot, recovering much oyster shell, bone, cut nails and ceramics that dated to c. 1830-1850. Numerous 18<sup>th</sup>-century artifacts also were mixed in the assemblage. The bricks of the well lining and well head were very unusual, almost square in section, and were identified by APVA Restoration staffers Chuck Rackley and Mike Adams as the same type of bricks used in the chimney of the slave quarter. The well is located about 27’ northeast of the northeast corner of the 1854 wing addition.



Figure 3.19: 19<sup>th</sup>-century brick-lined well shaft and well head foundation.



Figure 3.20: 19<sup>th</sup>-century brick-lined well shaft and well head foundation.

### **Bacon's Castle (44SY0117) East Yard: Midden**

In 2013, the replacement of a failed septic pipeline that extended east off the northeast corner of the 1854 addition necessitated the excavation of a new trench line. During excavation the new trench line cut through an intact layer of black ash that was rich in small artifacts, likely refuse discarded from the kitchen(s). The kitchen midden layer ranged from 2 inches to 7 inches in thickness and contained an abundance of animal bone and numerous late 17<sup>th</sup> century and 18<sup>th</sup> century artifacts including wine bottle glass, tobacco pipe stems, ceramics, and hand-wrought nails. This layer was documented only in the open length of the trench – from just off the northeast corner of the 1854 wing to the backfilled section of the trench some 40 feet distant. No additional archaeological investigation was performed.



Figure 3.21: Replacement septic line trench extending off the northeast corner of the 1854 wing, ER800.



Figure 3.22: Sample of animal bone recovered from kitchen midden layer in replacement septic line.

### **Bacon's Castle (44SY0117) East Yard: Detached Kitchen**

In 2015, during construction of an access ramp and parking area, a large H-shaped chimney base was uncovered in the east yard. The shell-mortared masonry of the chimney base was aligned with Bacon's Castle, and exhibited unusually large fireboxes with an internal width of 9.5'. A brick-lined root cellar measuring 9.5' x 5' was located adjacent to the north firebox. The chimney base and root cellar were mapped, photographed, and recorded, but no further investigations were conducted. It is assumed that one of the fireplaces was used as part of a detached kitchen. The function of the second fireplace is currently unknown.



Figure 3.23: H-shaped chimney base found in the east yard. Note the 1-and-1.5-brick-wide wall at the mouth of the north firebox, the wall is the south side of the brick-lined root cellar, facing north.

### **Bacon's Castle (44SY0117) North Yard: Extant 19<sup>th</sup>-Century Smoke House**

Prior to restoration work on the smokehouse in 1991, archaeological testing was undertaken in an effort to determine if the smokehouse was in its original location, and when it was first constructed. Four test trenches were excavated against the south wall foundation, one against the east wall foundation, and one against the north wall foundation. Artifacts from the builder's trench for the smokehouse foundation indicate that it was constructed sometime between 1820 and 1832.



Figure 3.24: Test excavations along the south wall foundation of the Bacon's Castle smokehouse.

## **Bacon's Castle: Areas of Archaeological Potential**

### **Possible Mill Site**

A mill house and a mill dam are listed in the 1711 inventory for Major Arthur Allen II. The 1844 Morrison Map of the property identifies a mill located on Castle Mill Run. Although brick foundations have been identified along Castle Mill Run, they have never been investigated.



Figure 3.25: Brick foundations along Castle Mill Run.

### **Burned 18<sup>th</sup>/19<sup>th</sup>-Century Building**

A pier-supported frame building that was situated on the north side of the fence that separates the north yard and the farm yard burned in 1979. The building was constructed in the 18<sup>th</sup> century and it later received a 19<sup>th</sup>-century addition. This location contains the potential for archeological deposits.



Figure 3.26: Burned 18<sup>th</sup>/19<sup>th</sup> frame building at Bacon's Castle, facing south.

## Slave Quarter

No archaeological investigations have been conducted around the ca. 1850 slave quarter duplex. Careful investigation of the yard surrounding the quarter is likely to yield information necessary to a fuller understanding of the enslaved occupants of Bacon's Castle.



Figure 3.27: Slave quarter at Bacon's Castle, facing east.

## East Field

The 1911 Morrison Map of Bacon's Castle, which purportedly represents an 1844 survey of the property, depicts a farm road running east from the Castle to the head of Castle Mill Run where a cider mill and still are noted. The farm road apparently was a major access point in the first half of the 19<sup>th</sup> century if not earlier, and undoubtedly a rich archaeological zone. Although not formally surveyed the fields on either side of the farm road are littered with 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup>-century artifacts, likely representative of various outbuildings and work areas along the road.

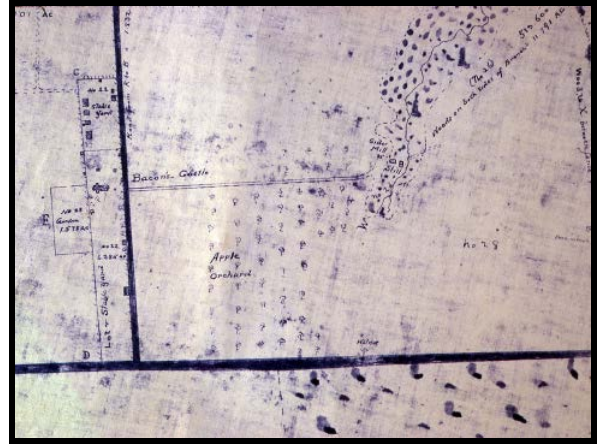


Figure 3.28: 1911 Morrison Map of Bacon's Castle (partial).

## Recommendations

1. Establish ownership or protection of the Arthur Allen I site in the East Field at the head of Castle Mill Run, and the East Field itself, if possible.
2. Prohibit all relic hunting (including metal detection) in the fields around Bacon's Castle.
3. Establish ownership or protection of the Mill Site.
4. Initiate research to locate Coppahonk, a major 18<sup>th</sup>-century slave quarter mentioned in the 1711 and 1728 inventories.
5. Conduct test excavations prior to ground disturbance, including:
  - the west chimney and west wall, pending any structural work and foundation underpinning based on findings of the structural survey;
  - the northeast corner of the ca. 1854 addition, pending any structural work and foundation underpinning based on findings of the structural survey.

**Summarized and Prioritized Recommendations: Archaeology**

Priority 1 indicates that the condition requires immediate attention because it is causing active deterioration and threatens the integrity of the structure, or that poses a health and safety risk.

Priority 2 refers to a condition that should be addressed within a year, but only after the first priority needs have been met.

Priority 3 refers to a low priority issue that does not threaten the integrity of the historic building. Usually it pertains to an aesthetic problem which should be scheduled as time and budget permit.

Priority 4 refers to materials, features or systems that require routine inspection or show signs of early deterioration and may require action in the next ten years.

<b>Recommendation</b>	<b>Discipline</b>	<b>Priority (1,2,3, or 4)</b>
<b><i>Priority 1</i></b>		
Establish ownership or protection of the Arthur Allen I site (44SY0137) in the East Field at the head of Castle Mill Run, and the East Field itself if possible.	Archaeological	1
<b><i>Priority 2</i></b>		
Prohibit relic hunting in the fields around Bacon’s Castle.	Archaeological	2
Establish ownership or protection of the Mill Site.	Archaeological	2
Initiate research to locate Coppahonk, a major 18 <sup>th</sup> -century slave quarter mentioned in 1711 and 1728 inventories.		
Conduct test excavations at the west chimney and west wall, pending any structural work and foundation underpinning based on findings of the structural survey.	Archaeological	2
Conduct test excavations at the northeast corner of the ca. 1854 addition, pending any structural work and foundation underpinning based on findings of the structural survey.	Archaeological	2





## Chapter Four Interpretation

Bryan Clark Green, Ph.D.  
*Commonwealth Architects*

Beverly A. Straube, PhD, FSA  
*The James River Institute for Archaeology*

As today's public are finding traditional presentations less relevant to their lives and, sometimes, even downright boring, attendance at historic house museums like Bacon's Castle is declining. Visitors are bombarded with information from a number of sources. For an interpretation to resonate, it must be relatable to the 21st-century visitor in intellectual and/or emotional ways.

Bacon's Castle's obvious importance lies in its Jacobean architecture and its claim to being one of the oldest brick buildings in the United States. It was also the seat of a family of prosperous planters during the periods of time when the plantation economy was becoming established in Virginia. Without an interpretive plan that resonates with modern visitors, however, its stunning architecture and rich history may fail to attract the visitors necessary to keep the property a living part of the Virginia historic community. Finding new ways to create excitement while retaining relevance is the challenge.

This discussion is divided into two sections. The first, titled "Interpretation of Architecture," evaluates the manner in which the architecture and furnishings of Bacon's Castle is currently interpreted. This section provides restoration recommendations designed to enhance the overall interpretation of the 1665 (original) portion of the building and the 1854 wing addition. This section also provides recommendations for alterations to the tour route, revisions to existing interpretive materials, and other suggestions aimed at enriching the visitor experience. The

second section, titled "Interpretation of Everyday Life," includes a series of proposals for interpretive activities within Bacon's Castle, with the goal of expanding the interpretation of individual rooms and room use. Collectively, the suggestions within this chapter are intended to assist Preservation Virginia in further developing the visitor experience at Bacon's Castle. Also included in this report, as Appendix 3, is an existing furniture inventory of Bacon's Castle, and Appendix 4, an analysis of the 1711, 1728, and 1745 inventories.

### Interpretation of Architecture

Bryan Clark Green, Ph.D.  
*Commonwealth Architects*

Preservation Virginia faces a series of interpretive challenges at this site. Some of the proposals will repeat or reinforce recommendations made in Chapter 5 (Conditions Assessment), while some remain rooted in actual interpretation. The summary at the end of the document contains all recommendations made, with the source of the recommendation noted so that it is clear which recommendations are based on physical conservation needs and which on interpretive needs. In all cases, the physical conservation recommendations should take priority, but we believe that the interpretive recommendations are significant and should be implemented once the high priority physical challenges have been addressed.

When it acquired Bacon's Castle in 1973, Preservation Virginia (then known as the Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, or APVA) made a very forward-thinking decision by electing to retain the building's 1854 wing. At the time there was a significant push for its removal, supported by a National Park Service analysis of the house and site in 1937. Attention focused on Bacon's Castle's earliest years, treating subsequent changes as outside the period of

significance detracting from the 17th-century appearance of the house.

### Interpretation of Furnishings

APVA's decisions regarding treatment of the interior spaces at Bacon's Castle were informed in large part by the impressive number of surviving Allen family inventories, seven of which exist spanning a period between 1711 and 1871. Each inventory includes a detailed account of each room's contents, providing both a comprehensive list of the family's belongings and an indication of each room's function. Reviewed along their own continuum the inventories provide a glimpse into the evolving and improving fortunes of the Allen family, as more items of finer quality are acquired. Acknowledging that any attempt to "restore" the house to one specific occupation was inadvisable, APVA instead chose to restore and interpret each room individually, based upon the surviving architectural elements. Furnishings for each room reflect this decision and are based upon the actual inventory for that particular period. Many of the furnishings and decorative items on display were taken from the APVA's own collection. The organization also reached out to private collectors and dealers, and worked with artisans (including the textile archives at Brunshawig & Fils) to recreate items that were otherwise unattainable.

### Furnishing "Over the Chamber"

The west room on the second floor, referred to as "over the chamber" in Allen family inventories, is indeed located directly over the large room used as a family living, dining, and sleeping chamber on the first floor and was itself probably used for similar purposes. APVA chose this room to interpret to the late 17<sup>th</sup> century and used Major Arthur Allen's 1711 inventory as a guide to furnishing the space. This was done with the understanding that – regardless of the inventory's early 18<sup>th</sup> century date – Allen was unlikely to have altered his furnishings to any great degree

over the intervening years. According to the inventory, "Over the Chamber" contained the following items:

- *A high bedstead and bed boulder Curtains and Vallains, a Rug, a Blankett, a Quilt, 2 Sheets, 2 Pillows and Cases* £10
- *A truckle bedstead, bed and boulder, Rug, Blankett, Quilt, a pair of Sheets, 2 Pillow Cases and Coverlid* £6
- *A Chest of Drawers a Table and 2 Stans* [sic] £2.15
- *A Looking Glass a Table and Carpitt and a Trunk* £2
- *6 Cain* [sic] *Chairs a pr. Of fire dogs tongs and fire Shovell* £2.17.6
- *A Cotton hammock 2 hackells and 2 Chamber Potts* £1.6
- *6 Small pillows* £1.0.0

Bed furniture and furnishings are by far the most expensive items in the chamber, with the larger costing the princely sum of £10. The "truckle" or trundle bed would have been stored beneath the larger bed and was likely for the use of a child. Both would have included feather mattresses and bolsters (long thick pillows kept at the head of the bed) as well as various coverings. The larger expense for both was likely the associated textiles, especially the curtains and "vallains" or valances that would have hung around the larger bed as well as what one would expect to be high-quality linens. The inventory specifies a "chest of drawers" as well as the simpler and more common lidded "trunk", both used for storage of clothing and linens. One of the two tables was likely used for dressing (in association with the looking glass) while the other was of unknown function. Research indicates that the "2 Stans" mentioned likely refer to stools. The "Cain" chairs reappear in later inventories in which they are noted as having caned backs and bottoms. The presence of a hammock is unusual, but the "hackells" may be associated with the use of the chamber by women who may have taken

opportunities to process flax prior to spinning. The presence of the “Chamber Potts” is both expected and self-explanatory.

### **Furnishing the Hall**

APVA selected this room, used as a more public living and dining area, for interpreting the house’s 18<sup>th</sup> century history using the 1755 inventory of Arthur Smith, Elizabeth Allen’s second husband, who was a wealthy merchant at the time of their marriage. The combination of their fortunes as well as Smith’s access to goods and materials resulted in acquisition of many new items as well as reuse of items from earlier Allen occupations. These included:

- 1 large Pier Glass £2.10.0
- 1 Clock £10.0.0
- 1 old Desk and Book Case £3
- 1 old Cain Couch, Oak frame Squab and Pillows £1
- 1 large Ovall Walnutt Table £2.10.0
- 1 small ditto £1.10.0
- 1 Turnup table £0.15.0
- 1 Tea Table with Toilet China [sic] Tea and Coffee Cups &c £1.10.0
- 1 other Tea Table with China Tea and Coffee Cupps with 1 China bowl £1.10.0
- 4 China Bowls on the Desk and Book case £2.0.0
- 3 Glass Salvers £0.7.6
- 16 Oak fram’d Russia bottomd and back’t Chairs £4.0.0
- 1 pr. old Andirons Tongs and Shovel £1.5.0
- a parcell of old Maps and Prints 46 in all £2.6.0
- Glasses and Earthen ware in the Beaufet [sic] and Sundry other Earthenwares £5.0.0
- Old Callico Curains to 4 Windows £0.5.0
- 1 Silver seal and Violin £1.7.6

By far the most expensive item on the list, the “Clock” was likely as tall or case clock and, like the pier glass, was likely imported from England. The “old” desk and bookcase may have been brought from Smith’s previous home, while the “old Cain Couch” with oak frame and “squab” (mattress) appears in earlier inventories and obviously lost value over the years. The large and small walnut tables were likely used for dining, while the “Turnup” table was likely an occasional piece. “Tea Tables” first appear in family inventories in the early 18<sup>th</sup> century (the “toilet” refers to a cloth placed over the furniture), while the presence of china cups indicates that the family adhered to the English social tradition of tea drinking. These and the “4 China Bowls” were likely Chinese import porcelain and, like the glass salvers (trays), used for both display and entertaining. The sixteen oak “Russia [leather] bottomd and back’t” chairs first appear in family inventories in 1728, while the 42 assorted prints and maps appear in the 1755 inventory for the first time. The “Silver seal and violin” provide a glimpse into the personal lives of the Allen and Smith families.

### **Interpretation of Architecture**

In terms of both physical conservation and narrative interpretation the 1854 wing was minimized, so as not to detract from the 17<sup>th</sup>-century portion of the dwelling. Two trees were planted in front of the 1854 wing to screen its presence (both were damaged in a storm in and later removed, making the 1854 wing more visible than it has been in decades.) The original lime stucco render, scored to imply ashlar masonry, was not maintained or restored, and when shutters deteriorated they were removed rather than replaced. With the 17th-century portion of the residence the focus of activity, both the presence and appearance of the 1854 wing were neglected.

The same approach was taken with the interior of the 1854 wing, the presence of

which was derided in 1937 as “The effect of the house as a whole is difficult to describe because the medieval atmosphere of the old part clashes with the tawdry 19<sup>th</sup> century work on the east side.”<sup>1</sup> Original fabric in the 1854 wing was retained, but generally neither conserved nor directly interpreted. Rooms were repurposed as functional rather than interpretive spaces, and remain in this use today. A portion of the hall is used for a visitor check-in. The two rooms of the double parlor are used as a small lecture / orientation space (at one point a film was shown here) and interpretive gallery. To the rear of the interpretive space, a 20th-century kitchen extension was converted into a gift shop with public restrooms. The two second-floor rooms 1854 are used for a variety of back-of-house functions, including classroom, storage, and general staff use.

The 1854 hyphen presents a similar usage history. The hyphen itself has undergone great physical change, and retains less physical integrity than the remainder of Bacon’s Castle. For that reason, when APVA was evaluating usage of the space during the restoration, the decision was made to insert a modern steel fire stair into the space, cover the walls (with the exception of the masonry of the east chimney) with gypsum boards, and paint the space entirely with neutral-colored paint. The space was intended to be used for emergency egress and as a fire buffer between the 17<sup>th</sup> and 19th-century portions of the building.

The neutral nature of the space was inconsequential as, until quite recently, visitors rarely passed through. Until 2010, visitors entered Bacon’s Castle from the back, by way of the kitchen addition (the original entry was altered into a window in 1854). Visitors passed through the hyphen at the beginning

of the tour, when being taken from the first floor orientation and gift shop areas into the first floor of the 17th-century portion of Bacon’s Castle, and back through the first floor portion of the hyphen to return to the orientation and gift shop area at the conclusion of the tour. Following the 2010 interpretive revision, however, visitors were brought in through the hyphen and taken to the second floor of the 1854 wing before transitioning to the 17th-century portion.

As a result of this alteration, parts of the 19th-century addition were interpreted without being physically restored or presented in an earlier appearance. As such, Bacon’s Castle has the distinction of having more non-interpreted space under cover of the building being interpreted than any other building owned by Preservation Virginia. This is both a blessing and a challenge. We suggest that this might be an interesting time to revisit some of these assumptions, and perhaps embark on a new direction at Bacon’s Castle.

### **Pre- and Post- 2010 Tour Routes**

In 2010, Preservation Virginia undertook a systematic reevaluation of the tours given at Bacon’s Castle. This process was part of an effort to improve the visitor experience in light of the challenges inherent in the interpretation of a house with a long history, a complicated series of physical alterations, and a changing set of historical occupants. One of the most important choices was the critical decision to shift the visitor entry point from the rear of the 1854 wing (through the former kitchen) to the front of the house by way of the hyphen (the only remaining entry door on the front of Bacon’s Castle). This decision addressed some of the interpretive challenges faced by asking visitors to enter at the back of a wing, as far physically and temporally from

---

<sup>1</sup> Victor C. Sloane, “Architectural Report on Bacon’s Castle, Surry County, Virginia. (Jamestown: Colonial National Historical Park, 1937): ADD PAGE REF.

the original entrance to Bacon's Castle as possible.

The post-2010 tour brings visitors into Bacon's Castle through the hyphen, directing them into the 1854 hall where staff organize and lead tours. Visitors are free to await the beginning of the tour by visiting the interpretive area or the gift shop. The tour begins with an orientation in the lecture area (the former double parlor), and then proceeds up the 1854 stairs to the second floor of the wing, entering one room of that floor. The primary interpretive function of this first stop is to allow the visitor to look out the window and see the early 18th-century frame addition to Bacon's Castle, which was relocated to make room for the 1854 wing. The tour then proceeds through the second floor of the hyphen, passing through a steel fire door into the second floor of the 17th-century portion of Bacon's Castle. The primary reason for bringing visitors into the 17th-century section in this manner was to address the fact that the two first floor rooms of the 17th-century area of the house have been physically restored and, in the case of the hall (first floor, east room), furnished to a mid-18<sup>th</sup>-century appearance. By changing the tour path and having the visitor first enter the 17th-century portion of Bacon's Castle by way of the second floor hyphen, the first visitor experience was consistent with the actual age of the building, even though the room over the Hall (second floor, east room)] is not furnished. From there, the visitor is led up to the third floor garret, and then down into cellar (bypassing the first floor) to view the unfurnished kitchen. After viewing the kitchen, the visitor is led back to the first floor, viewing the unfurnished chamber [(first floor, west room) and then the furnished hall (first floor, west room)]. Upon concluding the tour of the 17<sup>th</sup> Century portion of the house, the visitor is led through the first floor of the hyphen back into the orientation and gift shop area.

One of the challenges presented by the post-2010 tour is a sense of temporal confusion. While the visitor encounters the 17<sup>th</sup>-century façade of Bacon's Castle upon entry and, for the first time during interpreted tours at Bacon's Castle, sees the 17th-century portion of the building first, once the tour begins there is chronological mishmash. The visitor encounters the heavily modernized spaces of the hyphen, and most of the rooms in the first and second floors of the 1854 wing, before ever entering the 17th-century area of the building. Entering the second floor, in a way that this house would never have been approached or entered, creates a certain amount of disorientation. It is difficult for the visitor to fully understand where they are, both spatially and temporally. While visiting the 17th-century portion of the house in the current sequence (second floor, third floor, cellar, then first floor), chronology is respected but the standard physical progression through a house is not. The situation is complicated by the fact that portions of the house are unfurnished, making it difficult for visitors to identify and remember spaces by function. No rooms in the cellar are furnished. On the first floor only the hall (first floor, west room) is furnished. On the second floor only the room over the chamber (second floor, west room) is furnished, and in the garret only the room over the entry passage is furnished.

### **Proposed Interpretation**

This proposed interpretation follows the 2010 tour revision's focus on the front of Bacon's Castle, while seeking to clarify the chronological challenges presented by the interpretation of various rooms. This interpretation proposes both physical and interpretive revisions, and places primacy on the retention of physical fabric, especially that of the 17<sup>th</sup> century, and the interpretation of various periods of significance. While physical interventions are proposed, the



proposals are modest and cost effective, with the majority of funds expended to be used on interpretive materials and surface treatments such as period paint colors. The proposal retains physical fabric while emphasizing, through conservation and interpretive material, the contrast between them. This cooperative system is designed to make it easier for visitors to physically differentiate between the periods presented.

With regard to the building's exterior we propose to physically rehabilitate the 1854 wing to emphasize its original appearance. Specifically, we propose restoring the scored, lime stucco render to the exterior of the wing. From a conservation perspective, this brick was originally covered with a lime stucco, and as such was not likely intended to be exposed. The brick appears to be drawing some water into the walls and there is some damage to the surface of the brick, either resulting from roughing up the surface of the brick to receive the stucco or from the removal of the stucco. Furthermore, there will be extensive repairs required to the northeast corner of the building in order to repair the cracking caused by the subsidence there, and the stucco will aid in the visual unification of the wall after the repairs. Following the application of the stucco, shutters designed to match the original shutters should be fabricated and hung. Visually, the building will be returned to more of its 19th-century appearance, with the creation of more visual and temporal contrast between the 19<sup>th</sup>-century wing and the 17<sup>th</sup>-century original building.

We proposed few changes to the exterior appearance of the hyphen. While, from one perspective, recreating the visual appearance of the 19th-century open porch would help to establish visual distinction between the 17<sup>th</sup> and 19th-century portions of the building, the 20th-century changes to the hyphen have allowed for the construction of the interior fire stair. This further allows the interpreters

to discuss the Warren occupation from the exterior. Visitors will continue to enter the building through the hyphen in the newly-proposed interpretation. Physical changes will most likely be limited to improving exterior lighting, and perhaps some discreet signage to direct visitors to this door.



Figure 4.11: Watercolor of Bacon's Castle, by unknown artist, ca. 1815. Preservation Virginia.

On the 17th-century portion of Bacon's Castle, we propose that the original entrance be restored, and that visitors enter the 17th-century area through this newly-restored door. Few interventions would help to reestablish the primacy of the 17th-century portion of the building as entering the building through a restored front door. We propose using the ca. 1815 watercolor as the basis for the restoration, fully recognizing the limited visual and physical information that survives. We propose reconstruction of a door frame and uncovered porch deck, as depicted in the ca. 1815 watercolor. The porch deck should be constructed so that it is not tied into the 17th-century walls of Bacon's Castle. To the degree possible it should be treated as a free-standing, adjacent foundation. Appropriate archaeology should be constructed before any

below-grade disturbance in the vicinity. If, as required by code or for structural reasons, the deck must be tied into the 17th-century walls of Bacon's Castle, this should be accomplished in the least disturbing way possible. Ideally this construction would be reversible (such as making attachments through existing brick joints). The door frame itself should be designed to match that depicted in the watercolor as closely as possible, and should be attached as lightly, and as reversibly, as possible to the 17th-century walls. For example, some sort of backer board could be employed to create a stand-off, and attachments to the 17<sup>th</sup>-century walls should be made into existing brick joints. While the brick below the existing 1854 window frame must be removed to restore it to a door opening, this would yield approximately 2.5 square feet of brick, and would be the only physical material removed in the proposed restoration. The 1854 window frame should be stored on site. A new door would have to be fabricated although the lack of documentary and physical evidence presents a challenge. The recommended path would be to design a door that is in the character of the original and of similar doors on houses of the same date, with the obvious qualifier that there are very few doors of this date in this country. The ideal result would be a simple approximation that could be changed or replaced in the future as new information or interpretive needs arise. We believe that this would restore the primacy of presence to the 17th-century portion of Bacon's Castle.

To accompany these exterior physical changes, we propose a series of corresponding interior physical changes. The visitor would continue to initially enter through the hyphen, proceed to the hall of the 1854 addition, and receive orientation in the double parlor of the 1854 wing. However, we propose a series of physical changes to the hyphen and 1854 wing

to improve the quality of the visitor experience.

The hyphen is the first portion of the house's interior that the visitor experiences, both since the post-2010 interpretive changes and in the changes proposed here (see Appendix 10 for drawings of existing and proposed museum tour routes). Unfortunately, the first interior space that the visitor sees retains the least amount of historic fabric in the building: the ca. 1990 fire stair, a steel stair of no architectural character. Similarly, the walls are clad in gypsum board, and the stairs and walls are painted tan and white, presumably to make them as inconspicuous as possible. There are no interpretive materials present. We propose adapting this space into a modern, exciting interpretation / gallery space, to provide a visually exciting and informative introduction for the visitor. The fire stair should be painted a series of bright, vibrant colors. Similarly, the modern metal fire doors should be painted in bright, contrasting colors, and should receive modern hardware. The space should receive additional lighting; the stair could be lit in an exciting way, and the walls washed with light to illuminate the proposed interpretive material to be mounted there. The walls should be hung with museum-quality interpretive boards, explaining Bacon's Castle, the site, the restoration, archaeology, and other topics of interest. The long, horizontal space above the east door to the 1854 addition should receive a detailed timeline of the construction, occupation, and restoration of the house. The space could also receive a large flat-screen, on which a series of historic photographs and drawings could be shown. The idea would be to create a visually distinct, visually exciting, and information-rich space that serves as a transitional area between the 17th-century and 19th-century portions of Bacon's Castle.



### Proposed Interpretive Changes

In the hyphen, we propose installing a timeline that will establish the chronological interpretive program for the building. In order to present Bacon's Castle to visitors in a logical, orderly manner, we propose the following. Each space in Bacon's Castle should be interpreted to one of three time periods: 1) late 17<sup>th</sup> century, 2) late 18<sup>th</sup> century, and 3) late 19<sup>th</sup> century. The first two periods will be interpreted in the original portion of Bacon's Castle, while the late 19<sup>th</sup> century period will be interpreted in the 19<sup>th</sup> century wing. By focusing on these three periods, the major occupations of the house will be interpreted in a manner clearly focused on the surviving architectural material and the building as restored in 1981-84.

The first floor should be interpreted to the late 18<sup>th</sup> century period, as this corresponds to the decision to restore Bacon's Castle to reflect the hall-passage-parlor configuration to which the building was modified in the 18<sup>th</sup> century. We propose that the parlor remain interpreted as a dining space. We propose furnishing (see discussion below on reproduction and ghosted furniture) the passage and chamber as they would have been furnished in the late 18<sup>th</sup> century and as reflected in the late 18<sup>th</sup> century inventories. We believe that attempting to furnish Bacon's Castle with correct period furniture is an unattainable goal, and propose the use of reproduction furniture and objects when available. with ghosted furniture and objects otherwise. Otherwise, we recommend ghosted furnishings (chairs, chests, tables, storage boxes, etc. that are mere frames wrapped in a neutral-colored muslin cloth, to suggest the number and scale of objects in the space, but not to suggest detail or color). By doing this, Preservation Virginia can inexpensively suggest the furnishing of the spaces in Bacon's Castle, and present the visitor with a sense of how crowded the spaces were, and the variety of functions

performed in the spaces. One space (the parlor) would be fully furnished according to the late 18<sup>th</sup> century inventories, the chamber would be furnished primarily with ghosted furniture and objects, as would the passage.

This interpretive program would be extended to the second floor, interpreting this to the late 17<sup>th</sup> century period. The room over the chamber would remain furnished and interpreted as a late 17<sup>th</sup> century bedchamber, while the room over the parlor would be interpreted as a late 17<sup>th</sup> century bedchamber as occupied during Bacon's Rebellion. This would give Preservation Virginia the opportunity to fully interpret Bacon's Rebellion in a clear and direct manner. We propose interpreting the room as it would have appeared during the occupation (broken furniture, wine bottles, cloth and other materials looted from elsewhere in the house, and other material artifacts associated with the men who occupied the house, such as clothes, bedrolls, food, weapons, and other objects associated with the occupation). The objects could be a combination of ghosted objects and broken tables and chairs reflecting the damage done to Bacon's Castle during the occupation. At present, there is nothing in Bacon's Castle to aid in the interpretation of Bacon's Rebellion.

The garret would continue this interpretive theme, focusing on either its late 17<sup>th</sup> century or late 18<sup>th</sup> century appearance, furnishing and interpreting it as a storage area, and a place for the enslaved to sleep.

In the cellar, the interpretive focus would be on the kitchen, using the 1711 inventory to focus on the late 17<sup>th</sup> century period. In this space, a combination of reproductive and ghosted furniture and objects could be used to suggest the crowded, busy nature of the kitchen. Wall-mounted interpretation could highlight the experience of the African enslaved workers who prepared and served



foods for the household, as well as to discuss the archaeological findings related to the late 18<sup>th</sup> century exterior kitchen.

The late 19<sup>th</sup> century interpretation would focus on the 19<sup>th</sup> century wing, and would consist largely of the utilization of late 19<sup>th</sup> century paint colors to help to differentiate the spaces from the earlier portions of Bacon's Castle. Judicious use of late 19<sup>th</sup> century light fixtures and limited pieces of furniture and decorative objects could be employed to help to reinforce the date of the wing. The south room of the double parlor should continue to be used as a lecture area, while the north room of the double parlor should continue to be used as a general interpretive space. We recommend the extensive use of the north space to interpret the archaeology of Bacon's Castle, using a combination of recovered artifacts and interpretive panels to discuss the many aspects of Bacon's Castle that can only be understood through archaeology.

### Proposed Physical Changes

The proposed physical changes for the interior of the 1854 wing are presented in the same spirit. No architectural interventions are recommended, but physical changes should be made to accentuate the 19<sup>th</sup>-century physical appearance of the spaces. Paint analysis should be undertaken, or characteristic period colors introduced into the spaces, with the goal of creating greater physical distinction between them and the 17<sup>th</sup>-century spaces. At present, all walls are painted off-white, which creates a fictitious uniformity. Distinct colors would help to distinguish the 19<sup>th</sup>-century portions from the 17<sup>th</sup>-century portions. Similarly, period light fixtures could be introduced to help maintain this distinction, and a few distinctive mid-19<sup>th</sup>-century pieces of furniture could be introduced to help to maintain the visual distinction. The changes to the hyphen and 1854 wing would help to establish them as

distinctive pieces of architecture in their own right, and create visual contrast between them and the 17<sup>th</sup>-century wing.

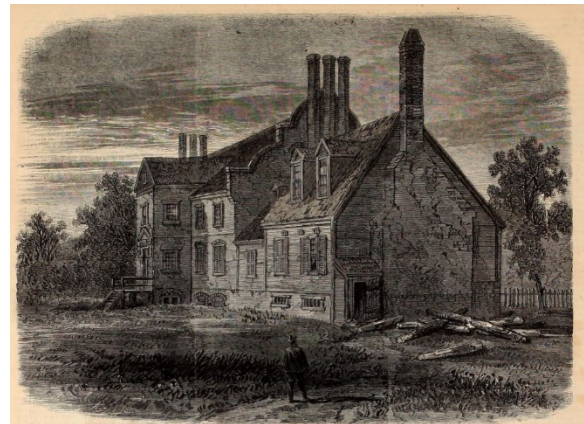


Figure 4.xx: Bacon's Castle, from Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper, 8 September 1868. While published in 1868, the view depicts a pre-1854 condition, before the relocation of 18C wing and the construction of the 1854 wing.

After payment of entry fees and orientation in the 1854 wing, we propose that the visitor be taken back outside to the front of Bacon's Castle. While there, the visitor may be told about the various periods of construction and occupancy while viewing building in its entirety. The visitors would then enter Bacon's Castle through the restored front door.

Once inside, the chronological challenge of the 18<sup>th</sup>-century appearance of the Hall and Parlor remains. To address that and assist with orientation, we recommend the use of interpretive materials throughout the house, including a floor plan posted in every space indicating where the visitor is. To supplement this, we recommend the use of three-dimensional illustrated room restorations to be installed in each space (in the form of physical boards or flat screens with projected images). Through the use of this interpretative material, each space could be digitally interpreted at mid-17<sup>th</sup> century, mid-18<sup>th</sup> century, and mid-19<sup>th</sup> century periods. The tour should begin on the ground floor,

proceed to the second floor and the garret, then descend to the cellar, returning finally to the first floor. At this point, and with proper coordination with tour schedules, the tour could cross back through the hyphen and leave the visitors in the orientation / gift shop area. We believe that this tour route would follow a logical progression through the house, and give visitors a more natural framework by which to understand and absorb their experience.

### **ADA Accommodation**

This proposed route would also give visitors with mobility issues a more natural path through, and experience of, the building. Visitors using wheelchairs, for example, would continue to enter by way of the existing ramp to the gift shop. At present the tour begins by taking visitors up to the second floor of the 1854 wing. With the proposed route, a visitor in a wheelchair could be taken through the hyphen to the passage behind the restored front door of the 17th-century portion of Bacon's Castle. The visitor would then be able to immediately join the tour at the very beginning and experience the entire first floor with the tour group. When the tour goes up to the second floor of Bacon's Castle, the wheelchair-utilizing visitor could return to the hyphen and, utilizing the graphic panels and flat screen projection there, experience the tour in progress above and below. When the tour concludes, the group would reconvene in the hyphen, resulting in a tour experience that is more inclusive.

## Interpretation of Everyday Life

Beverly A. Straube, PhD, FSA

*The James River Institute for Archaeology*

Interpretation of an historic building is often greatly enhanced by the knowledge gained from a series of room-by-room inventories. In the case of Bacon's Castle, these document the furnishings present in each room through time, and the roles that these objects played in the changing functions of the spaces. The first inventory (1711) lists the materials probably assembled when the house was built in 1665. There is a second inventory of 1728 with very little change, which suggests that the rhythms of daily life were much the same. Dramatic change is visible in the inventory of 1755, however. Alterations to the building itself are accompanied (and reflected) by the replacement of antiquated pieces of furniture with newly acquired objects.

Currently two period rooms are furnished. The inventory of 1755 was used to populate the hall, and the inventory of 1711 to furnish the room over the chamber on the second floor. The east garret room is empty and the other rooms in this space have a collection of odd furniture. However, the "stage-set" approach using a few objects to interpret 17<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup>-century life, room by room, at Bacon's Castle is static and even misleading. Using relevant material culture is good, but the interpretations should not be object-centered. The objects should correspond to ideas or important issues such as slavery and servitude, the politics of Major Allen during the events of Bacon's Rebellion and the subsequent impact on the house, the roles of women, changing indications of status through the centuries, evolving ideas of comfort and privacy, the role of the merchant planter in the 17<sup>th</sup> century, and the results of archaeological investigations at Bacon's Castle.

At present, the rooms are neat and tidy. Presentation would be much enhanced if techniques such as those used at the Dennis Severs House in Spitalfields, London, were used. Rooms are presented as if the occupants just left them, with the mess of everyday lives – the shoes lying by the bed, the fan dropped to the floor by the chair, a book open on the table, childrens' toys scattered about, elements of clothing draped over furniture, etc.



Figure 4.1: Dennis Severs House, interpretation of everyday life.



Figure 4.2: Dennis Severs House, interpretation of everyday life.

Having the 17<sup>th</sup> and 18<sup>th</sup>-century rooms separated by floors misses an opportunity to show the visitor how the function of each room changed through time and how this is reflected in the furnishings. One possibility might be to have virtual reality glasses that visitors could wear in each room that would show how the room would have looked in a

different century. Alternately, color graphics could be produced showing the room as it would have appeared in the century not interpreted by the actual physical objects (see image below). The docent may then explain the development of (and difference between) public and private spaces.



Figure 4.3: Computer modeling attempt to furnish the hall using the 1711 inventory by Scott Strickland. (<https://stricklandarchaeology.wordpress.com/virtual-reconstruction>).

The evolution of the hall from 17<sup>th</sup> century all-purpose living room accessible to everyone to a more specialized space between the home's public and private spaces in the mid-18<sup>th</sup> century is an important transition. In Bacon's Castle, as in many buildings, this was achieved by the addition of a partition that created a hallway into which visitors would enter wait until being invited into the house proper. As Cary Carson (2013: 26) explained in *The Chesapeake House*, "Partitions and furnishings drew border lines between public entertaining rooms and private family apartments and between those various superior spaces and the netherworld of cellars, backrooms, and outbuildings inhabited by an increasingly invisible servant underclass."

### Cellar

Underutilization of this space results in a missed opportunity to talk about the presence of slaves in the household. There is documentary evidence of slave labor at

Bacon's Castle beginning in 1680, and by the end of the decade enslaved workers had started to replace white servants in the household. In 1688, of 11 adult laborers present no more than 3 were white. In 1689, labor was provided by 10 enslaved servants; in 1694, there were 12 slaves; in 1700, 13 adult slaves of which nine were male and four female; and in 1709 there were 28 slaves, 10 of which were probably children.

The cellar room with the large fireplace could be interpreted as the kitchen. Archaeology has suggested that there was a kitchen building exterior to the house, but it would not be unusual to have two work spaces with large fireplaces. It is possible that one or both areas also served as a laundry where large vats of water would be heated. In either case, it would be a space that would have been used and occupied by enslaved and/or indentured servants. The cellar kitchen could be furnished with a large wooden work table that is covered with a variety of wooden, earthenware, and metal vessels. Iron cauldrons, spits, trammels, and many of the other objects listed in the kitchen inventory including "a parcel of lumber" could enhance this interpretation. Objects should not be neatly arranged. Consider an imitation fire in the fireplace. Dried bunches of culinary and medicinal herbs should be hung from the ceiling. The rest of the cellar should have many more wine bottles, tubs, casks and stoneware and earthenware vessels to interpret use of this space as cool storage for goods. Consider mounting a board-and-batten door on the inside of the kitchen to mark where the original entrance to the kitchen was.



Figure 4.4: Model kitchen interpretation.



Figure 4.5: "Kitchen at Mount Vernon," Eastman Johnson 1857



Figure 4.6: Bacon's Castle kitchen. The lack of kitchen implements and interpretation material make it difficult to interpret the space as a working kitchen.

### First Floor Chamber

The first floor chamber, currently empty, could be used as a space for interpretation of the women resident at Bacon's Castle and the roles they fulfilled. The 1711 inventory

indicates a still located in this space. This could be a small portable unit that was used to distill herbs from the garden to make medicinal substances, an activity performed by women in the colonial period, or perhaps a larger unit used to produce alcoholic beverages, again an activity in which women engaged. Historian Julie Richter has even suggested that it was the presence of women, including their work in producing alcoholic drinks, that may finally have brought health to the early Virginia colony. Biographical information about some of Bacon's Castle's women, particularly Elizabeth Allen Smith and perhaps Virginia Hankins, could be presented.

Alternatively, this space could be used to interpret rebel occupation of the house during Bacon's Rebellion. The rebels stuffed pillow cases with goods – this could be shown as well as loads of wine bottles (some broken on the floor) and cattle bones (the remnants of their meals). The room would be shown in great disarray. This interpretive choice would provide an opportunity to discuss the partisan views of the homeowner and the subsequent problems it caused him, as well as wider discussions of 17th-century politics in Virginia. If not used in this area, the Rebellion should be interpreted somewhere in the house

### Archaeology

The vast range of information obtained through archaeological research at Bacon's Castle deserves its own interpretation. There are many excellent graphics that may be enlarged and presented as wall or other panels, and artifacts recovered from the property may be presented in a manner that takes advantage of their physical, tangible presence. The archaeological history of Bacon's Castle, including the wonderful garden, is both rich and varied, and may be conveyed in a more compelling and thorough manner.

## Chapter Five

### Bacon's Castle Architectural Evaluation

#### Exterior Description

Constructed of brick in English bond, it is two stories in height over a raised basement, with an attic topped by a steep gable “double” (principal and common rafter) roof. The basement is set apart by a stepped water table, and is lit by shallow windows currently covered with wooden louvers. At some point the basement windows’ original brick segmental arches were replaced with flat arches, with the exception of the west end of the north elevation which retains its original arch but no longer contains a window. A plastered belt course delineates the first and second floors. The roof, with its graceful curved or “Flemish” gable ends, and the triple chimneys, each turned on point, are its most apparent decorative features. High towers, one at the front containing the porch and one at the rear containing a stair, give the building both mass and grandeur not at all typical of the few other surviving large masonry dwellings from this period.

The south (primary) façade of Bacon’s Castle is five bays wide and contains one of the two projecting towers that lend the building its monumentality. This tower contains the original entryway which, although replaced in 1854 with a window, retains its decorative stuccoed pediment. The remainder of the door surround was likely also removed in 1854, but evidence of its presence remains visible on the masonry wall to either side of the original door opening. Above the entryway is small chamber. The tower is topped with a simple gable roof with weatherboards on the gable end. The windows at Bacon’s Castle were originally leaded casements, replaced around the 1850s with wood double-hung sash windows in the Greek Revival style, with bulls-eye corner

blocks which required lengthening of the window openings on the first floor. The first-floor windows are topped by brick segmental arches of alternating headers and stretchers, while the windows on the second floor are set within plastered brick surrounds. The north (rear) façade was originally three bays wide, including the rear stair tower. At some point in the 18<sup>th</sup> century, however, the first-floor windows flanking the stair tower were removed and the openings infilled with brick, and two new windows set in line with those in the south façade were cut in. The second-floor windows flanking the stair tower are in their original locations, although those in the tower itself are not. Unlike the primary façade, the gable end of the rear tower is of brick, and there is no plastered belt course between stories. On the gable ends the small attic windows flanking the chimneys are in their original locations.

#### South Elevation (Primary)



Figure 5.1, Bacon’s Castle, South elevation.

The 1950s addition is obscured by the ca. 1665 building, hyphen, and ca. 1854 addition. It is not visible from the south.

#### *Chimney:*

Six exterior end chimneys (three on the east and west ends of the dwelling) are present on the ca. 1665 building. The chimneys are rotated so that the corners of the chimneys point toward the cardinal directions of the

dwelling, and are structurally independent from one another and the stepped curvilinear parapet walls. The west chimney is torqueing away from the building and presents a safety hazard.

Two interior end chimneys are present on the east end of the ca. 1854 addition. A parge coat has been applied to these chimneys. The chimneys have been structurally reinforced through the addition of steel tie backs to the roof structure.

*Roof:*

The cross-gable roof of the ca. 1665 building is roofed with sawn clear Western Red Cedar shingles. Elaborate, curvilinear stepped parapets are located at the east and west gables ends of the ca. 1665 building. No gutters or downspouts are located on the ca. 1665 building.

The hyphen (low-sloped gable) and the ca. 1854 portion of the building (hipped) are roofed with standing seam metal. The hyphen roof was replaced in the 1980s under the ownership of Preservation Virginia and has an exterior gutter and downspouts. The roof of the ca.1854 addition has received an elastomeric coating. The metal roofing beneath is rusting through the coating.



Figure 5.2, Bacon's Castle, South elevation, detail of cornice and parapet, roof shingles, and chimneys.

*Cornice:*

A simple wooden sawn cornice, punctuated with the exposed ends of the principle rafters,



is located on the ca. 1665 portion of the building. The hyphen contains a narrow two-part cornice with minimal detail. The cornice on the ca. 1854 addition has been replaced with a wide African mahogany cornice with a profile similar to the original. The 1854 addition also contains an integrated gutter system.



Figure 5.3, Bacon's Castle, South elevation ca. 1665 building, note the profile of the window trim, the beginning of the stepped parapet wall, the lack of gutters on the ca. 1665 building, and the gutter located on the hyphen.



Figure 5.4, Bacon's Castle, South elevation ca. 1665 building, detail of wall.



Figure 5.5, Bacon's Castle, South elevation ca. 1665 building, detail of string course.



Figure 5.6, Bacon's Castle, South elevation ca. 1665 building, detail of ca. 1665 masonry. Note the redwashed joints and evidence of lime penciling.

*Wall:*

The wall of the ca. 1665 portion is comprised of brick laid in English bond, in fair condition, with various generations of repointing visible throughout the elevation. A few vitrified headers are present, especially on

the south tower. A water table is present approximately three feet above grade and a string course is present approximately thirteen feet above the grade. Biological growth is prominent on the ca. 1665 building, but is typically limited to the area below the water table. The brick and mortar located above the string course is less weathered than the brick found beneath the string course. Some early, perhaps original, lime and shell mortar is present in this location. A portion of this early mortar shows signs of a red wash and lime-penciled joints. There are areas of extreme mortar loss, with mortar completely missing in some areas, especially around pocketed structural components. In some cases, a carpenter's rule could be inserted through the entire wall.



Figure 5.7, Bacon's Castle, South elevation ca. 1665 building, extreme mortar loss. In this instance, the carpenter's rule was inserted through the entire wall (approx. 18" thick at this location), and was visible from the interior of the castle.

The wall of the hyphen is comprised of brick laid in Flemish bond, and is in good condition. The brick of the ca. 1854 addition is comprised of brick laid in common bond with sixth course headers.





Figure 5.8, Bacon's Castle, South elevation, ca. 1665 building, first floor window.

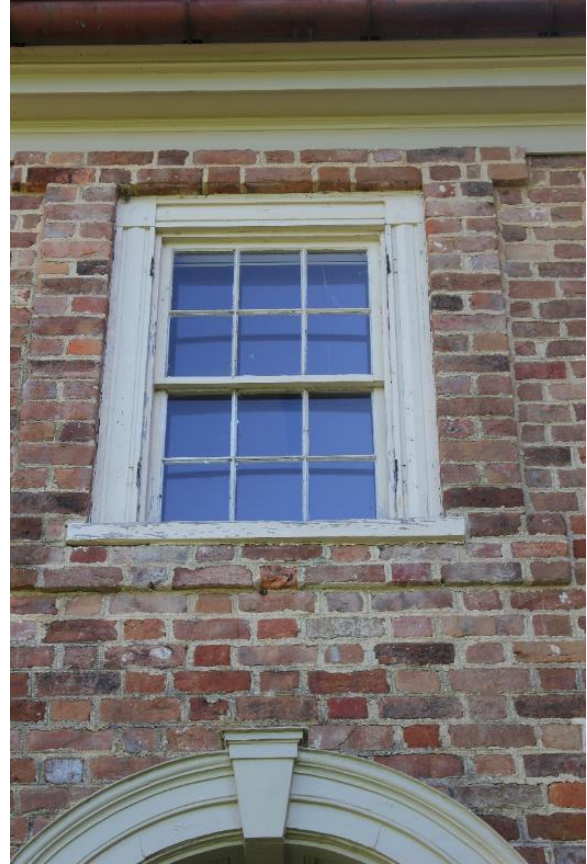


Figure 5.10, Bacon's Castle, South elevation, hyphen, second floor window.



Figure 5.9, Bacon's Castle, South elevation, ca. 1665 building, second floor window.

*Windows:*

None of the windows on the ca. 1665 building are original to the dwelling. The basement windows were restored after Preservation Virginia took ownership of the property. These windows, which have a segmental arch top, are wooden and louvered. They are not in vertical alignment with the first and second floor windows. The first floor windows are double-hung six over nine wooden windows with segmental arch tops. The second floor windows are six over six double-hung wooden windows. The windows possess shutter hinges, although all shutters have been removed from the building. Jacobean brick enframements (borders of projecting brick) are located on the windows and have been parged in concrete. Only one window is present on the south elevation of the hyphen. It is of a similar scale and

proportionate to the second floor windows of the ca. 1665 portion of the building. This window even possesses a replicated Jacobean brick enframement similar to those on the ca. 1665 building, although this enframement lacks the concrete parge coat found on the building's second floor windows.



Figure 5.11, Bacon's Castle, South elevation, ca. 1854 addition, second floor window.

Three double-hung six over six windows are located on the basement level of the 1854 addition.

Three windows are located on the first and second floors of the south elevation of the ca. 1854 addition. Each set of three are wooden double-hung six over six windows, which are much larger than those found on the castle and the hyphen.



Figure 5.12, Bacon's Castle, South elevation, detail of main museum entry.

#### *Doors:*

The main entry door is a wood six-panel door with a brass knocker and hardware. A semi-circular fanlight with ogee-arch tracery is located above the door. The door and fanlight are recessed in a broad pedimented paneling. The door has a wooden threshold, which is in poor condition due to water damage. The threshold is missing the majority of its paint. This door provides the main entry into the museum.

Evidence of a previous porch is located on the south elevation of the south tower. The outline of the porch roof is visible on this wall.



Figure 5.13, Bacon's Castle, South elevation, detail of ghosting of previous porch roof.



Figure 5.14, Bacon's Castle, South elevation, present porch.

*Porch:*

The porch is comprised of brick, laid in a common bond. The porch floor is brick pavers laid in a double-basketweave pattern. Broad stairs connect the grade up to the porch. A simple wrought-iron railing is located on the steps and porch.



Figure 5.15, Bacon's Castle, South elevation, detail of foundation.

*Foundation:*

The foundation of the ca. 1665 building, the hyphen, and the ca. 1854 addition are brick. A French drain is located around the perimeter of the ca. 1665 building. Biological growth is present on the foundation of the castle, and generally dissipates above the water table.



Figure 5.16, Bacon's Castle, South elevation, detail of cardinal directions plaque.



Figure 5.17, Bacon's Castle, South elevation, detail of National Historic Landmark plaque.



Figure 5.18, Bacon's Castle, Site. South elevation, view south.

*Site:*

Minimal plantings are located near the south elevation, with a few English boxwoods planted near the ca. 1854 addition. The site is primarily grass, with a gravel walkway leading to the main entry from the gravel parking area located southeast from the dwelling. A decorative concrete pad outlining the cardinal directions is located directly in front of the porch stairs.

A plaque on a small brick pier outlining the National Historic Landmark status of the property is located south of the castle.

## North Elevation



Figure 5.19, Bacon's Castle, North elevation.

### *Chimney:*

Six exterior end chimneys (three each on the east and west ends of the dwelling) are present on the ca. 1665 building. The chimneys are rotated so that the corners of the chimneys point toward the cardinal directions of the dwelling, and are structurally independent from one another and the stepped curvilinear parapet walls. The west chimney is torqueing away from the building and presents a safety hazard.

Two interior end chimneys are present on the east end of the ca. 1854 addition. A parge coat has been applied to these chimneys. The chimneys have been structurally reinforced through the addition of steel tie backs to the roof structure.



Figure 5.20, Bacon's Castle, North elevation, detail of parapets.

*Roof:* The cross-gable roof of the ca. 1665 building is roofed with sawn clear Western Red Cedar shingles. A simple brick parapet is located at the stair tower and conceals the gable end of the roof. The top edge of the parapet is punctuated with a course of rowlock bricks. Several of the bricks have fallen off the parapet and much of the mortar around the rowlocks is missing. Elaborate, curvilinear stepped parapets are located at the east and west gables ends of the ca. 1665 building. No gutters or downspouts are located on the ca. 1665 building.

The hyphen (low-sloped gable) and the ca. 1854 portion of the building (hipped) are roofed with standing seam metal. The 1950s kitchen addition (low-sloped shed roof) is also roofed with standing seam metal. The roof of 1854 addition has received an elastomeric coating. The metal roofing beneath is rusting through the coating.

### *Cornice:*

A simple wooden sawn cornice, punctuated with the exposed ends of the principle rafters, is located on the ca. 1665 portion of the building. The hyphen contains a narrow two-part cornice with minimal detail. The cornice on ca. 1854 addition has been replaced with a wide African mahogany cornice with a profile similar to the original. The 1854 addition also contains an integrated gutter system.

Although it smaller than the cornices found elsewhere on the dwelling, the cornice of the ca. 1950s kitchen addition is the most elaborate. The 1950s kitchen addition has an external gutter system and downspouts.

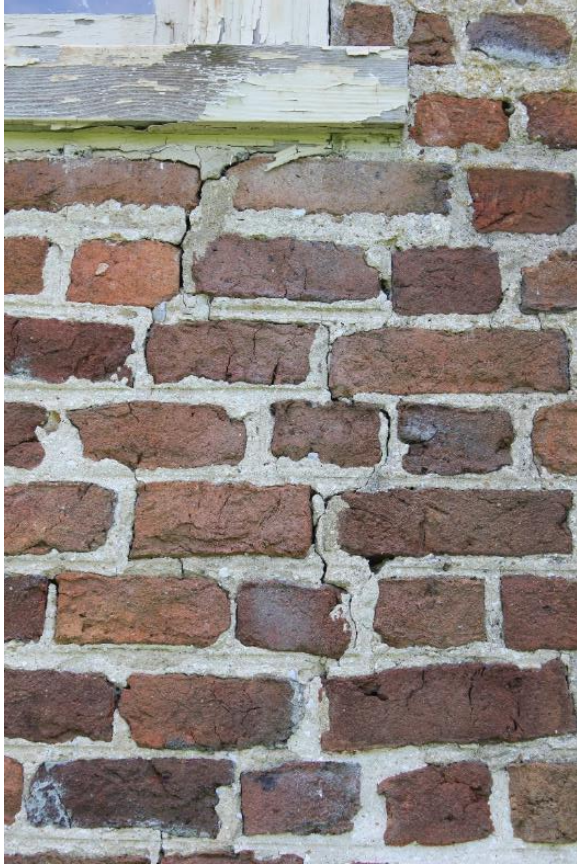


Figure 5.21, Bacon's Castle, North elevation, detail of masonry wall. Note the cracked mortar.



Figure 5.22, Bacon's Castle, South Elevation, restoration mortar.

### *Wall:*

The wall of the ca. 1665 portion is comprised of brick laid in English bond, in fair condition, with various generations of repointing visible throughout the elevation. A few vitrified headers are present, but are less prevalent on the north elevation than on the

south elevation. A water table is present approximately three feet above grade and a string course is present approximately thirteen feet above the grade. Biological growth is prominent on the ca. 1665 building, but is typically limited to the area below the water table. The brick and mortar located above the string course is less weathered than the brick found beneath the string course. Some early, perhaps original, lime and shell mortar is present in this location. A portion of this early mortar shows signs of a red wash and lime-penciled joints.

The wall of the hyphen is comprised of brick laid in Flemish bond, and is in good condition. The brick of the ca. 1854 addition is comprised of brick laid in common bond with sixth course headers. Visible settling is occurring in the northeast corner of the ca. 1854 addition. Cracking and shearing of bricks is visible underneath the eastern most windows on the north elevation.

The brick wall of the ca. 1950s addition is also laid in common bond with sixth course headers.



Figure 5.23, Bacon's Castle, North elevation, detail of ca. 1854 addition second floor window. Note the sheared bricks beneath the lower right corner of the window and the separation of the wall from the window frame on the left side of the window. Efflorescence is also present beneath the lower left corner of the window.

*Windows:*

None of the windows on the ca. 1665 building are original to the dwelling. The basement windows were restored after Preservation Virginia took ownership of the property. The basement windows, which have a segmental arch top, are wooden and louvered. They are not in vertical alignment with the first and second floor windows. The first floor windows are double-hung six over nine wooden windows. The easternmost and westernmost windows do not align with the segmental arches located on the elevation. The second floor windows are six over six double-hung wooden windows. One striking anomaly is the presence of a jack arch above

the garret level window on the north elevation. All windows possess shutter hinges, although all shutters have been removed from the building.



Figure 5.24, Bacon's Castle, North elevation, detail of first floor window. Note the window does not align with the segmental arch.



Figure 5.25, Bacon's Castle, North elevation, detail of south tower, garrett level window. Note the jack arch.

Only one window is present on the south elevation of the hyphen. It is unlike any of the windows on the rest of the dwelling, being a nine over six double-hung window. The 1950s addition west wall slightly overlaps the window head. A small mechanical louver is present at the basement level of the hyphen.



Figure 5.26, Bacon's Castle, North elevation, detail of ca. 1854 addition basement window. Note the extreme biological growth on the window frame, sash, glass, and sill.

One double-hung six over six window is located on the basement level of the 1854 addition.

The four windows located on the first and second floors of the north elevation of the ca. 1854 addition are wooden double-hung six over six windows, which are much larger than those found on the castle and the hyphen.

Two six over six double-hung windows are located on the ca. 1950s kitchen addition. The broad window head and lengthy sills are similar to those found on the ca. 1854 addition, although the window proportions are not similar.





Figure 5.27, Bacon's Castle, South elevation, detail ghosting of previous porch. Note the bricked-in bulkhead door.

*Doors:*

A modern door located on the north elevation of the kitchen is the only entrance on the north elevation. The door has two parallel raised panels located beneath a nine-light window. The door is flanked on either side by coach lights. Previous bulkhead doors were located on the east and west wing of the ca. 1665 portion of the dwelling, although they have been bricked in. ghosting of a previous porch roof is present over the bricked-in bulkhead door. The bulkhead steps were discovered during archaeological excavations in the area.



Figure 5.28, Bacon's Castle, North elevation, wooden porch and ADA-accessible ramp.

*Porch:*

A modern wooden painted porch is located at the 1950s kitchen entrance. In 2015 a handicapped ramp was constructed with pressure-treated lumber off the eastern side of the porch.



Figure 5.29, Bacon's Castle, North elevation, detail of foundation. Note the biological growth.

*Foundation:*

The foundations of the ca 1665 building, the hyphen, and the ca. 1854 addition are brick. A French drain is located around the perimeter of the ca. 1665 building. Biological growth is present on the foundation, and generally dissipates above the water table.



Figure 5.30, Bacon's Castle, North elevation, site, view southeast.



Figure 5.31, Bacon's Castle, North elevation, site, view north.

*Site:*

Minimal plantings are located near the north elevation. The majority of the site is in grass, with several mature trees present. A white post-and-rail wooden fence is located north of the building and runs parallel to it. Just north of the fence is a group of 18<sup>th</sup> - 20<sup>th</sup> century outbuildings including a smokehouse, slave quarters, several barns and sheds, and a well house.

## East Elevation



Figure 5.32, Bacon's Castle, East elevation.

The ca. 1665 portion of the dwelling, as well as the hyphen, is predominantly obscured by the ca. 1854 addition which dominates the east elevation.



Figure 5.33, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, 1950s kitchen addition.



Figure 5.34, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, ca. 1665 south tower.



Figure 5.35, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, ca. 1665 north tower.



Figure 5.36, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, ca. 1854 addition chimney detail.

#### *Chimney:*

Two interior end chimneys are present on the east end of the ca. 1854 addition. A parge coat has been applied to the chimneys. The chimneys have been structurally reinforced through the addition of steel tie backs to the roof structure.



Only the tallest portion of the eastern chimneys on the ca. 1665 dwelling are visible.

#### *Roof:*

The cross-gable roof of the ca. 1665 building is roofed with sawn clear Western Red Cedar shingles. A simple brick parapet is located at the stair tower and conceals the gable end of the roof. The top edge of the parapet is punctuated with a course of rowlock bricks. Several of the bricks have fallen from the parapet and much of the mortar around the rowlocks is missing. Elaborate, curvilinear stepped parapets are located at the east and west gables ends of the ca. 1665 building. No gutters or downspouts are located on the ca. 1665 building.

The 1950s kitchen addition (low-sloped shed roof) is roofed with standing seam metal. The roof of the 1854 addition has received an elastomeric coating, and the metal roofing beneath is rusting through.

#### *Cornice:*

The cornice on the towers of the ca. 1665 portion of the castle is a simple sawn wooden board that has received a coat of paint. The cornice on the ca. 1854 addition has been replaced with a wide African mahogany cornice with a profile similar to the original. The 1854 addition also contains an integrated gutter system. Although it is smaller than the cornices found elsewhere on the dwelling, the cornice of the ca. 1950s kitchen addition is the most elaborate. The 1950s kitchen addition also has an external gutter system and downspouts.



Figure 5.37, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, detail of masonry wall.



Figure 5.38, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, detail of masonry wall. Note mortar loss.

*Wall:*

The wall of the ca. 1665 portion is comprised of brick laid in English bond, in fair condition, with various generations of repointing visible on the east tower elevations. A few vitrified headers are present. A water table is present approximately three feet above grade. Biological growth is prominent on the ca. 1665 building, but is typically limited to the area below the water table. The brick and mortar located above the string course is less weathered than the brick found beneath the string course. Some early, perhaps original, lime and shell mortar is present in this location. A portion of this early mortar shows signs of a red wash and lime-penciled joints.

The wall of the hyphen is comprised of brick laid in Flemish bond, and is in good

condition. The brick of the ca. 1854 addition is comprised of brick laid in common bond with sixth course headers. Visible settling is occurring in the northeast corner of the ca. 1854 addition. The northernmost windows on the east elevation are visibly out of plumb, as the northern portion of the east wall is settling.

The brick wall of the ca. 1950s addition is also laid in common bond with sixth course headers.

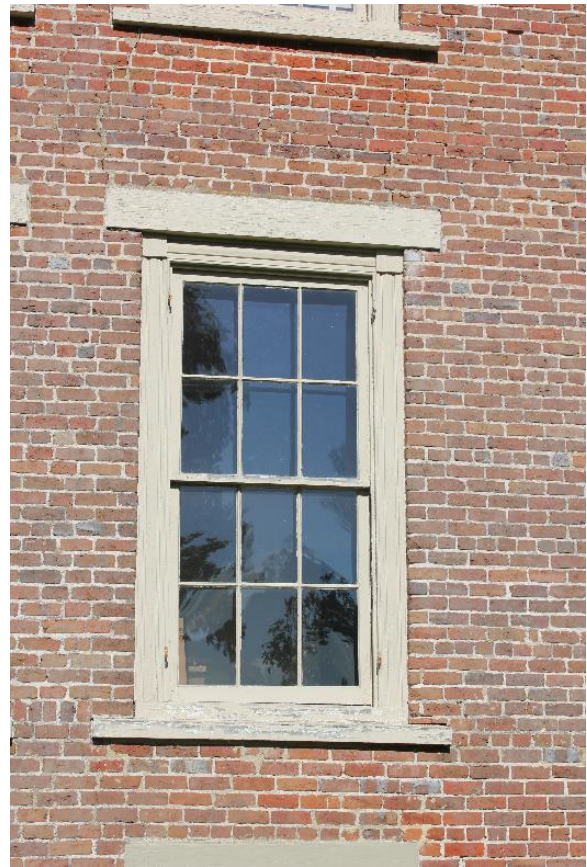


Figure 5.39, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, ca. 1854 addition, detail of first floor window.



Figure 5.40, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, ca. 1665 north tower, detail of first floor window.



Figure 5.41, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, ca. 1665 north tower, detail of second floor window.



Figure 5.42, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, ca. 1665 south tower, detail of second floor window.

*Windows:*

None of the windows on the ca. 1665 building are original to the dwelling. The windows on the eastern elevation of the south and north towers are not mirror images of one another.

The only basement window in the ca. 1665 portion, which is found on the south tower, is wooden, fixed in place, with louvers and a segmental-arch top. The basement windows were restored after Preservation Virginia gained downership of the property. The first floor window of the south tower is a double-hung six over nine wooden window with a segmental brick arch top. The second floor window of the south tower is a six over six double-hung wooden window. This window also has the outset brick surround covered in a parge coat like the windows found on the

north elevation of the ca. 1665 portion of the dwelling.

The first floor window on the north tower is a wooden, fixed, nine-light window. This is the only fixed window (with the exception of the basement windows) on the ca. 1665 dwelling. The second floor window on the south tower is a wooden, double-hung, three over six window with a segmental-arch top. The garret floor window on the south tower is a wooden, double-hung, six over six window with a flat top and a rowlock head. All windows possess shutter hinges, although all shutters have been removed from the building.

No windows are present on the east elevation of the hyphen.

Two double-hung six over six windows are located on each level of the 1854 addition.

A six over six double-hung window is located on the east elevation of the ca. 1950s kitchen addition. The broad window head and lengthy sill is similar to those found on the ca. 1854 addition, although the window proportions are not similar. A mechanical louver is present on the basement level of the ca. 1950s kitchen addition.

*Doors:*

None are present on the east elevation



Figure 5.43, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, modern handicapped ramp.



Figure 5.44, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, lighting located on the modern handicapped ramp.

*Porch:*

A modern (ca. 2015) handicapped ramp is located on the east elevation and connects to a modern wooden porch and stairs located on the north elevation.

*Foundation:*

The foundations of the ca 1665 building, the hyphen, the ca. 1854 addition, and the ca. 1950s kitchen addition are brick. A French drain is located around the perimeter of the ca. 1665 building. Biological growth is present on the foundation, and generally dissipates above the water table.



Figure 5.45, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, site, view west. Note "U" shaped driveway.



Figure 5.46, Bacon's Castle, East elevation, site, view west.

*Site:*

Minimal plantings are located near the north elevation. The majority of the site is in grass, with several mature trees and large shrubs present. The gravel drive approaches the castle to the east of the building and continues in a large "U" shape to exit the property east of the main entrance. A kitchen midden and large "H" shaped chimney foundation were recently discovered to the east of the ca. 1854 addition during construction of the ramp and an associated parking area. At the time of this survey, the discovery was being backfilled.



## West Elevation



Figure 5.47, Bacon's Castle, West elevation.

The hyphen, ca. 1950s kitchen addition, and ca. 1854 addition are marginally visible from the west elevation.



Figure 5.48, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, ca. 1950s kitchen addition. Note the partition wall dividing the window.



Figure 5.49, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, north tower elevation.



Figure 5.50, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, south tower.



Figure 5.51, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, ca. 1854 addition.

*Chimney:*

Three exterior end chimneys (three are also present at the east end of the ca. 1665 portion of the building) are present on the west elevation. The chimneys are rotated so that the corners of the chimneys point toward the cardinal directions of the dwelling, and are structurally independent from one another and the stepped curvilinear parapet walls. The mass of the west chimney is torquing away from the building and presents a safety hazard.

The northernmost chimney has been almost entirely rebuilt with brick unlike those found on the ca. 1665 building. Approximately half of the southernmost chimney has also been rebuilt, also with bricks distinctly different from those found on the ca. 1665 building.



Figure 5.52, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, chimney detail.

*Roof:*

The cross-gable roof of the ca. 1665 building is roofed with sawn clear Western Red Cedar shingles. Elaborate, curvilinear stepped parapets are located at the east and west gables ends of the ca. 1665 building. No gutters or downspouts are located on the ca. 1665 building.

The hyphen (low-sloped gable) and the ca. 1854 portion of the building (hipped) are roofed with standing seam metal. The 1950s kitchen addition (low-sloped shed roof) is also roofed with standing seam metal. The roof of 1854 addition has received an elastomeric coating. The metal roofing beneath is rusting through the coating.



Figure 5.53, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, Hyphen cornice detail, ca. 1950s kitchen addition cornice detail, ca. 1854 addition cornice detail.

*Cornice:*

The cornice on the towers of the ca. 1665 portion of the castle is a simple sawn wooden board that has received a coat of paint. The cornice on ca. 1854 addition has been replaced with a wide African mahogany cornice with a profile similar to the original. The 1854 addition also contains an integrated gutter system.

Although it smaller than the cornices found elsewhere on the dwelling, the cornice of the ca. 1950s kitchen addition is the most elaborate. The 1950s kitchen addition has an external gutter system and downspouts.



Figure 5.54, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, detail of masonry wall. Note biological growth.



Figure 5.55, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, detail of masonry wall. Note pocked and missing mortar.

*Wall:*

The wall of the ca. 1665 portion is comprised of brick laid in English bond, in fair condition, with various generations of repointing visible throughout the elevation. A water table is present approximately three feet above grade throughout the ca. 1665 portion of the building. A string course, located approximately thirteen feet above grade is located on the west elevation of the south tower. Biological growth is prominent on the ca. 1665 building, but is typically limited to water table and below. Some early, perhaps original, lime and shell mortar is present on the uppermost portion of the west elevation. A portion of this early mortar shows signs of a red wash and lime-penciled joints.

The wall of the hyphen is comprised of brick laid in Flemish bond, and is in good

condition. The brick of the ca. 1854 addition is comprised of brick laid in common bond with sixth course headers. The brick wall of the ca. 1950s addition is also laid in common bond with sixth course headers.



Figure 5.56, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, garret level window. Note how the fireplace mass is warping the west wall of the castle. The window is also being pulled with the wall.



Figure 5.57, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, ca. 1950s kitchen addition, window detail. Note the stud wall dividing the window vertically.



Figure 5.58, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, south tower, basement window.

### *Windows:*

The west elevation of the castle has four windows. On the first floor, the building standard six over nine double-hung wooden windows flank each side of the fireplace mass. These windows lack the segmental brick arch top found elsewhere on the first floor windows of the ca. 1665 portion of the building. On the garret level small, one over one double-hung windows with segmental-arch tops flank either side of the fireplace mass.

The basement window of the south tower was constructed and installed after Preservation Virginia assumed ownership of the castle. It is wooden with louvers and a segmental-arch top.



The first floor window of the south tower is a double-hung six over nine wooden window that lacks the segmental brick arch top found on the majority of the ca. 1665 building's first floor windows. The second floor window of the south tower is a six over six double-hung wooden window. This window also has the outset brick surround covered in a parge coat that is found around the windows on the north elevation of the ca. 1665 portion of the dwelling.

There are no windows on the north tower of the ca. 1665 portion of the building.

There are no windows on the hyphen.

Two windows, one on the first floor, and one on the second floor, are located on the west elevation of the ca. 1854 addition. Both windows are six over six, wooden, double-hung windows and match the windows found elsewhere on the ca. 1854 addition.

One window is located on the ca. 1950s addition. It is a wooden, three over three, double-hung window. The proportions of this window are unlike the other photos located on the ca. 1950s kitchen addition.



Figure 5.59, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, north tower, in-filled door opening and porch ghosting.

*Doors:*

Only one door is located on the west elevation. A six-panel door with modern hardware is located on the basement level of the ca. 1950s kitchen addition. The door is recessed beneath the addition and is accessed by concrete stairs with a black wrought iron railing. The floor is concrete and lacks a drain. Therefore, standing water from storms does not have a way to exit the space with the exception of evaporation.

An opening was previously located on the west elevation of the north tower of the ca. 1665 portion of the building. After Preservation Virginia took ownership of the building, the porch and door were removed and the door opening was in-filled with brick of the same coursing.



Figure 5.60, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, ca. 1950s kitchen addition, basement door. Note flaking and missing paint.

*Porch:*

None are currently present. Ghosting from a previous porch is evidenced on the first floor of the north tower above the in-filled door opening.

*Foundation:*

The foundations of the ca. 1665 building, the hyphen, the ca. 1854 addition, and the ca. 1950s kitchen addition are brick. A French drain is located around the perimeter of the ca. 1665 building. Biological growth is present on the foundation, and generally dissipates above the water table.



Figure 5.61, Bacon's Castle, Site, Hankins family cemetery.



Figure 5.62, Bacon's Castle, West elevation, site, view northwest.

*Site:*

The western portion of the site does not possess any foundation plantings. A large tree, English boxwoods, and mature bushes are located directly west of the house. Beyond these plantings, the western portion of the site includes a 17<sup>th</sup> century formal garden in the English style with mature plantings, benches, and gravel pathways. The garden was restored in the late 1980s based on archaeological information and research performed after Preservation Virginia took ownership of the property. Located southwest of the formal garden is the Hankins family cemetery, which dates to the mid-19<sup>th</sup> century.

## Bacon's Castle - Interior Description

### Basement

The interior of Bacon's Castle is, like most substantial dwellings of the time, divided into utility (cellar), public (first floor) and private (second floor) spaces, with attic spaces used both for storage and as servants' quarters. Each floor originally contained two rooms. The east basement room contained the original kitchen, and retains its massive fireplace surmounted by an oak mantel that is over ten feet long. The floor is covered in a combination of brick and tile, laid in the 18<sup>th</sup> century, and the exposed joists supporting the first floor are chamfered and set directly into pockets in the brick masonry walls. Two doors allow access between the east and west rooms, their presence the result of an early 18<sup>th</sup> century division of the room into two separate chambers. The north door, constructed of vertical beaded boards, likely dates to the 18<sup>th</sup> century. The south door, while a relatively recent replacement, retains its original frame. The west room is floored in part with brickbats.

The 17<sup>th</sup> century Bacon's Castle adhered to a traditional hall-parlor plan, again with two rooms comprising the second floor. Both originally contained massive fireplaces topped by equally heavy oak beams. The summer beam and girders were always intended to be exposed, as indicated by the decorative finishes on these structural elements (chamfering on the summer beam, beaded scratch molding on the girders). Walls were plastered, and the joists supporting the second story floor were exposed and whitewashed. Inventories kept by the Allens indicate that the hall functioned as a living and dining area. The chamber, or large room, adjacent to it was a more private space, functioning as a bedchamber. By the mid-17<sup>th</sup> century it also served as more secure storage for the family's finer tablewares.

The existing central passage was created at some point after 1728 when a wall was added to the west side to create an entry hall. The passage leads directly to the stair tower on the north elevation, as well as to a doorway that may have originally allowed access to the cellar but which now opens into a modern bathroom. At the same time four new windows were installed on the north façade to match the existing windows on the south side of the building. The original two windows in the north elevation were bricked in, as was the original massive hall fireplace which was replaced by a smaller opening with an arched lintel. Doors to either side of the fireplace were likely added in the 18<sup>th</sup> century, one to allow access to the 1854 wing and the other as an apparent replacement for an earlier window. Both the hall and chamber received new lath-and-plaster ceilings and raised-panel wainscoting, although the panels on the chamber wainscoting are larger and feature a cornice that is broken out over the window seats.

Access to the second story and attic is through the north stair tower via a closed-string, triple-run staircase ornamented with columnar balusters with urn-shaped finials. Like the first story, the second consists of two rooms separated by a central hall as well as a small room within the south tower known as the "porch chamber". Joists supporting the attic floor are exposed and decoratively chamfered, and window surrounds are in the Greek Revival style, but otherwise the rooms are without ornament. Mantels in both rooms are 19<sup>th</sup> century in origin (the east chamber contains a fireplace with a Federal-style mantel, while the west room mantel is reflective of the later 19<sup>th</sup> century).

Unlike the previous stories, the attic contains three separate rooms and appears to be the least-altered space within Bacon's Castle. The east and west rooms are illuminated by small





windows set to either side of the chimneys on the gable ends of the house. The west room also contains a plastered, hooded fireplace and is accessed through a three-panel door fastened with H-L hinges. The third room, called the “porch garret”, is windowless. Allen family inventories of each room indicate that they were used as sleeping chambers. Kneewalls and much of the flooring appear to be original.

### Basement, ca. 1665 Castle, North Tower Stair Hall (Room 001)



Figure 5.63, Bacon’s Castle, Basement, Room 001, general view.



Figure 5.64, Bacon’s Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Room 001, view of first floor stair joists and whitewashed underside of floorboards, from cellar. Plaster walls, not the efflorescence.

#### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is of white washed floorboards and the structural members of the stairs above. Some areas are coated in plaster.

#### *Walls:*

The walls are of brick, coated in plaster. The walls are in poor condition. Extreme amounts of water damage and efflorescence is located throughout the space, with particular damage on the west wall.



Figure 5.65, Bacon’s Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Room 001, view of louvered window.

#### *Windows:*

One wooden, louvered window is located at the first landing of the stair.



Figure 5.66, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Room 001, arched opening.

*Doors:*

None. The stair tower is accessed by an arched brick opening.

*Floors:*

The floors are of square replacement brick tiles.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

None.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

None.



Figure 5.67, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Room 001, crack in beam. Note the efflorescence.



Figure 5.68, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Room 001, Note the water marks on the beam.

*Other:*

Water infiltration is present throughout the stair tower. Water marks are visible on the pocketed beams. A large crack is located on the underside of one of the beams supporting the stair.

**Cellar, ca. 1665 Castle, Center Corridor  
(Room 002)**



Figure 5.69, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Room 002, general view south.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is of open joists with traces of whitewash. Repaired or replaced structural members do not have whitewash.



Figure 5.70, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Room 002, view of first floor joists and underside of floor boards, visible from this room. Note also the cut made and repaired in this area of the floor. The floorboards in the hall above do not show corresponding cuts, indicating that they have been repaired or replaced in entirety. This cut was likely made either for 1) the construction of a stair that was later removed (not likely), or 2) the installation of heavy equipment, such as a boiler, that was later removed.

*Walls:*

The walls are of whitewashed brick. Some mortar loss is evident. Some of the bricks show spall damage.

*Windows:*

None

*Doors:*

Two plank doors are located on the west wall. The doors are painted white. The door frames are joined by mortise and tenon joints.



Figure 5.71, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling,  
Basement, Room 002, view of whitewashed brick wall.

None.



Figure 5.72, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling,  
Basement, Room 002, view of doors leading to room  
005.



Figure 5.73, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling,  
Basement, Room 002, detail of door frame.

*Floors:*

The floors are of replacement square brick tiles.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

None.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

None.

*Other:*



**Basement, ca. 1665 Castle, Kitchen (Room 003)**



Figure 5.74, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Kitchen, Room 003, general view.



Figure 5.75, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement,, Room 003, view of structural members, and underside of first floor flooring.



Figure 5.76, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Kitchen, Room 003, view of sistered beam.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is of open joists with traces of whitewash on a few members. Some of the members have been sistered, repaired, or replaced.



Figure 5.77, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Kitchen, Room 003, view of whitewashed brick walls and plaster. Note general mortar loss.

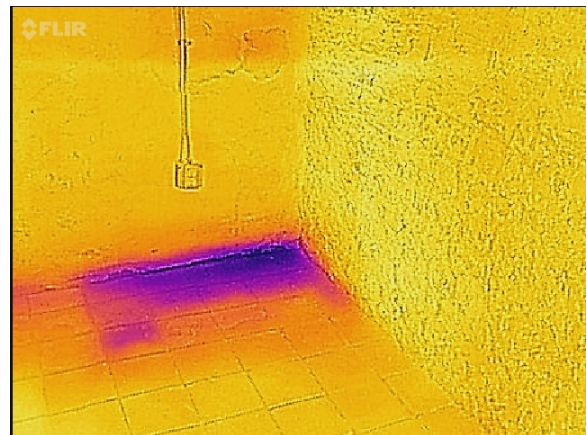


Figure 5.77a, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Kitchen, Room 003, infrared view of

whitewashed brick walls and plaster. Note moisture penetration at base of wall.

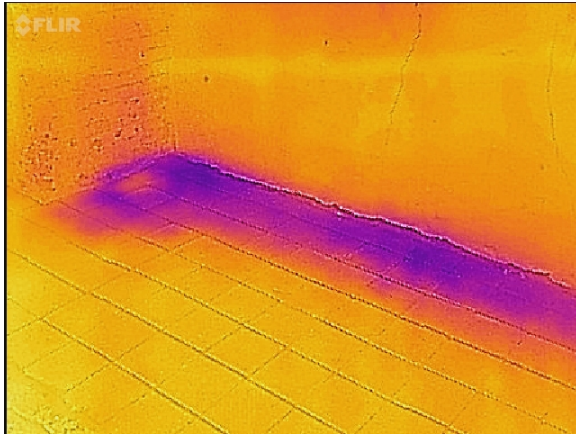


Figure 5.77b, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Kitchen, Room 003, infrared view of whitewashed brick walls and plaster. Note moisture penetration at base of wall.



Figure 5.78, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Kitchen, Room 003, note biological growth.



Figure 5.79, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Kitchen, Room 003, note spalled brick.

#### *Walls:*



The walls are of whitewashed brick. Some mortar loss and areas of spalled brick is evident. The north wall is predominantly plastered, but the plaster is missing on the upper one-third of the wall. Biological growth is present on the north wall.

#### *Windows:*

Two wooden, louvered windows are located on the south wall. One wooden, louvered window is located on the north wall. The windows are inoperable, as the glass is fixed in place.



Figure 5.80, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Kitchen, Room 003, view of modern metal door.

#### *Doors:*

One single solid steel door is located on the east wall. This door is a part of the Halon Fire protection system. The door has modern hardware.



Figure 5.81, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Kitchen, Room 003, view of brick tile floor. Historic tile dominates the photograph. Modern replica tile is visible in the upper right hand floor.

*Floors:*

The floors are of square brick tiles. This room contains some historic tile and replica tile.



Figure 5.82, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, Kitchen, Room 003, view of fireplace. Note the air grille.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

A simple rough-hewn apron and unadorned firebox is located on the east wall. The brick tiles of the floor extend as the hearth.

*Lighting:*

A modern joist-mounted light with an incandescent bulb is located in the northeast corner of the room.

*Plumbing:*

None.



*Heating/Cooling:*

A return air grille is located in the hearth of the fireplace.

**Basement, ca. 1665 Castle, South Tower Room (Room 004)**



Figure 5.83, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, South tower, Room 004, general view. Note the dirt or brick backsplash on the lower portion of the wall.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is comprised of open joists showing traces of whitewash.



Figure 5.84, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, South tower, Room 004, brick and wooden header above entrance to the room.

*Doors:*

None are present. The room is accessed through an opening in the masonry wall. The opening has a course of rowlock bricks above it, which are supported by a wooden, whitewashed header.

*Floors:*

The floors are of square brick tiles. The majority of the tile in this space is historic.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*



None.

*Lighting:*

A modern wall-mounted light with incandescent bulbs is located in the northwest corner of the room.

*Walls:*

The walls are of plaster coated brick. Efflorescence is present throughout the space. Staining is occurring near the floor level.

*Windows:*

Two windows are located in this room, one on the east wall and one on the west wall. Both are wooden, louvered windows. The glass is missing from the east window and has been replaced with plywood.



Figure 5.85, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, South tower, Room 004, general view. Note the light fixture in the upper right hand corner.



*Plumbing:*  
None.

*Heating/Cooling:*  
None.

*Other:*  
None.

**Basement, ca. 1665 Castle, West Room  
(Room 005)**



Figure 5.86, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, West room, Room 005, general view southeast.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is comprised of open joists showing traces of whitewash. Several of the joists show evidence that at one point there was a plaster and lath ceiling. The traces of whitewash pre-date the plaster, as the lath marks and nails overlap the whitewash.



Figure 5.87, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, West room, Room 005, ceiling joist detail.



Figure 5.88, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, West room, Room 005, general view northwest.



Figure 5.89, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, West room, Room 005, view northwest. Note the bricked-in bulkhead door.



Figure 5.90, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, West room, Room 005, summer beam. Note the nails, which were used in the construction of the plank wall that previously divided the room.

*Walls:*

The finishes of the walls vary. The eastern wall is brick, which has not received any coatings. The north and south wall are partially plastered, and partially exposed brick that has received as whitewash finish. The bulkhead door, which is located on the north wall, has been in-filled with brick and whitewashed. A 1" partition wall, which was constructed along the south edge of the summer beam, was probably constructed with planks and previously divided the room into two, a north and south room. The nails that were used to install the plank wall are still visible along the summer beam. Various brick piers have been constructed over the course of the history of the castle to help support structural members and the hearth of the room above. In some cases, the bricks are modern with Portland cement mortar.



Figure 5.91, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, West room, Room 005, view west. Note the modern bricks and portland cement mortar.

*Windows:*

Two wooden, louvered windows are located on the south wall. One wooden, louvered window is located on the north wall.



Figure 5.92, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, West room, Room 005, door detail.

*Doors:*

Two doors are present in this room. Each door is a wooden, plank door with strap hinges. The doors are whitewashed. The door frames are constructed with mortise and tenon joints.

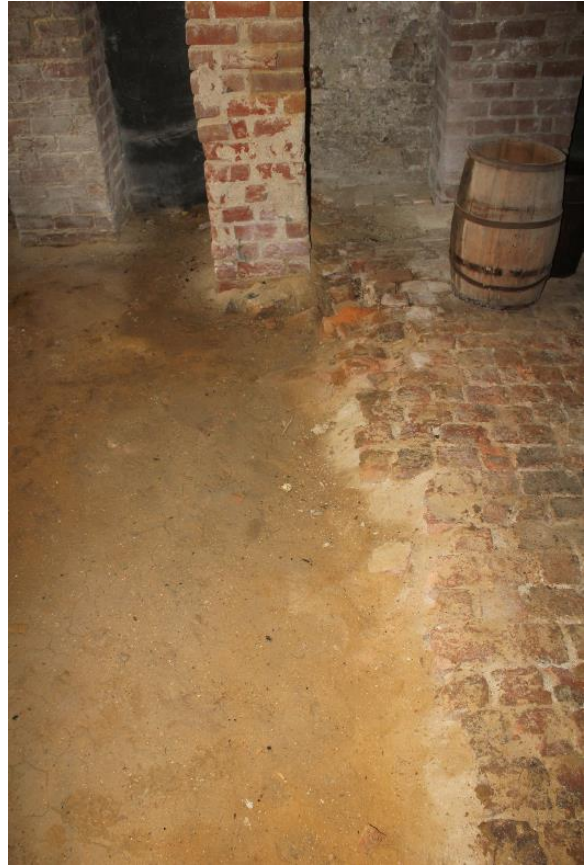


Figure 5.93, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, West room, Room 005, floor detail. Brick tile to the north and dirt floor to the south.

*Floors:*

The northern portion of the room contains the brick tile found elsewhere in the ca. 1665 portion of the castle. The southern portion is a compacted dirt floor.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

None.

*Plumbing:*

None.



Figure 5.94, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 dwelling, Basement, West room, Room 005, ductwork.

*Heating/ Cooling:*

A large duct located on the east walls runs vertically to the west room above.

*Other:*

A portion of the Halon fire suppression system is located in the southeast corner of the room. See figure 5.86.

## Basement, Hyphen, Egress Stair (Room 006)



Figure 5.95, Bacon's Castle, Hyphen, Basement, Room 006, general view.

### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is a mixture of modern gypsum wall board and the exposed joists and underside floorboards of the first floor.



Figure 5.96, Bacon's Castle, Hyphen, Basement, Room 006, Chimney wall showing the added course of bricks. The bricks do not tie in to the historic chimney wall.

### *Walls:*

The east, west, and south walls are whitewashed brick. The majority of the whitewash has worn away from the west wall. A free-standing brick wall was constructed on the south side of the ca. 1665 chimney as a component of the new egress stair. The wall is not tied in to the historic chimney. This joint is potentially a life safety concern as there is insufficient support for the egress stair. The north wall is a modern concrete masonry unit wall clad in gypsum wall board. This wall was constructed after Preservation Virginia assumed ownership of the property. The wall is a component of the new stair that was constructed for egress per the building code.

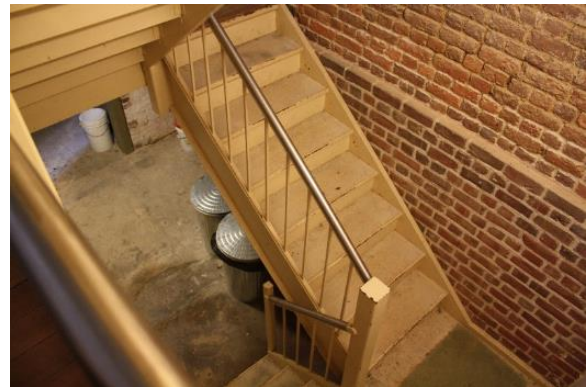


Figure 5.97, Bacon's Castle, Hyphen, Basement, Room 006, View of stairs to basement from first floor landing.

### *Windows:*

None.

### *Doors:*

Three modern, hollow core doors with modern hardware are present. One each on the east, north, and west wall. An opening with modern pressure treated (unpainted) is located on the south wall.

### *Floors:*

Floors are concrete. Water stains and active water penetration are visible.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.



Figure 5.98, Bacon's Castle, Hyphen, Basement, Room 006, View of ceiling joists, whitewashed walls, and fluorescent light fixture.

*Lighting:*

A flush mount fluorescent fixture is mounted between ceiling joists. A bare fluorescent bulb is mounted on the underside of the landing of the stairs.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

None.



Figure 5.99, Bacon's Castle, Hyphen, Basement, Room 006, bottom treads and riser of the stair are rusty.

*Other:*



**Basement, ca. 1854 Addition, Stair Hall  
(Room 007)**



Figure 5.100, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 007, View north.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is of plaster, in fair condition. A large portion of water damaged plaster is located in the southwest corner of the ceiling. Exposed conduit is located on a majority of the ceiling.

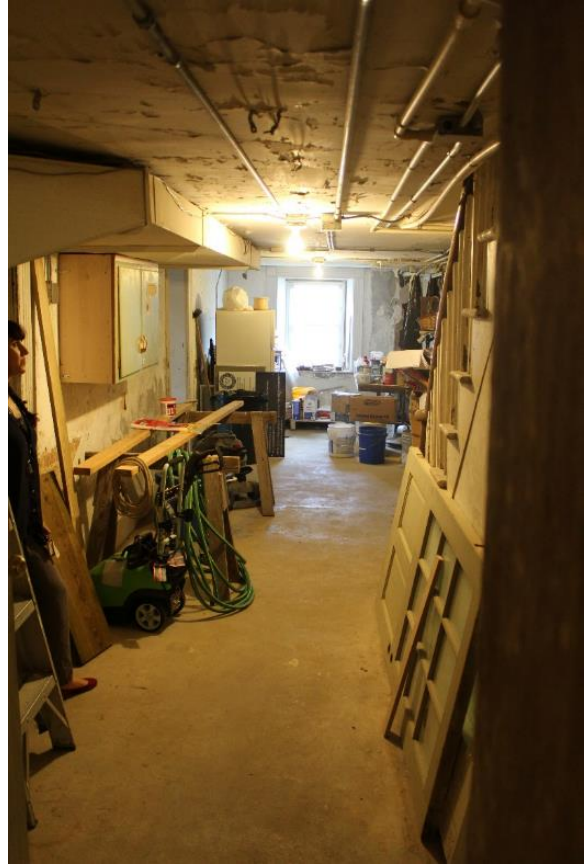


Figure 5.101, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 007, View south.

*Walls:*

The walls are a mixture of plaster coated brick walls, and exposed brick walls. Only a portion of the west wall is exposed brick. A portion of the southern wall (southwestern corner) was removed in order to install the waste pipe from the second floor modern restroom.





Figure 5.102, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 007, Window details. Note demolished portion of southwest corner, missing portion of window trim, and plaster ceiling damage.

*Windows:*

Two windows are located in the ca. 1854 stair hall. One on the south wall and one on the west wall.

Portions of the west wall window, including a portion of the sills and casing have been removed. The west wall window does not connect to the exterior. Its view shed is the room beneath the main entrance porch.



Figure 5.103, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 007, modern metal door.



Figure 5.104, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 007, Note the rust on the door frame and door panel.

*Doors:*

Five doors are present.

A modern, metal door connects to the hyphen basement. This door is a component of the Halon fire suppression system. Water is permeating the finish of the door jamb and panel. Rust is present.

Two wooden four-panel doors are located on the east wall and connect to the ca. 1854 basement space that houses an office for the gardeners and maintenance workers.

A wooden four panel door is located on the east side of the stairs and accesses a closet located underneath the stairs.

A wooden six-panel door, with a four panel screen door, is located on the north wall. This was originally an exterior door, but now accesses the mechanical space underneath the ca. 1950s kitchen addition.

*Floors:*

The floor in this room is modern concrete.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

A wooden stair runs from south to north along the west wall of the room. The risers and octagonal pickets are painted white. The paint on the risers and pickets is in poor condition and is exhibiting signs of wear and tear. The treads, handrail, and newel post are a lightly finished natural wood. The newel post is exhibiting signs of checking.

*Lighting:*

Two surface mounted bulbs are equally spaced on the ceiling of the room.

*Plumbing:*

None. The waste pipe for the second floor restroom is located in the southwestern corner.



Figure 5.105, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 007, Newel post detail. Note the checking.

*Heating/Cooling:*

A wide but shallow duct runs along the eastern edge of the room.

**Basement, ca. 1854 Addition (Room 008, 009)**



Figure 5.106, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 008,009, general view north.



Figure 5.107, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 008,009, general view south.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is of plaster in fair condition.

*Walls:*

The walls are of plaster. There is no baseboard in the room. A simple chair rail runs around the perimeter of the runs and ties in to the window stools. Exposed conduit is located on the majority of the walls.



Figure 5.108, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 008,009, western window, south wall.

*Windows:*

Six double-hung windows (six over six, true divided lights) are located in the space. Two each are located on the north, east, and south walls. The western window on the north wall does not view the exterior, but instead looks into the mechanical space that is a component of the ca. 1950s kitchen addition. Extreme termite damage is located on the trim of the eastern window on the south wall.



Figure 5.109, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 008,009, eastern window, south wall. Note extreme termite damage.

*Doors:*

Two four-panel doors are present. One in each space (008 and 009). These doors access the ca. 1854 stair hall.

*Floors:*

The floor in these rooms is modern concrete. A large crack, which runs roughly from north to south, is located in front of the northern fireplace.

Water entering the building, especially at the north wall is evident. Water sensitive items have been elevated on concrete masonry units.



Figure 5.110, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 008,009, concrete floor. Note the large crack. Also note the gardening supplies. They have been elevated above the floor with concrete masonry units and a board.



Figure 5.111, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 008,009, View east. Note the mantel and fireplace located behind the bookshelf.



Figure 5.112, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 008,009, View east. Note the water damage at the base of the cased opening.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

Two fireplaces are located on the east wall. They are concealed by furniture and miscellaneous items that are being stored. The mantelpieces are in the Greek Revival Style, and are very simple. The mantelpieces have stepped moldings under the shelf, columns with plain plinth blocks, recessed panels at the top, projecting entablature block ends, and are flat against the wall.

A large cased opening divides the room and defines the north and south boundaries of the room. The cased opening exhibits sign of moisture infiltration. Water damage is present on the bottom one-third of the opening, especially where the wood meets the concrete floor.

*Lighting:*

A surface mounted incandescent light is located in the southern portion of the space. A suspended florescent strip light is located in the northern portion of the space.

*Plumbing:*

A hot water heater is located along the northern wall.

*Heating/Cooling:*

A large network of exposed ducts is located on the ceiling.



Figure 5.113, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Basement, Room 008,009, view northwest. Elevated platform, cabinet and sink detail. Note the rust on the sink.

*Other:*

An elevated concrete slab which is scored to represent tile is located in the northwestern corner of the space. A mid-century integrated cabinet with porcelain sink is located on the elevated slab. The metal cabinet exhibit signs of extreme rust.

## Basement, ca. 1950s Addition, Mechanical Space (Room 010)

### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling of the space is the exposed floor joists and sub floor of the room above.

### *Walls:*

The walls are exposed brick. In some areas, a parge coat has been applied to the brick.

### *Windows:*

None.



Figure 5.114, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, Basement, Room 010, view northwest. Door Detail.

### *Doors:*

The room is accessed by a wooden six-panel door, with a four panel screen door, located on the south wall. This was originally an exterior door for the ca. 1854 basement addition.

A six-panel wooden door is located on the west wall of the room. This door accesses the exterior of the building and a set of concrete stairs which lead to grade level.



Figure 5.115, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, Basement, Room 010, view west.



Figure 5.116, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, Basement, Room 010, note condensate drainage and biological growth.

### *Floors:*

The floors are a mixture of dirt and concrete. In the exterior entrance, condensate lines are dumping water on to the concrete where there is no drainage system in place. Biological

growth is present on the concrete floor and brick wall in this area.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*  
None.

*Lighting:*  
A surface mounted bulb provides light.

*Plumbing:*  
None.



Figure 5.117, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, Basement, Room 010, mechanical equipment.

*Heating/Cooling:*  
None. Mechanical Equipment and large ductwork dominate the space.

## Basement, Underneath South Porch (Room 011)



Figure 5.118, Bacon's Castle, Basement, Room 011, storage space. Note biological growth.

### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is poured concrete. A leak is occurring at the intersection of the ceiling and the north walls. Buckets have been left underneath the area of active leaks in order to catch the water.

### *Walls:*

The walls are exposed brick that have been whitewashed or have a coat of plaster or a parge coat. Biological growth is present on the walls.



Figure 5.119, Bacon's Castle, Basement, Room 011, window on east wall.

### *Windows:*

Two windows are located in the space. A wooden double-hung (six over six true-divided light) window is located on the east wall. This window views the ca. 1854 stair hall. A wooden, fixed in place window with louvers is located on the west wall.

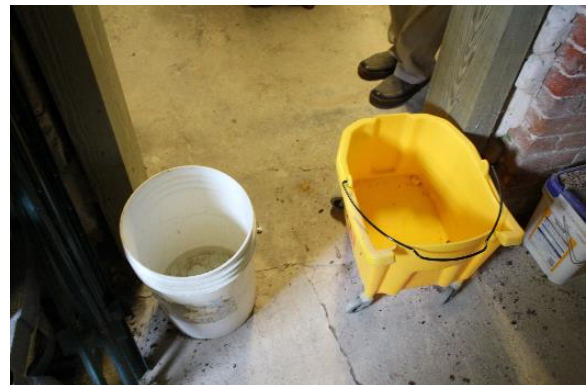




Figure 5.120, Bacon's Castle, Basement, Room 011, buckets poised to catch leaks. Note the cracked concrete floor between the buckets.



Figure 5.121, Bacon's Castle, Basement, Room 011, cased opening detail.

*Doors:*

No doors are present. A cased opening has been installed on the north wall. The cased opening is constructed with modern pressure treated lumber.

*Floors:*

The floors are poured concrete. Cracking is present.

*Mantelpiece/ Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

None.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/ Cooling:*

None.

## Basement, Hyphen, Mechanical Space (Room 012)



Figure 5.122, Bacon's Castle, Hyphen, Room 012, general view north.

### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling of the space is the exposed floor joists and sub floor of the room above.

### *Walls:*

The north, east, and west walls are of brick which has a coat of whitewash. The south wall is a mixture of brick and modern concrete masonry units. The exposed brick of the ca. 1665 chimney is in terrible condition. Piles of mortar and brick dust are located at the base of the chimney, and on the ledge of the water table.



Figure 5.123, Bacon's Castle, Hyphen, Room 012, ca. 1665 chimney water table and modern concrete masonry unit wall.



Figure 5.124, Bacon's Castle, Hyphen, Room 012, pile of brick and mortar dust.

### *Windows:*

None.

### *Doors:*

One modern metal door is located on the south wall of the room.

*Floors:*

The floors are poured concrete.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

None.

*Plumbing:*

None.



Figure 5.125, Bacon's Castle, Hyphen, Room 012, various mechanical equipment.

*Heating/Cooling:*

Mechanical equipment is located throughout the space.

*Other:*

Halon fire suppression equipment is housed in this room.

## First Floor

### First Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, North Tower Stair Hall (Room 101)



Figure 5.126, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, North Tower, Room 101, view northwest.

#### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is the structure of the stair above.

#### *Walls:*

The walls are of plaster, which are in poor condition. Large amounts of efflorescence are located on the west wall.



Figure 5.127, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, North Tower, Room 101, efflorescence present on the west wall.

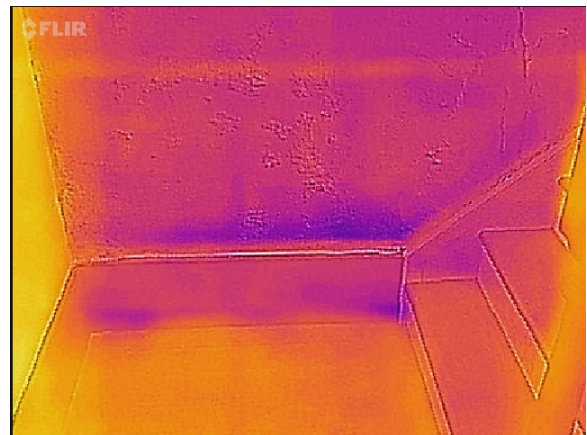


Figure 5.127a, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, North Tower, Room 101, infrared detail recording moisture present in the west wall.



Figure 5.128, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, North Tower, Room 101, fixed nine light window located on the second landing.

#### *Windows*

Two windows are located on the first floor of the stair tower. A wooden, double-hung (six over nine, true divided light) window is located at the first landing. A fixed in place (nine light, true divided light) window is located at the second landing of the stair.



Figure 5.129, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, North Tower, Room 101, door leading to basement stair.

#### *Doors:*

A wooden four panel door is located at the stairs to the basement. The door has modern hardware.

An arched opening connects the stair tower to the first floor corridor.



Figure 5.130, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, North Tower, Room 101, floor transition.

#### *Floors:*

A clear delineation is present between the edge of the corridor and the north stair tower. The floors in the north stair tower are hardwood. They are a different color and are a slightly different width of the floorboards located in the first floor corridor. The floorboards run north to south.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

A wooden stair dominates the room. The stair connects the first floor to the basement and second floor as well as the garret. The balusters are turned and painted white. The newel posts and handrails are naturally finished wood. The treads are naturally finished and the risers are painted white. Elaborate paneling is located on the sides of the stair.

*Lighting:*

None.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

None



Figure 5.131, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, North Tower, Room 101, detail of stair paneling.

**First Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, Corridor  
(Room 102)**



Figure 5.132, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Corridor, Room 102, general view south.



Figure 5.133, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Corridor, Room 102, general view north. Note the cut line in the floorboards.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is plaster with one exposed wooden beam that has been painted to match the ceiling. The beam has chamfered corners. The paint on the beams is flaking. Cracks are radiating in the plaster where the beam intersects the east wall of the corridor.



Figure 5.134, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Corridor, Room 102, beam detail.



Figure 5.135, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Corridor, Room 102, beam detail, note the cracking and flaking paint.

*Walls:*

The walls are finished in plaster. The west wall is a structural brick wall. The east wall is a wooden partition wall.

*Windows:*

None.



Figure 5.136, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Corridor, Room 102, door detail.

*Doors:*

Three doors are located in the corridor. Two on the east wall connect to the east room and one on the west wall connects to the west room. The doors are wooden, six-paneled doors that are painted green.





Figure 5.137, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Corridor, Room 102 floor detail. Note the saw cut and misaligned floorboards.

*Floors:*

The floors are hardwoods. The floorboards run north to south. There is a saw cut located near the opening of the western door. The floorboards are similar in width and color, though they do not line up with one another.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

None.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

None.

*Other:*

Smoke detection sensors, which are a component of the Halon fire protection system, are mounted to the ceiling.

**First Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, West Room  
(Room 103)**



Figure 5.138, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, West Room, Room 103, general view southwest.



Figure 5.139, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, West Room, Room 103, general view southeast.



Figure 5.140, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, West Room, Room 103, detail of beam intersection.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is smooth plaster, in good condition. Beams, which are centered on the north/south wall and east/west wall meet in

the middle of the ceiling. The beams are embellished with lamb's tongue, chamfered edges, and a circle with flower motif carved in the center of the intersection. Note steel angle reinforcement installed before APVA ownership.



Figure 5.141, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, West Room, Room 103, detail of wall, view northwest. Note extreme efflorescence.

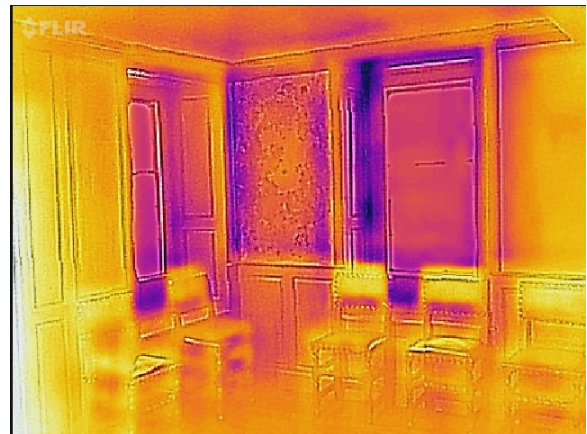


Figure 5.141b, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, West Room, Room 103, infrared detail of wall, view northwest. Note moisture in wall.



Figure 5.142, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, West Room, Room 103, detail of efflorescence.

*Walls:*

The bottom one third of the north, south, and east walls have a simple wainscoting. The upper two-thirds of these walls are plaster. Paneling, similar to the wainscoting flanks either side of the windows. The west wall is entirely paneled. Brick dust and mortar dust is migrating through the paneling on the exterior walls. An extreme case of efflorescence is located on the north wall.

*Windows:*

Six double-hung windows (six over nine, true divided light) are located in the west room. Two windows are located on the north, south, and west elevation.



Figure 5.143, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, West Room, Room 103, door detail

*Doors:*

One door, a wooden, six-paneled door is located on the east wall and connects this room to the first floor corridor.



Figure 5.144, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, West Room, Room 103, detail of floor. Note the sawn and replacement floorboards.

*Floors:*

The floor is comprised of hardwood floors. The floorboards run east to west. A portion of the floorboards in front of the fireplace have been cut and replaced. The hearth is brick laid in a running bond, although it changes to herringbone bond at the perimeters of the firebox.

*Mantelpiece/ Casework:*

A fireplace is centered on the west wall. The firebox is simply plastered and is a segmental arch. The fireplace lacks a mantel.

*Lighting:*

None.

*Plumbing:*



None.

*Heating/ Cooling:*



Figure 5.145, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, West Room, Room 103, detail of floorboards. Note the Halon dispenser, brick and mortar duct above the outlet, and the water damage on the floor.

*Other:*

The dispenser for the Halon fire suppressant is located in the southeast corner of the room.

**First Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, South Tower  
(Room 104)**



Figure 5.146, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, South Tower, Room 104, general view southwest.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is smooth plaster, in good condition.

*Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster, in good condition.

*Windows:*

Three wooden, double-hung (six over nine, true divided light) windows are located in the south tower. The three windows are centered on the east, south, and west walls of the room.



Figure 5.147, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, South Tower, Room 104, window detail.



Figure 5.148, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, South Tower, Room 104, window sill detail. Note the flaking paint and brick and mortar dust.

*Doors:*

None. An arched opening is located on the north wall.

*Floors:*



The floors are hard wood. Several boards were replaced. The saw line runs from east to west approximately one-foot north of the south wall.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

A modern wall-mounted fixture is located on the north wall.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

A vertical chase is located in the northwest corner of the space.

## First Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, East Room (Room 105)



Figure 5.149, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, East Room, Room 105, general view northeast. Note the deflection of the beam above the fireplace.



Figure 5.150, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, East Room, Room 105, general view northwest.

### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is smooth plaster. The plaster is punctuated by beams which run both east and west and north and south. The beams feature lamb's tongue and chamfered edges. The east-west main summer beam exhibits signs of stress and cracking. Steel angle reinforcement was added to the crossing at some point before APVA ownership.



Figure 5.151, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, East Room, Room 105, beam detail above fireplace. Note the cracking.



Figure 5.151b, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, East Room, Room 105, beam detail at center of room. Note steel angle reinforcement.



Figure 5.152, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, East Room, Room 105, carpenter's rule inserted through the entire depth of the exterior brick wall.

### *Walls:*

The north, east, and south walls are brick walls which are clad in paneling similar to the paneling found of the west wall of room 102

(first floor, ca. 1665 west room). The west wall is a frame wall also clad in the paneling. Brick and mortar dust are permeating the paneling on the north, east, and south walls. During the exterior assessment of the building, a carpenter's rule was inserted in voids found in the mortar. A void was discovered on the south elevation that extends through the entire depth of the exterior wall in the east room. The carpenter's rule was visible between the joint of the floor and base molding.



Figure 5.153, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, East Room, Room 105, detail of paneling and window trim.

#### *Windows:*

Four double-hung windows (six over nine, true divided light) are located in the east room. Two windows are located on the north and south elevations.

#### *Doors:*

Four doors are present in the east room. Two on the west wall, and two on the east wall (flanking the fireplace).

The doors on the west wall access the corridor and are identical to the door found in room 103 (west room).

The door located to the south of the fireplace is a modern metal door, which is a component of the Halon fire extinguishing system and accesses the hyphen.

The door located to the north of the fireplace is a wooden four-paneled door. The door does not access any space, just opens to a modern concrete masonry unit wall. During the 1973 restoration, a new egress stair was constructed in the hyphen due to the building code, and concrete masonry walls were constructed to support the new stair.

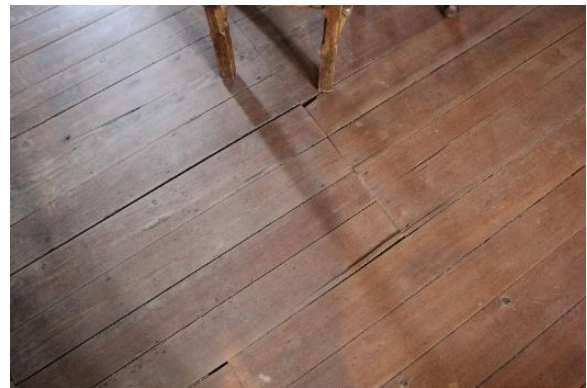


Figure 5.154, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, East Room, Room 105, detail of floor boards.

#### *Floors:*

The floors are hardwood with the floor boards running east to west. Various areas have been patched and saw cuts are visible.

#### *Mantelpiece/Casework:*

A fireplace is centered on the east wall. The firebox is simply plastered and is a segmental arch. The fireplace lacks a mantel.

#### *Lighting:*





A modern wall-mounted light is attached to the north wall.

*Plumbing:*  
None.

*Heating/Cooling:*  
None.



Figure 5.155, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, East Room, Room 105, brick and mortar dust seeping through the walls.

## First Floor, Hyphen, Egress Stair (Room 106)



Figure 5.156, Bacon's Castle Hyphen, First Floor, Room 106, general view northeast.

### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is gypsum board. The ceiling intersects the top portion of the trim on the museum's main entry door on the south elevation.

### *Walls:*

The south and east walls are comprised of plaster on the top one-third of the walls, with a paneled wainscoting located on the lower two-thirds of the walls. This wainscoting is reminiscent of the wainscoting found in the ca. 1665 portion of the building, though not identical.

The west wall is brick, which is laid in English bond. Some early, potentially original, mortar

is visible on the wall showing red washed bricks and mortar joints.

The north wall is concrete masonry units clad in gypsum wall board.



Figure 5.157, Bacon's Castle Hyphen, First Floor, Room 106, general view southwest.



Figure 5.158, Bacon's Castle Hyphen, First Floor, Room 106, detail of brick wall. Note the red wash and penciled joints.



Figure 5.159, Bacon's Castle Hyphen, First Floor, Room 106, detail of museum's main entry. Note how the gypsum wall board intersects the upper trim of the door.

*Windows:*

None. The door located on the south wall features an arch transom with ogee tracery.

*Doors:*

The hyphen has three modern hollow metal doors, one each on the east, north, and west walls of the room. The south wall features a wooden six-paneled door, which serves as the museum's main entrance.

*Floors:*

The floors are hardwood, with the floorboards running east to west.



Figure 5.160, Bacon's Castle Hyphen, First Floor, Room 106, view north.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

A modern incandescent fixture is mounted to the ceiling. A strip florescent fixture is mounted to on the north wall above the landing of the stair.

*Plumbing:*

*Heating/Cooling:*

None.

*Other:*

A modern, steel with concrete tread stair was constructed after Preservation Virginia took ownership of the property. The stair has square metal pickets and a brushed aluminum handrail.

An exit sign is mounted to the ceiling above the museum's main entrance.

**First Floor, ca. 1854 addition, Stair Hall (Room 107)**



Figure 5.161, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, 1<sup>st</sup> Floor, Room 107, general view northwest.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is smooth plaster in good condition. A large plaster medallion is located at the light fixture.



Figure 3.162, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 107, general view south.



Figure 5.163, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 107, detail of ceiling medallion.

*Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster and are in good condition. A tall baseboard runs around the perimeter of the room. Crown molding is present.



Figure 5.164, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 107, detail of stained glass window.

*Windows:*

Two wooden double-hung windows (six over six, true divided lights) are present. One is located on the south wall, and one on the west wall.

The window located on the west wall acts as a display for a stained glass window of Nathaniel Bacon. Tension rods hold the stained glass window in place.

*Doors:*

The space has four (4) four-paneled doors. Two on the east wall, one on the north wall, and one at the top of the ca. 1854 stairs to the basement.

The space also has a modern hollow core metal door on the west wall. This door accesses the hyphen and modern egress stair.

*Floors:*



The floors are tongue and groove hardwoods in good condition. The floorboards run north to south.



Figure 5.165, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 107, detail of guest services desk.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

A guest services desk is located near the south end of the space. The desk is wooden with raised panels and painted white.

*Lighting:*

A modern three-light chandelier is suspended from the ceiling.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

None.



Figure 5.166, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 107, detail of bracing.

*Other:*

A wooden stair runs from south to north along the west wall of the room. A landing is present at the north wall of the space. A large, turned newel post is located at the base of the stairs. The profile of the handrail is round. The risers and tapered round pickets are painted white. The paint is in good condition. The treads, handrail, and newel post are stained. A metal brace was added between the runs of stairs in order to stabilize the handrail and pickets.

**First Floor, ca. 1854 addition, Living room  
(Room 108)**



Figure 5.167, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 108, view southwest.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is smooth plaster in good condition. A large plaster medallion is located at the light fixture.



Figure 5.168, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 108, view north.



Figure 5.169, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 108, detail of ceiling medallion.

*Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster, in good condition. A tall base molding is located on the walls. The top nosing of the base molding also serves as window sills.



Figure 5.170, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 108, view south.

*Windows:*

Three double-hung windows (six over six, true-divided light) are located in the space. Two are symmetrically placed on the south wall and the other window is located to the north of the fireplace. Some plaster and trim damage is located underneath the eastern window on the south wall. This is probably due to water infiltration.

*Doors:*

Two, four-paneled wooden doors are located in the room. One accesses the ca. 1854 dining room to the north, and one accesses the ca. 1854 stair hall.

*Floors:*

The floors are tongue and groove hardwoods. The floorboards run east to west.



Figure 5.171, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 108, detail of fireplace.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

The fireplace has a brick fire box and hearth. The wood mantelpiece has fluted, slender, columns with flat plinth blocks, raised capitals, entablature with flat panel and raised sun daisies, and vertically carved face detail on the shelf and moldings.

*Lighting:*

A four-light modern chandelier is suspended from the ceiling.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

Modern vents are located on the floor and provide cooling and heating to the space.



**First Floor, ca. 1854 addition, Dining Room (Room 109)**



Figure 5.172, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 109, view southeast.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is smooth plaster in good condition. A large plaster medallion is located at the light fixture.

*Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster, in good condition. A tall base molding is located on the walls. The top nosing of the base molding also serves as window sills.

*Windows:*

Two double-hung windows (six over six, true-divided light) are located in the space. One is located on the north wall and the other window is located to the south of the fireplace.



Figure 5.173, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 109, view south.

*Doors:*

Two, four-paneled wooden doors are located in the room. One accesses the ca. 1854 living room to the south, and one accesses the ca. 1854 stair hall.

A cased opening is located on the north wall. The cased opening accesses the gift shop (1950s kitchen addition). This door was most likely a window prior to the 1950s addition.

*Floors:*

The floors are tongue and groove hardwoods. The floorboards run east to west.



Figure 5.174, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 109, fireplace and mantel detail.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

The fireplace has a brick fire box and hearth. The wood mantelpiece has fluted, slender, columns with flat plinth blocks, raised capitals, entablature with flat panel and raised sun daisies, and vertically carved face detail on the shelf and moldings. Unlike the fireplace found in the living room, this fireplace has two black andirons.



Figure 5.175, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, First Floor, Room 109, ceiling and light fixture detail.

*Lighting:*

A semi-flush light is mounted to the ceiling. The light fixture has a cut glass shade.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

Modern vents are located on the floor and provide cooling and heating to the space.

**First Floor, ca. 1950s addition, Gift Shop  
(Room 110)**



Figure 5.176, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 110, view northwest.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is smooth plaster and is in good condition.

*Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster, in good condition.

A modern wood base trim is located around the perimeter of the room.



Figure 5.177, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 110, view north, window detail.

*Windows:*

Two double-hung windows (six over six, true-divided light) are located in the space. One is located on the north wall and the other window is centered in the east wall. Unlike the windows found elsewhere, these windows possess blinds.

*Doors:*

Four doors are located in the space. Three of the doors are historic four-paneled doors. Two of these three are located on the west wall and access the men's and women's restrooms. The third is located on the south wall and accesses the ca. 1854 stair hall. A cased opening is also located on the south wall and accesses the ca. 1854 dining room. A modern door which has a nine-light window and two vertical panels is located on the north

wall. This door serves as the accessible entrance and exits out onto the rear porch.

*Floors:*

The floor is a modern carpet in a greyish blue shade.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None. Free standing bookshelves are located throughout the room to display the wares sold by the museum.



Figure 5.178, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 110, view south.

*Lighting:*

A flush-mount glass and bronze fixture is located on the ceiling.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

Modern vents are located on the floor and provide cooling and heating to the space.

## First Floor, ca. 1950s addition, Women's Restroom (Room 111)



Figure 5.179, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 111, view southwest.

### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is smooth plaster and is in good condition.

### *Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster, in good condition.

A modern vinyl base trim is located around the perimeter of the room.



Figure 3.180, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 111, detail of window and partition wall.

### *Windows:*

One window is located in the space. The window is divided in half by the partition wall which is intended to separate the men's and women's restrooms. The partition wall does not entirely separate the space, as there is a gap between the dividing wall and the

window. Sound is easily transmissible between the two restrooms.

The window is double-hung, three over three, true-divided light.

### *Doors:*

One four-paneled door is located in the space and connects the restroom to the gift shop.

### *Floors:*

The floors are modern vinyl tile.

### *Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

### *Lighting:*

A flush-mounted fluorescent light fixture, centered on the wall above the sink, provides light to the space. A second flush-mounted fluorescent light fixture is located on the ceiling.



Figure 5.181, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 111, view east.

### *Plumbing:*

Two toilets with vinyl partitions are located in the room. One of the toilets is accessible. A wall-hung accessible sink is located on the east wall.

### *Heating/Cooling:*

The space is cooled and heated by modern vents.

**First Floor, ca. 1950s addition, Men's Restroom (Room 112)**



Figure 5.182, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 112, view northwest.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is smooth plaster and is in good condition.

*Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster, in good condition.

A modern vinyl base trim is located around the perimeter of the room.



Figure 5.183, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 112, detail of window and partition wall intersection.

*Windows:*

One window is located in the space. The window is divided in half by the partition wall which is intended to separate the men's and women's restrooms. The partition wall does not entirely separate the space, as there is a gap between the dividing wall and the window.

The window is double-hung, three over three, true-divided light.

*Doors:*

One four-paneled door is located in the space and connects the restroom to the gift shop.

*Floors:*

The floors are modern vinyl tile.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.



Figure 5.184, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 112, view northeast.

*Lighting:*

A flush-mounted fluorescent light fixture, centered on the wall above the sink, provides light to the space. A second flush-mounted fluorescent light fixture is located on the ceiling.

*Plumbing:*

One toilet and one wall-mounted urinal located within vinyl partitions are located in the room. The toilet is accessible. A wall-hung accessible sink is located on the east wall.

*Heating/Cooling:*

The space is cooled and heated by modern vents.

### First Floor, Hyphen, Office (Room 113)



Figure 5.185, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 113, ceiling detail.

#### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is drywall and is in good condition.



Figure 5.186, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 112, view southeast.

#### *Walls:*

The east, north, and west walls are drywall and are in good condition. The south wall is a modern concrete masonry unit wall that is partially painted and partially raw CMU. A portion of the ca. 1665 chimney is visible at the south wall.

#### *Windows:*

One double-hung window s (six over nine, true-divided light) is located in the space. The window is located on the north wall of the office.



Figure 5.187, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 112, detail of ca. 1665 chimney wall.

#### *Doors:*

Two doors are located in the office. A modern, hollow-core metal door connects the office to the hyphen. A modern four-panel wooden door is located on the west wall and accesses a small closet. The closet (and the office) was created during the 1980s restoration of the castle.





Figure 5.188, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1950s addition, First Floor, Room 112, view north. Note the recess containing the casework and sink.

*Floors:*

The floor is a modern carpet in a medium shade of green. Hardwood floors are most likely located beneath the carpet.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

Casework containing a sink is located in a recess, which possibly could have been a door leading to the ca. 1950s addition. The casework consists of a painted wooden base with a poly-laminated countertop.

*Lighting:*

Two flush-mount fluorescent strip lights are located on the ceiling.

*Plumbing:*

A sink is located in the recess on the north wall.

*Heating/Cooling:*

The space is cooled and heated by modern wall vents.

## Second Floor

### Second Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, North Tower Stair Hall (Room 201)



Figure 5.189, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, North Tower, 2<sup>nd</sup> floor, first landing looking southeast towards the first floor corridor.

#### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is the structure of the stair above.

#### *Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster which are in poor condition. Efflorescence and water infiltration is present throughout the stair hall.

#### *Windows:*

A window is located at each of the two landings of the stair. The window located at the first landing is a double-hung wooden window (six over nine, true divided light). The window located at the second landing is a

wooden double-hung window, but is smaller than the window found at the first landing (three over six, true divided-light).



Figure 5.190, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, North Tower, Second Floor, Room 201, detail of baluster.

#### *Doors:*

An arched opening is located at the bottom of the stair connecting the first floor to the second floor. A wooden four-paneled door is located at the top of the stair on the second floor. The door is painted white and has brass a rim lock.



Figure 5.191, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, North Tower, Second Floor, Room 201, detail of floorboards and worn threshold.



Figure 5.192, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, North Tower, Second Floor, Room 201, detail of floorboards showing water damage.

#### *Floors:*

The floor material at the second floor landing is tongue and groove wooden flooring and the direction of the floorboards run east to west. The floor height of the stair landing does not

align with that of the second floor of the ca. 1665 portion of the castle, as the stair landing is approximately two and a half inches lower than the corridor. The threshold of the door is much worn. Active, as well as previous, water damage is visible at the junction of the floorboards and west wall.

#### *Mantelpiece/Casework:*

A wooden stair dominates the room. The stair connects the second floor to the first floor and garret as well as the basement. The balusters are turned and painted white. The newel posts and handrails are naturally finished wood. The treads are naturally finished and the risers are painted white. Elaborate paneling is located on the sides of the stair.

#### *Lighting:*

None.

#### *Plumbing:*

None.

#### *Heating/Cooling:*

None.

**Second Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, Corridor  
(Room 202)**



Figure 5.193, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, Corridor, Room 202, view south.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is plaster with one exposed wooden beam that has been painted to match the ceiling. The beam has chamfered corners.

*Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster and are in good conditions.

*Windows:*

*none.*

*Doors:*

Three four-paneled, solid, wooden doors connection the corridor to the north stair tower and both the east and west chambers.

A cased opening connects the corridor to the south tower.



Figure 5.194, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, Corridor, Room 202, view north.

*Floors:*

The floor material at the second floor landing is tongue and groove wooden flooring and the direction of the floorboards run north to south.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

None.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

None.

*Other:*

Fire suppression equipment is mounted to the ceiling.

**Second Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, West Room (Room 203)**



Figure 5.195, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, West Chamber, Room 203, ceiling detail. Note the nail marks from previous lath.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling in the west chamber has been restored to appear as it would have in the late 17<sup>th</sup> century. The plaster ceiling found elsewhere in the house has been removed from this room to expose the ceiling joists and floorboards of the garret above. Evidence of the plaster and lath is visible through the nail marks found on the joists. The summer beams feature lamb's tongue and chamfered edges.

Repairs for reinforcement, both in metal and wood, have been made to the beams.

*Walls:*

The walls are a smooth plaster in fair condition. Some efflorescence is present at the window locations and just above the floor level. The room does not feature paneling.



Figure 5.196, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, West Chamber, Room 203, view northwest.

*Windows:*

Two windows are located on the south wall. One window is located on the north wall. The windows are the building standard, six over six double-hung, true-divided light windows found throughout the second floor of the ca. 1665 portion of the building. On the interior of the windows, diamond pane casement windows have been installed in order to make the chamber feel as though it is from the late 17<sup>th</sup> century. These inserts feature frosted glass so as not the double-hung windows beyond are not visible. As a result, the room is much more dim than the other second floor rooms.



Figure 5.197, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, West Chamber, Room 203, window detail.

*Doors:*

A four-paneled solid wooden door accesses the second floor corridor.

*Floors:*

The floors are wooden tongue and groove floors. The floors run east to west.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

A simple rough-hewn apron and unadorned firebox is located on the east wall. The brick is parged and painted white. Streaking is present where water is entering the chimney and running down the walls. The hearth is comprised of brick tiles. Andirons are located in the fireplace.



Figure 5.198, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, West Chamber, Room 203, mantel detail.

*Lighting:*

Modern wall-mounted lights are located in the space.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

The heating and cooling is provided through vents in the garret floor above.



Figure 5.199, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, West Chamber, Room 203, view southeast. Note the modern wall-mounted light fixture.

*Other:*

During the restoration, furniture was purchased to interpret the room as a chamber based on early inventories of the property. The furniture includes, but is not limited to, a cradle, bed, side tables, and dining table with chairs. Various household items are also used in the interpretation of the space.

## Second Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, South Tower (Room 204)



Figure 5.200, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, South Tower, Room 204, view west.

### *Ceiling:*

This ceiling is comprised of the exposed floor joists and floorboards of the garret tower above. They are most likely replacements, as they lack any evidence of white wash, plaster, or lath.

### *Windows:*

Three six over six windows are located in the south tower. One each is located on the east, west, and south walls. The east and west window sills are showing signs of advanced rotting and water infiltration.

### *Doors:*

A cased opening is located on the north wall. The door is not centered on the walls.

### *Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster. They lack any trim. Efflorescence is present near the base of the walls.



Figure 5.201, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, South Tower, Room 204, detail of floor and wall intersection. Note the efflorescence on the wall.



Figure 5.202, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, South Tower, Room 204, detail of water infiltration and rotting sill.

### *Floors:*

The floor is a wooden tongue and groove floor. The floorboards run north to south.

### *Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

### *Lighting:*

A modern wall-mounted light is located in the northwest corner of the room.

### *Plumbing:*

None.



*Heating/Cooling:*

None.

**Second Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, East Room (Room 205)**



Figure 5.203, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, East Room, Room 205, general view north.



Figure 5.204, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, East Room, Room 205, detail of ceiling.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling in the east room is smooth plaster. The two summer beams intersect in approximately the center of the ceiling. The beams feature chamfered edges and lamb's tongue details. Evidence of the column, which is visible in the 1930s photographs taken by Francis Benjamin Johnston, is present at the intersection of the beams.

*Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster with a tall basement. A viewing panel is located on the south walls and allows visitors a peak in the component of the exterior masonry walls.

The panel exposes the brick masonry and thin pieces of quartzite which was used as an infill between the courses of brick.

*Windows:*

Two of the building standard windows are located on the north wall and one of the building standard windows is located on the south wall. The windows are six over six double-hung wooden windows with true-divided lights.



Figure 5.205, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, East Room, Room 205, general view southeast.

*Doors:*

Three doors are present in the space. A four-paneled, solid, wooden door connects the east room to the corridor. A modern, smooth hollow-core wood door accesses a small mechanical room to the north of the fireplace. A modern, smooth hollow-core metal door accesses the hyphen. This door is a component of the Halon fire suppression system.

*Floors:*

The floor is a wooden tongue and groove floor. The floorboards run east to west.



Figure 5.206, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, East Room, Room 205, view east.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

A 20<sup>th</sup> century simple mantel is located on the east wall. The header and trim panels feature simple grooved edges. The firebox and hearth and brick. Viewing panels are located on the wall above the fireplace and reveal the original hewn apron with lamb's tongue details.

*Lighting:*

A modern wall-mounted flood light is mounted above the door to the mechanical space.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

Heating and cooling is provided through the vent located in the wall of the mechanical room.



Figure 5.207, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, East Room, Room 205, view northeast. Note the modern closet, door, light, halon suppression system, and vent.



Figure 5.208, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, East Room, Room 205, detail of view panel at fireplace. Note the hewn apron and lamb's tongue.



Figure 5.209, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 building, Second Floor, East Room, Room 205, detail of drawing on the wall.

*Other:*

Drawings made by either a resident or visitor of Bacon's Castle, which are dated 1886, are located on the west wall.

Wooden steps with unpainted treads and risers painted white connect the level of the east room to the level of the hyphen. A wrought iron handrail is located on the south wall adjacent the stair. The railing is both floor mounted and wall mounted.

## Second Floor, Hyphen, Egress Stair (Room 206)



Figure 5.210, Bacon's Castle Hyphen, Second Floor, Room 206, view east.

### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is smooth gypsum wall board and follows the slope of the gable roof of the hyphen. The ceiling covers up the upper right corner of the door trim of the door which accesses the ca. 1854 addition.

### *Walls:*

The walls are smooth gypsum wall board. A simple four-inch base trim is located at the base of the walls.

### *Windows:*

A six over six, wooden, double-hung window is centered on the south wall of the space.



Figure 5.211, Bacon's Castle Hyphen, Second Floor, Room 206, view west.

### *Doors:*

Three smooth, hollow core, metal doors are located in the space. The door on the west wall accesses the east room of the ca. 1665 dwelling. The door on the east wall accesses the ca. 1854 stair hall. The small door on the north wall accesses a small storage closet.

### *Floors:*

The floor is a tongue and groove wooden floor. The floorboards run east to west.

### *Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.



Figure 5.212, Bacon's Castle Hyphen, Second Floor, Room 206, view north.

*Lighting:*

S strip florescent light is mounted on the wall above the landing of the modern egress stairs. An exit light is ceiling mounted at the top of the modern egress stairs.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/ Cooling:*

None.



Figure 5.213, Bacon's Castle Hyphen, Second Floor, Room 206, detail of stair railings.

*Other:*

A modern, steel with concrete tread stair was constructed after Preservation Virginia took ownership of the property. The stair has square metal pickets and a brushed aluminum handrail.

Wooden steps with unpainted treads and risers painted white connect the level of the hyphen to the level of the ca. 1854 addition. A wrought iron handrail is located on the north door jamb. The railing is both floor mounted and wall mounted.

**Second Floor, ca. 1854 addition, Stair Hall  
(Room 207)**



Figure 5.214, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 207, detail of ceiling and attic hatch.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is a smooth plaster ceiling, which is in good condition. An attic hatch is located in the northwest corner of the room.



Figure 5.215, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 207, view north.



Figure 5.216, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 207, detail of wall and trim separation.

*Walls:*

The walls are plaster, which is in fair to good condition. Separation is occurring in the northwest corner of the room. A crack is forming at the intersection of the north and west walls. A broad, approximately fourteen-inch tall baseboard with deep horizontal grooves runs around the perimeter of the wall.

*Windows:*

A window, which matches the ca. 1854 building standard is located on the north wall. The proportions of the windows on the ca. 1854 wing are much larger than those found on the ca. 1665 portion of the dwelling. The window is six over six, double-hung, true-divided light.



Figure 5.217, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 207, view south.

*Doors:*

Three doors are located in the stair hall. The doors on the east and south wall are four-paneled, solid, wooden doors. The door on the east wall accesses what would have been a bedroom in the ca. 1854 addition. The door on the south wall accesses a modern restroom.

The door on the west wall is a modern, smooth, hollow-core metal door.

*Floors:*

The floors are tongue and groove wooden floors. The floorboards are much narrower than those found in the ca. 1665 dwelling. The floorboards run north to south.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

A small and simple flush-mounted glass light fixture is located on the ceiling.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

None.



Figure 5.218, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 207, detail of stair landing.

*Other:*

A wooden stair occupies the northern portion of the room. A landing is present at the north wall of the space. The profile of the handrail is round. The risers and tapered round pickets are painted white. The paint is in good condition. The treads, handrail, and newel post are stained. A metal brace was added between the runs of stairs in order to stabilize the handrail and pickets.

## Second Floor, ca. 1854 addition, South Bedroom (Room 208)



Figure 5.219, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 208, detail of efflorescence above the fireplace.

### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is a smooth plaster ceiling, which is in good condition. Efflorescence is occurring above the fireplace.

### *Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster, in good condition. A tall base molding is located on the walls. The top nosing of the base molding also serves as window sills. A vertical crack is forming at the intersection of the south and west walls, including separation between the two baseboards.

### *Windows:*

Three double-hung windows (six over six, true-divided light) are located in the space. Two are symmetrically placed on the south wall and the other window is located to the north of the fireplace.



Figure 5.220, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 208, detail of crack in southwest corner of the room.

### *Doors:*

Three, four-paneled wooden doors are located in the room. One accesses the bathroom and one accesses the ca. 1854 stair hall. The third door accesses the north bedroom.



Figure 5.221, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 208, detail of doors.

### *Floors:*



The floors are tongue and groove hardwoods.  
The floorboards run east to west.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

The fireplace has a brick fire box and hearth.  
The wood mantelpiece has fluted, slender,  
columns with flat plinth blocks, raised  
capitals, and an entablature with flat panel.  
Brass andirons are located in the fireplace.

*Lighting:*

A glass flush-mounted light is centered on the  
ceiling.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

Modern vents are located on the floor and  
provide cooling and heating to the space.

Figure 5.222, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second  
Floor, Room 208, view of fireplace and mantel. Note  
the efflorescence at the ceiling intersection.



## Second Floor, ca. 1854 addition, North Bedroom (Room 209)

### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is a smooth plaster ceiling, which is in good condition.

### *Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster, in good condition. A tall base molding is located on the walls. The top nosing of the base molding also serves as window sills. A vertical crack is forming at the intersection of the north and west walls, including separation between the two baseboards.



Figure 5.223, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 209, view of northeastern window.

### *Windows:*

Three double-hung windows (six over six, true-divided light) are located in the space. Two are symmetrically placed on the north

wall and the other window is located to the south of the fireplace.



Figure 5.224, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 209, view of door to south bedroom.

### *Doors:*

Three, four-paneled wooden doors are located in the room. One accesses the bathroom and one accesses the ca. 1854 stair hall. The third door accesses the north bedroom.

### *Floors:*

The floors are tongue and groove hardwoods. The floorboards run east to west.



This room is currently used for storage for furniture, artifacts, signage, and various other museum supplies. A large portion of the room was not visible, due to the amount of items in the space.

Figure 5.225, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 209, view of fireplace.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

The fireplace has a brick fire box. The hearth is not visible due to the amount of stored items in the room. The wood mantelpiece has fluted, slender, columns with flat plinth blocks, raised capitals, and an entablature with flat panel.

*Lighting:*

A glass flush-mounted light is centered on the ceiling.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

Modern vents are located on the floor and provide cooling and heating to the space.

*Other:*



**Second Floor, ca. 1854 addition, Bathroom  
(Room 210)**

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is a smooth plaster ceiling, which is in good condition.

*Walls:*

The walls are smooth plaster, in good condition. A tall base molding is located on the walls. The top nosing of the base molding also serves as window sills. Beginning above the base moldings, ceramic tile has been applied to all of the walls up to approximately 6'-8" above the floor.



Figure 5.226, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 210, view of sink.

*Windows:*

Two double-hung windows (six over six, true-divided light) are located in the space. One is

centered on the south wall and the other window is centered on the west wall.

*Doors:*

Two, four-paneled wooden doors are located in the room. One accesses the ca. 1854 stair hall, and the second door accesses the south bedroom.

*Floors:*

The floors are tongue and groove hardwoods. The floorboards run north to south.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

A glass flush-mounted light is centered on the ceiling. Two wall sconces frame a medicine cabinet on the east wall.

*Plumbing:*

The bathroom contains three pieces of plumbing equipment, a sink on the east wall, a tub in the northwest corner, and a toilet in the southwest corner. All pieces are porcelain.

*Heating/Cooling:*

None.

*Other:*

The space is used to store various cleaning supplies and paper towels and toilet paper.

## Second Floor, Hyphen, Storage Closet (Room 211)



Figure 5.227, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 211, detail of removed section of ceiling.

### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is smooth plaster, which is in poor condition. At the intersection of the ceiling and south wall, a jagged edge is present, where approximately a one-foot wide section of the plaster and lath has been removed. This section of ceiling was most likely removed during the construction of the egress stair.

### *Walls:*

The south wall is exposed CMU. The north, east, and west walls are covered in wall paper. The wall paper is in poor condition. Portions of the wall paper and the substrate are missing on the west wall and brick of the ca. 1665 portion of the building is visible.



Figure 5.228, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 211, view west.

### *Windows:*

None.

### *Doors:*

A modified door, approximately 2'-6" tall is located on the south wall. The door is a hollow core metal door with modern hardware. A wooden attic access door is located on the north wall of the room but was inaccessible due to the stored items in the space.

### *Floors:*

The floors are tongue and groove hardwoods. The floorboards run east to west.

### *Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

### *Lighting:*

None.



Figure 5.229, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1854 addition, Second Floor, Room 211, detail of door, wall paper, and damaged wallpaper.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

None. The space does house mechanical equipment and ductwork.

*Other:*

The majority of the space is inaccessible due to the large amount of items stored in the space.

## Garret Floor

### Garret Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, North Tower Stair Hall (Room 301)



Figure 5.230, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 301, detail of ceiling. Note the ends of the nails and the halon system.

#### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is composed of the exposed framing of the roof above. The underside of the wide (approximately 14") board sheathing is exposed. The tips of the nails are exposed as well. The structural members and roof sheathing is painted white. An unpainted, temporary brace has been installed near the northernmost portion of the space to provide additional support. The halon fire suppression is attached to the roof joists. An attic hatch is located in the southeast corner of the ceiling.



Figure 5.231, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 301, framing detail.

#### *Walls:*

The walls are primarily of plaster, which is in poor condition. Large amounts of efflorescence are located on the west wall. A portion of the west wall is clapboard siding. No formal moldings are present. The north and west exterior wall thickness becomes thinner at the garret level, creating a ledge slightly above the floor level.



Figure 5.232, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 301, detail of west wall. Note how the wall thickness changed. Note the efflorescence.



Figure 5.233, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 301, detail of clapboard and plaster wall intersection.

*Windows:*

Two windows are located at the top level of the stair tower. One is located at each landing. A wooden, double-hung (six over six true divided light) window is located at the lower landing. A wooden, double-hung (six over six true divided light) window is located at the second landing of the stair.

*Doors:*

Two cased openings are located in the space. The cased openings access the east and south garret rooms. The west room is accessed by a door.

*Floors:*

The floorboards are much wider than those found throughout the first and second floors of the ca. 1665 portion of the building. The

floors are also not the tongue and groove flooring found on the first and second floor of the ca. 1665 portion of the building, but are instead plank flooring. The floorboards run east to west.



Figure 5.234, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 301, view north.



Figure 5.235, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 301, stair.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

A wooden stair dominates the room. The stair connects the garret to the first, second, and basement levels. The balusters are turned and painted white. The newel posts and handrails are naturally finished wood. The treads are naturally finished and the risers are painted white.

*Lighting:*

None.

*Plumbing:*





None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

None.

**Garret Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, West Room  
(Room 302)**



Figure 5.236, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 302, view to west.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is composed of the exposed framing of the roof on the east and west walls and the underside of the floor joists and plank flooring of the attic space above. The underside of the wide (approximately 14") board sheathing is exposed. The tips of the nails are exposed as well. The structural members and roof sheathing are painted white.

*Walls:*

The upper two-thirds of the east and west walls are composed of the roof framing and the underside of the roof sheathing. The bottom one-third of the east and west walls are plaster on lath. The east wall is plaster on lath. The west wall is the exterior brick wall, which is parged in plaster. The plaster portions of the walls are in very poor condition. Expansive cracks and flaking paint and plaster are prevalent. The west chimney mass is rotating out and away from the rest of the building. Separation of approximately five-six inches is visible between the far west beam and the exterior wall.



Figure 5.237 Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 302, detail of framing members and roof sheathing.



Figure 5.238 Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 302, detail of cracking and flaking plaster above southern window.



Figure 5.239, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 302, detail of gap between the framing member and the chimney mass.



Figure 5.240, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 302, detail of window.

*Windows:*

Two small, double-hung one over one windows flank the fireplace on the west walls. These are replacement windows. According to the Frances Benjamin Johnston interior and exterior photographs taken in 1936, these windows were equilateral arch windows at that time. The equilateral arch windows did not align with the segmental brick arches on west exterior elevation.

*Doors:*

A single door accesses the stair hall. Two small cased openings, one each in the north and south wall, access a storage space between the plaster walls and the eaves.

*Floors:*

The floors are wooden plank floors. The floorboards run east to west. A uniform cut

line is located approximately 14" west of the east wall. It is unapparent as to why this cut line exists. A cut line, in a similar location to this cut line, is located in the east garret room as well.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

A large fireplace, which projects from the west wall, is centered on the west wall. The fireplace has a brick hearth and firebox. The apron is wooden, which has been painted. The throat, mantel face, and mantel returns are parged brick. The plaster is in poor condition.

*Lighting:*

None.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

A modern vent is located on the east wall.

*Other:*

A tension rod connects the summer beam on the second floor below to the roof structure above the west garret room. This room is included within the Halon Fire Suppression System network.

**Garret Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, South Tower  
(Room 303)**



Figure 5.241, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 303, view southwest.

*Ceiling:*

The ceiling is composed of the exposed framing of the roof on the east and west walls and the underside of the floor joists and plank flooring of the attic space above. The underside of the wide (approximately 14") board sheathing is exposed. The tips of the nails are also exposed. The structural members and roof sheathing are painted white.



Figure 5.242, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 303, detail of ceiling.

*Walls:*

The upper two-thirds of the east, west, and south walls are composed of the roof framing and the underside of the roof sheathing. The bottom one-third of the east, west, and south walls are plaster on lath. The north wall is plaster on lath. The plaster portions of the walls are in fair condition, although the plaster has a rough texture. According to the Historic American Building Survey photographs and the Frances Benjamin Johnston photographs, a portion of the west wall was also clad with clapboard siding, similar to which survives on the west wall of the stair hall. This area is now smooth plaster.



Figure 5.243, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 303, detail structural joint.

*Windows:*

None. According to the Francis Benjamin Johnston photographs, a circular window was located in the south wall in 1936.

*Doors:*

A cased opening accesses the stair hall.



Figure 5.244, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 303, detail of floor. Note the light permeating between the floorboards.

*Floors:*

The floors are comprised of planks. Above the main body of the ca. 1665 dwelling, the floorboards run east to west. In the portion of the south tower, the floorboards run north to south. Light from the second floor is visible through the wide gaps between the planks above the south tower.

Several replacement boards are found throughout the south room.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

A modern light is concealed within the roof structure.

*Plumbing:*

None.



Figure 5.245, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 303, detail of modern ductwork.

*Heating/Cooling:*

Modern ductwork with a vent is located in the northwest corner of the room.

*Other:*

This room houses the Halon Fire Suppression system including tank in the northwest corner of the room. This room is included within the Halon Fire Suppression System network.

## Garret Floor, ca. 1665 Castle, East Room (Room 304)



Figure 5.246, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 304, view east. Note the extreme efflorescence and damaged plaster in the northeast corner.

### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is composed of the exposed framing of the roof on the east and west walls and the underside of the floor joists and plank flooring of the attic space above. The underside of the wide (approximately 14") board sheathing is exposed. The tips of the nails are exposed as well. The structural members and roof sheathing are painted white.

### *Walls:*

The upper two-thirds of the east and west walls are composed of the roof framing and the underside of the roof sheathing. The bottom one-third of the east and west walls are plaster on lath. The west wall is plaster on lath. The east wall is the exterior brick wall, which is parged in plaster. The plaster portions of the walls, especially the east wall, are in very poor condition. Expansive cracks and flaking paint and plaster are prevalent. Efflorescence is present on the exterior east wall.



Figure 5.247, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 304, view northeast.

### *Windows:*

Two small double-hung one over one windows are located on the east wall. The windows flank an exterior chimney mass.

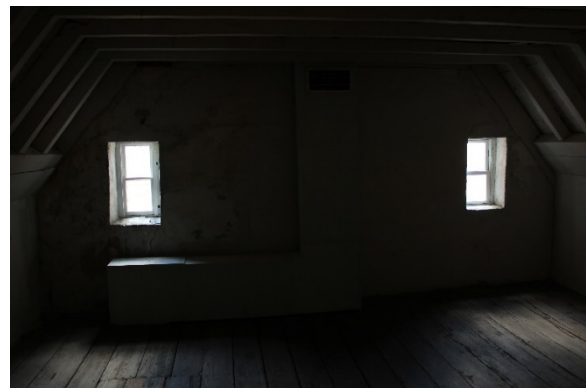


Figure 5.248, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 304, view east. Detail of windows.

### *Doors:*

A cased opening accesses the stair hall. Two small cased openings, one each in the north and south wall, access a storage space between the plaster walls and the eaves.

### *Floors:*

The floors are wooden plank floors. The floorboards run east to west. A uniform cut line is located approximately 14" east of the west wall. It is unapparent as to why this cut line exists. A cut line, in a similar location to this cut line, is located in the west garret room as well.



Figure 5.249, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Garret Floor, Room 304, detail of cut line in floor.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

None.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

A large "L" shaped piece of ductwork is located on the east wall. The duct connects to the attic space above and the to the modern mechanical closet in the east garret chamber below.

*Other:*

This room is protected by the Halon Fire Protection System.

## Attic

### Attic, ca. 1665 Castle (Room 401)



Figure 3.250, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Attic, Room 401, detail of principal rafter III. Note the III, which is carved into each portion of the rafter. Hewn marks are also visible on the principal rafter.

#### *Ceiling:*

The ceiling is comprised of the exposed structure and the exposed, approximately 14" board sheathing. The principal rafters are numbered with roman numerals. One of the principal rafters has a metal strap, which was added to extra support. The structure and sheathing are unpainted. Hewn marks are visible on the rafters.

Evidence of the backside of plaster on lath is visible on the north side of the ceiling. A small peak where lath is located, shows plaster keys. It is unclear as to why this small portion would have plaster.



Figure 5.251, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Attic, Room 401, detail of the north side of the ceiling. Note the small peak of the backside of plaster on lath.



Figure 5.252, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Attic, Room 401, view east of east gable end wall. Note the missing coat and the large duct.



Figure 5.253, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Attic, Room 401, detail of the east gable peak. Note the missing mortar.

#### *Walls:*

The east and west walls gable end walls are brick, which is parged in plaster. These walls are in very poor condition. The plaster is crumbling, revealing bricks that have no mortar between them. What mortar exists is crumbling. The presence of moisture is contributing to the condition issues of the walls. The west chimney mass is rotating out from the main body of the ca. 1665 portion of the building.

This is evidenced by the displacement of the west wall, which is measurable compared to the east wall. A difference of approximately five inches is the displacement of the west wall. The west wall is in much worse condition compared to the east wall. Daylight is visible through the brick of the west wall. In some cases, the brick of the west wall is crumbling and turning to dust. When inserted into the brick, the carpenter rule was able to extend four inches.

*Windows:*

None.

*Doors:*

None. An access hatch located in the floor accesses the garret level.

*Floors:*

The floors are wide planks which run east to west.



Figure 5.254, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Attic, Room 401, view west of west gable end wall. Note the amount of missing parge coat is greater on the west gable end wall.



Figure 5.255, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Attic, Room 401, detail of the west gable wall. Note the crumbling brick. The carpenter rule was inserted four inches into the brick. This is also the location where daylight is visible through the brick wall.

*Mantelpiece/Casework:*

None.

*Lighting:*

None.



Figure 5.256, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Attic, Room 401, measurement of the east end wall. Note the consistent edge of the plaster at this location. Measurement taken at approximately the center of the east wall.





Figure 5.257, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1665 portion, Attic, Room 401, measurement of the east end wall. Note the consistent edge of the plaster at this location. Measurement taken at approximately the center of the east wall.

*Plumbing:*

None.

*Heating/Cooling:*

None. A large duct stretches the length of the attic. The duct does not heat or cool the attic space, but the garret spaces below.

*Other:*

Exposed conduit and exposed halon fire suppression piping is located on the floor of the attic. The conduit and Halon Fire Suppression system serves the garret spaces below.

## Chapter Nine Bibliography

### Acquisition

#### Letters

Murdock, Robert to G. Ira Price. 14  
September 1973. Preservation Virginia Files,  
Richmond, VA.

Riely, John to Robert Murdock. 12  
September 1973. Preservation Virginia Files,  
Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Robert to John Riely. 10  
September 1973. Preservation Virginia Files,  
Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Robert to G. Ira Price. 10  
September 1973. Preservation Virginia Files,  
Richmond, VA.

Remick, Nat F. to Robert R. Hardy. 13 July  
1973. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond,  
VA.

Boothe, Armistead L. to Nat F. Remick. 2  
July 1973. Preservation Virginia Files,  
Richmond, VA.

Bice, Raymond C. to Neill H. Alford, Jr. 8  
June 1973. Preservation Virginia Files,  
Richmond, VA.

#### Pamphlets

Remick, Nat. Farm Real Estate in the Estate  
of W. P. Warren. Norfolk, VA: United  
Virginia Bank/Seaboard National, April 1973.  
Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

#### Miscellaneous Manuscript Papers

Farm Profile of the W. P. Warren Estate.  
Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

#### Architecture/Archaeology

#### Miscellaneous Manuscript Papers

Notes on Meeting Held on 29 June 1978 at  
Bacon's Castle [RE: Archaeology].  
Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Notes on Meeting Held on 19 October 1978  
at Bacon's Castle [RE: Archaeology].  
Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Record of Meeting of the APVA Bacon's  
Castle Advisory Committee, Williamsburg,  
Virginia, March 22, 1982 [RE: Archaeology].  
Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

#### Reports

Davenport, Deborah L. "1985 Bacon's Castle  
Garden Excavation Progress Report."  
Division of Historic Landmarks Research  
Center for Archaeology. September 1985.  
Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

#### Architecture/Architectural Reports Reports

Sloane, Victor C. "Architectural Report on  
Bacon's Castle, Surry County, Virginia."  
Jamestown Island Colonial National  
Historical Park. 20 September 1937.  
Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Stone, Wes. "Report on Mr. Paul Buchanan's  
Visit to Bacon's Castle." 7 May 1992.  
Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

#### Architecture/Correspondence RE:

#### Architecture

#### Letters

Land, Robert Hunt to Frances Lunsford. 9  
January 1939. Preservation Virginia Files,  
Richmond, VA.

Tyler, Mabel to Angus Murdock. 2 February  
1981. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond,  
VA.



Murdock, Angus to Stephen A. Smith. 21 November 1983. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Angus to Mrs. W. Kevan Johnson. 10 June 1985. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Angus to Matthias E. Kayhoe. 1 April 1985. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Angus to Ransom True. 28 November 1977. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Kelly, Kevin P. to Robert Murdock. 7 September 1977. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Chappell, Edward to Bruce McDougal. 19 March 1990. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

### **Architecture/Excerpts from Published Sources**

Forman, Henry Chandler. The Architecture of the Old South: The Medieval Style 1585-1850. Cambridge, MA: Harvard University Press, 1948.

Kimball, Fiske. Romantic Architecture of the American Colonies and of the Early Republic. New York: Dover Publications, Inc., 1950.

Farrar, Emmie Ferguson. Old Virginia Houses Along the James. New York: Bonanza Books, 1957.

Linebaugh, Donald W. "All the Annoyances and Inconveniences of the Country,' Environmental Factors in the Development of Outbuildings in the Colonial Chesapeake." Winterthur Portfolio 29, no. 1 (Spring 1994): 1-17.



### **Architecture/Garden Restoration Newsletters**

Gilliam, Anne, and Elizabeth Madeira. "Breakthrough at Bacon's Castle." The Garden Club of America Bulletin. New York: Garden Club of America, 1986(?).

### **Newspapers**

Associated Press. "Old Garden Find Termed 'Spectacular.'" Bee (Danville). December 1985.

Associated Press. "Castle Finds Far Surpass Expectations." Winchester Star. 24 December 1985.

Associated Press. "Bacon's Castle Dig Finds 'Once in a Lifetime.'" Potomac News. 23 December 1985.

Associated Press. "Bacon's Castle Finds Exceed Archaeologists' Hopes." Northern Virginia Daily. 23 December 1985.

Associated Press. "Artifacts Suggest Discovery of Colonial Formal Garden." Roanoke Times & World-News. 26 December 1986.

Deitz, Paula. "1680 Garden is Discovered in the South." New York Times. 26 December 1985.

Holiday, Ann. "Eye from Sky Studies Bacon's Castle..." Richmond News Leader.

Kale, Wilford. "17<sup>th</sup> Century Garden Uncovered." Richmond News Leader. 20 December 1985.

Reid, Ford. "Bacon's Castle Garden Rich in History." Norfolk Virginian-Pilot. 16 December 1985.

### **Architecture/Historic Descriptions Reports**

Favretti, Rudy J. "Landscape Specifications, Bacon's Castle, Surry, Virginia." Restoration Committee, Garden Club of Virginia. August 1988. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Simpson, W.S. Letter Book, 11 March 1826-5 July 1830. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

## **Correspondence**

### **Letters**

True, Ransom to Mary Jones. 11 July 1984. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

True, Ransom to Surry County Planning Commission. 11 July 1984. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Gray, Elmon to Peter Dun Grover. 3 December 1991. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Grover, Peter Dun to Elmon Gray. 21 November 1991. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Falcon, Mary to Peter Grover. 27 November 1991. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Bacon's Castle Maintenance Correspondence and Invoices. 1957-1995. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Bacon's Castle Restoration Correspondence. 1975-1995. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

## **Decorative Arts**

### **Letters**

Jones, Spotswood Hunnicutt to Robert A. Murdock. 23 February 1976. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Angus to Burk O. Barker. 16 November 1984. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Barker, Burk O. to R. Angus Murdock. 28 November 1984. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Barker, Burk O. to R. Angus Murdock. 11 November 1984. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

R. Angus Murdock to Mr. and Mrs. T. Eugene Worrell. 18 April 1985. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Grover, Peter Dun to Col. E. Van Rensselaer Needels. 22 October 1990. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Pentecost, A. Ray Jr. to Peter Grover. 20 November 1991. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Pentecost, A. Ray Jr. to Peter Grover. 6 December 1995. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Grover, Peter Dun to A. Ray Pentecost, Jr. 6 December 1995. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

## **Reports**

Boswell, Mary Rose. "A Bibliographical Essay: Furnishing Bacon's Castle and Lynnhaven House in the Late Seventeenth Century Manner." Winterthur Summer Institute. August 1977. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

## **Miscellaneous Manuscript Papers**

Bacon's Castle Furnishings List. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.



Hurst, Ronald L. "Furnishing Bacon's Castle." Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

## **Deeds**

### **Miscellaneous Manuscript Papers**

Will of Walker Pegram Warren. 1 April 1946. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Deed, Bacon's Castle. 18 September 1973. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

## **Letters**

Savage, Virginia to Walker Pegram. 17 February 1950. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Loth, Calder to Edwin Kendrew. 19 April 1973. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

## **Dendrochronology**

### **Letters**

Dudley, Alfred T. to Prof. Heikkinen. 31 October 1971. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Robert A. to Junius Fishburne. 13 February 1973. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Robertson, Randal M. to Dr. H. J. Heikkinen. 28 February 1974. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Rennolds, Richard to Dr. H. J. Heikkinen. 1 April 1976. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Heikkinen, Herman J. to R.A. Murdock. 21 May 1976. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Robert A. to Dr. James McD. Grayson. 26 May 1976. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Robert A. to Dr. James McD. Grayson. 16 March 1977. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Robert A. to Dr. H.J. Heikkinen. 16 March 1977. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Grayson, James McD. To Robert A. Murdock. 24 March 1977. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Heikkinen, H. J. to Academic Press, Inc. 3 May 1977. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Grayson, James McD. To Dr. H. J. Heikkinen. 20 June 1977. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Robert A. to Dr. James McD. Grayson. 2 August 1977. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Grayson, James McD. To Robert A. Murdock. 4 August 1977. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Heikkinen, Herman J. to Robert A. Murdock. 1 November 1977. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Heikkinen, Herman J. to Robert A. Murdock. 17 January 1978. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Robert A. to Dr. H.J. Heikkinen. 1 February 1978. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Heikkinen, H. J. to Robert A. Murdock. Memorandum. 21 February 1978. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.



Garbee, Robert to Dr. Heikkenen. 9 March 1978. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Robert A. to Gail Hammerquist. 6 December 1978. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Slusher, H. Christopher to Richard Reynolds. 27 June 1979. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Darcy, Evelyn to Dr. H. J. Heikkenen. 10 January 1979. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

True, Ransom to Angus Murdock. 22 June 1984. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Murdock, Robert A. Memorandum. 3 April 1980. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

### **Miscellaneous Manuscript Papers**

Heikkenen, Herman John. "To Perfect Dating of Historical Buildings from Tree Rings." Research proposal, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, 21 January 1972. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Research Project Authorization for "Forest and Wood Products Insects" by Dr. H. J. Heikkenen. 8 June 1976. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Lahendro, Joseph Dye. "Technology, Preservation, and the A.P.V.A." Fall 1976. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Heikkenen, H. J. "The Dating of Historical Buildings from Tree Rings, especially Bacon's Castle, Surry Co., Virginia." Research proposal, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, 30 November 1978. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Heikkenen, Herman J. Virginia Historic Landmarks Commission form documenting use of consultants in preservation projects. Ca. 1970s. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

### **News Articles**

Pitner, Bob. "Dating Method Grows from Beetle Research." Roanoke Times & World News. 26 July 1977. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Robertson, Gary. "Tree Rings Used to Date Houses." Richmond Times-Dispatch. Ca. 1970s. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

### **Reports**

Heikkenen, Herman J. "The Construction Date of Bacon's Castle: A Preliminary Estimate Derived from Key Year Dendrochronology." Report, American Institute of Dendrochronology, Inc., 1 July 1980. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

### **History/Correspondence**

#### **Letters**

Osdene, Philippa to Mrs. W. Tucker Carrington. 9 September 1980. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA

Rennolds, Richard. "Bacon's Castle in Surry County Welcomes Three Generations." Press Release, 8 September 1980. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Bacon, Jason to Mrs. Nelson C. Ritchie. 22 July 1986. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Ritchie, Dot to Bruce. 28 July 1986. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

### **History/Excerpts (Published Sources)**



## Books

Kornwolf, James D. *The Surry County, Virginia 1776 Bicentennial Committee Guide to the Buildings of Surry and the American Revolution*. Surry, VA: The Bicentennial Committee, 1976.

## News Articles

Johnson, Margaret. "Bacon's Castle: A Symbol." Virginian-Pilot.

Nurney, Daisy. "'Suffolk' Section Offers Gardens of Unusual Interest." Virginian-Pilot. 21 April 1929.

Front-page article about Bacon's Castle. Virginian-Pilot. 7 October 1951.

St. John, Edward. "Bacon's Castle Theme for Numerous Stories." Richmond Times-Dispatch. 7 January 1923.

Tucker, George Holbert. "'Castle' is Link to Bacon 250 Years After Rebellion." Norfolk Virginian.

Nurney, Daisy. "...Famous...Castle Teeming...With Romantic Stop...of 16<sup>th</sup> Century Lovers [illegible title]." Virginian-Pilot. 30 April 1922.

## History/Hankins Family Letters

### Letters

Hankins Family Letters, 1860-1870. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

## History/Reports (Unpublished Reports)

Price, Virginia Barrett. "Keeping Up Appearances: Elizabeth Allen at Bacon's Castle 1711-1774," MA Thesis, College of William & Mary, Williamsburg, VA, 1998.

"Report Upon Allen Family of Surry, Virginia." 20 February 1704/5. From the Nicholson Manuscripts, Colonial

Williamsburg Foundation. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

True, Ransom B. "A Brief History of Bacon's Castle." Report, Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, October 1982. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

"APVA's Restoration Work on Bacon's Castle: 1973-1984." Report, Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, ca. 1984. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Kelly, Kevin P. "The Allens of Bacon's Castle." Report, Institute of Early American History and Culture, 1 April 1974. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Owen, William Russell. "Bacon's Castle, an Old Virginia Estate." Report. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

"Bacon's Castle in 1669-1679." Report. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA. Bacon, Jason. Untitled report on Nathaniel Bacon. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

## Letters

Creath, Mrs. Samuel L. to James O. Heptinstall. 25 May 1973. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Creath, Mrs. Samuel L. to James O. Heptinstall. 9 August 1972. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Creath, Mary Ballard Fontaine to unknown recipient. 28 June 1978. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Creath, Mrs. Samuel L. to James O. Heptinstall. 21 July 1972. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.



Heptinstall, James O. to Mrs. Samuel L. Creath. 25 July 1972. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

### **Miscellaneous Manuscript Papers**

“A Bull Fight at Bacon’s Castle.” Poem. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

### **Interpretation**

#### **Miscellaneous Manuscript Papers**

Grice, Alexander P. III. Appraisal Report, Bacon’s Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Carrie Castle Edwards Britt, interview by Nancy Carter Crump [transcription]. 14 June 1982. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Bacon’s Castle Tour Tape Transcript. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

### **Pamphlets**

“Bacon’s Castle.” Brochure, Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities. Ca. 1970s (?). Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

“Bacon’s Castle Outbuildings.” Brochure, Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

### **Reports**

Murdock, Robert A. Financial Report, Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities. Ca. 1970s. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

“Bacon’s Castle: The APVA’s Long-Range Plans for Preservation, Research and Interpretation.” Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

### **Inventories**

“An Inventory and Appraisal of the Estate of Major Arthur Allen, Deceased, Taken in May and June, 1711.” Surry County Records, Deed Book 1709-1715, pp. 84-88. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Estate Inventory for Arthur Allen, 4 April 1728. Surry County Deed Book 1715-1730, pp. 807-810. Transcription: R. L. Hurst, 1982. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Estate Inventory for Colonel John Allen, Claremont, 1742. Surry County Records, Will Book 1738-54, pp. 438-444. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Estate Inventory for James Allen, 17 September 1745. Surry County Deeds, Wills, etc., 1738-1754, pp. 545-547. Transcription: R. L. Hurst. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Estate Inventory for Capt. Arthur Smith, 24 January 1755. Isle of Wight County Will Book 6, pp. 144-151. Transcription: R. L. Hurst, 1982. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Estate Inventory for Mrs. Elizabeth Bray Allen Smith Stith, 9 March 1774. Surry County Deed Book [unknown], pp. 368-372. Transcription: R. L. Hurst, 1982. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

Estate Inventory for John H. Hankins, 2 February 1871. Surry County Will Book 12, p. 109. Preservation Virginia Files, Richmond, VA.

### **Large Format Documents and Drawings Reports**

Library of Congress. Historic American Buildings Survey (HABS). Written Historical and Descriptive Data: Bacon’s Castle, by Eugene Bradbury. 30 November 1940.





## **Drawings**

Millar, Donald. Measured Drawings of Some Colonial and Georgian Houses. Three volumes [Volumes I and II 1916, Volume III 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930). Millar's measured drawings of Bacon's Castle are dated August 1919, Preservation Virginia; see Appendix for those drawings. (North, South, East, and West Elevations. South Elevation ca. 1710. West and North Elevations ca. 1919 Appearance. Floor Plans. Elevations: Parlor, Dining Room. Sections: Stair, Roof Framing. Details: Stair, Wood Trim, Miscellaneous.)

1931. Measured Plan of Bacon's Castle.

1940. HABS Drawings. Sheets 1-22 of 22.

1942. Restoration of Rear Entrance including Miscellaneous Details. Barnum-Bruns Iron Works, Norfolk, VA.

1973. Physical Survey of Bacon's Castle for APVA. Baldwin and Gregg Ltd., Norfolk, VA.

1975. Addition to 1854 Section.

1982. Restoration Drawings.

## **Photographs and Illustrations**

Hankins, Virginia Wilson. Ca. 1850-1888. Watercolor of Bacon's Castle, Side View.

No Date. Aerial Photographs of Bacon's Castle. No Date.

No Date. Photographs of Bacon's Castle main house, caretaker's cottage, other outbuildings, et. al.

Boucher, Jack E. November 1972. HABS Photographs.



1919. Perspective Sketch [Cover of Architectural Drawings].  
1981-1982. Photographs documenting repointing. APVA.

## **Maps**

Ca. 1950. Map showing property belonging to W. P. Warren, Surry County, VA.

1911. Map of Bacon's Castle Farm, Surry County, Virginia.

## **Books**

Andrews, Stephenson B., ed. Bacon's Castle. Richmond, VA: Association for the Preservation of Virginia Antiquities, 1984.

Thomas T. Waterman and John A. Barrows, Domestic Colonial Architecture of Tidewater Virginia (New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1932).

# Appendix 1: 2015 Existing Conditions Drawings, Commonwealth Architects

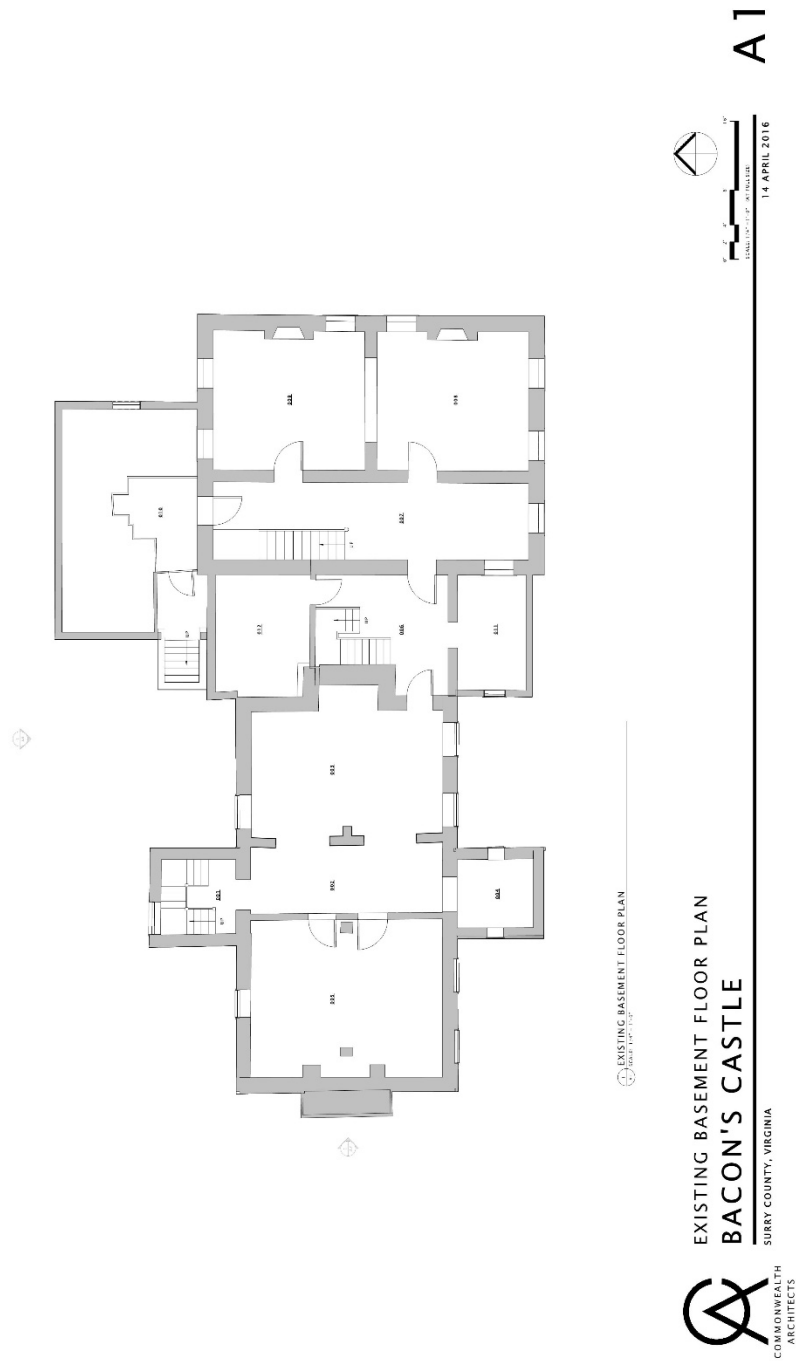
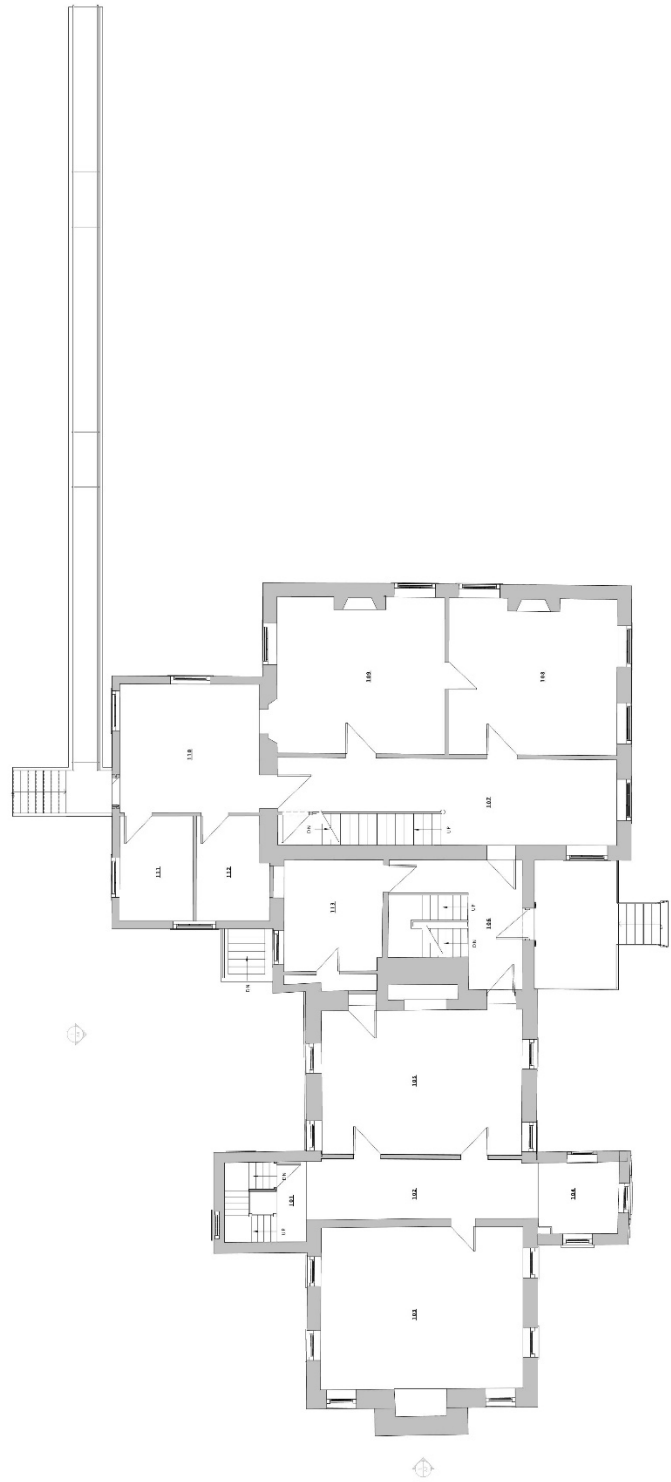


Figure 1: Bacon's Castle, Basement Floor Plan, 2015.





EXISTING FIRST FLOOR PLAN  
 04/15/16

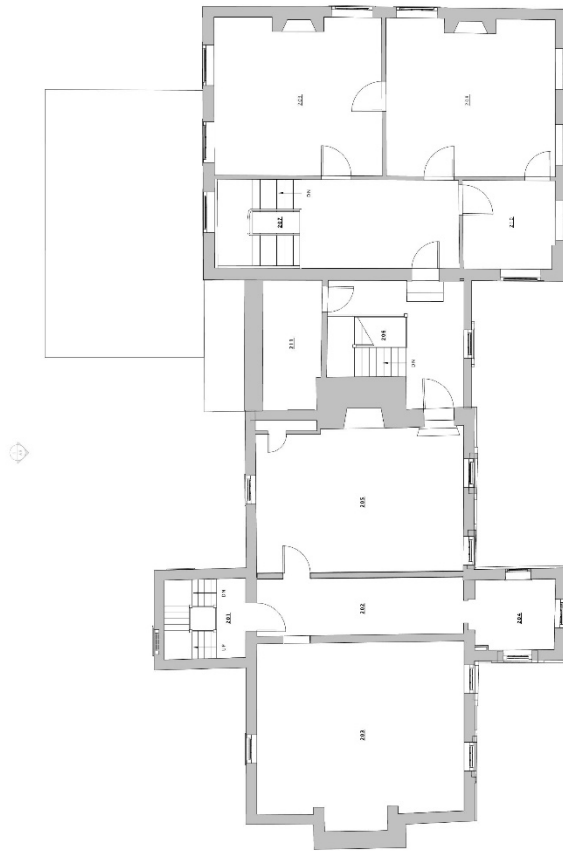
**EXISTING FIRST FLOOR PLAN**  
**BACON'S CASTLE**  
 SURRY COUNTY, VIRGINIA

COMMONWEALTH ARCHITECTS

A2

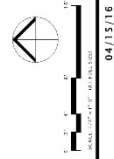
Figure 2: Bacon's Castle, First Floor Plan, 2015.





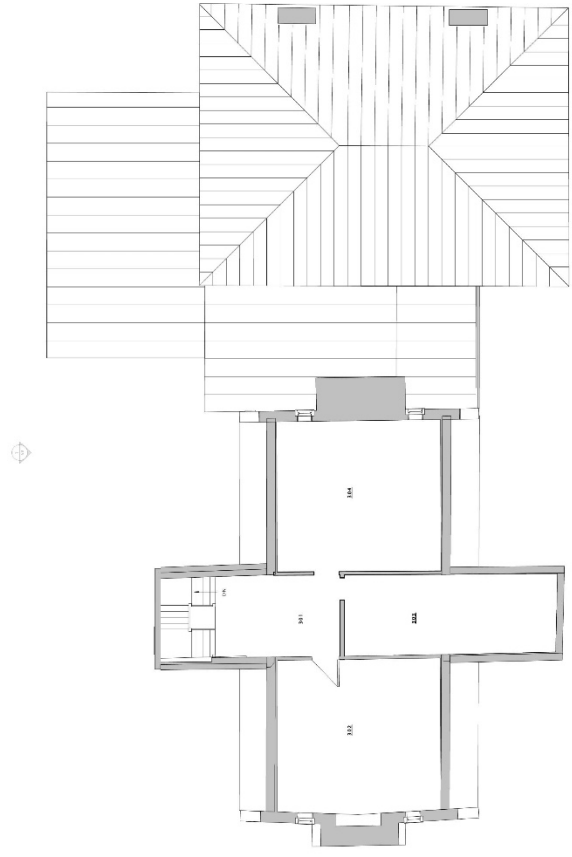
EXISTING SECOND FLOOR PLAN

EXISTING SECOND FLOOR PLAN  
**BACON'S CASTLE**  
SURRY COUNTY, VIRGINIA



A3

Figure 3: Bacon's Castle, Second Floor Plan, 2015.



04/15/16

EXISTING GARRET FLOOR PLAN

EXISTING GARRET FLOOR PLAN

BACON'S CASTLE

SURRY COUNTY, VIRGINIA



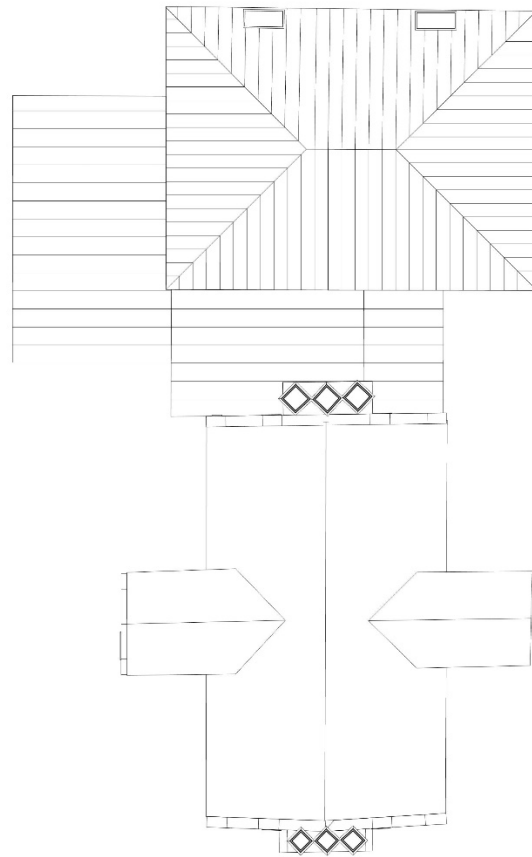
COMMONWEALTH ARCHITECTS

A4

Figure 4: Bacon's Castle, Garret Floor Plan, 2015.



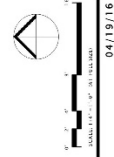
COMMONWEALTH ARCHITECTS



EXISTING ROOF PLAN  
PAGE 1 OF 14



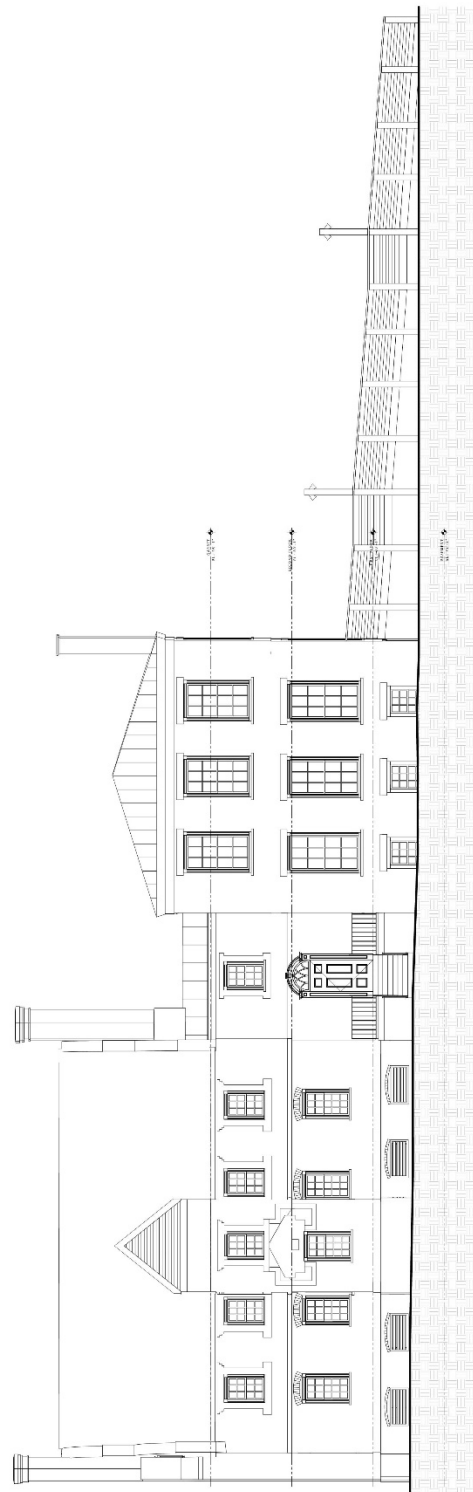
EXISTING ROOF PLAN  
**BACON'S CASTLE**  
SURRY COUNTY, VIRGINIA



A5

Figure 5: Bacon's Castle, Roof Plan, 2015.





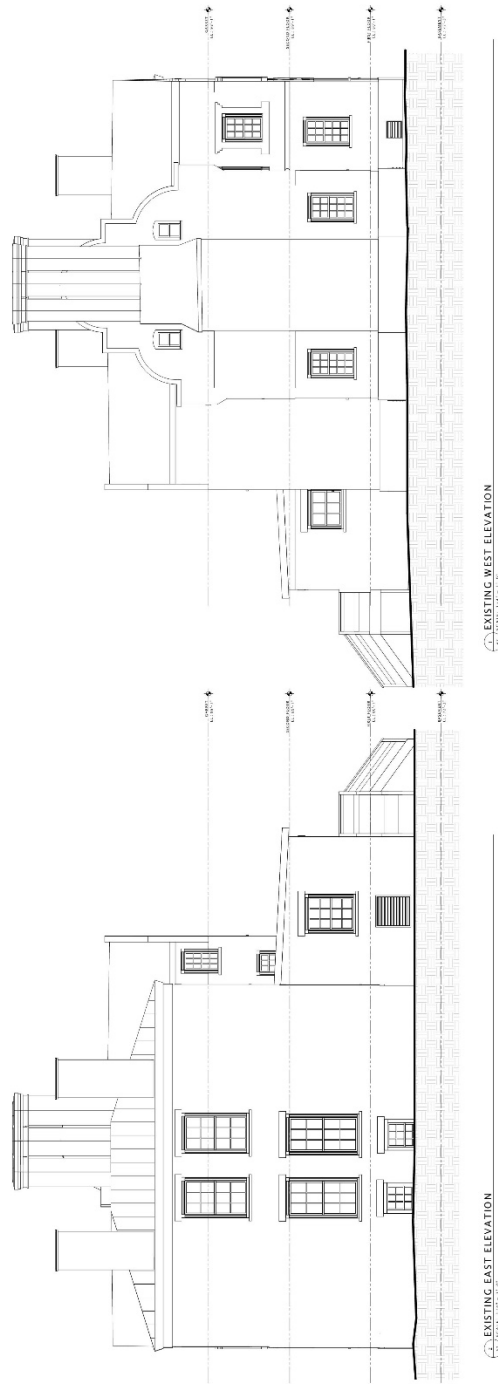


 04/14/16  
**A6**


**EXISTING SOUTH ELEVATION**  
**BACON'S CASTLE**  
 SURRY COUNTY, VIRGINIA  
 COMMONWEALTH ARCHITECTS

Figure 6: Bacon's Castle, South Elevation, 2015.





EXISTING WEST AND EAST ELEVATIONS  
**BACON'S CASTLE**  
 SURRY COUNTY, VIRGINIA

**COMMONWEALTH ARCHITECTS**

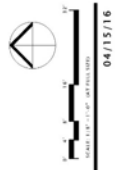
Figure 7: Bacon's Castle, West and East Elevations, 2015.







NORTH - EXISTING  
DATE: 11/14/15



A 8

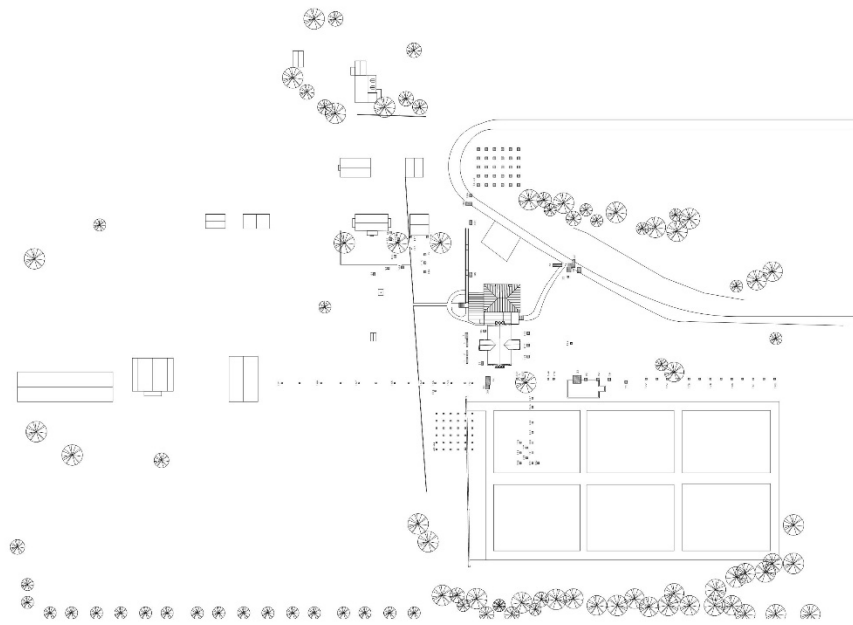
04/15/16

EXISTING NORTH ELEVATION  
**BACON'S CASTLE**  
 SURRY COUNTY, VIRGINIA



Figure 8: Bacon's Castle, North Elevation, 2015.





EXISTING SITE PLAN  
SCALE: 1" = 10'-0"

EXISTING SITE PLAN  
**BACON'S CASTLE**

SURRY COUNTY, VIRGINIA



COMMONWEALTH  
ARCHITECTS

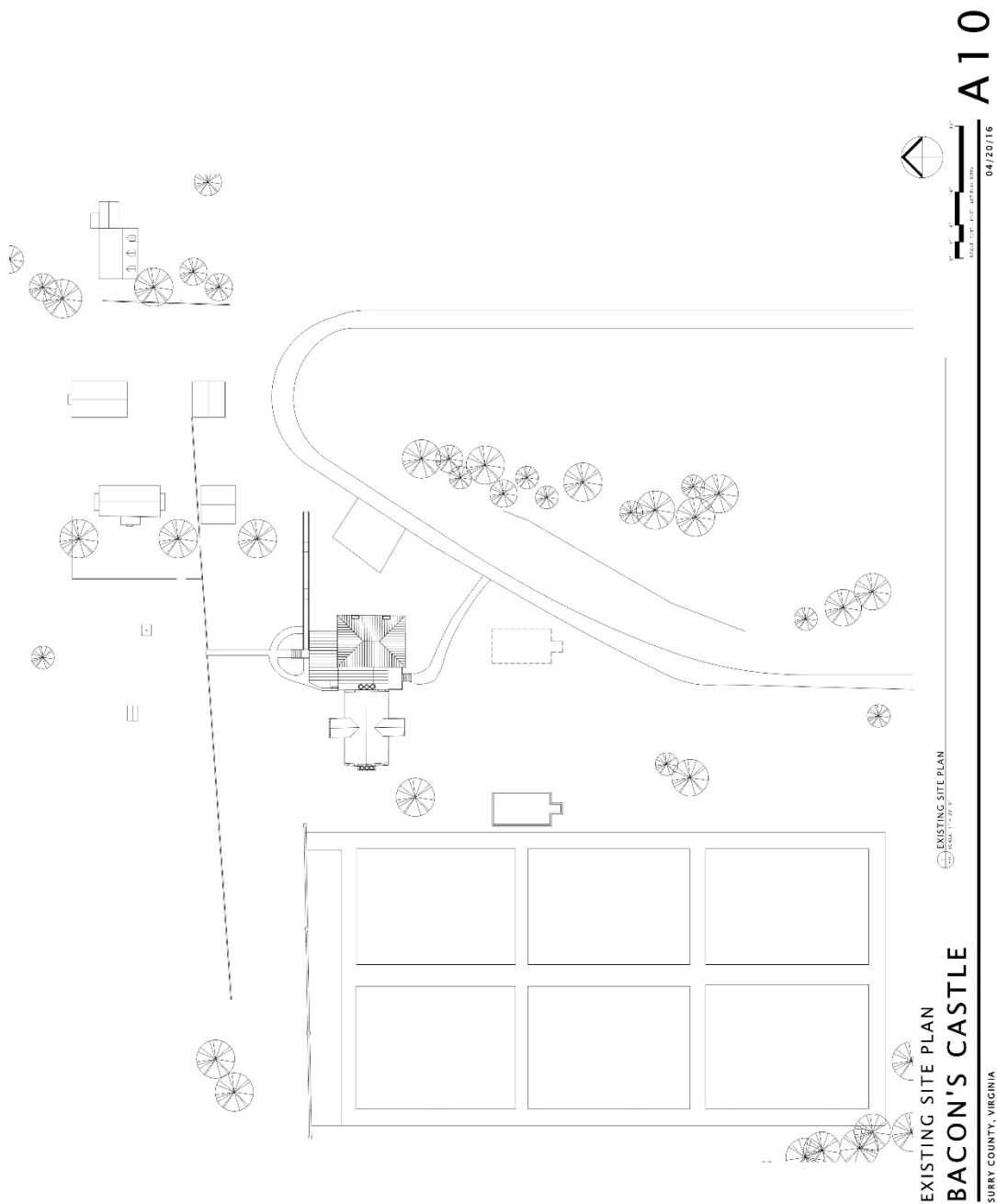


A9

04/20/16

Figure 9: Bacon's Castle, Site Plan, 2015.





04/20/16  
DATE OF SITE PLAN

A10

EXISTING SITE PLAN  
SHEET 1 OF 1

EXISTING SITE PLAN  
**BACON'S CASTLE**  
SURRY COUNTY, VIRGINIA



Figure 10: Bacon's Castle, Site Plan, 2015.



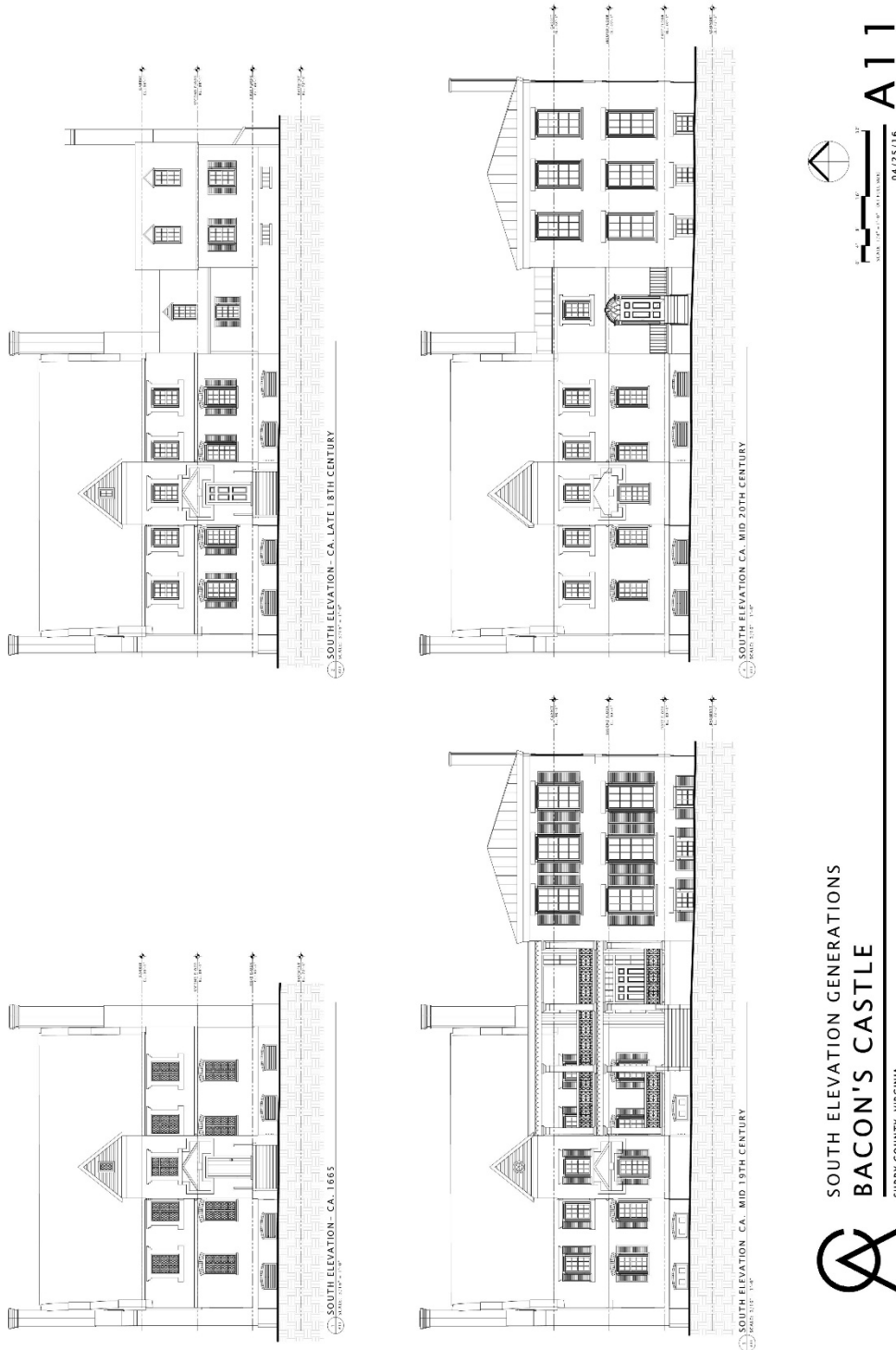
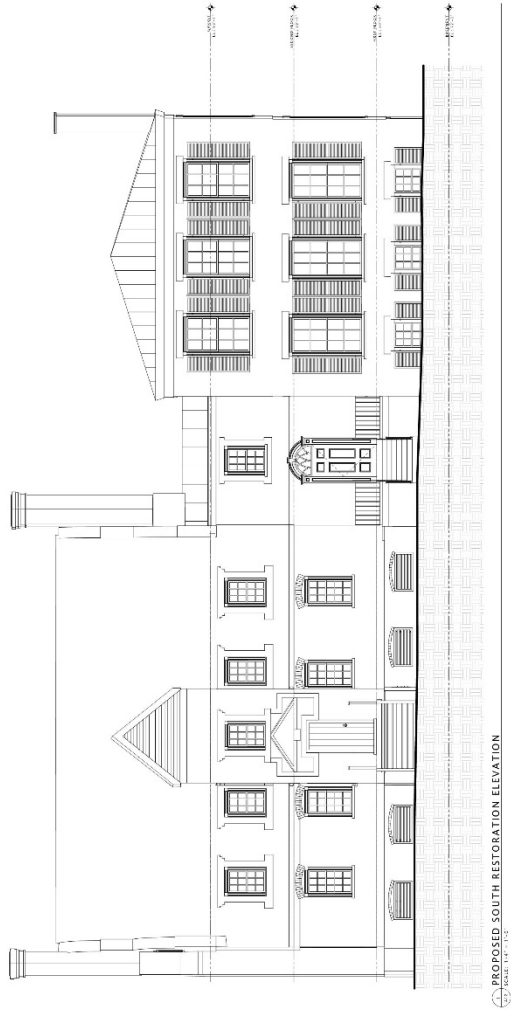


Figure 11: Bacon's Castle, South Elevations, Generations Drawings, 2015.





PROPOSED SOUTH RESTORATION ELEVATION

04/27/16

A12

PROPOSED SOUTH RESTORATION ELEVATION  
**BACON'S CASTLE**  
 SURRY COUNTY, VIRGINIA



Figure 12: Bacon's Castle, South Elevations, Proposed South Restoration Elevation, 2015.



## Appendix 2: 2008 Existing Conditions Drawings, Bacons Castle Quarters, Commonwealth Architects

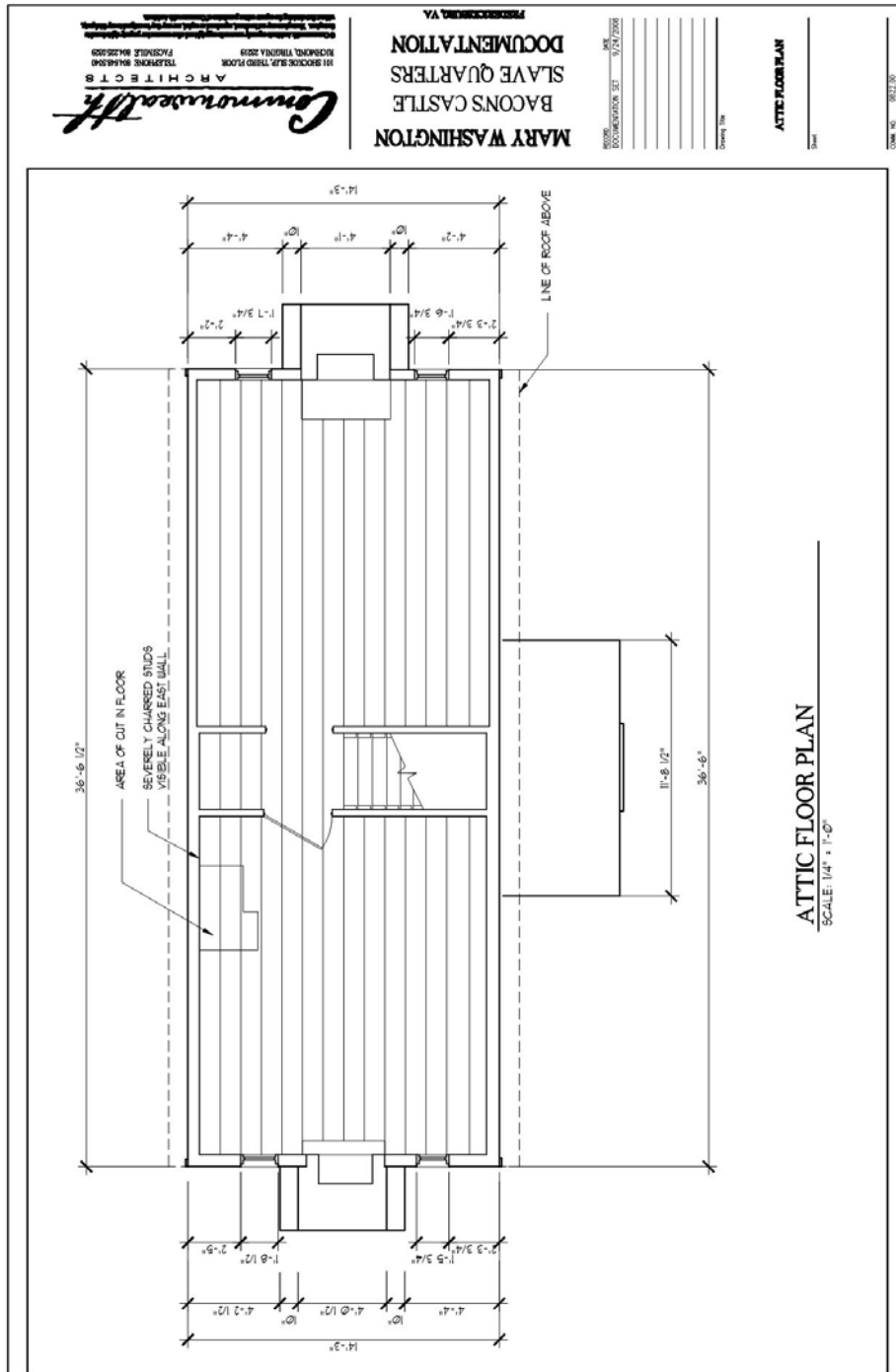


Figure 1: Bacon’s Castle Quarters, Attic Plan, 2008.

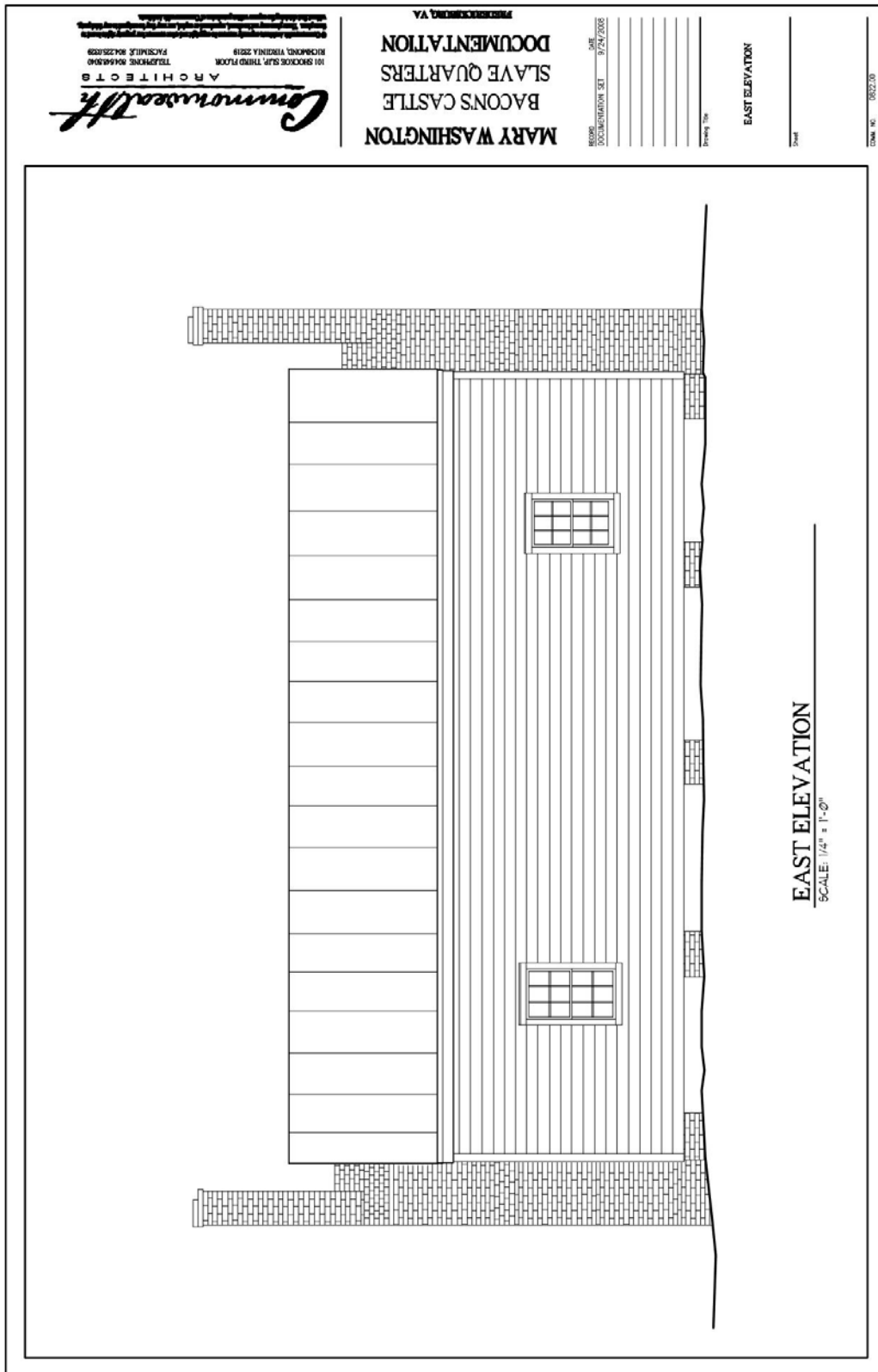


Figure 2: Bacon's Castle Quarters, East Elevation, 2008.

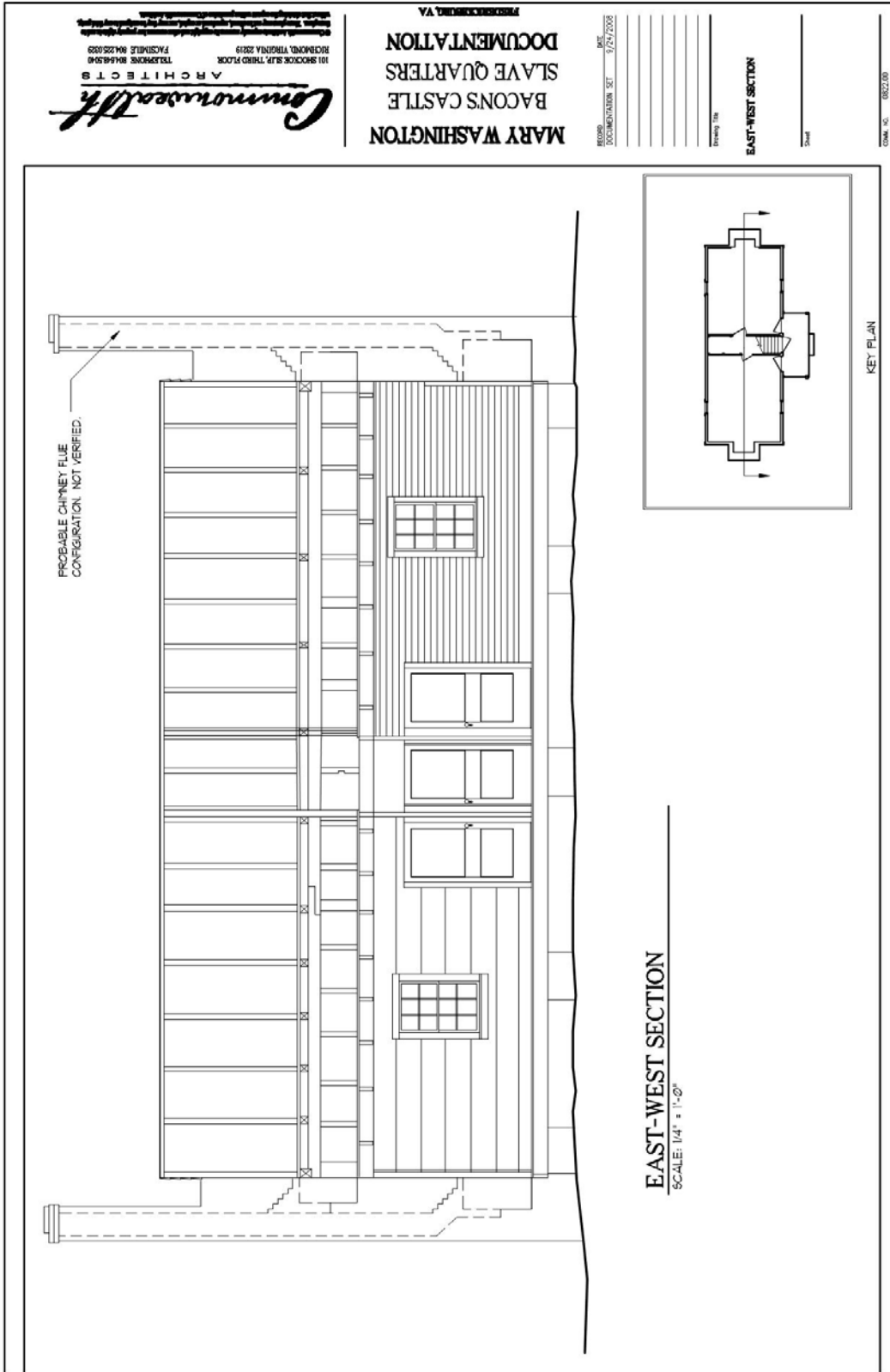


Figure 3: Bacon's Castle Quarters, East-West Section, 2008.



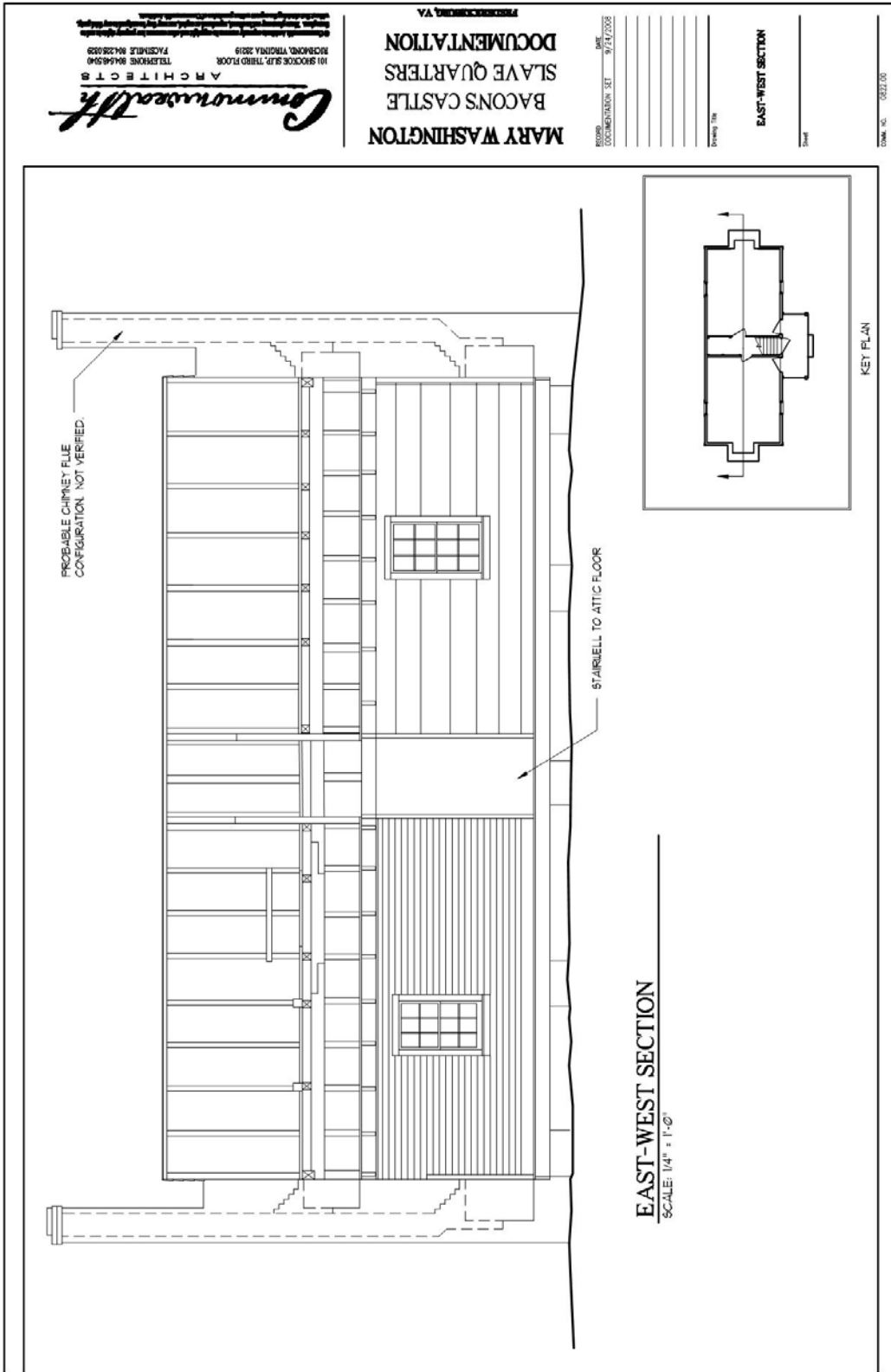


Figure 4: Bacon's Castle Quarters, East-West Section, 2008.

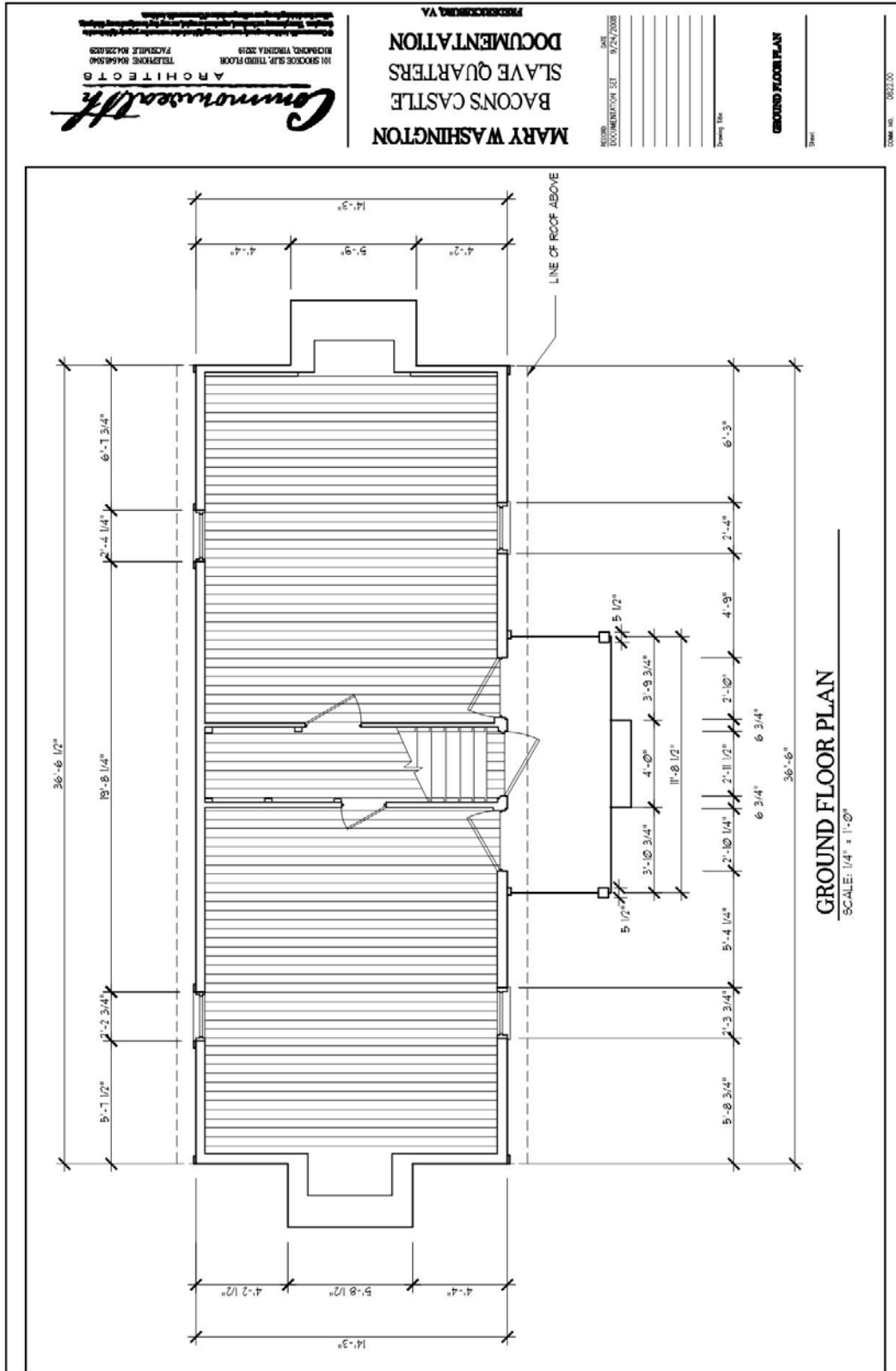


Figure 5: Bacon's Castle Quarters, Ground Floor Plan, 2008.

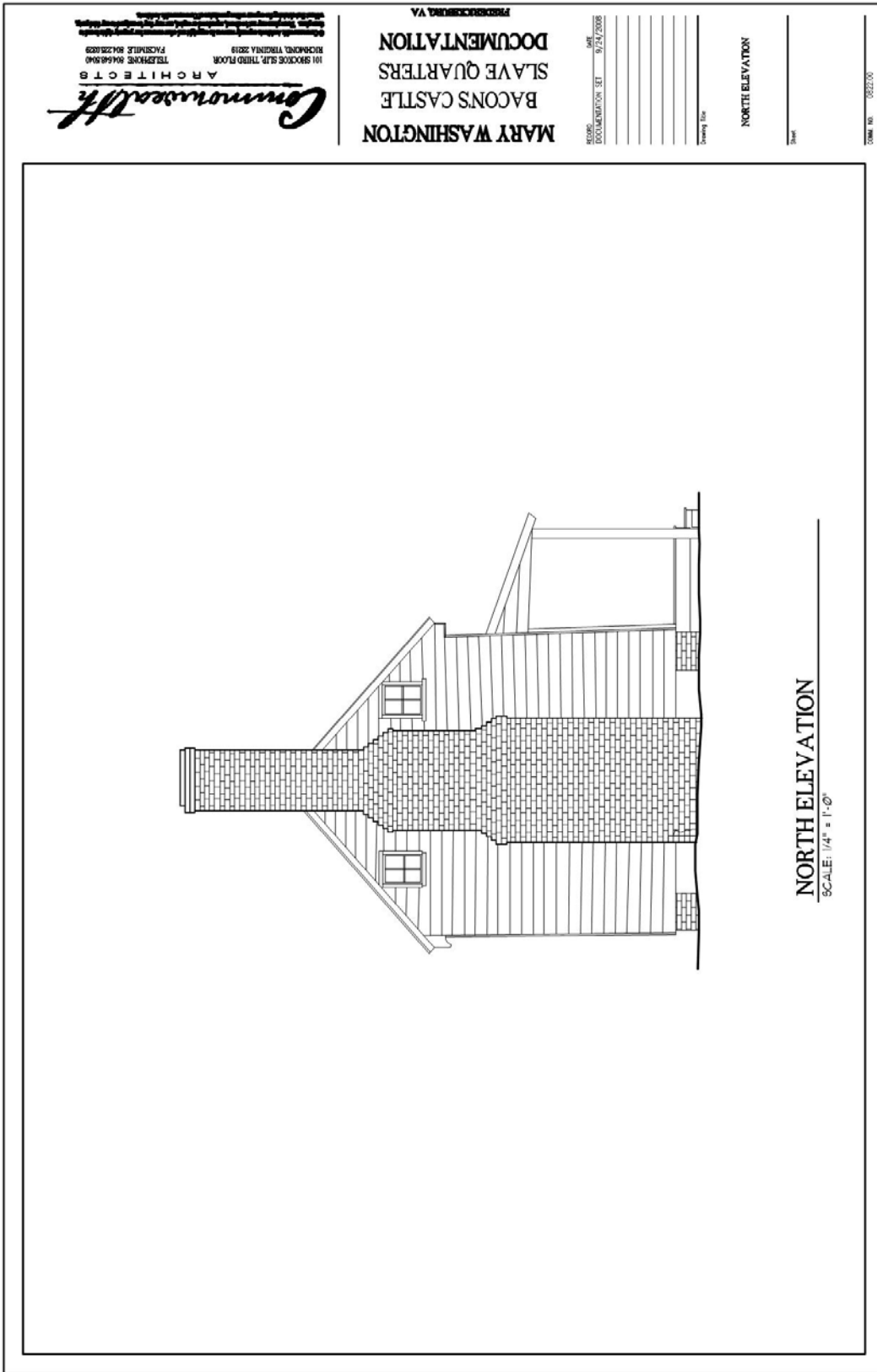


Figure 6: Bacon's Castle Quarters, North Elevation, 2008.

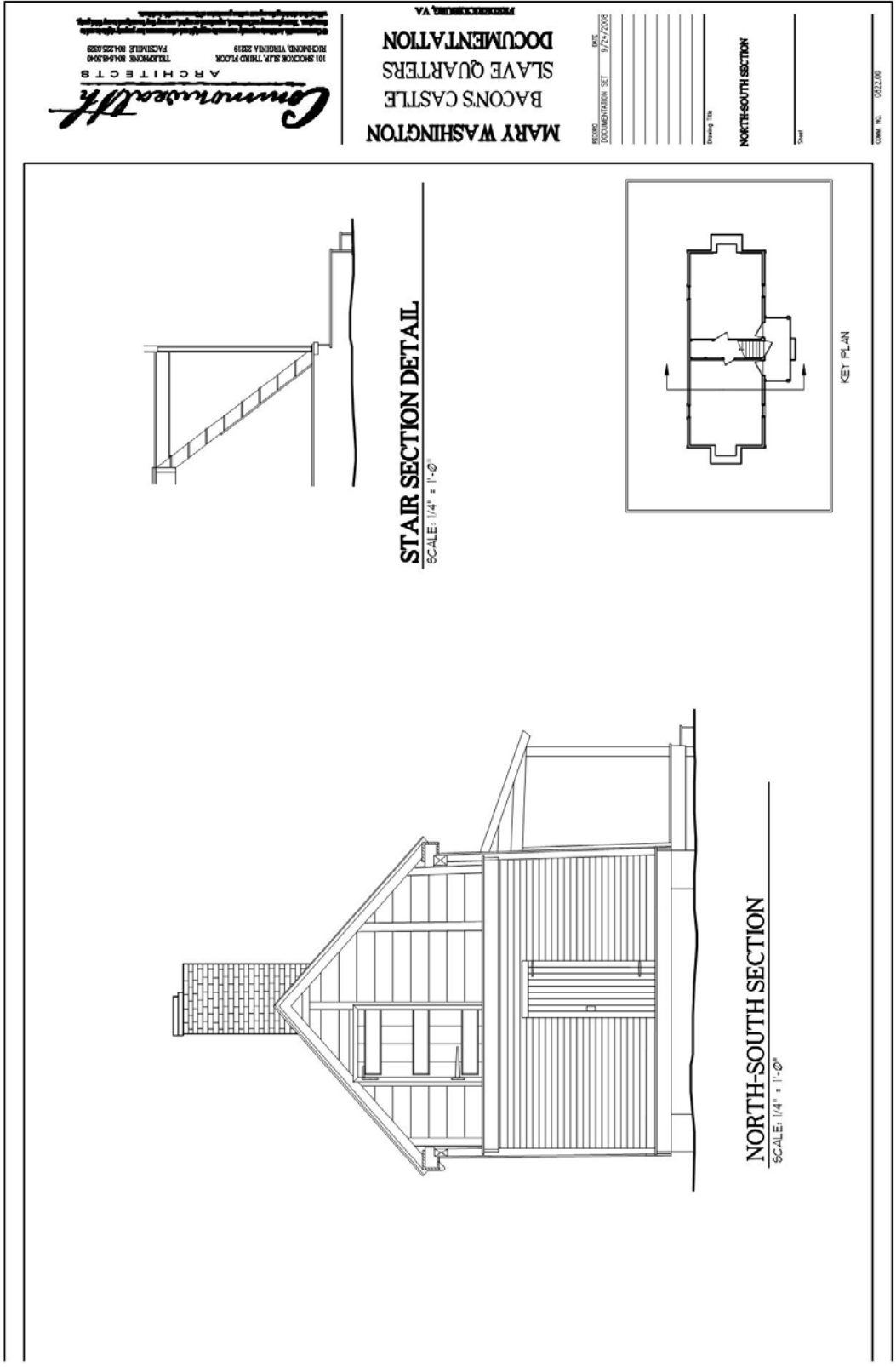


Figure 7: Bacon's Castle Quarters, North-South Section, 2008.



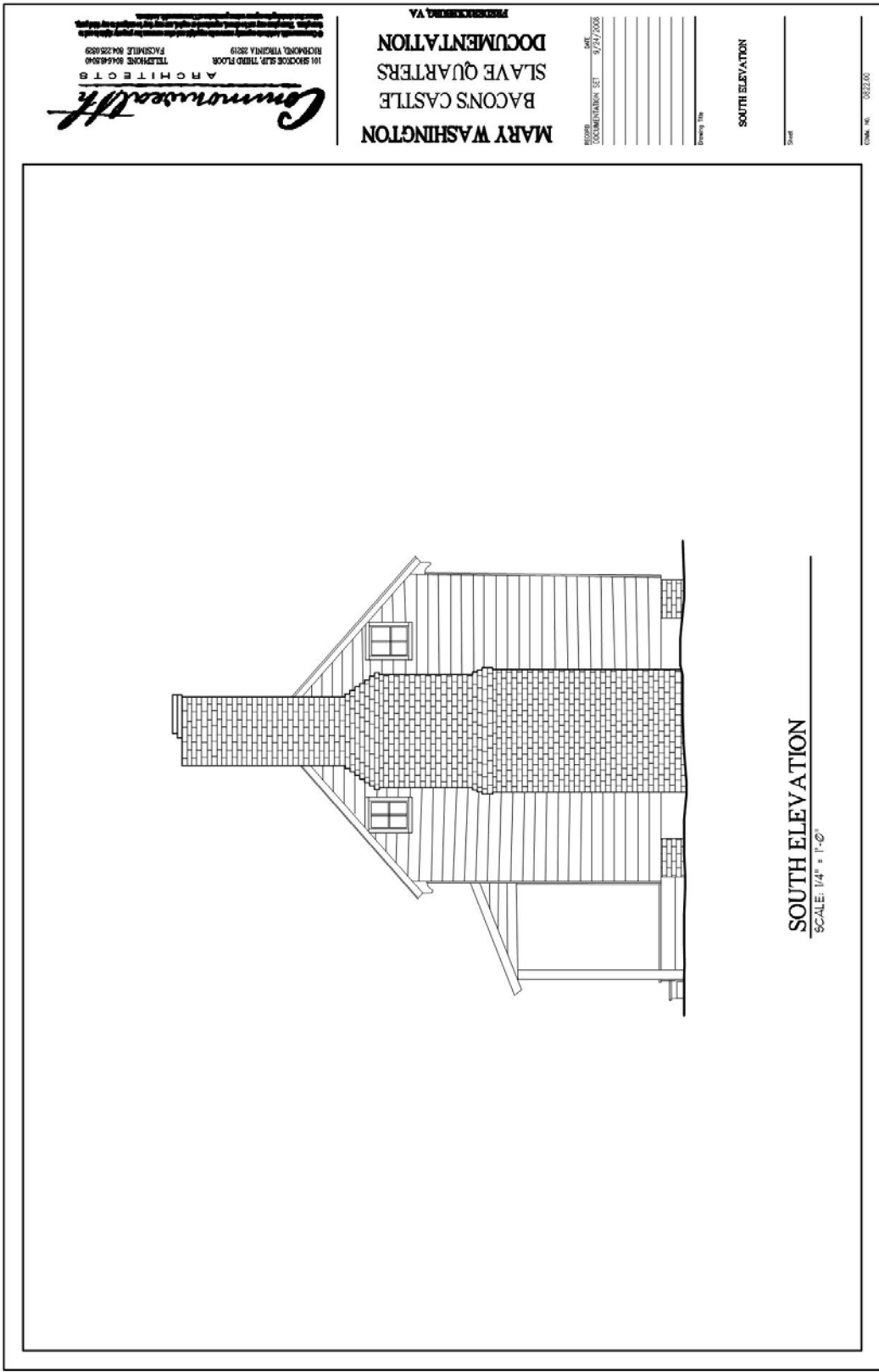


Figure 8: Bacon's Castle Quarters, South Elevation, 2008.

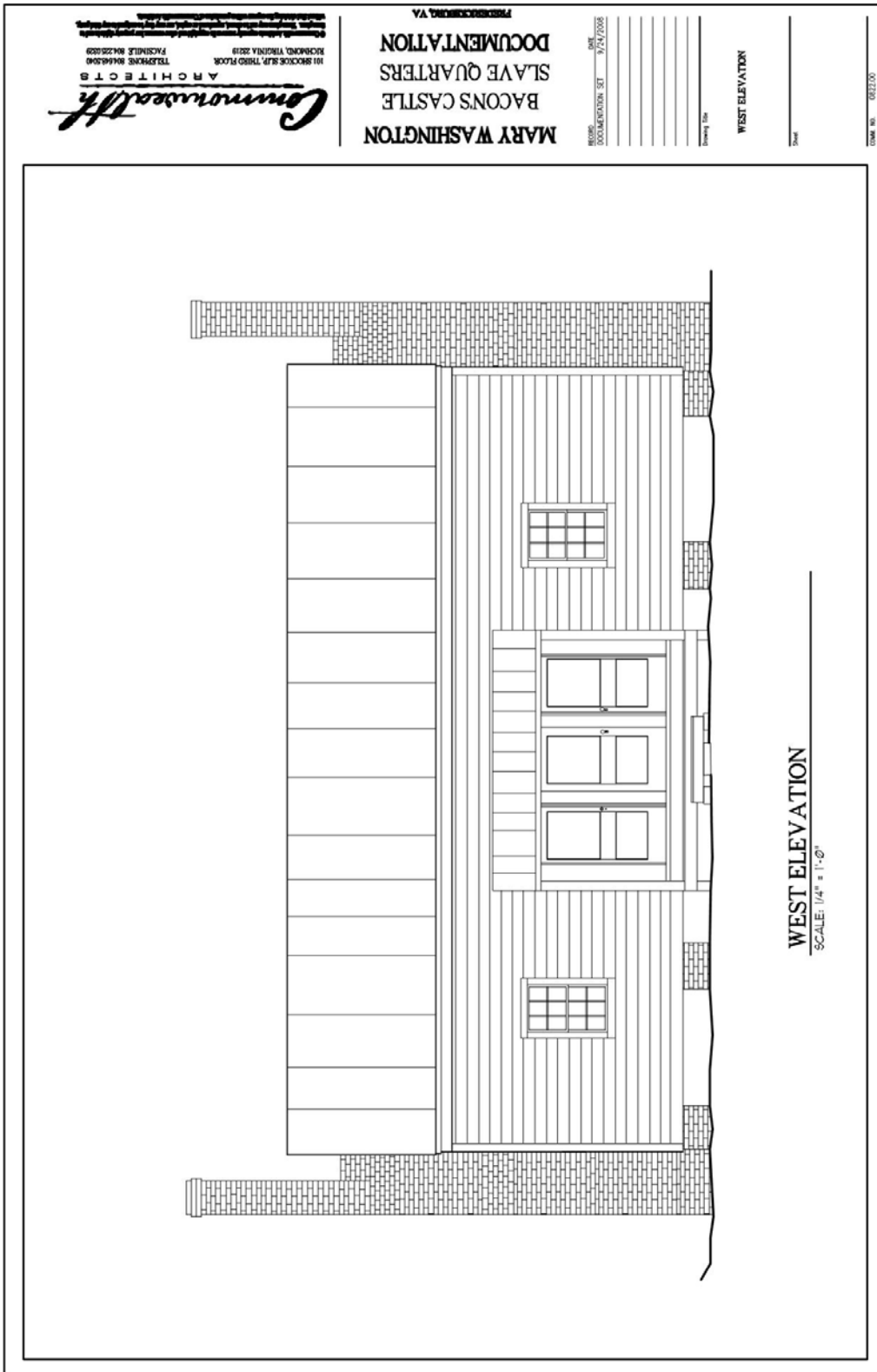


Figure 9: Bacon's Castle Quarters, West Elevation, 2008.

**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
Cellar				
	<b>"In the Kitchen"</b>			
	<i>Cooking</i>	7 Iron Potts [sic] at 304 lb.& four broken potts	8 Large Pewter basons [sic] at 3/6	
		Quart pot	2 bell mettle [sic] Skillets	
		2 Bell Mettle [sic] Skillets	1 Copper Stew pot	
		2 brass kettles at 104 lbs.	3 spitts [sic]	
		3 frying pans	1 Grid iron	
		Skimmers	5 pots weighing 210 lb. at 3d pr. lb.	
		Spitts [sic]	1 Driping [sic] pan weighs 57 lbs. at 4d	
		Pails	Wheat sive and 2 Sifters	
	<i>Serving</i>	4 1 doz. of pewter plates	1 1/2 doz Soop [sic] Plates	
		3 Pewter Porringers	4 Pewter Porringers	
		77 lbs old Pewter s per lb. and 39 lbs. better at 8s	3 Doz Patty pans	
		2 flagons	A Tea Kettle	
			A Coffee Pot	
			a Chocolat [sic] pot	
			1 funell [sic]	
			a Spice Mortar and Pestle	
			flesh fork & Ladle	
			6 Plates	
			1 Iron Plate frame	
			4 Chavin [sic] dishes	
			one ladle & baister [sic]	
			1 Iron dish Warmer	
	<i>Fire Maintenance</i>	a pair of fire dogs	1 pr Iron Doggs [sic] weighs 57 lb. at 4d	
		A Copper & Frame		



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
	<i>Decorative</i>		7 brass Candlesticks and 2 Snuffers	
	<i>Gardening</i>	7 old weeding hoes		
	<i>Spinning</i>	Spinning Wheels		
	<i>Other</i>	2 Leather wallets	50 lb. Pewter at 9d	
		2 old guns	47 lb. Do. [same] At 6d	
		a grind stone	3 doz Flatt Do [same] as 12 s per Doz.	
			14 Old Do. [same]	
			6 Lesser Do. [same] at 3/	
			2 Lesser Do. Same] at 2	
			21 lb. of Pewter at 12d	
			26 lb. Pewter Candle Moulds	
			a Parcell [sic] of Tin	
			3 brass Kettle weights 99 lb. at 10d	
			18 lb. Feathers at 12d	
			a parcell [sic] of Lumber	
			1 Cole Still	
	<b>"In the Sellar"</b>			
	<i>Serving</i>	bowles		
		trays		
	<i>Storage</i>	16 Cyder Cask	20 Tite [sic] Caske	26 Cyder Casks 30 50 Galls &c
		Potts	7 stone butter Potts	7 butter potts
		bottles	13 Doz and five quart bottles	35 1/2 dozen Quart Bottles at 2/6
			15 Doz and four pint bottles	2 1/4 doz pint bottles at 2/





**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
			18 Pottle bottles	3 2 Quart bottles at 4d
			2 Stone Juggs [sic]	1 Tub
			1 Earthen Pott [sic]	4 Chests
			1 Old Chest and barrel	1 5 Gallon Carboy
				1 Tub and some Firkins
				2 Boxes
				3 Jarrs
	<i>Other</i>		12 lb. Pewter at 9d	some Flax and Hemp to be Sold
				1 pr Mill Stones at the Mill (1 broke) with 2 Hpps and Gudgeon 50/£ 4.
	<b>First Floor</b>			
	<b>"In the Hall"</b>			
	<i>Furniture, Seating</i>	14 "Chaires" [sic]	1 Doz. Rushia [sic] Leather Chairs at 7/6	16 Oak Fram'd Russia bottomd & backt [sic] Chairs
		2 elbow "Chaires"		1 old Cain [sic] Couch, Oak frame squab, and Pillows
		2 small chairs		
		a Couch		
	<i>Furniture, Table</i>	2 Tables	1 Tea Table and Furniture	1 large Ovall [sic] Walnutt [sic] Table
			2 Tables	1 small Oval Walnutt [sic] Table
				1 Turnup Table
				1 Tea Table with Toilet China, Tea & Coffee Cups, &c.
				1 other Tea Table with China Tea and Coffee Cupps [sic] with 1 China Bowl
				3 Kitchin [sic] tables



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
	<i>Furniture, Desk</i>	a Desk	1 Scriptorie	1 old Desk
	<i>Furniture, Storage</i>			1 Tea Chest and Tea Board
				Book Case
	<i>Writing</i>	4 ink horns in Cases		
		22 Papers of ink Powder		
	<i>Bed/Bedding</i>	a bed tick	1 Cane Couch bed & Pillows	
		boulster		
	<i>Clocks</i>		1 Clock	1 Clock
	<i>Cooking</i>			2 Spitts [sic]
				2 Gridirons
				1 skimmer
				1 flesh fork
				3 Iron Hooks and 3 potts [sic] hooks
				1 Copper Skillet
				1 Bell Mettle [sic] pewter skillet
				1 little brass Kettle
				1 little Iron Skillet
				1 small Iron pestle
				2 old brass Kettle wte 59 1/2 lb
				1 large brass Kettle wte 64
				2 Copper Tea Kettles
				2 Coffee Potts [sic]
				1 Chocolate Pott [sic]
				1 Tin fish Kettle
				2 Tin Cake hoops
				5 Nable Biscuit pans



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
				1 large Tin Funnell [sic]
				1 small Tin Funnell [sic]
				1 1/2 doz Queen Cakes pans
				1 doz Mince Pye [sic] tin Pans
				10 old Mince Pye [sic] tin Pans
				1 lamp
				2 tin Sauce pans
				8 Queen cake Pans at 6d
				1 Tin greater
				a parcell [sic] of Canisters
				1 apple roaster
				Sugar boxes
				5 Large pye [sic] Printers of Tin and 6 Tin Coverlids
				1 Marble Mortar and pestle
				1 Tea pot
				Mustard pot
				Coffee Mill
				1 lead Tobacco box
				31 Candle Moulds wte 23 lbs
				4 Iron pots wte about 160 lbs
				3 Iron pots good for nothing
				1 Frying pan good for nothing
				1 dripping pan good for nothing
	<i>Serving</i>	6 ivory case knives & forks	21 Glasses	4 China Bowls on the Desk and Book case



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
		4 Knives & forks in a case	8 Chiney [sic] Cups	Glasses and Earthenware in the Beaufet [sic] and Sundry other Earthen ware
			1 Earthen bowl	1 large Silver Tankard
			1 Chiney [sic] Plate	1 smaller Silver Tankard
				4 Silver salts with Spoons
				1 small Silver can
				1 Silver porringer
				1 Silver Soup Spoon
				20 Silver Table Spoons old
				13 Silver Tea Spoons, 1 qr.
				Strainer
				2 pr of Silver Tongs
				5 Silver Castors and Spoon for Mustard
				1 Lignum Vita stand and 2 bottle Sliders
				some spice
				16 Hard metal Soup plates all
				24 Hard metal flat plates all
				2 doz Hard metal flatt [sic] plates all
				1/2 doz hard Metal flatt [sic] Dishes wte 23 lb at 20 d
				1 doz new hard Metal soup Plates
				1 pewter Porringer and Cover
				3 pewter Dishes wte 13 lb at 1/4



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
				6 old Dishes & 2 Pye [sic] plates wte 26 lb at 1/
				1 Pewter Funnell [sic]
				3 Pewter Dish Covers
				1 Pewter Cullander [sic]
				1 Pewter soup Spoon
				12 lb old Pewter at 6d
				4 Pewter Basons [sic]
				2 Pewter Basons [sic]
				6 Pewter Basons[sic]
				9 deep Pewter Dishes wte 27 lb at 1/
				3 deep Pewter Dishes wte 17 at 1/4
				1 Brass Plate warmer
				2 Spice mortars (one Iron)
				2 old Chafing dishes
				3 Trays
				a parcell [sic] of old case knives and forks
	<i>Storage</i>	2 Chests		
		a "Cubbard"		
	<i>Decorative Items</i>	A looking glass	1 Large Looking Glass	1 large Pier Glass
			1 bird Cage	3 glass salvers
				1 parcell [sic] of Glasses and China &c. on the Mantel piece
				Old Callico [sic] Curtains to 4 Windows
				2 Silver and Tortoise shell snuff boxes at 10/
				4 pr Brass Candlesticks 1 pr Brass Snuffers &c



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
				2 Iron Candlesticks 2 pr Snuffers
	<i>Clothing and Personal</i>	2 pr of spectacles		1 pr stone buttons set in Gold
		2 penknives		2 Rings at 20/
		7 horn Combs		
		2 pr of Shoe Buckells [sic]		
	<i>Music</i>			1 Silver seal and Violin
	<i>Fire maintenance</i>	a pair of dogs tongs	1 pr Iron Doggs [sic]	1 pr old Andirons Tongs and Shovel
		"fire Shovall" [sic]	fire Shovel and Tongs	1 pr Kitching [sic] andirons
	<i>Fabric</i>	3 yds of Tabbig Huckaback		some thread
		7 1/2 yds of Napkin Huckaback		
		8 yds. Of bed tick		
		1 3/4 yards blew [sic] plains		
		Some Silk		
		7 yards breeches "ticken"		
		1 yd, Fustian		
		5 yrds Virga cloth		
		10 1/2 yards Shalloon		
	<i>Clothing and shoe repair and maintenance</i>	2 lb of Shoemakers thread		2 Box irons and heaters, 1 stand and 2 smoothing irons
		Some whale bone		
	<i>Other</i>	a parcell of books	98 Ounces of Plate at 4/	a parcell [sic] of old Maps & Prints 46 in all
		4 gss		salt petre



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
		a Parcell of Carpenter's tools at 9 lb. and 3 ounces of Plate Avoirdupois wt		Galley Potts [sic] and Cannisters
		10 mettle [sic] butts		2 pr Money Scales and weights
		19 quire of paper		2 Tubbs [sic]
				1 Pail
				3 Piggins
				4 Cheese Hoops
				1/2 Bushel
				an Old Chaise and Harness
				Lanthorns [sic]
				1 old Cart and Wheels
				1 old Plow and Yoke
				some old Barrels and Casks
				1 Grind Stone
				1 pr Brass Scales and Leaden weights
	<b>"In the Chamber"</b>			
	<i>Bed/Bedding</i>	A truckle bedstead		1 Turkey Coverlid
		A Trussell [sic] bed &c.		2 old Virginia Cloth coverlids on Beds
		bed boulder		3 old Callico [sic] coverlids on Beds
		rug		1 Virginia tick Bed, Boulder, 2 Pillows 1 pr blankets 1 pr Course white Sheets, Matt. cord and Bedstead
		blankett [sic] & sheets		Bed, Boulder, 2 Pillows 1 Rugg, a pr of Blankets 1 pr Sheets, Mat. Cord and Bedstead
		a pair of Callico [sic] Curtains & Vallains [sic]		1 Summer suite of Bed &c.



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
		5 pr & 1 Holland Sheets & 2 pr of Canvas do		2 Pillow Cases at 7/8
		3 pillow Cases		4 Pillow Cases of Holl'd old at 1/
				1 pr worn white Sheets
				1 pr newer Sheets
				1 pr worn Sheets
				1 pr very old Sheets
				1 pr brown linnen [sic] Sheets
				1 pr Virginia Linen Sheets
				1 pr worn white Sheets like the first
	<i>Furniture, Seating</i>			1 large Easie [sic] Chair covered with green Damask
				1 arm'd leather bottom'd and back't [sic] Chair and Cushion
				9 other 1 arm'd leather bottom'd and back'd [sic] Chairs all old
	<i>Furniture, Table</i>			1 old middle siz'd Walnut Table (oval)
				1 old small Oak Table
				1 old middle siz'd better Oak Table
				1 Walnut Candlestand
	<i>Furniture, Desk</i>	A Desk		
	<i>Furniture, Storage</i>			1 old fashioned Chest of drawers
				1 old Hair Trunk
				1 old red Trunk





**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
				3 Chests
				2 Boxes
	<i>Furniture, Other</i>			1 old 6 leaf Screen
				2 fringed Cupboard Cloaths [sic] at 3/6
				3 old Cupboard Cloaths [sic]
				1 Close Stool
	<i>Serving</i>	44 huckaback Napkins & Table Cloths		Cruit [sic]
		5 Table Cloths & 7 diaper Napkins		2 flasks
		1 Table Cloth & 3 Napkins		a parcel [sic] of broken Glasses &c on Chamber Mantlepiece with Conk [sic] Shells and 1 pair old Bellows
		a Small Table Cloth		1 doz diaper Napkins worn all
		4 Table Cloths & 3 Napkins		1 doz Damask Napkins worn all
				1 doz Huckaback napkins worn all
				1 Virginia Huckaback Table Cloth
				2 large diaper Table Cloths 20/ & 25/
				3 Damask Table Cloths at 17/6
				2 old Table Cloths
	<i>Clothing and Personal</i>	a hatt [sic]		All the wearing Apparel, Hatt [sic], Wiggs [sic], Stockings, Shoes and Gloves
		2 box irons & heaters		



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
	<i>Decorative</i>			1 Looking Glass
				The Duke of Cumberland's Picture on Horseback
				Curtains in the Chamber 3 Windows and bed all
				3 Window Curtains of Seersucker
	<i>Cloth</i>			38 1/2 Yards od Virginia Huckaback at 2/
	<i>Bath</i>	14 Towells [sic]		1 Damask and 1 Huckaback Towells [sic]
				3 Towls [sic]
	<i>Cooking</i>	1 Spice Mortar & 2 pessells [sic]		2 Searches
		a Still		1 Meal Sifter
		2 Sugar boxes		
	<i>Fire Maintenance</i>			1 pr. of strong Andirons Tongs Shovell [sic] Pooker [sic] 2 Stools
	<i>Tack</i>			2 old Whips
				5 Brushes and 7 old Combs
	<i>Other</i>	a little trunk & (muss.)		3 old Tubs
				3 old Baskets
				1 Box
				2 Matts [sic]
				6 Hoops
				Wax



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
				conk [sic] Shell
				1 Brass Cocke
				1 dust pan and broom
				1 Chinch trap
				a parcell [sic] of old Books and Phamphlets [sic]
				1 Warming Pan
				1 broom of hair
				Candlewick
	<b>"In the Chamber Closet"</b>			
	<i>Serving</i>		12 lb. Old Pewter	
			34 lb. Soap	
			18 Glasses & 2 Glass Cans	
			13 Wine glasses	
			2 Glass punch bowls	
			1 Ladle	
			3 Cruets	
			2 Decanters	
			1 Marble Mortar and Pestle	
			Earthen dishes 5/6	
			15 Earthen plants [sic]	
			punch bowles [sic]	
			4 Porringers 1/4	
			1 doz Chocolatt [sic] Cups 3/8	
			smaller Chocolatt [sic] Cups	
			14 saucers	
			4 Chiney [sic] cups 2/5	
			Tea Pots	
			11 white Cupps [sic]	
			7 Chamber Pots	



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
			11 Jelly Glasses	
			2 Crewitts [sic]	
			5 Glass Salts	
			2/2 Sugar dishes	
			1 bason [sic]	
			1 butter dish	
			6 Muggs [sic] 5/1	
			Galley Pott [sic]	
			1 Coffee Mill	
			6 dish hoops	
			1 baskette [sic]	
			2 Peper [sic] boxes	
			1 greater [sic]	
	<i>Bed/ Bedding</i>			1 Bed Boulster 2 Pillows, 1 old Blanket and 1 Rugg [sic], Curtains, Bedstead Cords &c a pot and 1/2 looking glass
	<i>Furniture, Seating</i>			2 Russia Bottom'd Chairs
	<i>Furniture, Table</i>			1 Walnut Table
	<i>Decorative</i>			9 Prints on the Stairs
	<i>Books</i>			1 Vol. Tillotsen Sermons in folio with sundry other Books
	<b>"In the Hall"</b>			
	<i>Clothing and Personal</i>			3 Razors, 2 Strops, and 1 Hone
	<i>Other</i>			8 Files 3/
				1 Compass Dial 5/



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
				some Scissors, Shears, Chain, Locks, Cocke, Buttons &c in a Drawer
	<b>Second Floor</b>			
	<b>"Over the Chamber"</b>			
	<i>Beds/Bedding</i>	A high bedstead & bed boulder	1 feather bed and furniture	1 Bed Boulster, 1 Pr Blankets, 1 Rugg [sic], 2 Pillows Bedstead Cord Matt Curtain and Pott [sic]
		A truckle bedstead, bed & boulder	1 Do. with Rugg [sic] Quilt and blanket [sic]	1 Chamber pot
		Curtains & Vallains [sic]	4 pr Course old Sheets	
		a Rug, a Blankett [sic], a Quilt	3 pr Newer Old Sheet	
		a pair of Sheets	5 Ozenbrigs Sheets	
		2 Pillows Cases & Coverlid	5 Holland Sheets	
		Rug, Blankett [sic], Quilt	10 Pillow Cases	
		a Quilt	1 Doz Course Pillow Cases	
		2 sheets, 2 Pillows & Cases	7 Pillow Cases	
		6 Small Pillows	1 feather bed and furniture	
			1 feather bed with Rug blanketts [sic] Coverlid bedstead & 2 Pillows	
	<i>Furniture, Seating</i>	6 Cain Chairs	6 Cain [sic] Chairs and Two Stools	2 Cain [sic] bottom'd and back'd Chairs
		a Table & 2 Stans [sic]	8 Leather Chairs	2 Cain [sic] bott'd Stools
			1 Chest of Drawers	15 old Chairs
	<i>Furniture, Table</i>	a Table	1 Dressing Table and box	1 Japan'd dressing box and Table & 4 Toilets



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
			1 Tea Table & furniture	1 small old Table
			2 Small Tables	1 Table
	<i>Furniture, Chest</i>	a Chest of Drawers	1 Old Small Chest of Drawers	1 Japan Chest of Drawers and Dressing Glasses
	<i>Furniture, Storage</i>	a Trunk	2 Trunks	1 Box
	<i>Furniture, Other</i>		1 Warming Pan & Close stool	
			1 Leather Screen	
	<i>Clothing and Personal</i>		combs	
			2 box Irons & heaters and two flatt [sic] irons	
	<i>Serving</i>		1 Diaper Table Cloth	
			1 Old smaller Table Cloth	
			1 New Damask Table Cloth & 12 Napkins	
			1 Huckaback Table Cloth & 12 Napkins old	
			12 Diaper Napkins	
			1 Huckaback Table Cloth & 12 Napkins old	
			1 side board cloth	
			6 Course [sic] table Cloths & 2 doz Napkins	
			3 Small Course [sic] Table Cloths 3 Napkins	



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
	<i>Bath</i>		2 Diaper Towels and 2 Huckaback Towels	
			1 Doz Course [sic] Towels	
	<i>Rug</i>	a Carpitt [sic]		
	<i>Fire Maintenance</i>	a pr of fire dogs tongs & fire Shovell [sic]	1 pr brass Doggs [sic] Shovel fender and tongs	1 Chimney piece, Brass Shovel and Tongs Fender & Bellows & 1 pr Andirons brass tops
			1 pr bellows and two Scrins [sic]	
			1 pr Iron Doggs [sic]shovel & Tongs	
	<i>Decorative</i>	A Looking Glass	1 looking glass	1 looking Glass Japan framed old
			1 Large Looking Glass	3 Setts [sic] Window Curtains
				11 very old Prints
	<i>Other</i>	a Cotton hammock	2 Small boxes	Lumber
		2 hackells [sic]	a parcel	
		2 Chamber Pots	a basket [sic]	
		Two Negro men viz. Boatswain & Salisbury		
	<b>"Over the Porch"</b>			
	<i>Bed/Bedding</i>		1 feather bed & furniture	1 Crab Tree Cradle
	<i>Furniture, Seating</i>		4 Rushia [sic] leather Chairs at 7/6	1 Childs Chair
	<i>Furniture, Table</i>		1 Ovell [sic] Table	
			2 Dutch Tea Tables	
			1 Small Table dressing glass & Twy light [sic]	



Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis				
Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
	<i>Furniture, Other</i>			1 Goacart [sic] and Trussel [sic]
	<i>Other</i>			1 Woolen Wheel & 2 pr Cards
				1 linnen [sic] Wheel
	<b>"Over the Hall"</b>			
	<i>Bed/Bedding</i>	A high bedstead bed & boulder	1 feather bed and furniture	1 Bed Boulster, 2 Pillows, 1 Rug old, 1 old Quilt 1 Blanket, Bedstead, Cord Matt Curtains & Pot
		Curtains & Vallains [sic]	1 feather bed two blanketts [sic] quilt & 2 Pillows	1 Bed and old furniture with Iron Rods
		a Rug, a Blankett [sic], a Coverlid		
		2 sheets, 2 Pillows & Cases		
		A Truckle bedstead bed & boulder		
		a Rug, a Blankett [sic], 2 Sheets		
		2 Pillows Cases & Coverlid		
	<i>Furniture, Seating</i>	12 Cain [sic] Chairs	8 Cain [sic] Chairs	6 Cain [sic] Chairs
		1 broken elbow do [same]		4 Russia bottom'd Chairs
		1 low chair		
		a pair of Tow Chairs		
		A Cain [sic] Couch		
	<i>Furniture, Table</i>	2 tables	2 Small Tables and Twy Lights [sic]	1 Walnut Table
				1 old Fashioned Tea Table
	<i>Furniture, Storage</i>	a pair of Chest of Drawers	1 Chest of Drawers	1 old Trunk



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
		a Chest & 2 Trunks		
	<i>Clothing and Personal</i>	a pair of Spitt [sic] boots		
		a hatt [sic]		
		a Parcell [sic] of Waring [sic] Clothes & a morning Gound [sic]		
	<i>Rug</i>	2 Carpitts [sic]		
	<i>Dining</i>	A parcell [sic] of Earthen ware		
	<i>Cooking</i>	a parcell [sic] of Sugar 1:5	1 Fish kettle	
	<i>Fire Maintenance</i>	a pr of fire dogs tongs & fire Shovell [sic]	1 pr dogs brass Shovell [sic] tongs & billows	1 pr small Andirons
	<i>Decorative</i>	A Looking Glass	1 Large Looking Glass	1 Mahogany dressing Glass
			1 dressing glass	1 large midling [sic] looking Glass
				old Pictures
	<i>Hardware</i>	a parcell [sic] of nails		
		3 Stock locks		
		6 files		
	<i>Cloth</i>	5 yards of Duffills		
	<i>Tack</i>	5 pr of Sjoes [sic]		
		a bob wig		
		6 Cawles [sic]		
		a Crupper		
		2 Stirrup irons		



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
		a parcell [sic] of girt buckells [sic]		
	<i>Other</i>	a buck Skin & a pair of bags	1 Table box &c.	
		4 Sifters		
		1 Serch		
		2 Lanthorns [sic]		
		1/2 a hundred of shott		
		an old canvis [sic] hammock		
		16 gss of corks		
		3 pieces of Tin		
		a parcell [sic] of old do 10		
	<b>Garrett</b>			
	<b>"In the East Garrett"</b>			
	<i>Bed/Bedding</i>	A bed & bedstead	1 featherbed Rugg [sic] Curtains and Vallains [sic] &c.	
		boulster		
		Rug & Coverlid & some Pillows of feathers		
	<i>Furniture, Seating</i>		7 Old Chairs	
	<i>Furniture, Table</i>		1 table	
	<i>Furniture, Storage</i>		trunk	
	<i>Decorative</i>		looking glass	
	<i>Other</i>	a parcell [sic] of Lumber	basket	
			2 flower potts [sic]	
	<b>"In the West Garrett"</b>			



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
	<i>Bed/Bedding</i>	A bed & bedstead	1 featherbed Rugg [sic] & blankett [sic] all old	
		Curtains & Vallains [sic]	1 Cradle	
		a blanket		
		a Coverlid		
		2 pillows Cases & boulder		
	<i>Furniture, Seating</i>	9 Chairs	Childs Chair	
	<i>Furniture, Table</i>		1 Table and box	
	<i>Furniture, Storage</i>	6 Chests		
		2 Chests		
	<i>Tack</i>	2 New Saddles & 1 plush seat do & bridle		
		1 old Saddle & broken bridle		
	<i>Other</i>	120 lb. of wool £4	1 Dutch oven	
		256 lb. of Cotten [sic] in the stone £2	Goe [sic] Cart	
		20 lb. of picked £1		
	<b>"In the Porch Garrett"</b>			
	<i>Bed/Bedding</i>	A bedstead & cord	1 bedstead & Cord	
		Some old Curtains & Vallains [sic]		
	<i>Furniture, Seating</i>	2 Chairs	5 Rush bottom chairs	
	<i>Furniture, Table</i>	a Table	table	
	<i>Furniture, Storage</i>	2 Chests	1 chest	



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
	<i>Clothing and Personal</i>	4 lb. of perfumed powder		
		Some button Silk & Stay tapes		
		4 fine hats [sic]		
		2 Great Coats		
	<i>Cloth</i>	100 yds of narrow blew [sic] linen [sic]		
		6 Ells of princess linen [sic]		
	<i>Cooking</i>	a frying pan		
	<i>Rug</i>	6 8/4 Rugs		
	<i>Decorative</i>	2 pr of brass Candlesticks & Snuffers		
	<i>Horse</i>	1 womans Saddle & furniture		
	<i>Firearms</i>	9 Shammy skins & some Wadding		
	<i>Tools</i>	3 axes		
		1 hilling hoe		
	<i>Other</i>	2 doz of hair sifter bottoms		
		a piece of Vermilion		
		2 pair of Scales & weights		
		3 sacks		
	<b>Source of Information</b>			



**Appendix 4: Inventory Analysis**

Floor	Room	20 November 1711	4 April 1728	24 January 1755
		<p>Estate Inventory for Arthur Allen, 20 November 1711; Surry County Deed Book 1709-1715, pp. 84-88; An Inventory &amp; Appraisal of the Estate of Maj. Arthur Allen deceased taken in May &amp; June 1711, p. 84. Transcription R.L. Hurst, 1982.</p>	<p>Estate Inventory for Arthur Allen, 4 April 1728; Surry County Deed Book 1715-1730, pp. 807-810; A True and Perfect Inventory and Appraisal of the Estate of M<sup>r</sup> Arthur Allen Deceed: taken Aprill [sic] the 4<sup>th</sup> 1728, p. 897. Transcription R.L. Hurst, 1982.</p>	<p>Estate Inventory for Capt. Arthur Smith, 24 January 1755; Isle of Wight County Will Book 6, pp. 144-151. An Inventory and Appraisal of the Estate of Capt. Arthur Smith Cede'd in Surry County January 24 1755, p. 144. Transcription R.B. True, re-transcription R.L. Hurst, 1982.</p>

## Appendix 5: Historic Images



Figure 1: Bacon's Castle, view of south/front elevation (top) and west and north elevations looking southeast (bottom), photocopy of drawing, by R.H. Cocke, ca. 1820. Courtesy Historic American Buildings Survey.

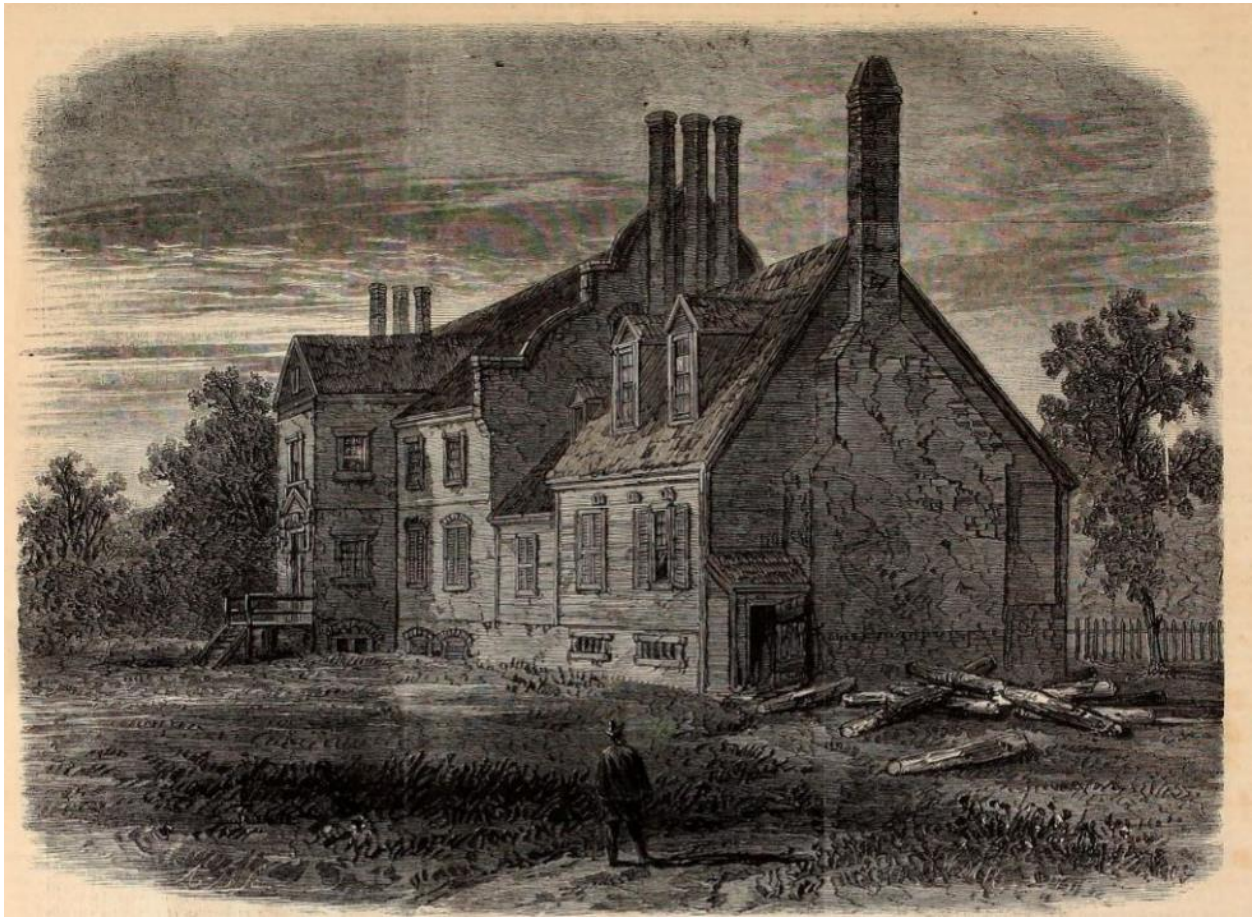


Figure 2: Print image of Bacon's Castle, view looking northwest, Frank Leslie's Illustrated Newspaper, 8 September 1866 issue, original drawing dates to pre-1854.



Figure 3: Bacon's Castle, view of west elevation, watercolor and ink, by Virginia Wilson Hankins, ca. 1850-1888.





Figure 4: Bacon's Castle, photograph of front steps looking north, Warren Family Photographs, ca. 1920s-1930s.

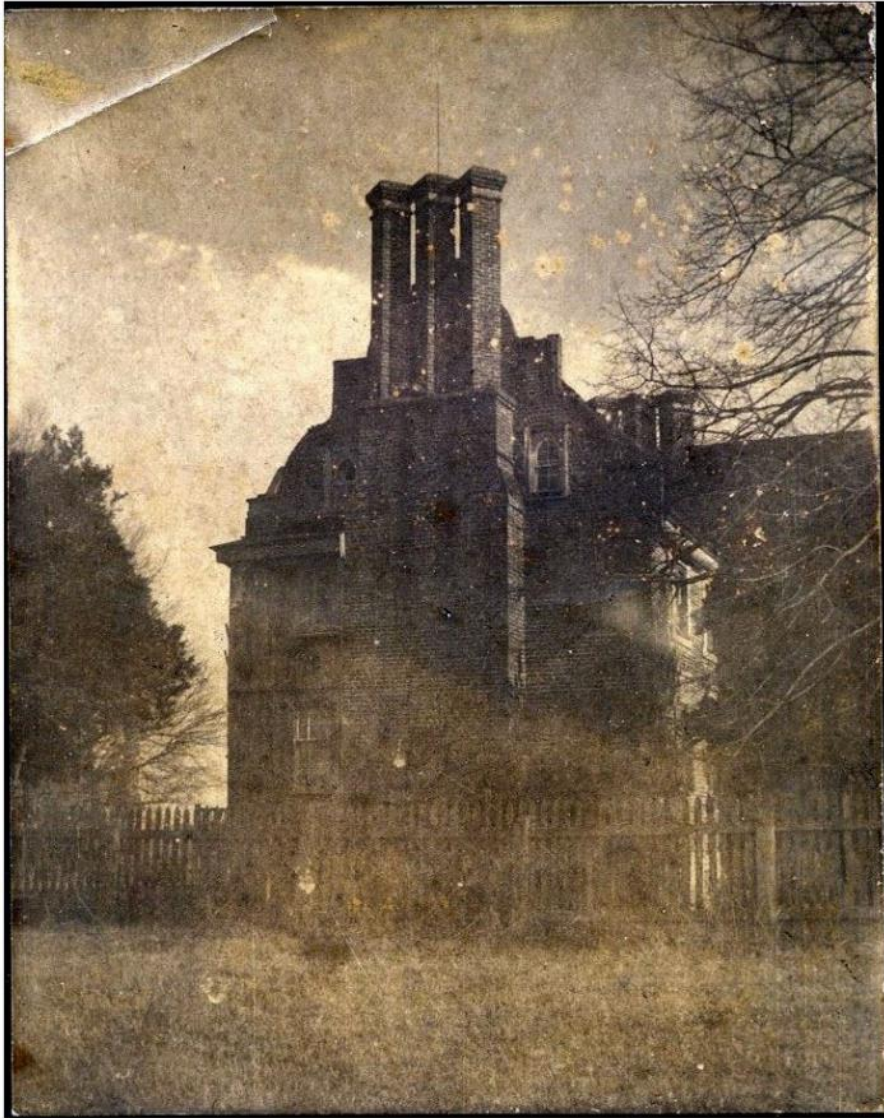


Figure 5: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, Warren Family Photographs, ca. 1920s-1930s.



Figure 6: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, Warren Family Photographs, ca. 1920s-1930s. The wood closet addition at the north side of the chimney was removed by ca. 1940.



Figure 7: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, Warren Family Photographs, ca. 1940s. Note that the closet addition had been removed by this time (compare to figure 6).



Figure 8: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevations of hyphen and addition, Warren Family Photographs, ca. 1920s-1930s.



Figure 9: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevations of hyphen and addition, Warren Family Photographs, ca. 1920s-1930s.



Figure 10: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevation of hyphen, Warren Family Photographs, ca. 1920s-1930s.



Figure 11: Bacon's Castle, photograph of stairs at west elevation of north tower, Warren Family Photographs, ca. 1920s-1930s.





Figure 12: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, Francis Benjamin Johnston, 1936. The wood closet addition at the north side of the chimney was gone by ca. 1940.



Figure 13: Bacon's Castle, photograph of north elevation of ca. 1665 section, looking southeast, Francis Benjamin Johnston, 1936.



Figure 14: Bacon's Castle, photograph of north elevation of ca. 1665 section, looking southeast, Francis Benjamin Johnston, 1936.



Figure 15: Bacon's Castle, photograph of north elevation of ca. 1665 section, looking southwest, Francis Benjamin Johnston, 1936.



Figure 16: Bacon's Castle, photograph of first floor of ca. 1665 section, east room, view east, Francis Benjamin Johnston, 1936.

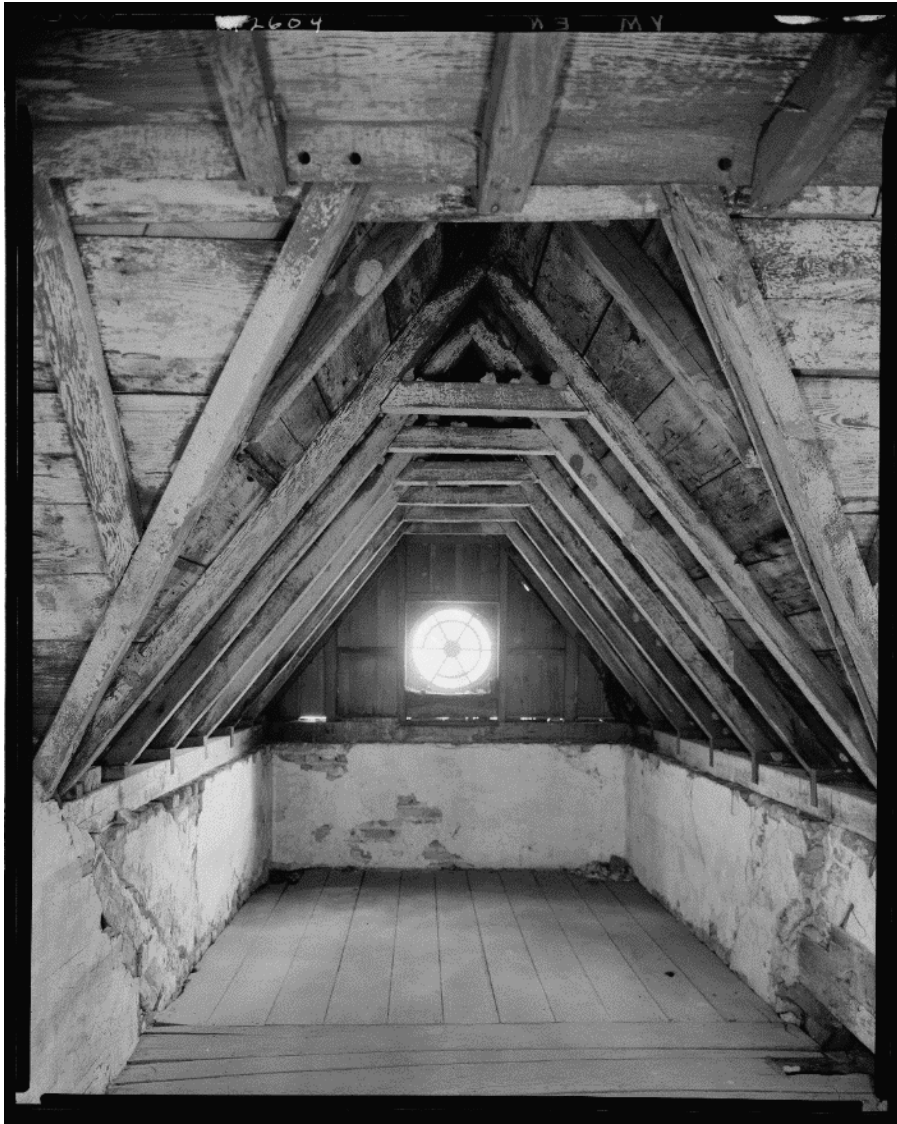


Figure 17: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south garret, Francis Benjamin Johnston, 1936.



Figure 18: Bacon's Castle, photograph of garret floor, Room 302, ca. 1665 section, view west, Francis Benjamin Johnston, 1936.



Figure 19: Bacon's Castle, photograph of garret floor, Room 302, ca. 1665 section, view southwest, Francis Benjamin Johnston, 1936.





Figure 20: Bacon's Castle, photograph of garret floor, Room 301, ca. 1665 section, view north, Francis Benjamin Johnston, 1936.



Figure 21: Bacon's Castle, photograph of approach to south (front) elevation, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.



Figure 22: Bacon's Castle, photograph of approach to south (front) elevation, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.



Figure 23: Bacon's Castle, photograph of north and east elevations, looking southwest, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.



Figure 24: Bacon's Castle, photograph of north elevation, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.

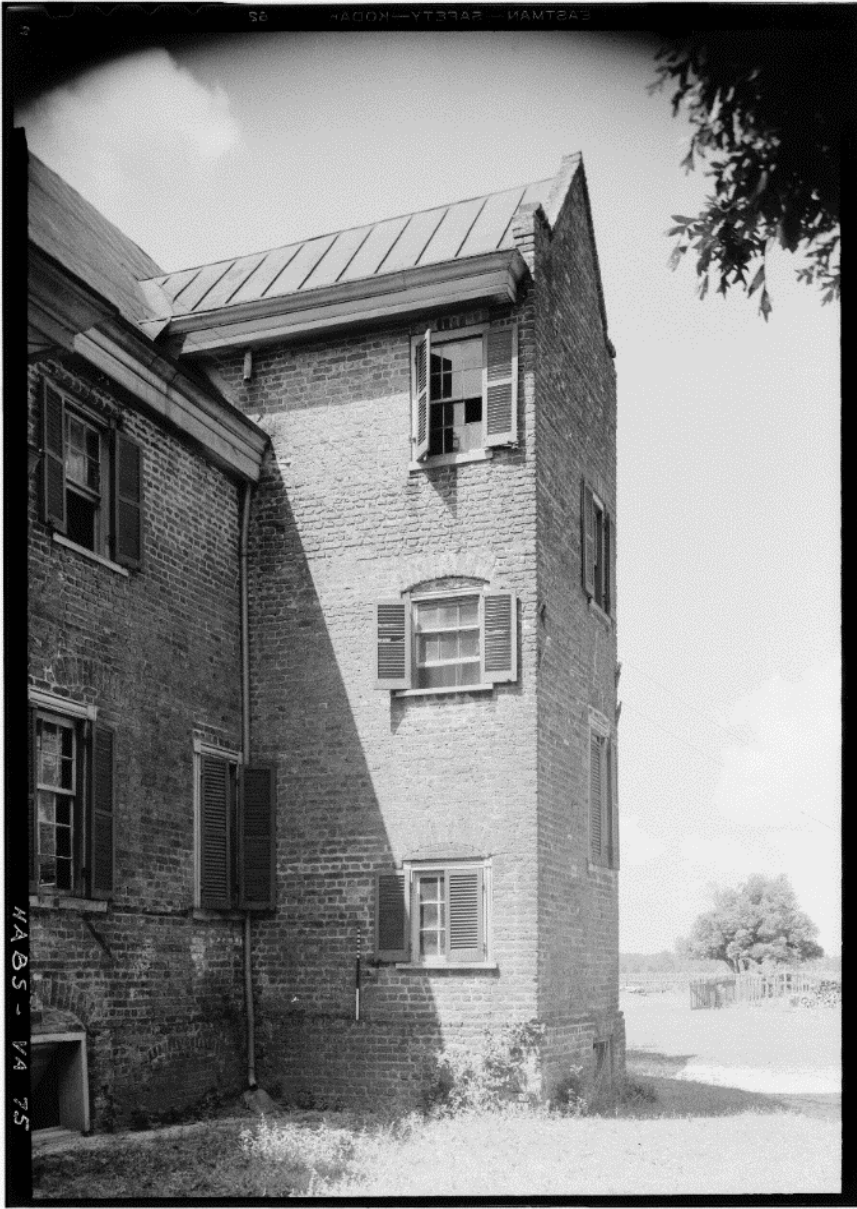


Figure 25: Bacon's Castle, photograph of east elevation of north tower at ca. 1665 section, looking west, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.



Figure 26: Bacon's Castle, photograph of north and west elevations, looking southeast, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.



Figure 27: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, looking east, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937. The wood closet addition at the north side of the chimney was gone by ca. 1940.





Figure 28: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, looking east, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1940s. Note that the wood closet addition was gone by this time, and the garret-level windows had been changed from pointed-arch to rectangular (compare to Figure 27).



Figure 29: Bacon's Castle, photograph of westernmost, second story window at south (front elevation), Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.



Figure 30: Bacon's Castle, photograph of east chimney of ca. 1665 section, taken from roof, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.



Figure 31: Bacon's Castle, photograph of east chimney of ca. 1665 section, taken from roof, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.



Figure 32: Bacon's Castle, photograph of first floor of ca. 1665 section, east room, view west, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1937.



Figure 33: Bacon's Castle, photograph of first floor of ca. 1665 section, east room, view east, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1937.



Figure 34: Bacon's Castle, photograph of first floor of ca. 1665 section, east room, view south, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1937.



Figure 35: Bacon's Castle, photograph of first floor of ca. 1665 section, east room, view north, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1937.





Figure 36: Bacon's Castle, photograph of first floor of ca. 1665 section, west room, view northwest, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1937.



Figure 37: Bacon's Castle, photograph of second floor of ca. 1665 section, west room, view northwest, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1937.



Figure 38: Bacon's Castle, photograph of second floor of ca. 1665 section, east room, view southwest, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1937.



Figure 39: Bacon's Castle, photograph of second floor of ca. 1665 section, west room, view of summer beams, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1937.



Figure 40: Bacon's Castle, photograph of second floor of ca. 1665 section, west room, detail of summer beams, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1937.



Figure 41: Bacon's Castle, photograph of garret floor, Room 301, ca. 1665 section, view north, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.



Figure 42: Historic American Buildings Survey, photograph of south garret, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.

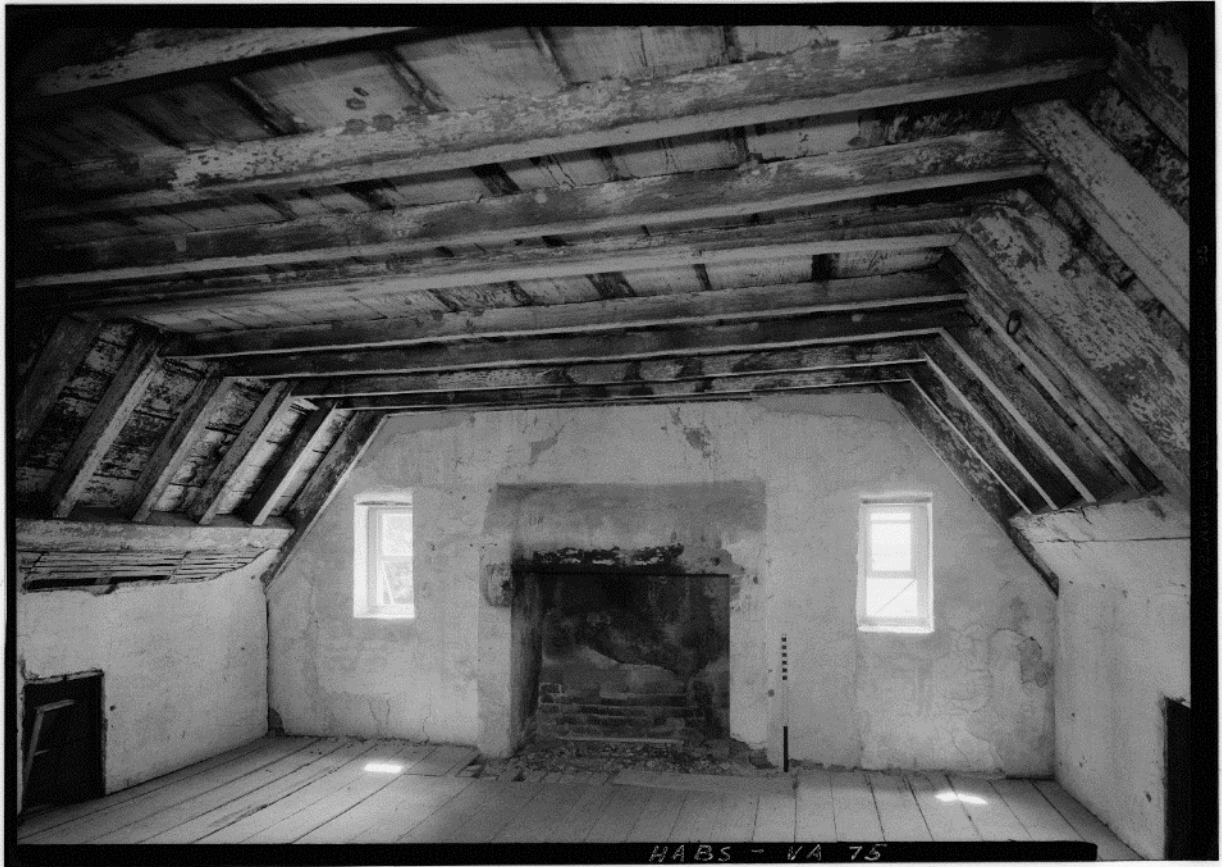


Figure 43: Bacon's Castle, photograph of garret floor, Room 302, ca. 1665 section, view west, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.





Figure 44: Bacon's Castle, photograph of garret floor, Room 304, ca. 1665 section, view east, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.

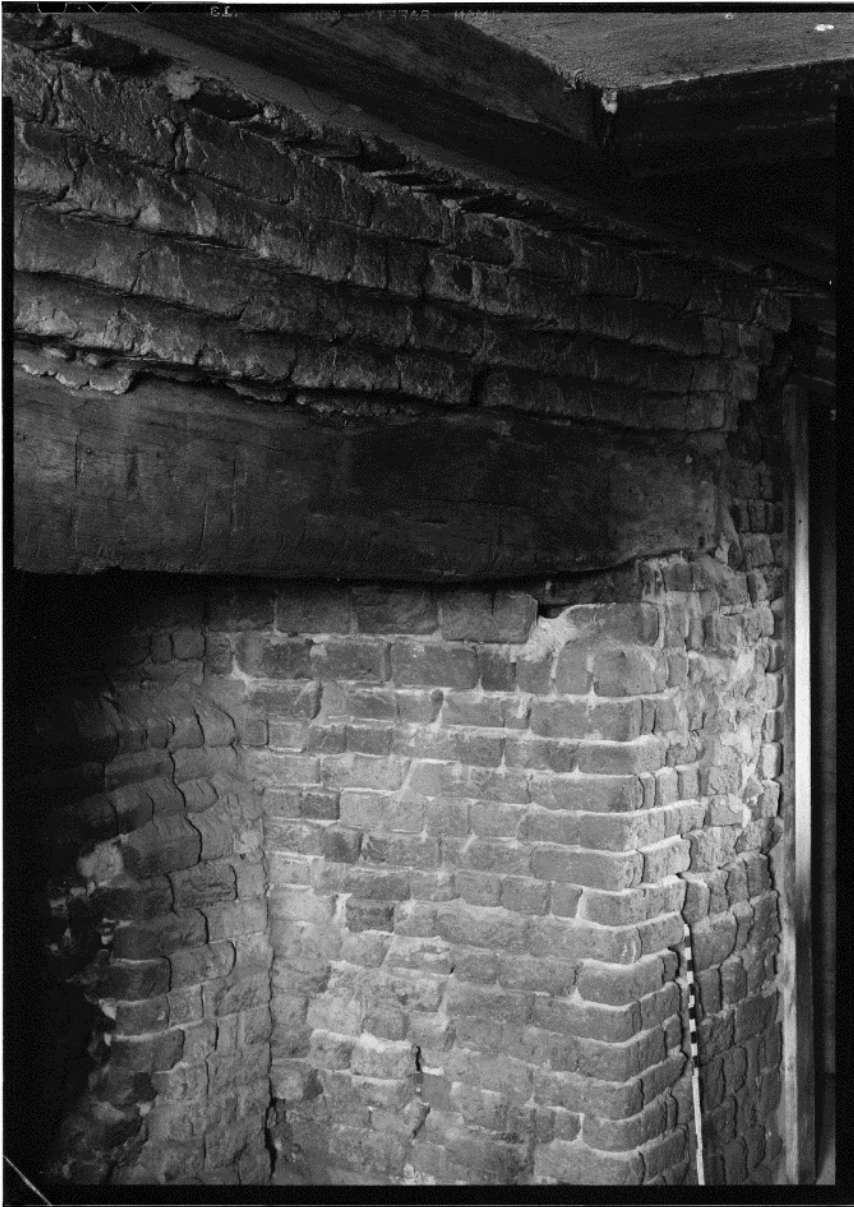


Figure 45: Bacon's Castle, photograph of basement kitchen fireplace, ca. 1665 section, view west, Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.



Figure 46: Bacon's Castle, photograph of approach to south (front) elevation, National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 47: Bacon's Castle, photograph of approach to south (front) elevation, National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 48: Bacon's Castle, photograph of approach to south (front) elevation, National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 49: Bacon's Castle, photograph of Hankins family cemetery, National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 50: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevation, National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 51: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, National Park Service, 1937.





Figure 52: Bacon's Castle, photograph of north elevation of ca. 1665 section and hyphen, National Park Service, 1937.

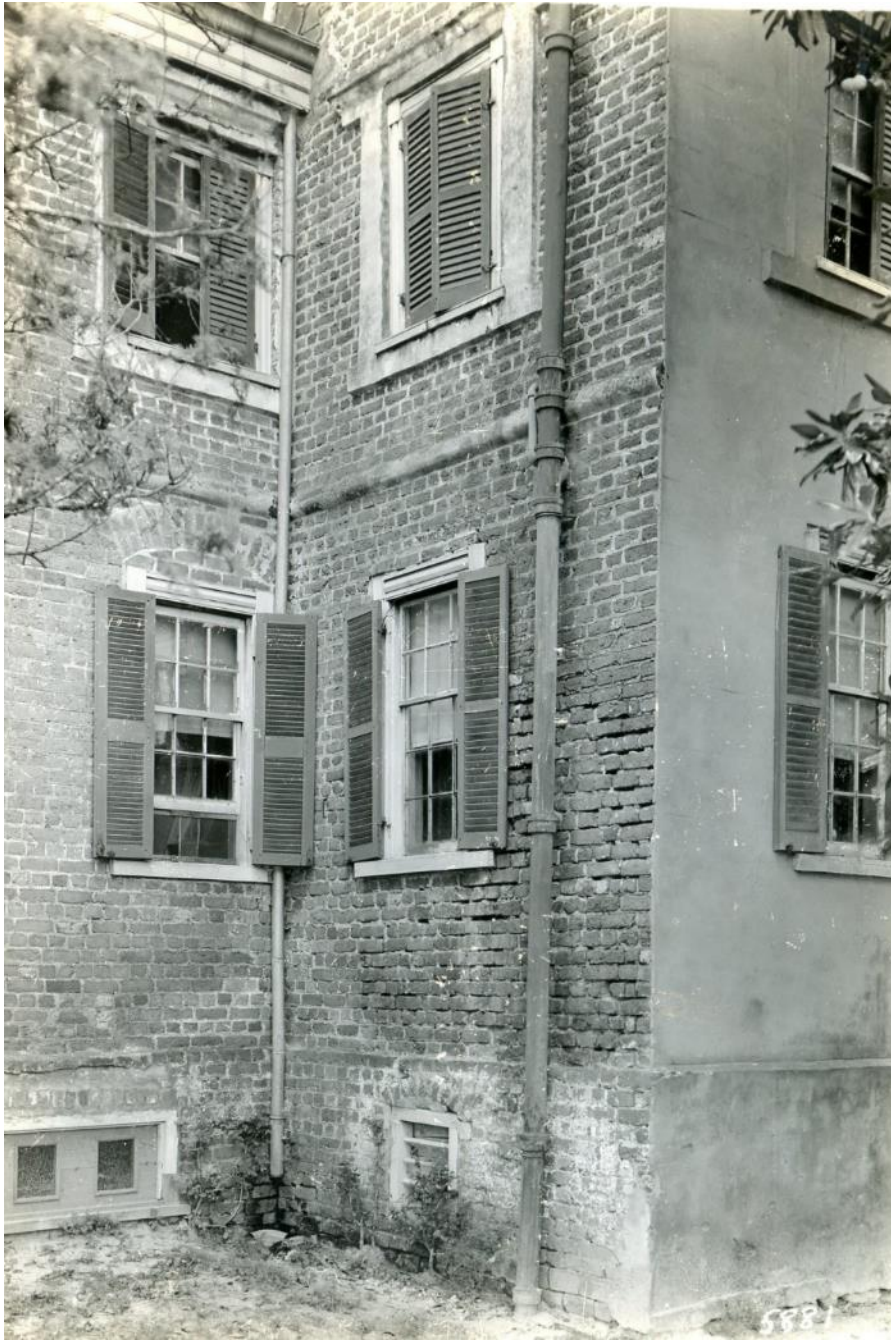


Figure 53: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south tower, National Park Service, 1937.

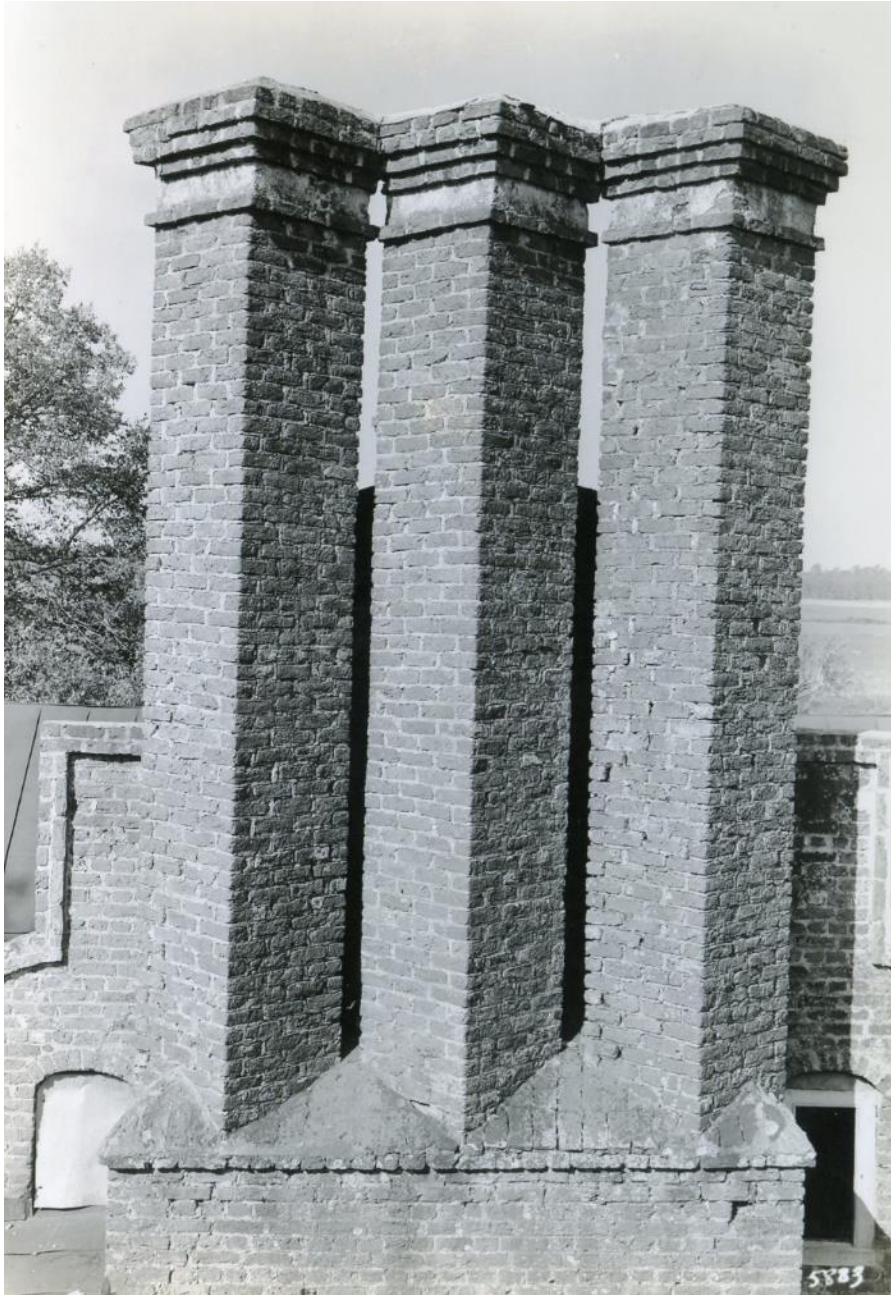


Figure 54: Bacon's Castle, photograph of east chimney looking west, taken from roof of hyphen, National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 55: Bacon's Castle, photograph of garret ceiling, National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 56: Bacon's Castle, photograph of summer beams at second floor, ca. 1665 portion, National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 57: Bacon's Castle, photograph of first floor stair tower, view north National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 58: Bacon's Castle, detail of balusters at first-floor stair tower, National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 59: Bacon's Castle, photograph of first floor of ca. 1665 section, west room, view northwest, National Park Service, 1937.



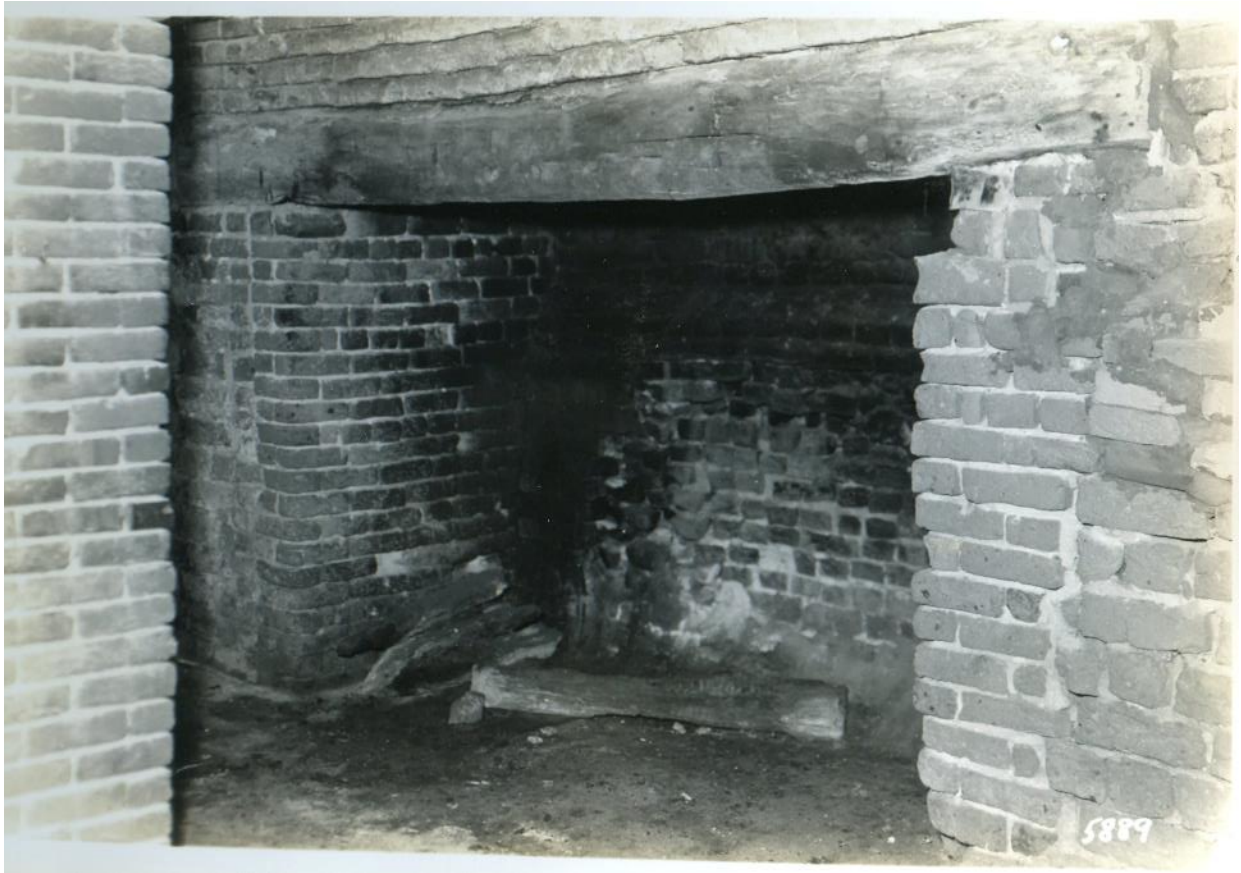


Figure 60: Bacon's Castle, photograph of basement kitchen fireplace National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 61: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west garret fireplace, National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 62: Bacon's Castle, photograph of door to west portion of ca. 1665 basement, National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 63: Bacon's Castle, photograph of approach to south (front) elevation, early 20<sup>th</sup> century (ca. 1900-1938). Courtesy Works Progress Administration Collection, Library of Virginia.



Figure 64: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevation, early 20<sup>th</sup> century (ca. 1900-1938).  
Courtesy Works Progress Administration Collection, Library of Virginia.



Figure 65: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevation, early 20<sup>th</sup> century (ca. 1900-1938).  
Courtesy Works Progress Administration Collection, Library of Virginia.



Figure 66: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, early 20<sup>th</sup> century (ca. 1900-1938). Courtesy Works Progress Administration Collection, Library of Virginia.



Figure 67: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevation, early 20<sup>th</sup> century (ca. 1900-1938).  
Courtesy Works Progress Administration Collection, Library of Virginia.





Figure 68: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, early 20<sup>th</sup> century (ca. 1900-1938). Courtesy Works Progress Administration Collection, Library of Virginia.



Figure 69: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, early 20<sup>th</sup> century (ca. 1900-1938). Courtesy Works Progress Administration Collection, Library of Virginia.



Figure 70: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevation, early 20<sup>th</sup> century (ca. 1900-1938). Courtesy Works Progress Administration Collection, Library of Virginia.



Figure 71: Bacon's Castle, photograph of north elevation, Virginia New York World's Fair Commission, 1939.



Figure 72: Bacon's Castle, distant view of south (front) elevation looking northeast, 1969. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 73: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, 1970. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 74: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevation, 1972. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 75: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevation looking north, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.





Figure 76: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevation looking northeast, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 77: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west elevation, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 78: Bacon's Castle, photograph of north elevation including ca. 1665 section and hyphen, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 79: Bacon's Castle, detail, southeast side, chimney of ca. 1665 section, from the south, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 80: Bacon's Castle, detail, southeast side, chimney of ca. 1665 section, from the east, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 81: Bacon's Castle, photograph of east basement of ca. 1665 section, looking northeast, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.

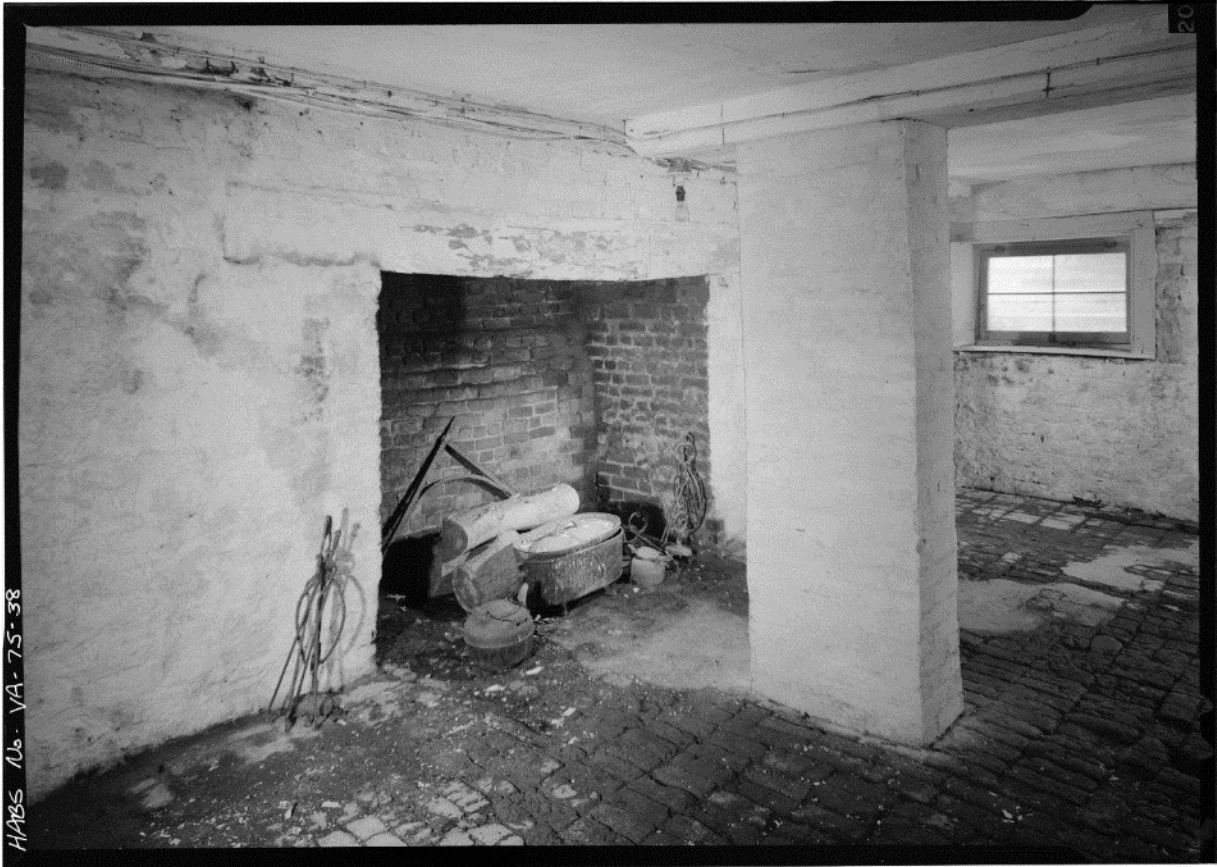


Figure 82: Bacon's Castle, photograph of basement of ca. 1665 section, detail of fireplace, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 83: Bacon's Castle, photograph of basement of ca. 1665 section, detail of door, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.





Figure 84: Bacon's Castle, photograph of basement of ca. 1665 section, detail of ceiling, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 85: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west room of ca. 1665 section, first floor, looking northwest, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 86: Bacon's Castle, photograph of east room, first floor of ca. 1665 section, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 87: Bacon's Castle, detail of ceiling beams, first floor of ca. 1665 section, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 88: Bacon's Castle, photograph of stair hall, first floor of southeastern addition, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 89: Bacon's Castle, photograph of southern corner room, first floor of southeastern addition, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 90: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevation looking north, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 91: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevation looking northeast, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.





Figure 92: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south (front) elevation looking northeast, Jack Boucher, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1972.



Figure 93: Bacon's Castle, drive, and outbuildings; aerial view looking northeast, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.



Figure 94: Bacon's Castle, drive, and outbuildings; aerial view looking southeast, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.



Figure 95: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south elevation looking northeast, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.



Figure 96: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south elevation looking north, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.



Figure 97: Bacon's Castle, photograph of east and north elevations of 1850s addition, looking southwest, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.

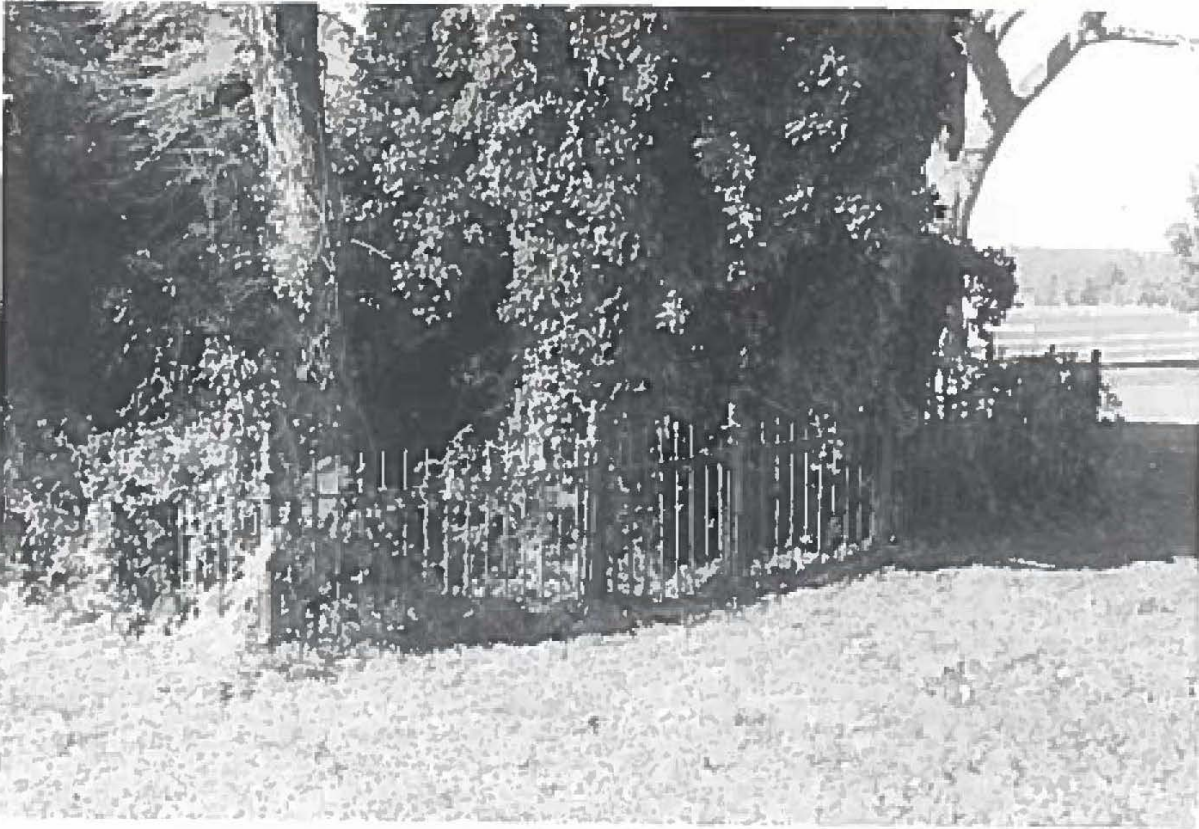


Figure 98: Bacon's Castle, photograph of fence at Hankins family cemetery, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.



Figure 99: Bacon's Castle, photograph of north (rear) elevation of 1850s addition, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.





Figure 100: Bacon's Castle, photograph of plaque, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.



Figure 101: Bacon's Castle, photograph of south elevation looking northeast, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.

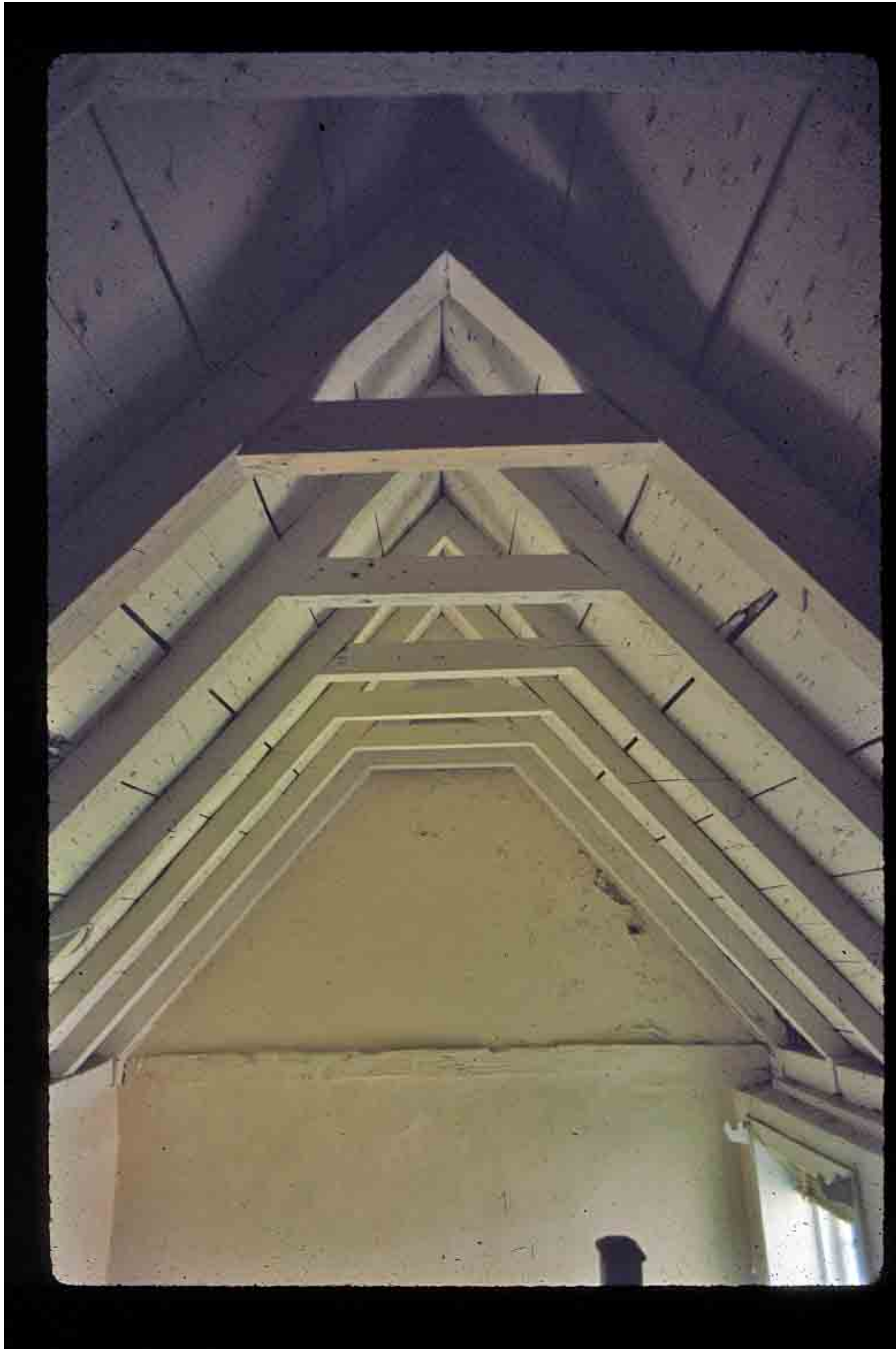


Figure 102: Bacon's Castle, photograph of attic in ca. 1665 section, 1974. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 103: Bacon's Castle, photograph of attic balustrade in ca. 1665 section, 1974. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 104: Bacon's Castle, photograph of first floor in ca. 1665 section, 1974. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 105: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west room in ca. 1665 section, view west, 1974. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 106: Bacon's Castle, detail view of east end of south façade, second floor, 1975. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

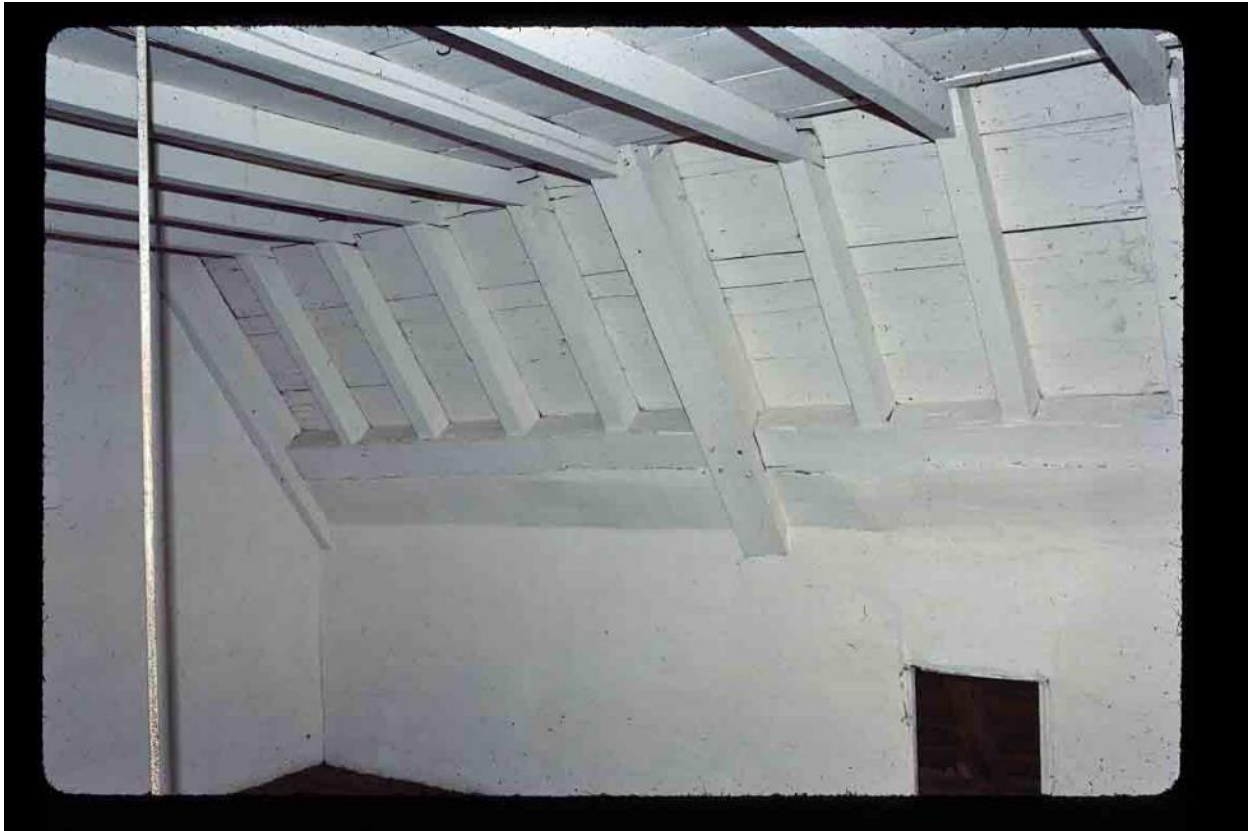


Figure 107: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west garret ceiling, 1976. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.





Figure 108: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west garret fireplace, 1976. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 109: Bacon's Castle, photograph of first-floor central hall at ca. 1665 section, view south, 1976. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

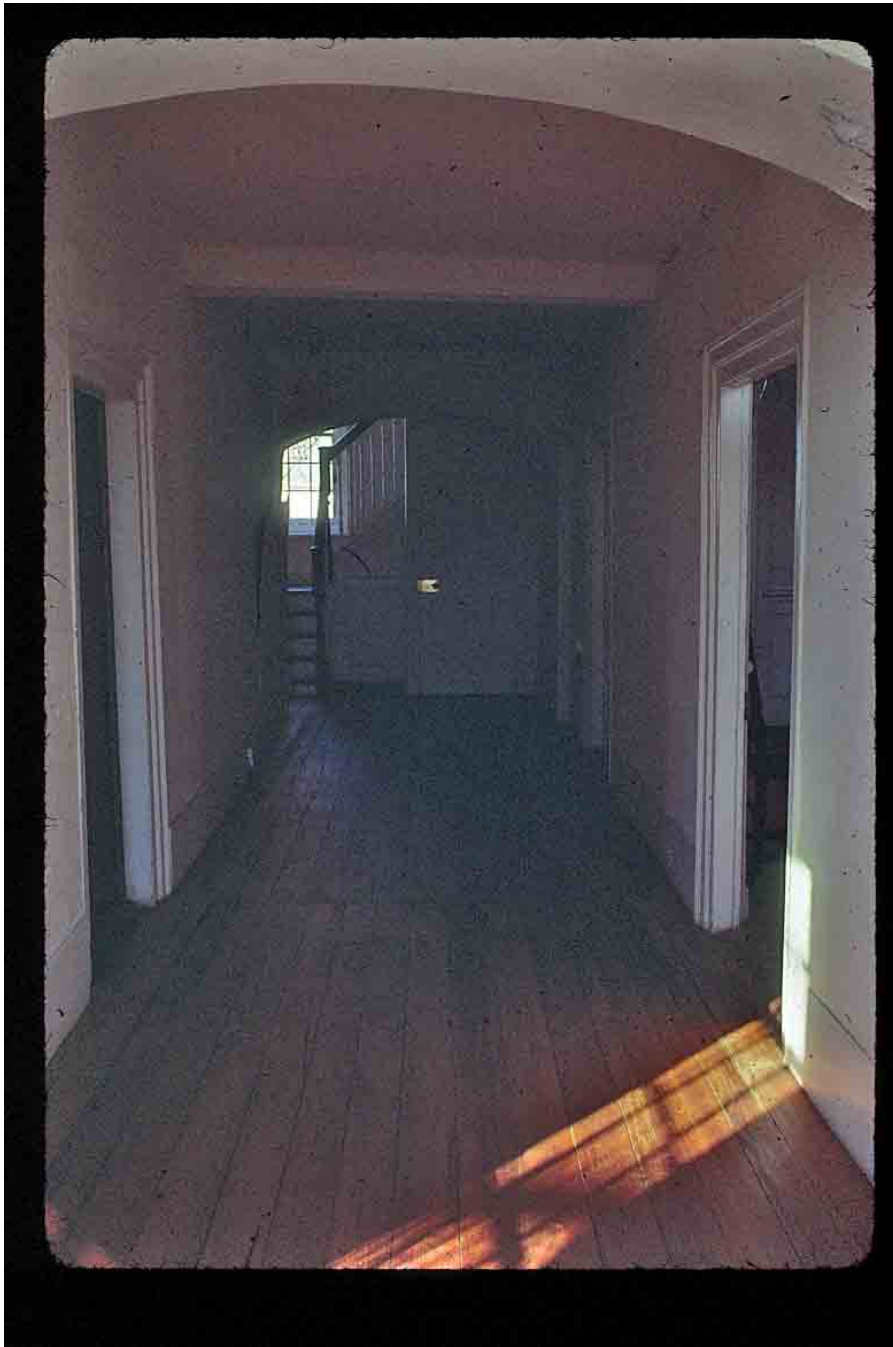


Figure 110: Bacon's Castle, photograph of first-floor central hall at ca. 1665 section, view north, 1976. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 111: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west room in ca. 1665 section, view west, 1976. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 112: Bacon's Castle, photograph of first floor of ca. 1665 section, stair tower, view northwest, 1976. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 113: Bacon's Castle, photograph of west chimney at ca. 1665 section, 1981. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 114: Bacon's Castle, photograph of brick repointing in progress at south (front) elevation of ca. 1665 section, 1982. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 115: Bacon's Castle, photograph of east chimney at ca. 1665 section, looking northwest, 1982. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



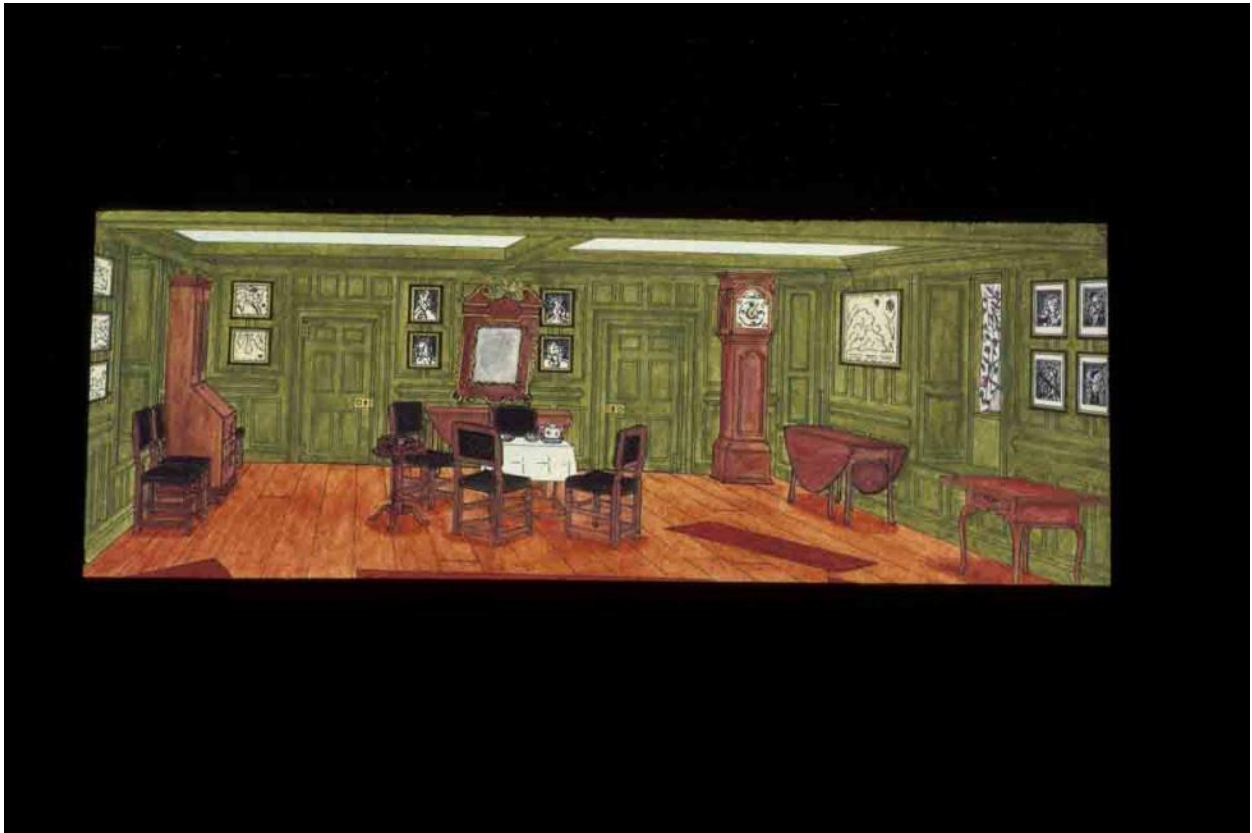


Figure 116: Bacon's Castle, view of east room of ca. 1665 section, drawing, unknown artist, 1982. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

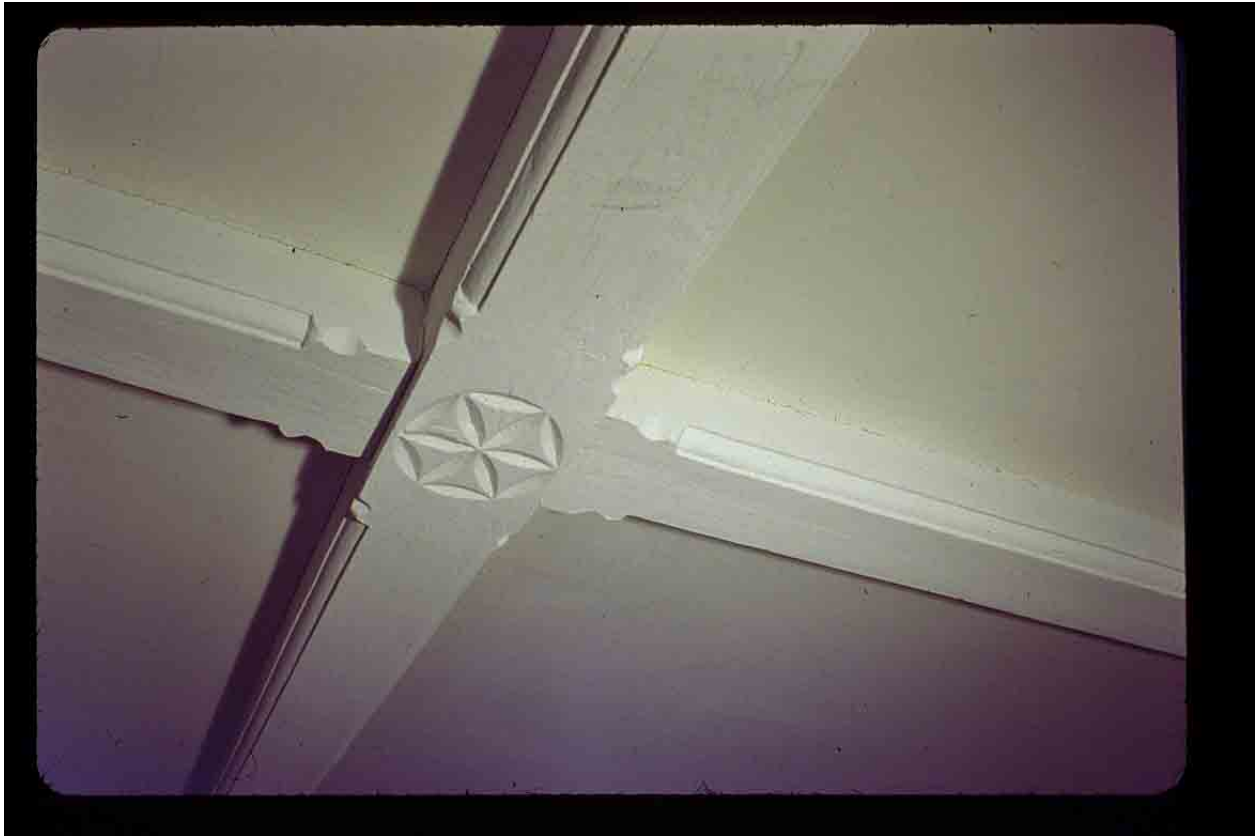


Figure 117: Bacon's Castle, view of ceiling beams at first floor, west room of ca. 1665 section, photo taken ca. 1982. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 118: Bacon's Castle, photograph of east room in ca. 1665 section, taken ca. 1982. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 119: Bacon's Castle, view of second floor, west room of ca. 1665 section, photo taken ca. 1982. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 120: Bacon's Castle, view of furnishings at first floor, west room of ca. 1665 section, photo taken ca. 1982. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

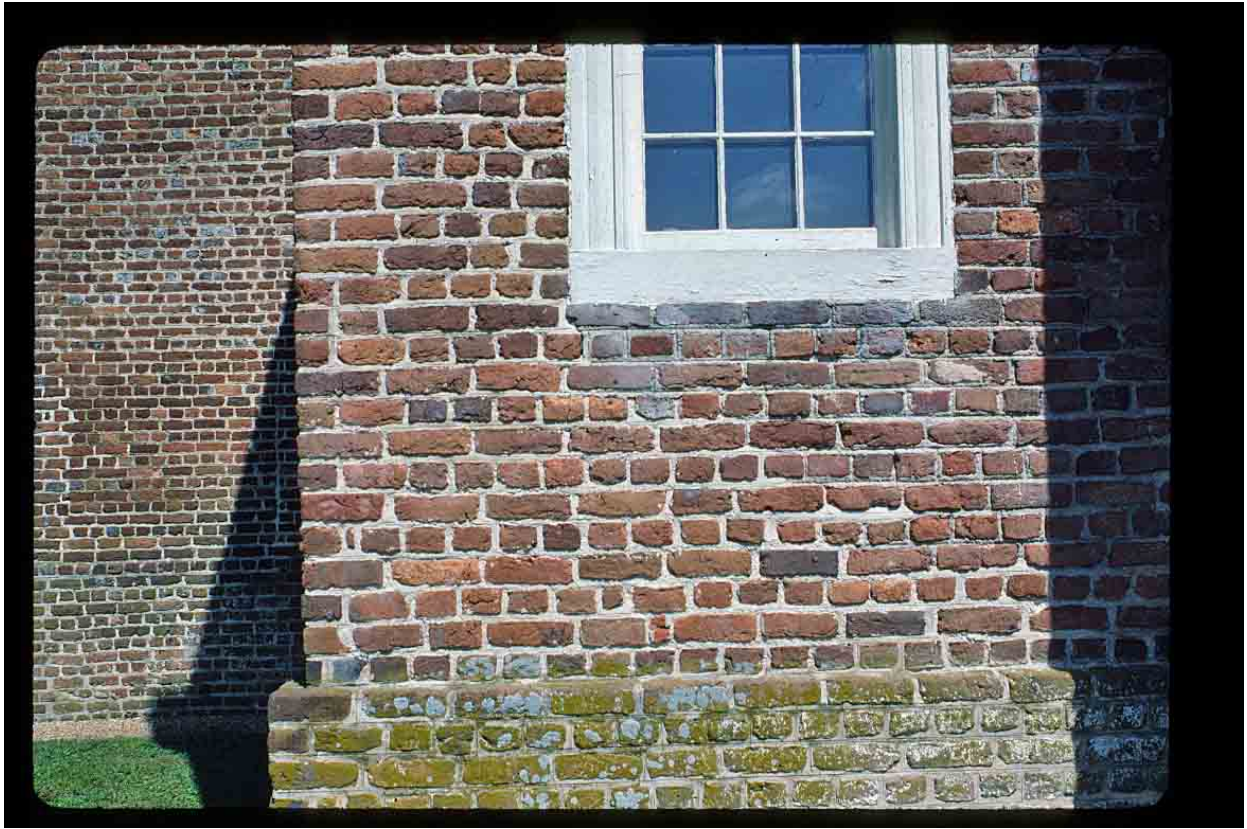


Figure 121: Bacon's Castle, photograph of base of south tower, 1995. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 122: Bacon's Castle, photograph of front (south) elevation looking northeast, 2004. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 123: Bacon's Castle, photograph of front (south) elevation looking north, 2004. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.





Figure 124: Bacon's Castle, photograph of front (south) elevation looking northwest, 2004. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 125: Bacon's Castle, photograph of front (south) elevation looking north, 2004. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.

## Appendix 6: Historic Architectural Drawings

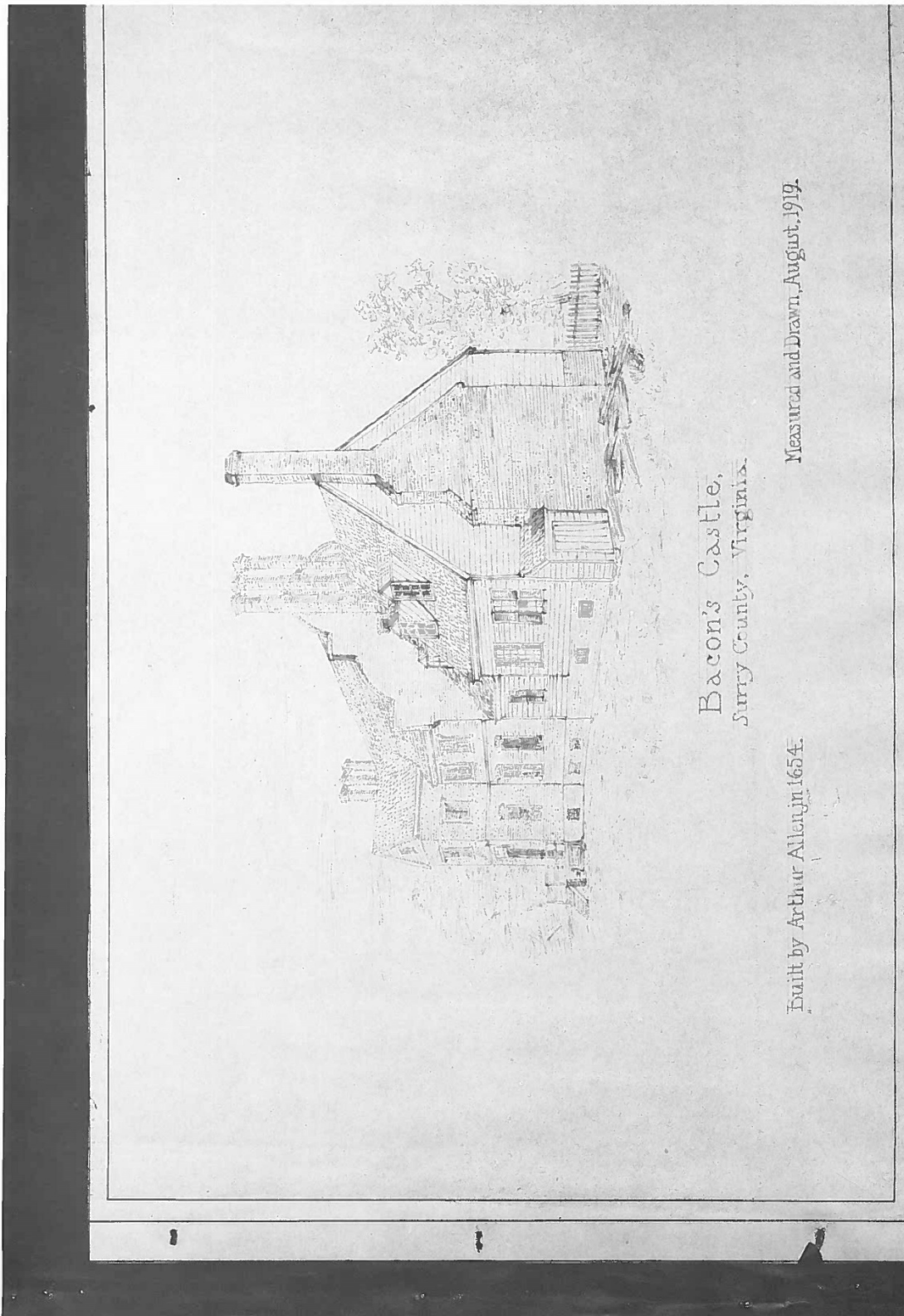


Figure 1: Bacon's Castle, cover page to 1919 drawings.

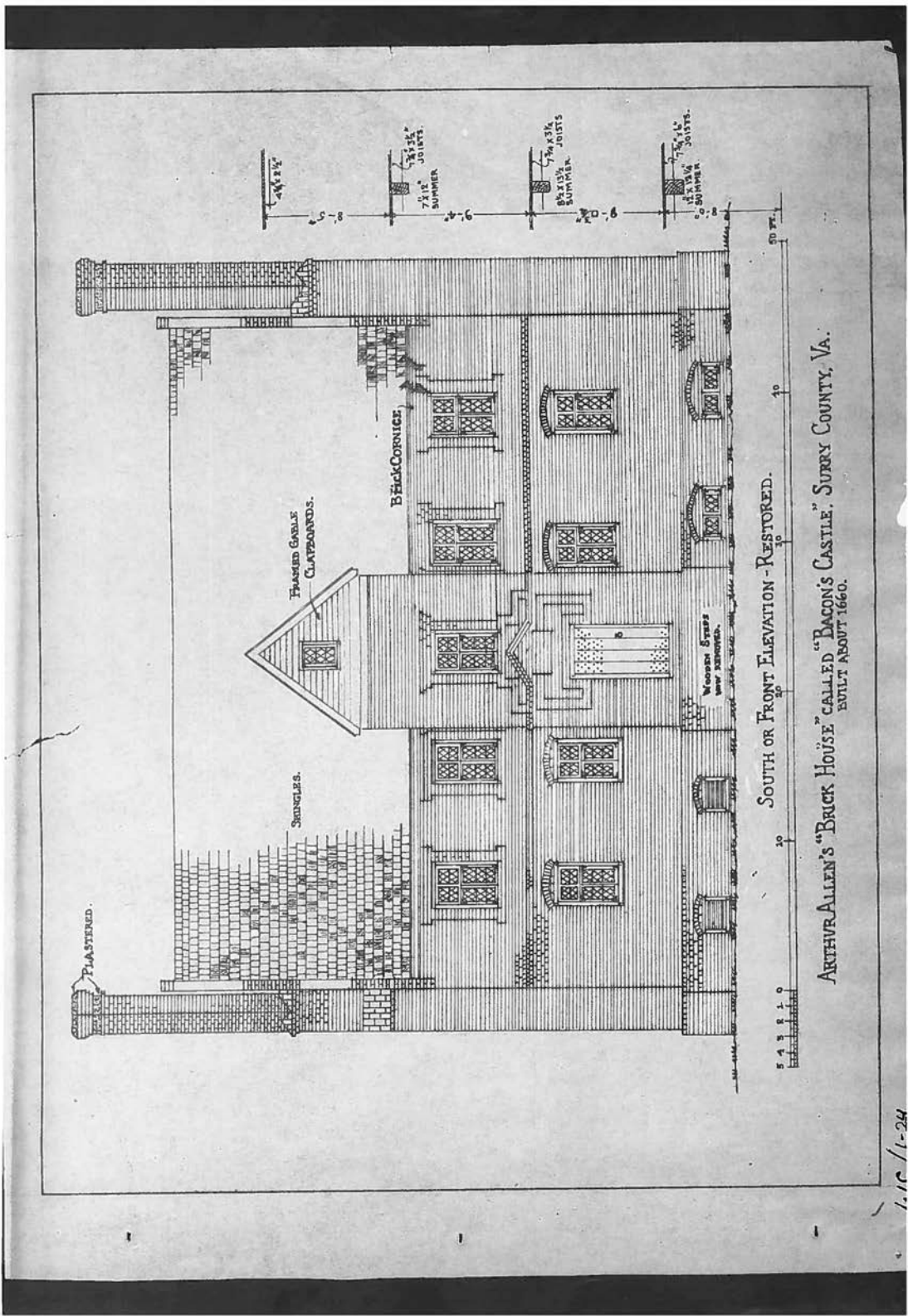


Figure 2: Bacon's Castle, south elevation, 1919.

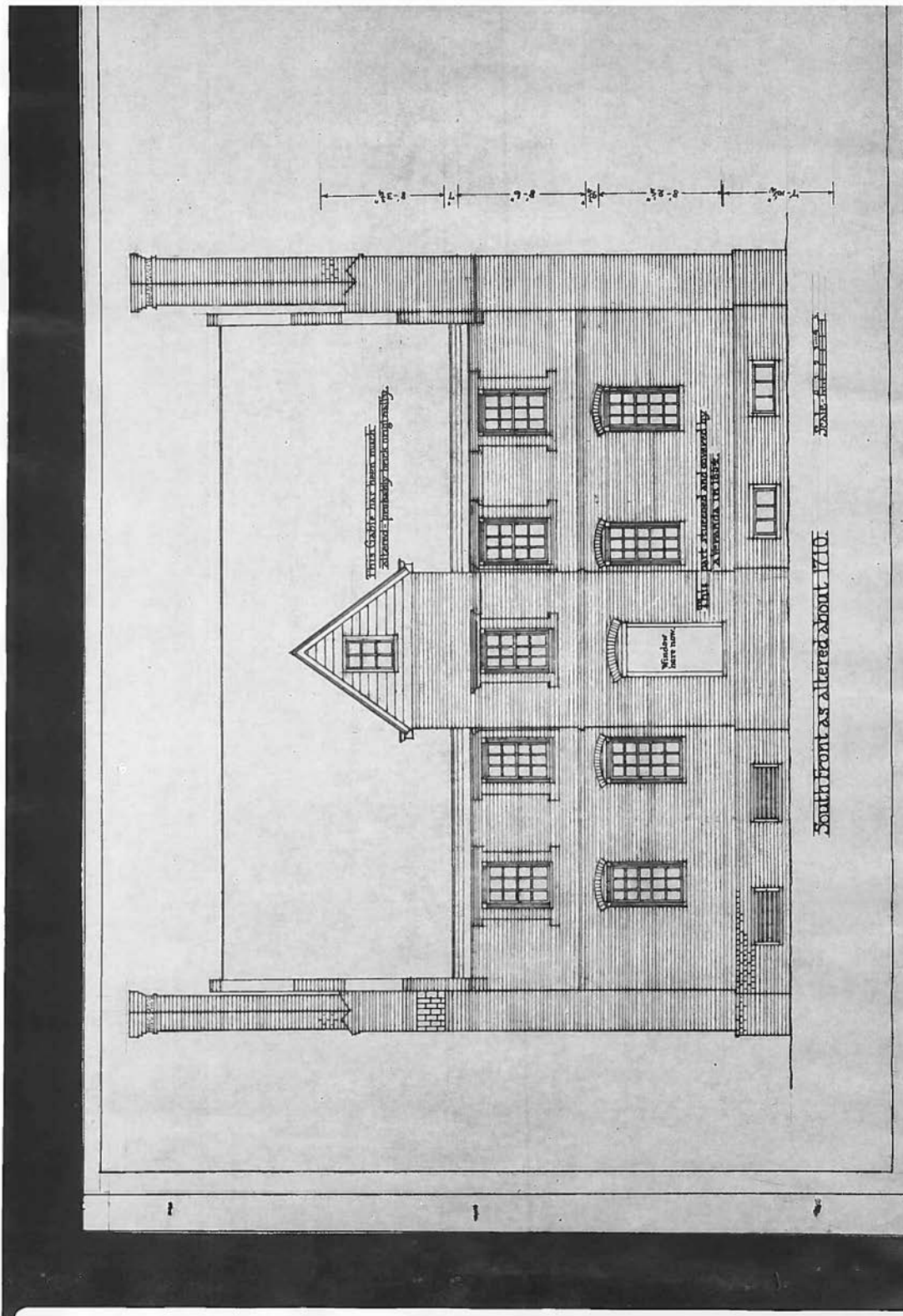


Figure 3: Bacon's Castle, south elevation in 1710, 1919.

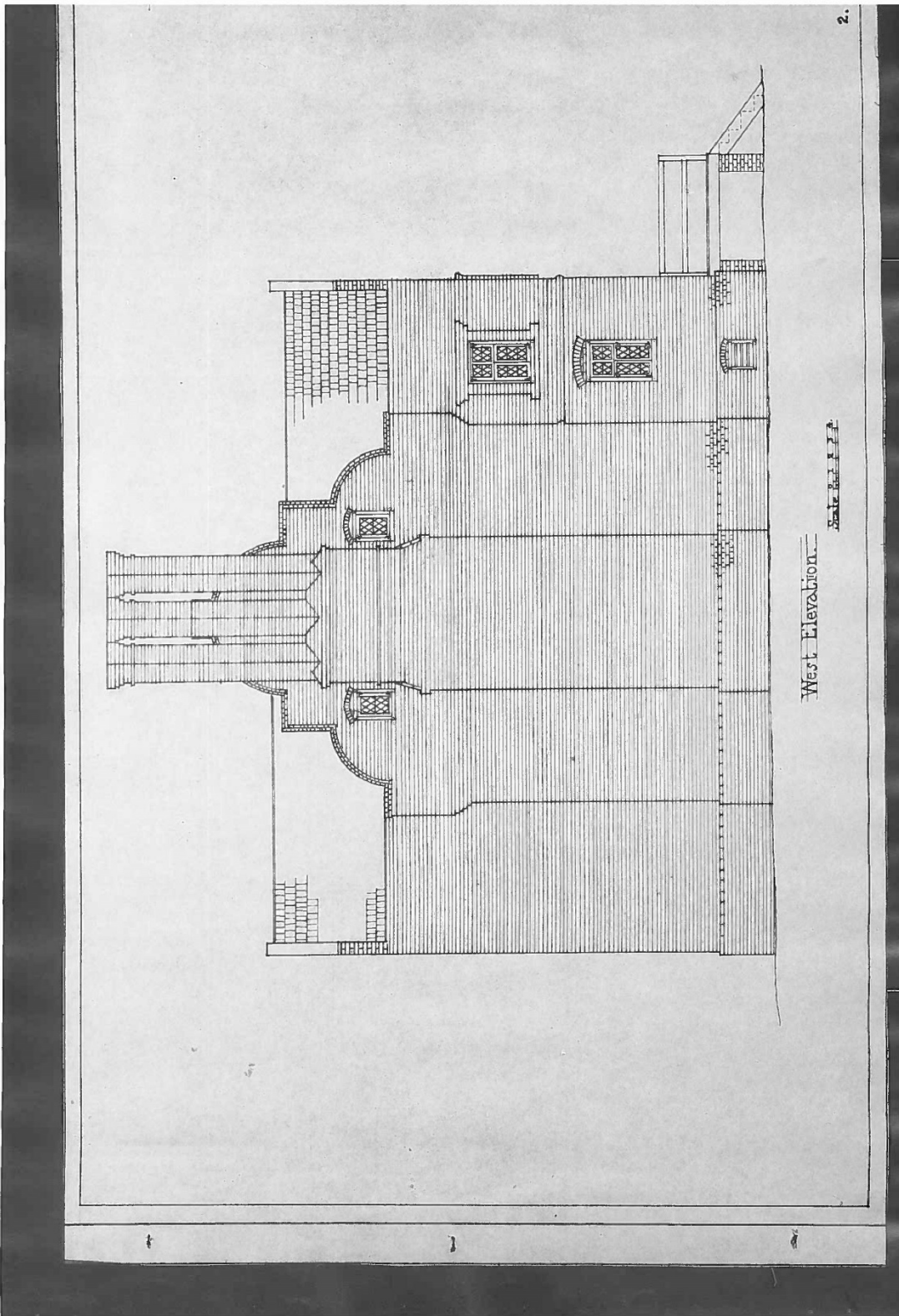


Figure 4: Bacon's Castle, west elevation, 1919.

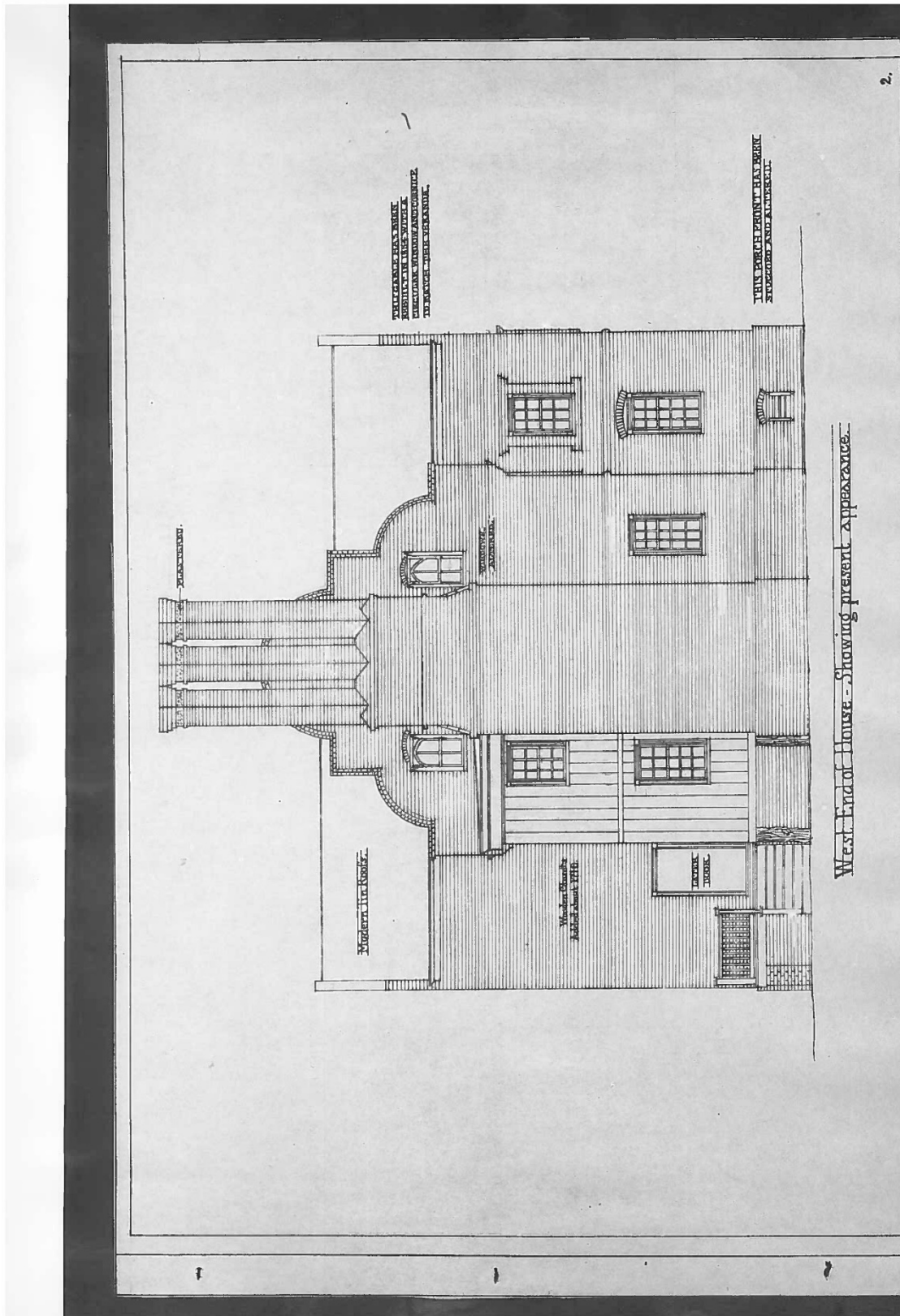


Figure 5: Bacon's Castle, west elevation as it appeared in 1919.

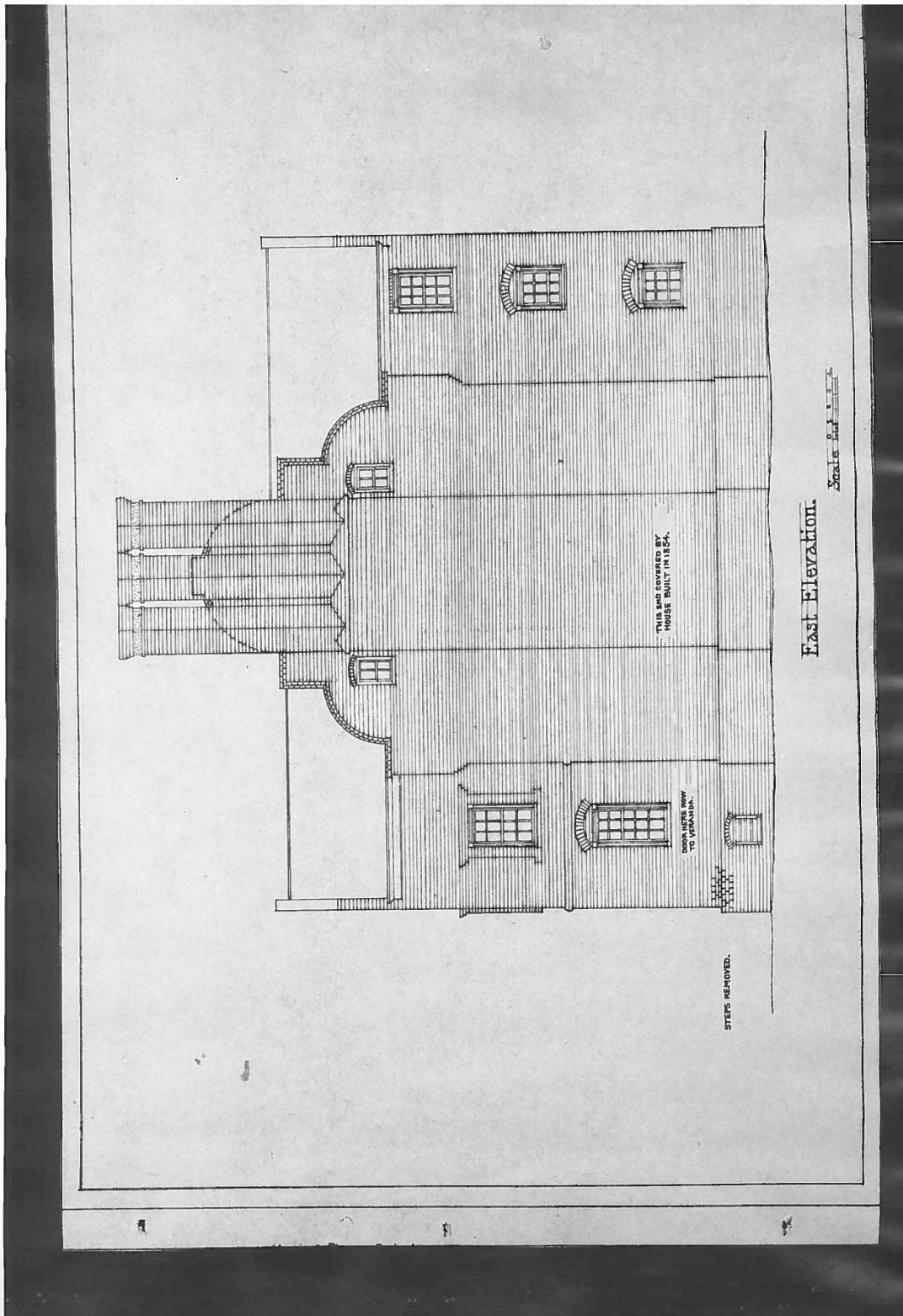


Figure 6: Bacon's Castle, east elevation, 1919.



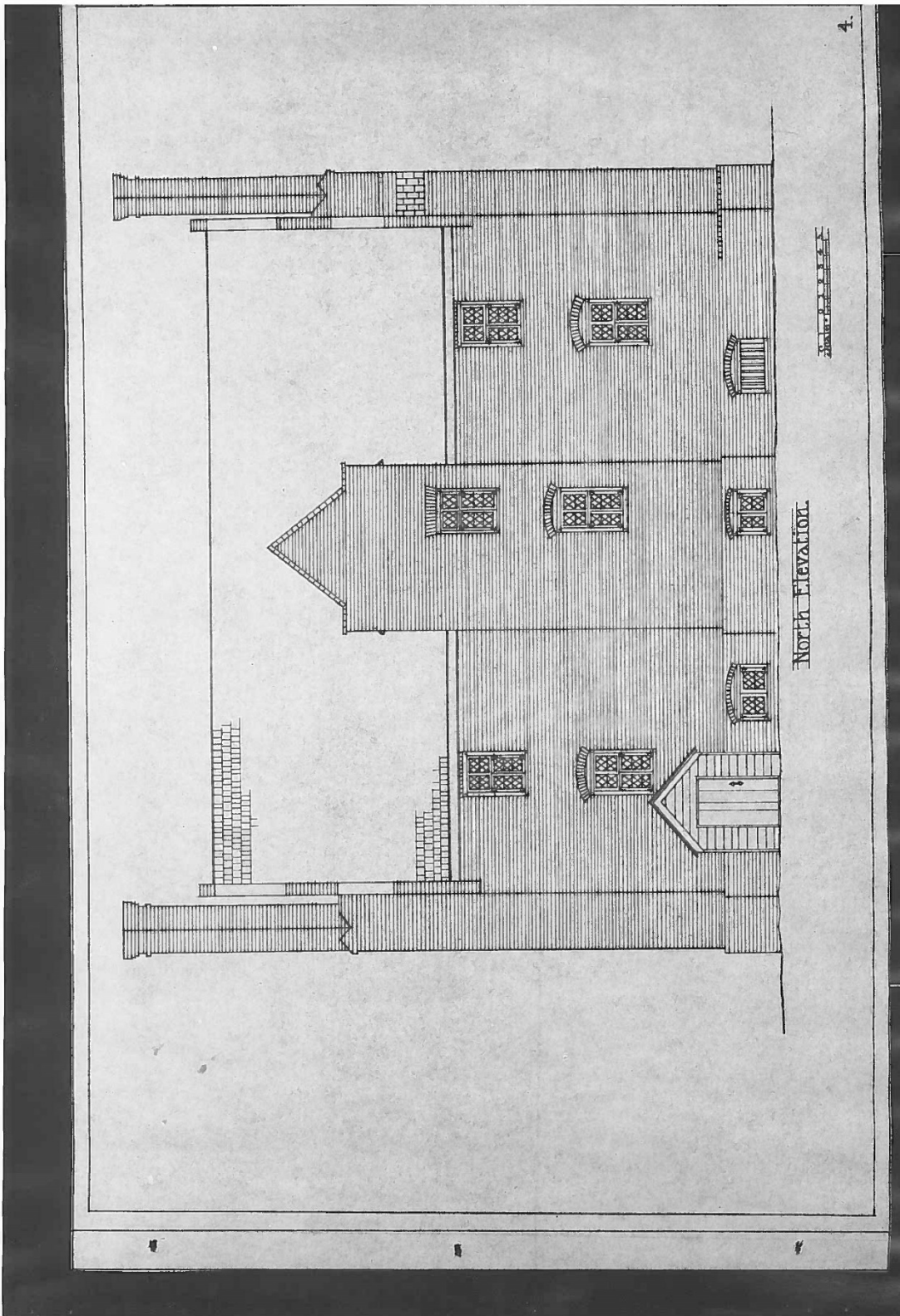


Figure 7: Bacon's Castle, north elevation, 1919.

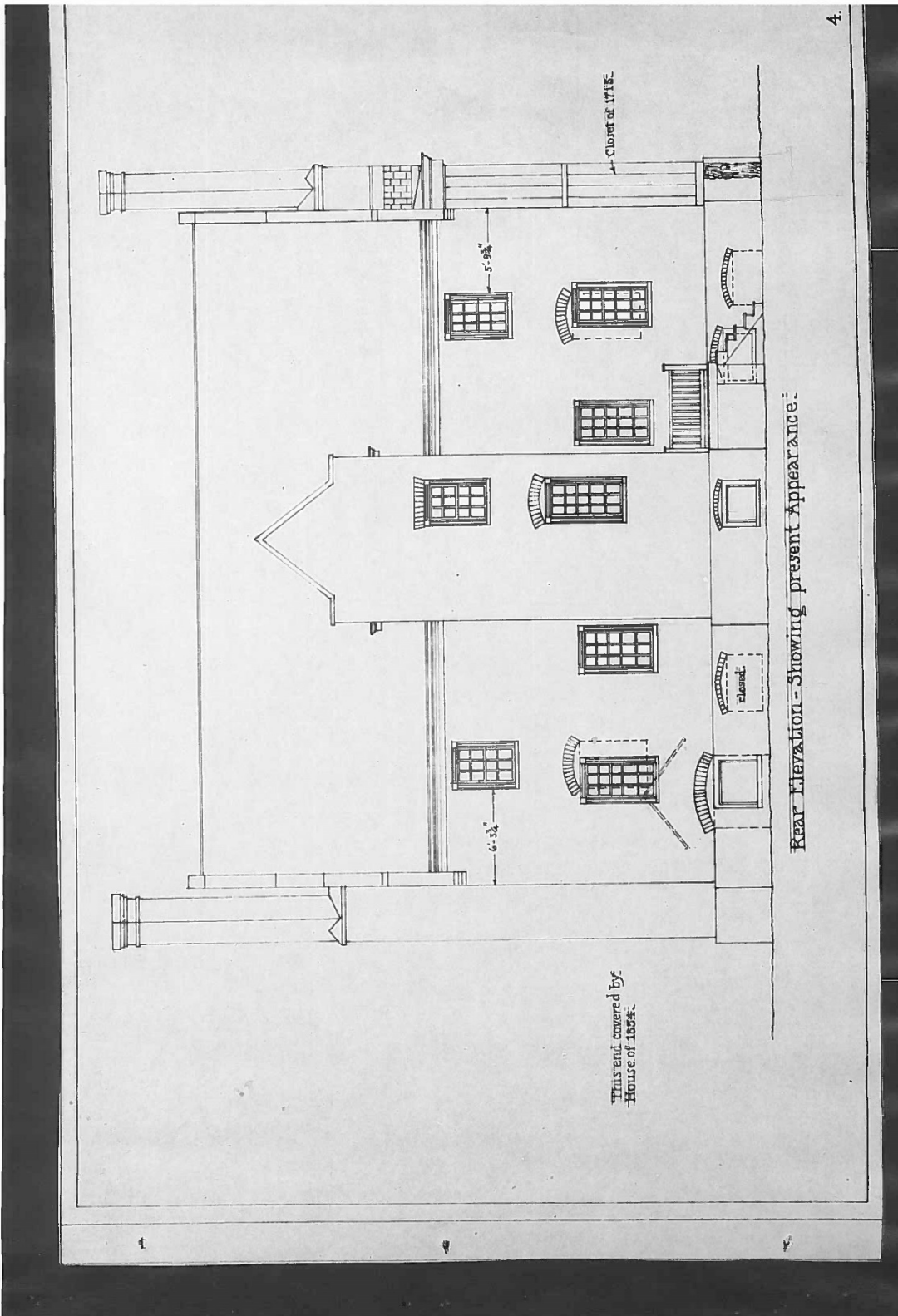


Figure 8: Bacon's Castle, north elevation as it appeared in 1919.

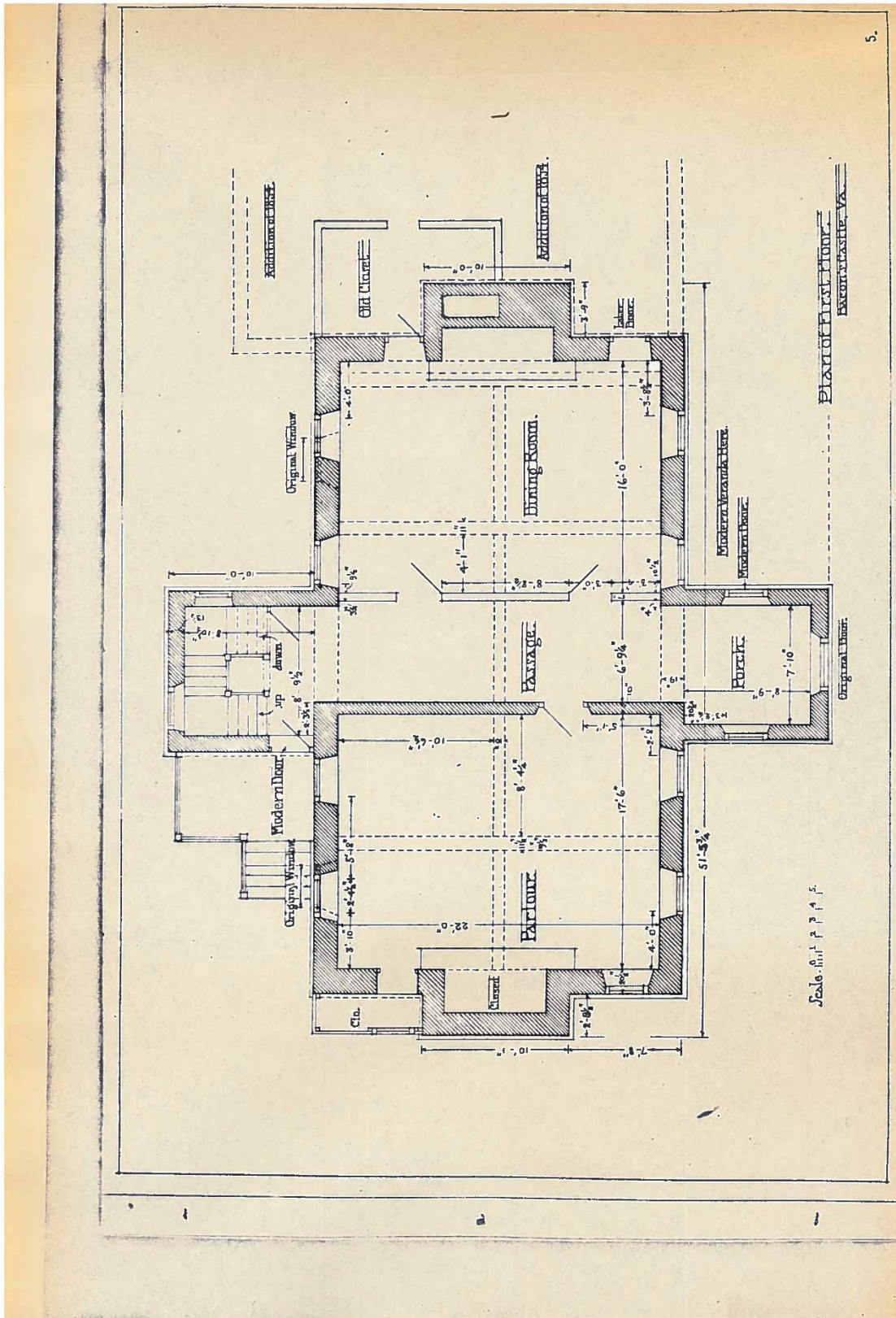


Figure 9: Bacon's Castle, first floor plan, 1919.

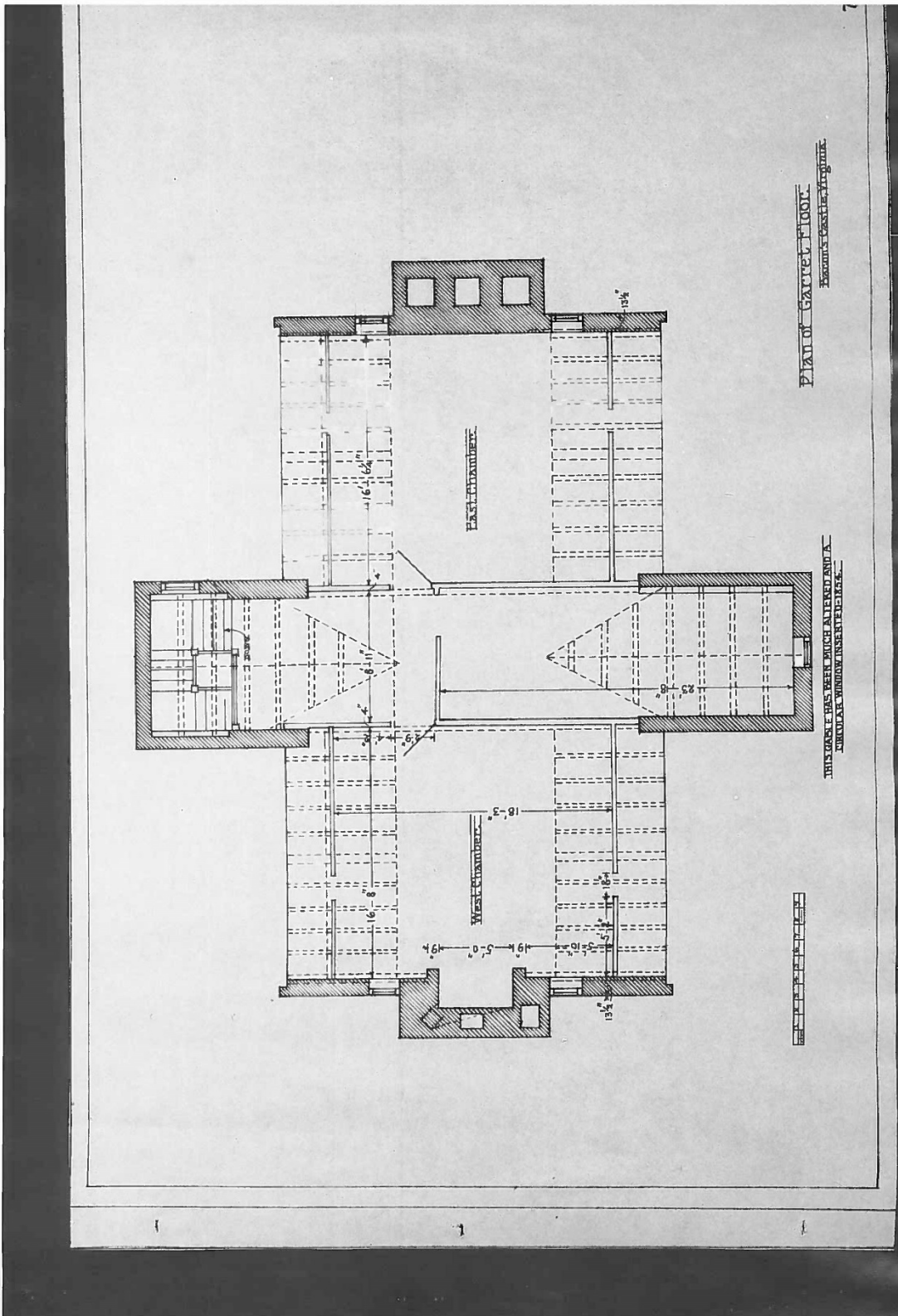


Figure 10: Bacon's Castle, garret floor plan, 1919.

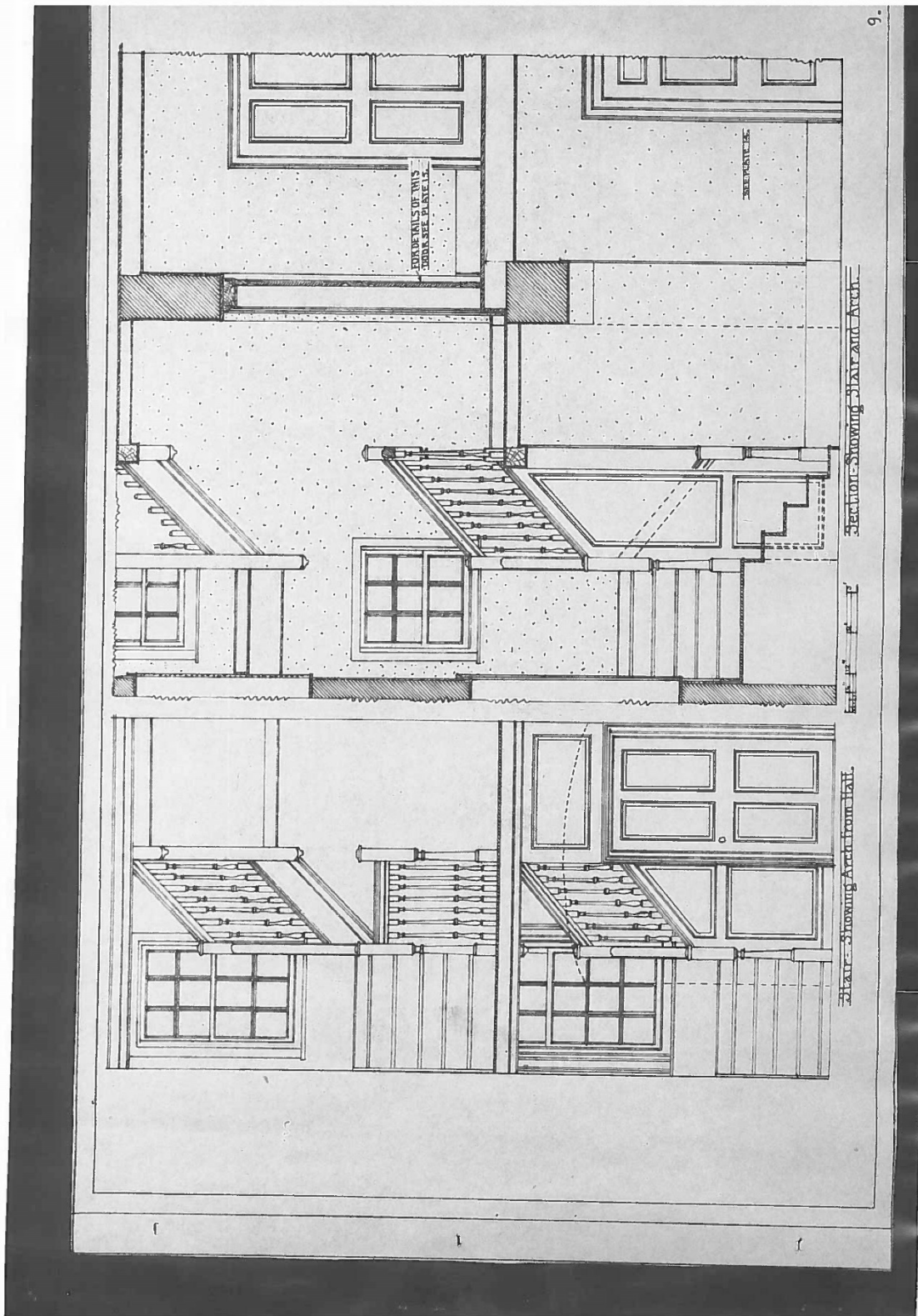


Figure 11: Bacon's Castle, stair sections, 1919.

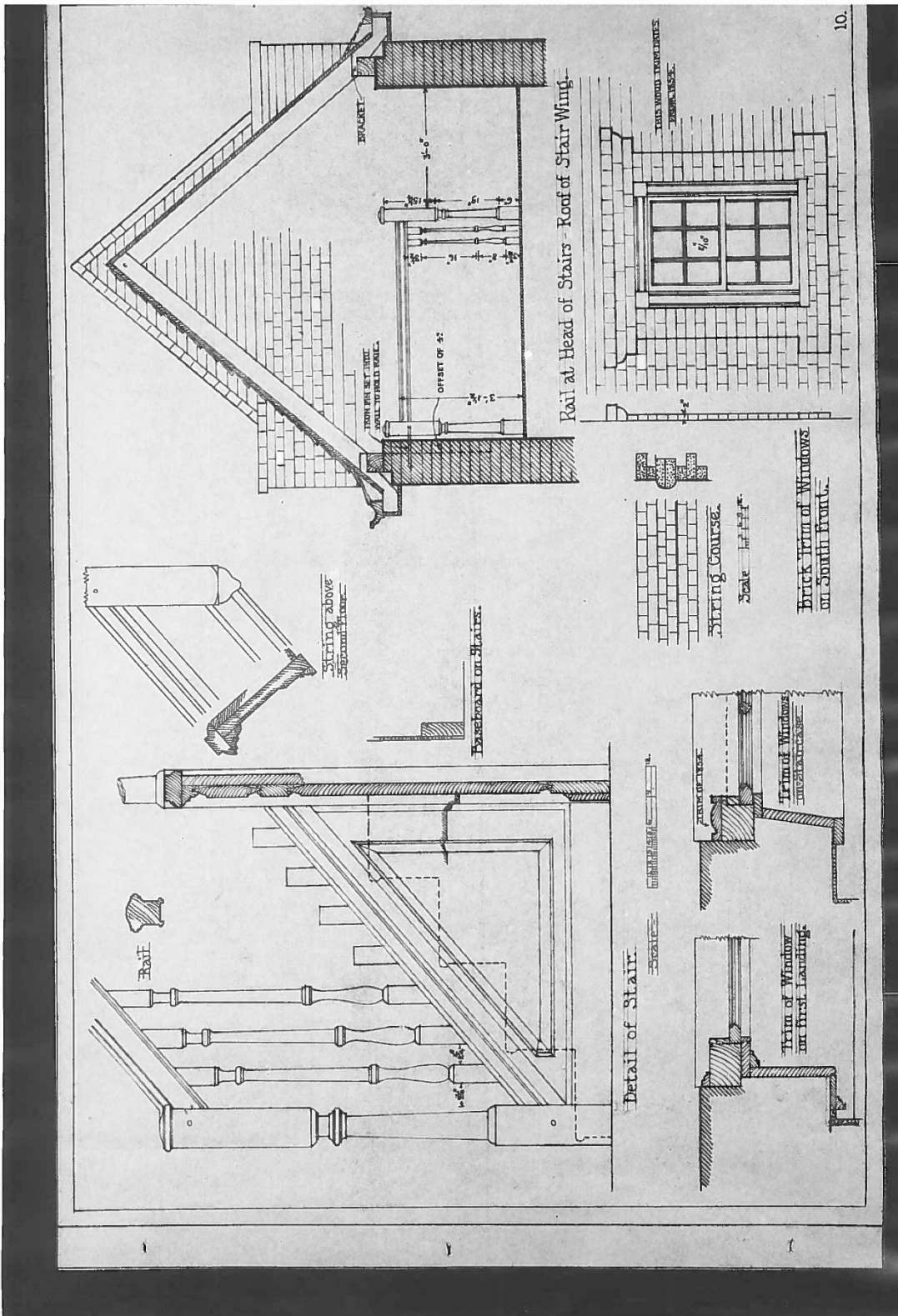


Figure 12: Bacon's Castle, details of stair and window trim, 1919.

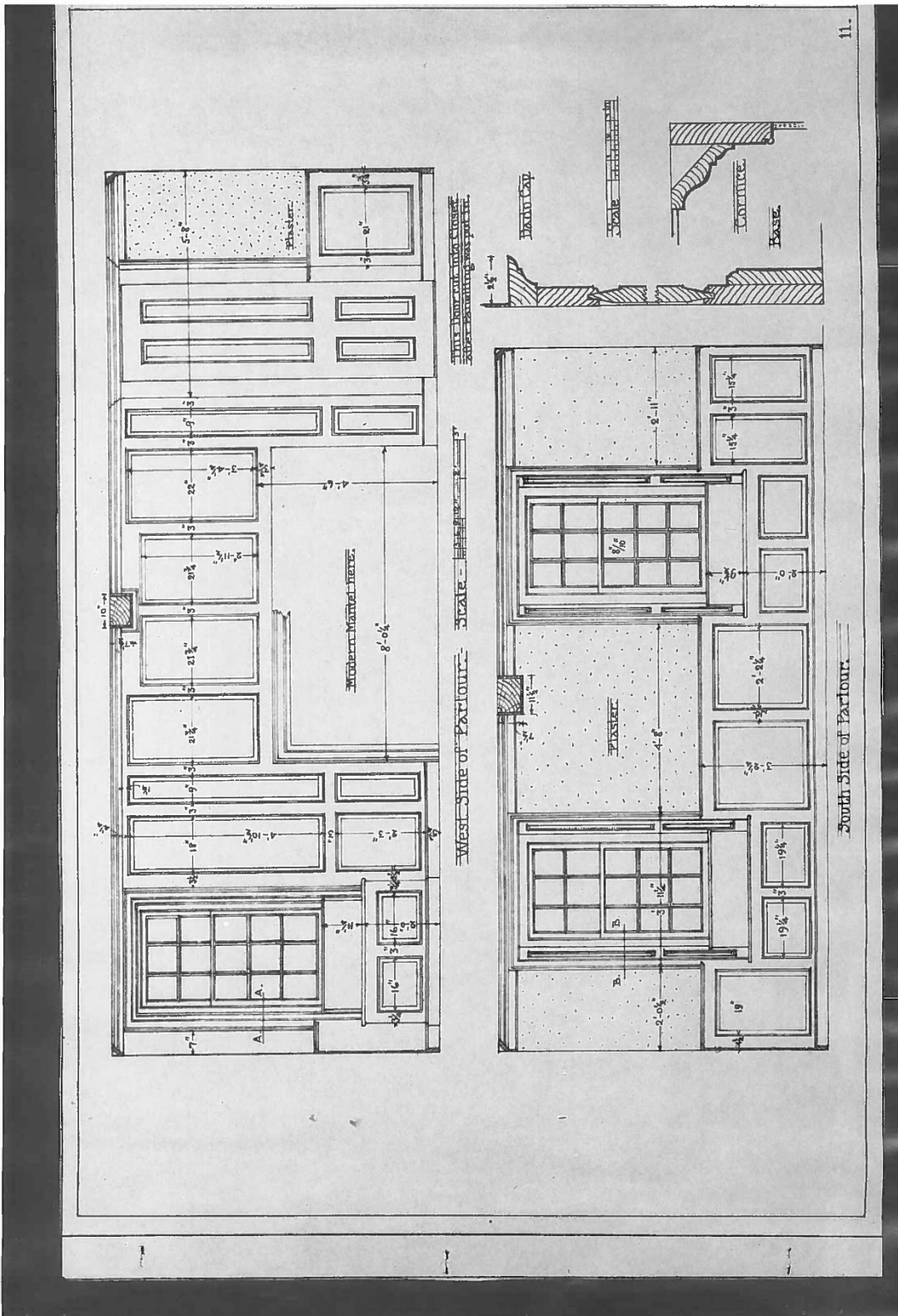


Figure 13: Bacon's Castle, parlor elevations, 1919.





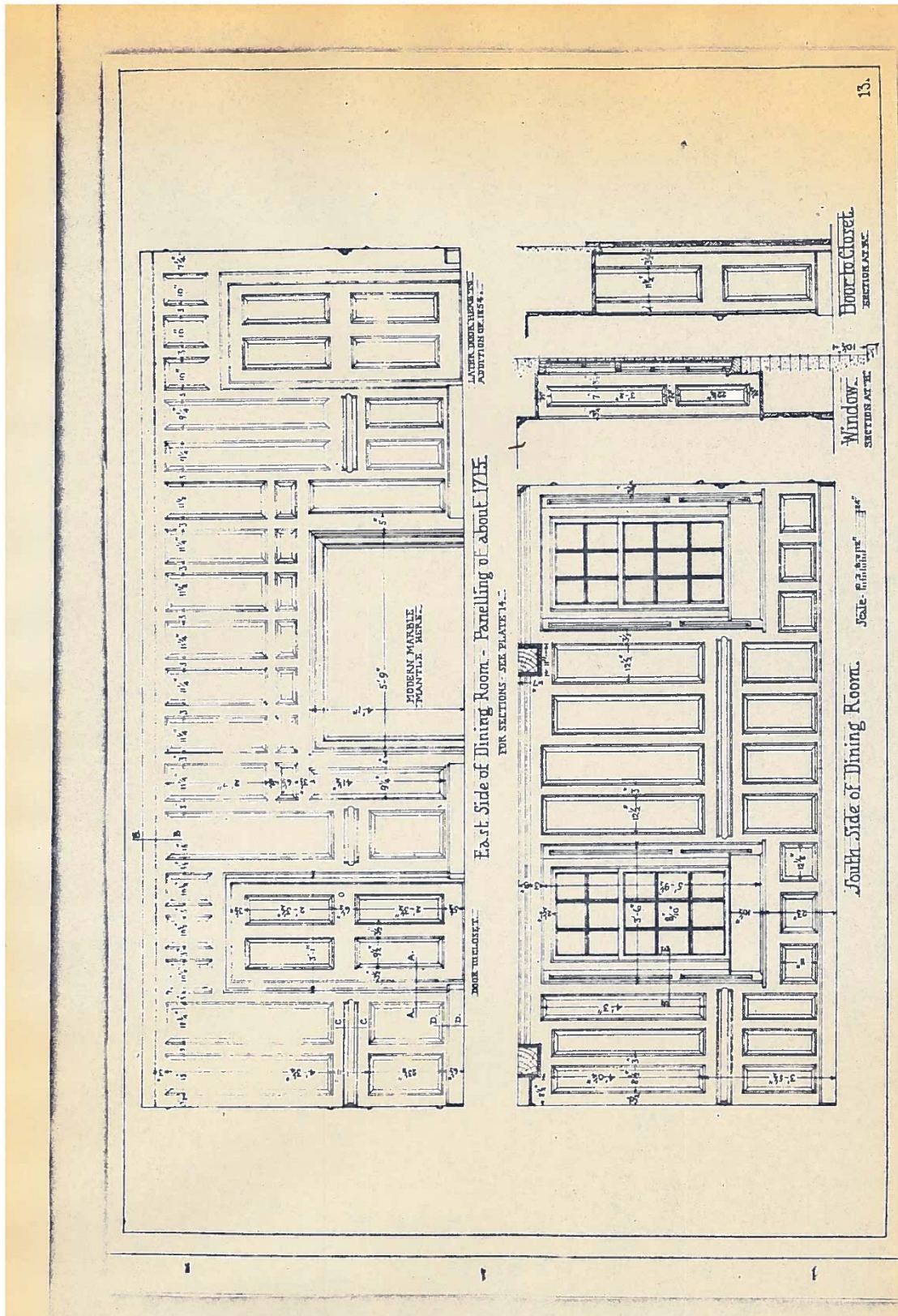


Figure 15: Bacon's Castle, dining room elevations, 1919.

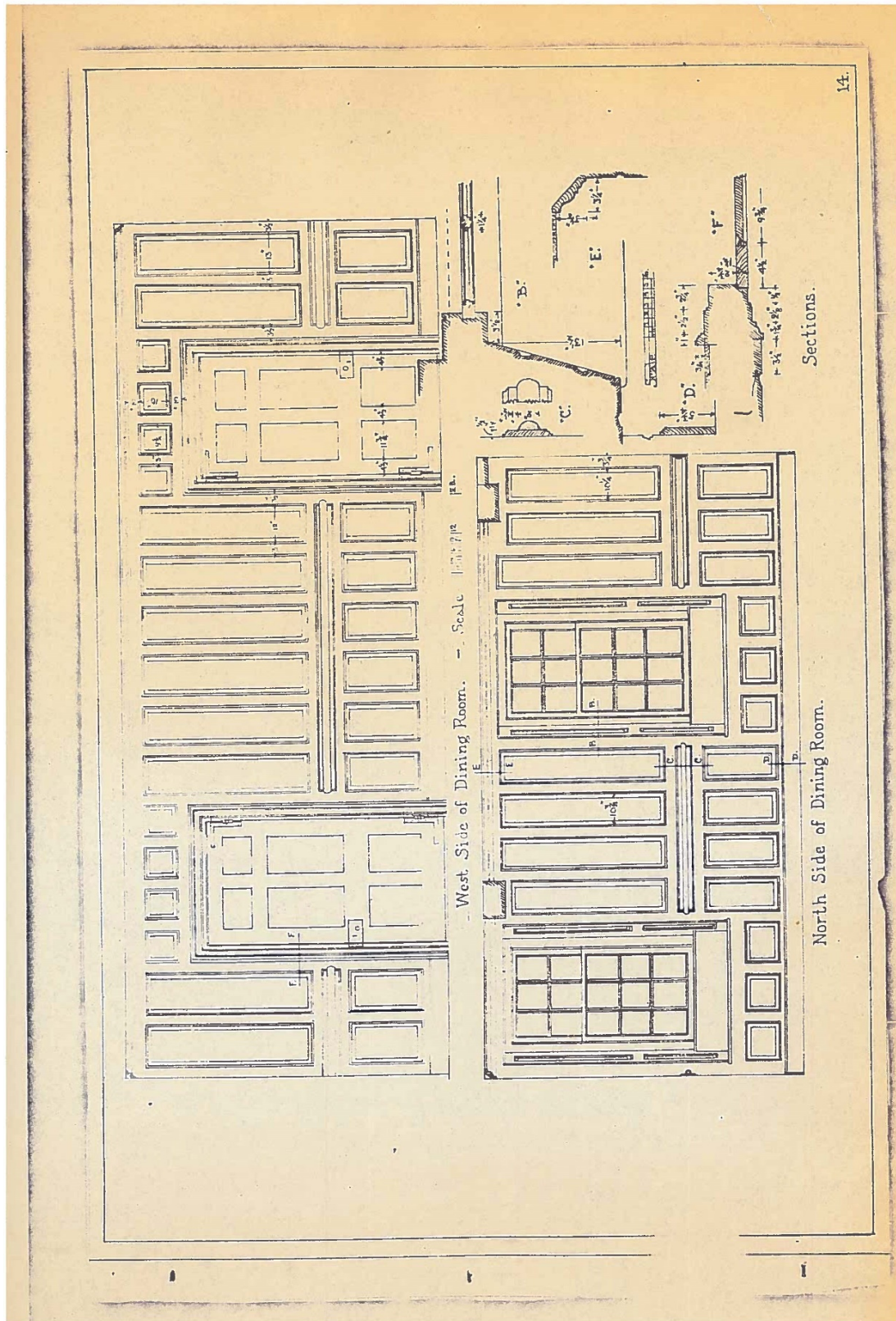


Figure 16: Bacon's Castle, dining room elevations, 1919.

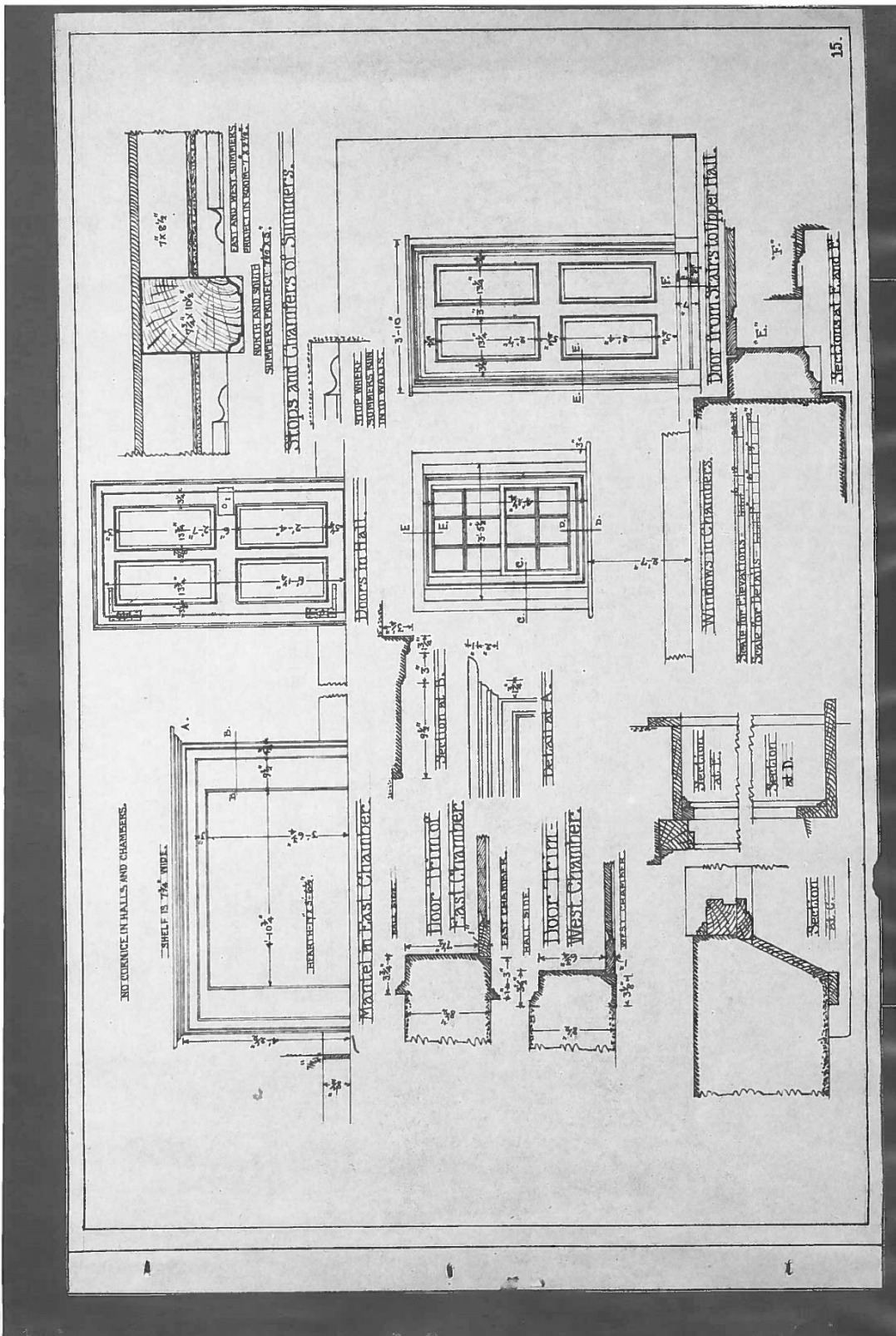


Figure 17: Bacon's Castle, details of wood trim, doors, and windows, 1919.

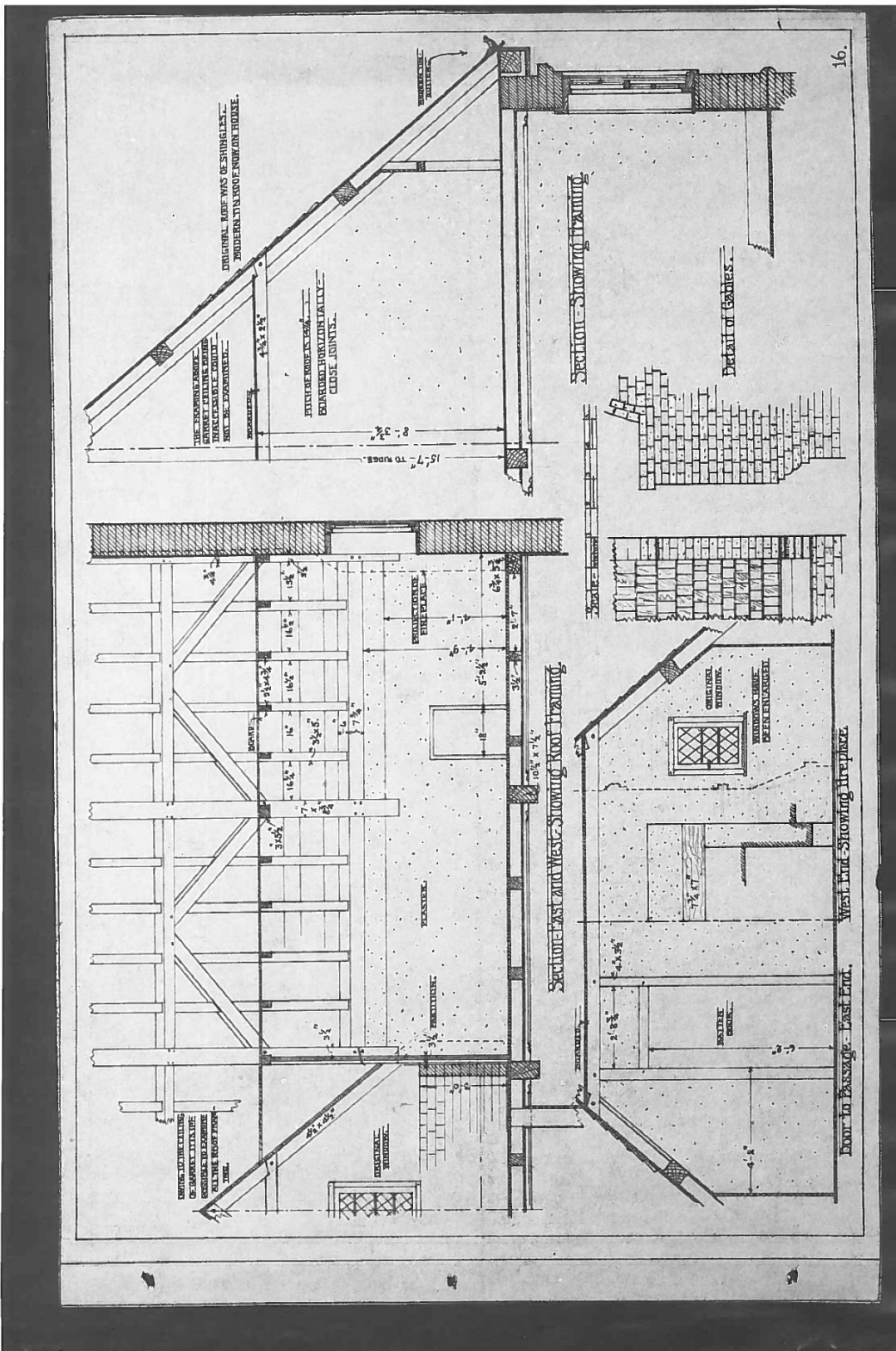


Figure 18: Bacon's Castle, roof framing section, 1919.



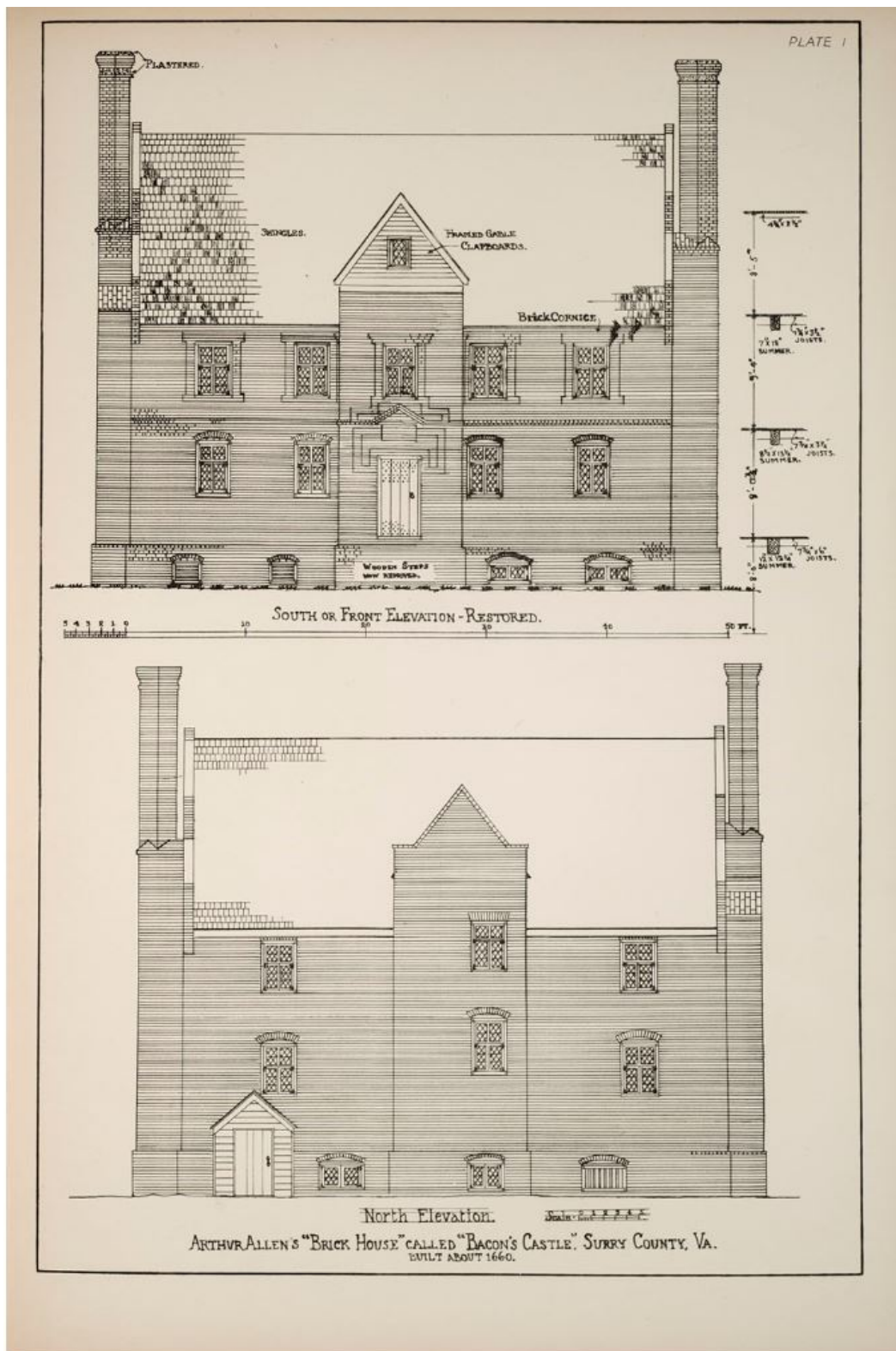


Figure 20: South or Front Elevation – Restored and North Elevation (drawn August 1919, published 1930). Donald MacDonald-Millar *Measured Drawings of Some Colonial and Georgian Houses*. Three volumes [Volumes I and II 1916, Volume III 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930).

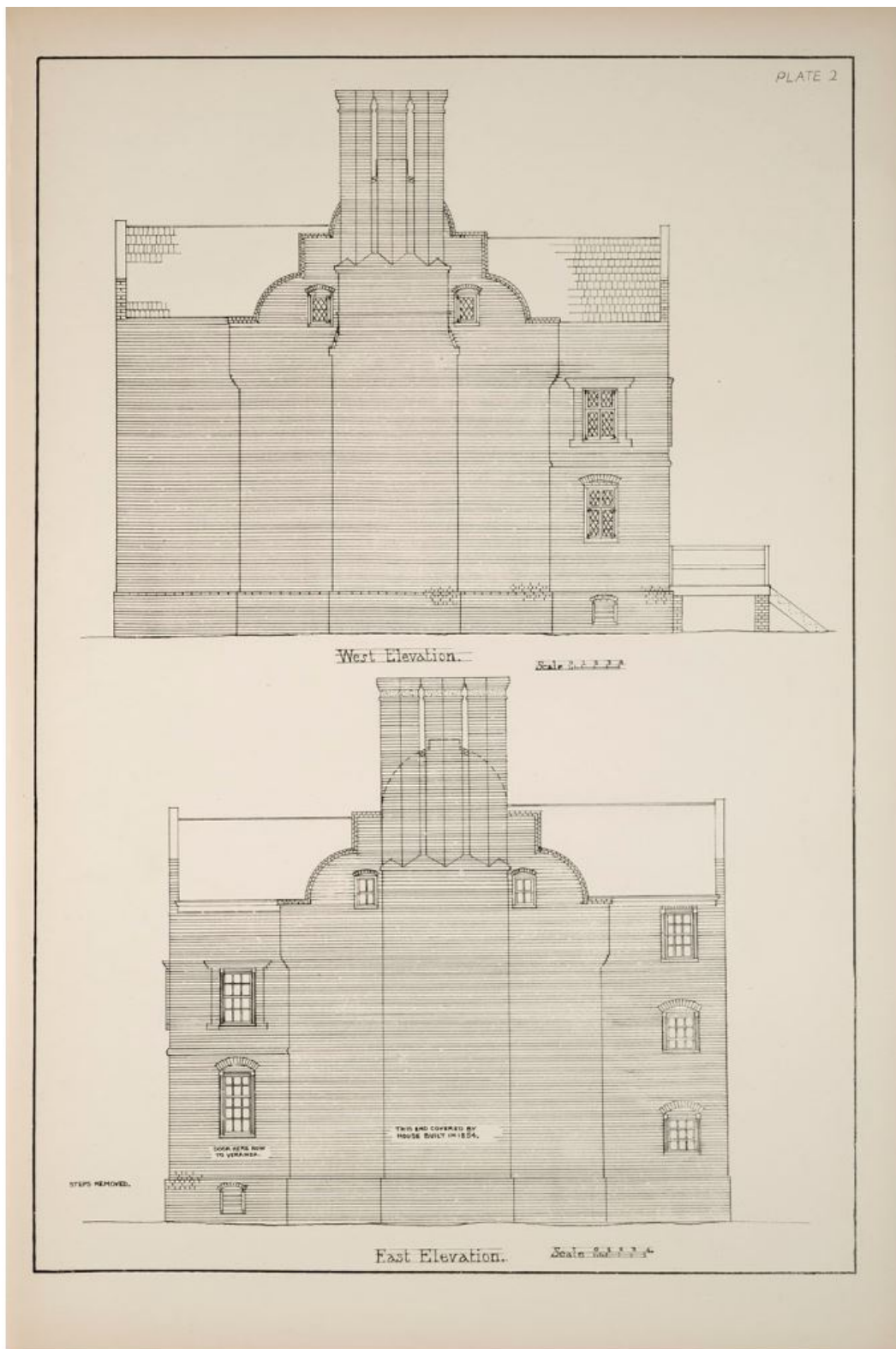


Figure 21: West and East Elevations (drawn August 1919, published 1930). Donald MacDonald-Millar *Measured Drawings of Some Colonial and Georgian Houses*. Three volumes [Volumes I and II 1916, Volume III 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930).

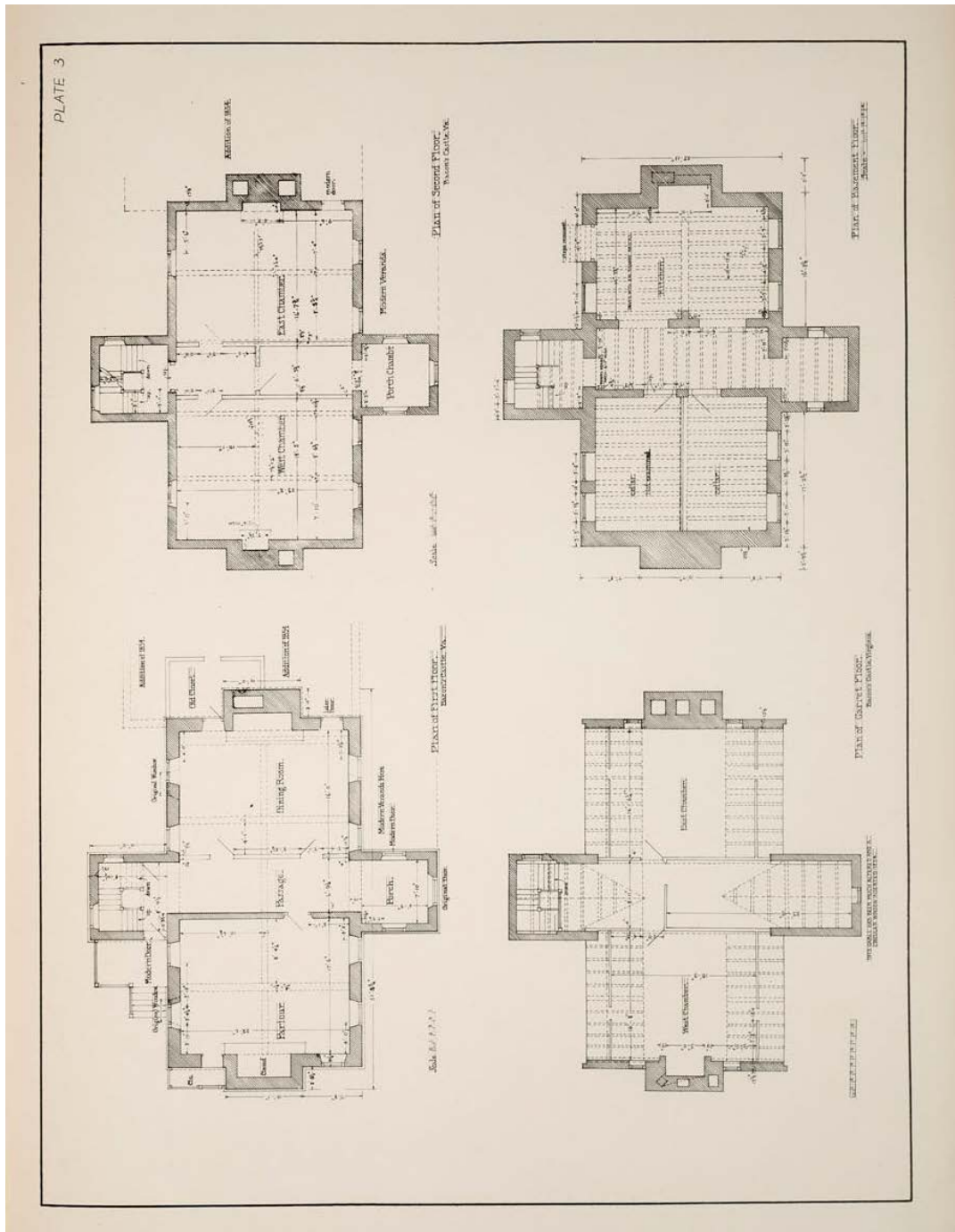


Figure 22: Floor plans of first and second floors, garret, and basement levels (drawn August 1919, published 1930). Donald MacDonald-Millar *Measured Drawings of Some Colonial and Georgian Houses*. Three volumes [Volumes I and II 1916, Volume III 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930).



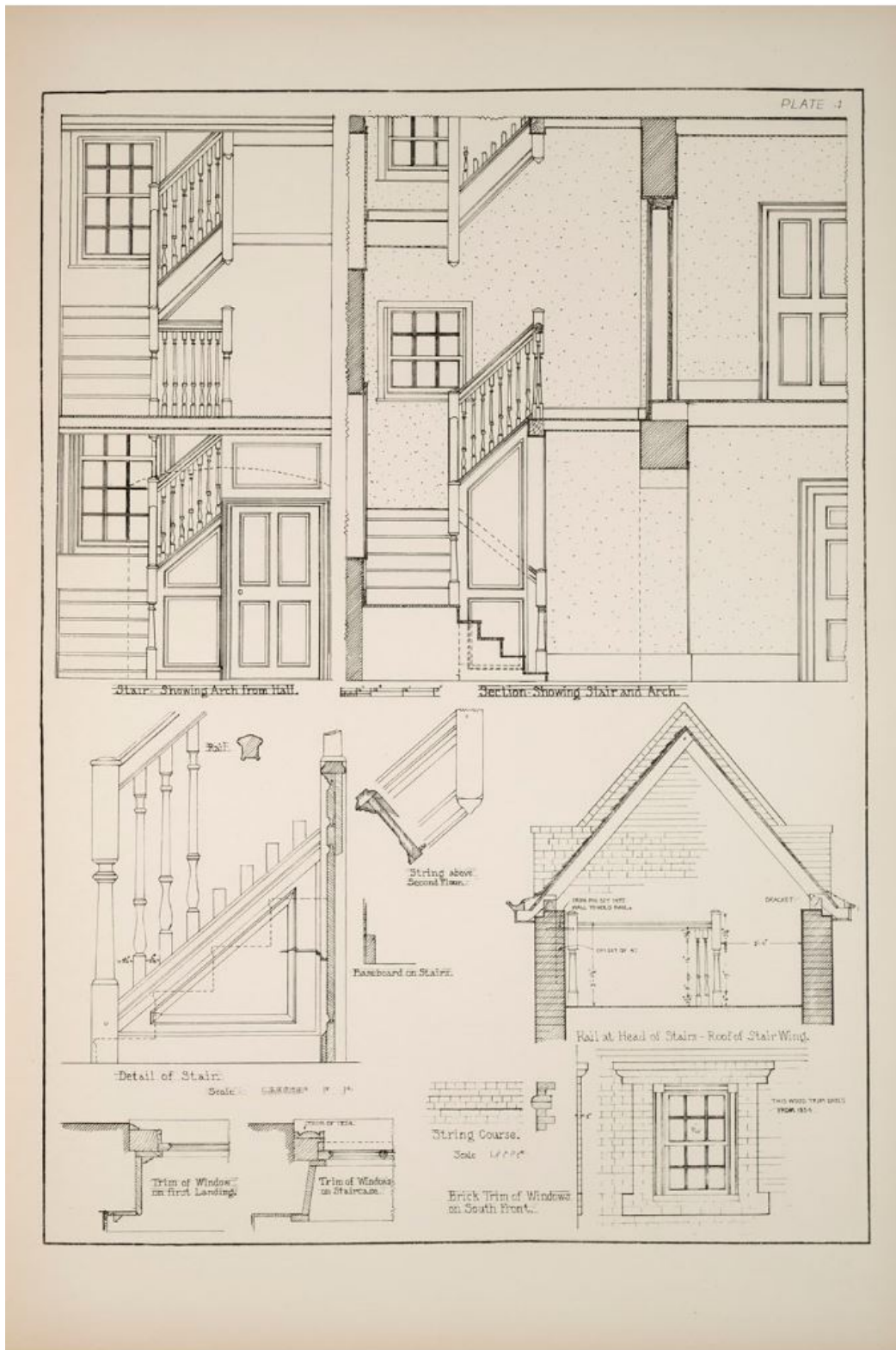


Figure 23: Miscellaneous stair details (drawn August 1919, published 1930). Donald MacDonald-Millar *Measured Drawings of Some Colonial and Georgian Houses*. Three volumes [Volumes I and II 1916, Volume III 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930).

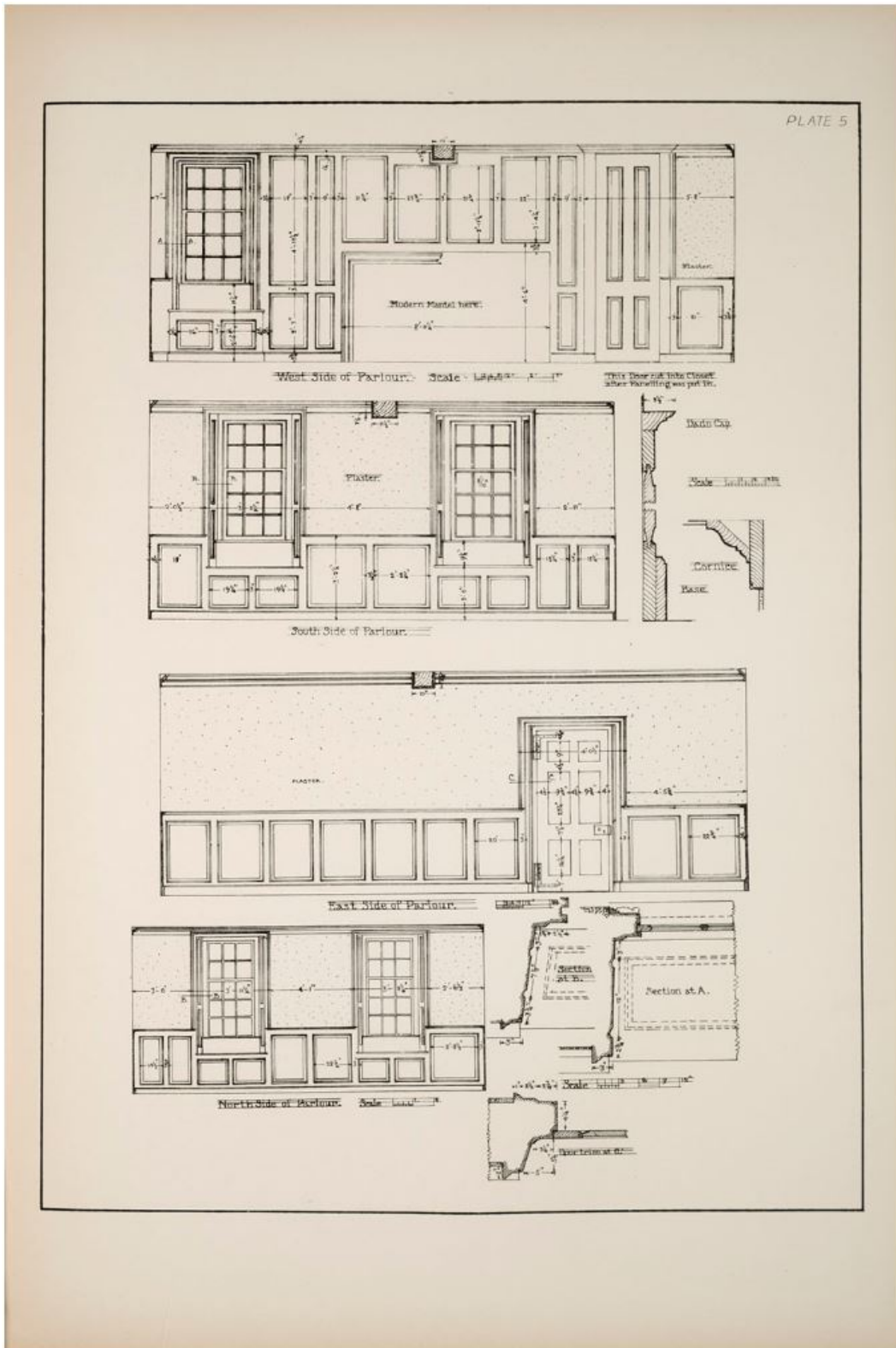


Figure 24: Interior elevations of parlor (drawn August 1919, published 1930). Donald MacDonald-Millar *Measured Drawings of Some Colonial and Georgian Houses*. Three volumes [Volumes I and II 1916, Volume III 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930).

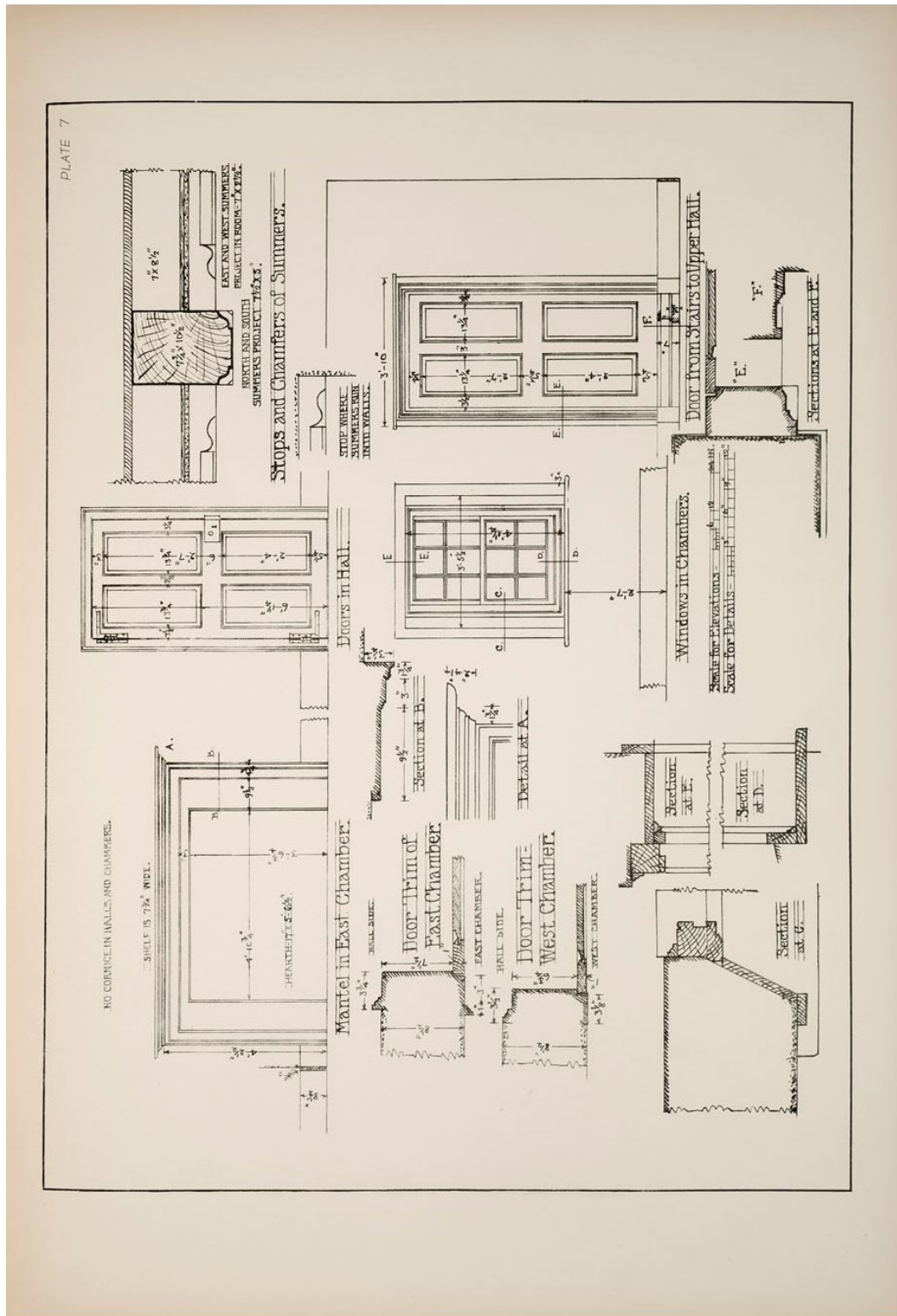


Figure 25: Miscellaneous details (drawn August 1919, published 1930). Donald MacDonald-Millar *Measured Drawings of Some Colonial and Georgian Houses*. Three volumes [Volumes I and II 1916, Volume III 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930).

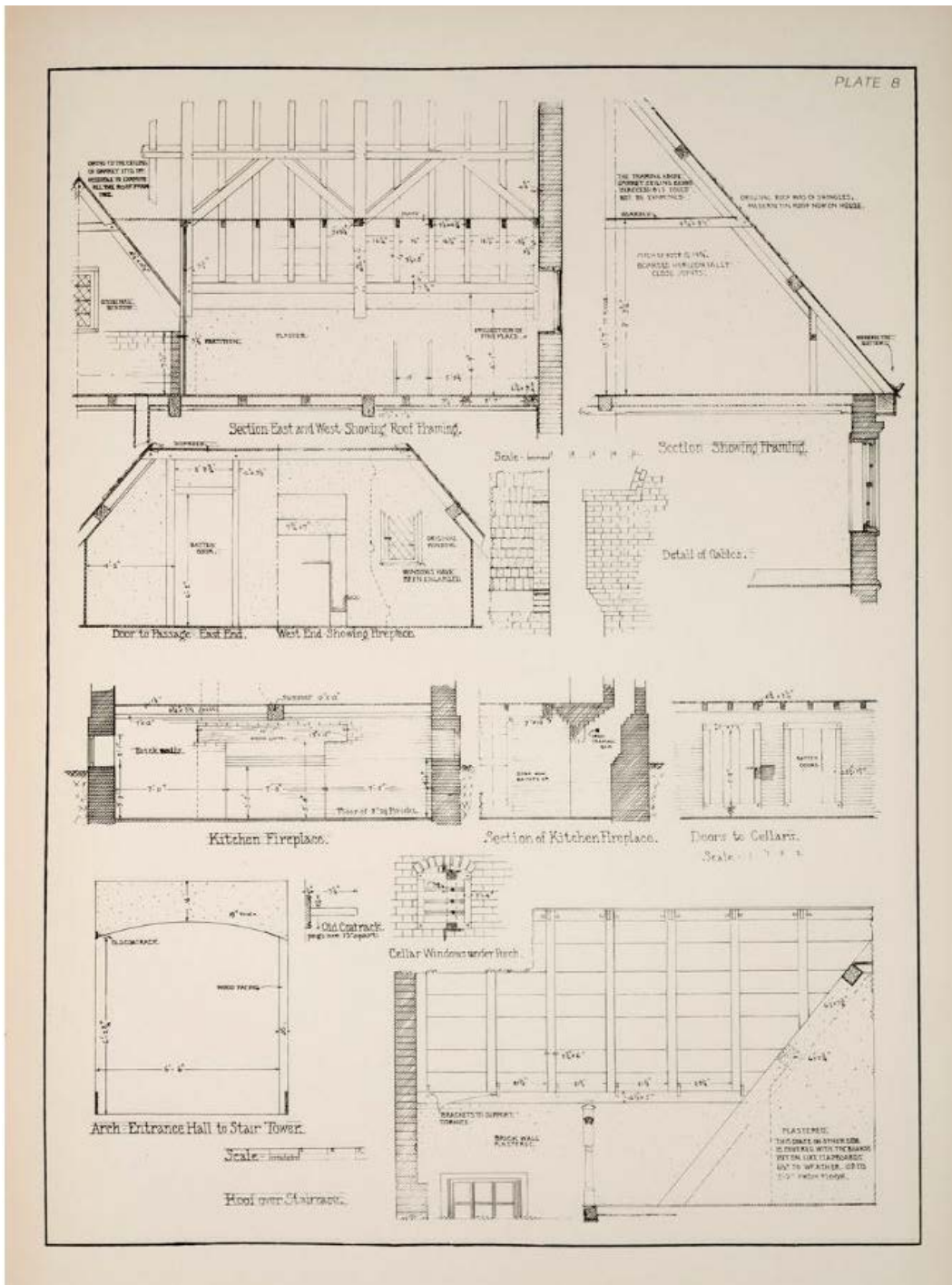


Figure 26: Miscellaneous sections and details (drawn August 1919, published 1930). Donald MacDonald-Millar *Measured Drawings of Some Colonial and Georgian Houses*. Three volumes [Volumes I and II 1916, Volume III 1930]. (New York: Architectural Book Publishing Company, 1916 and 1930).

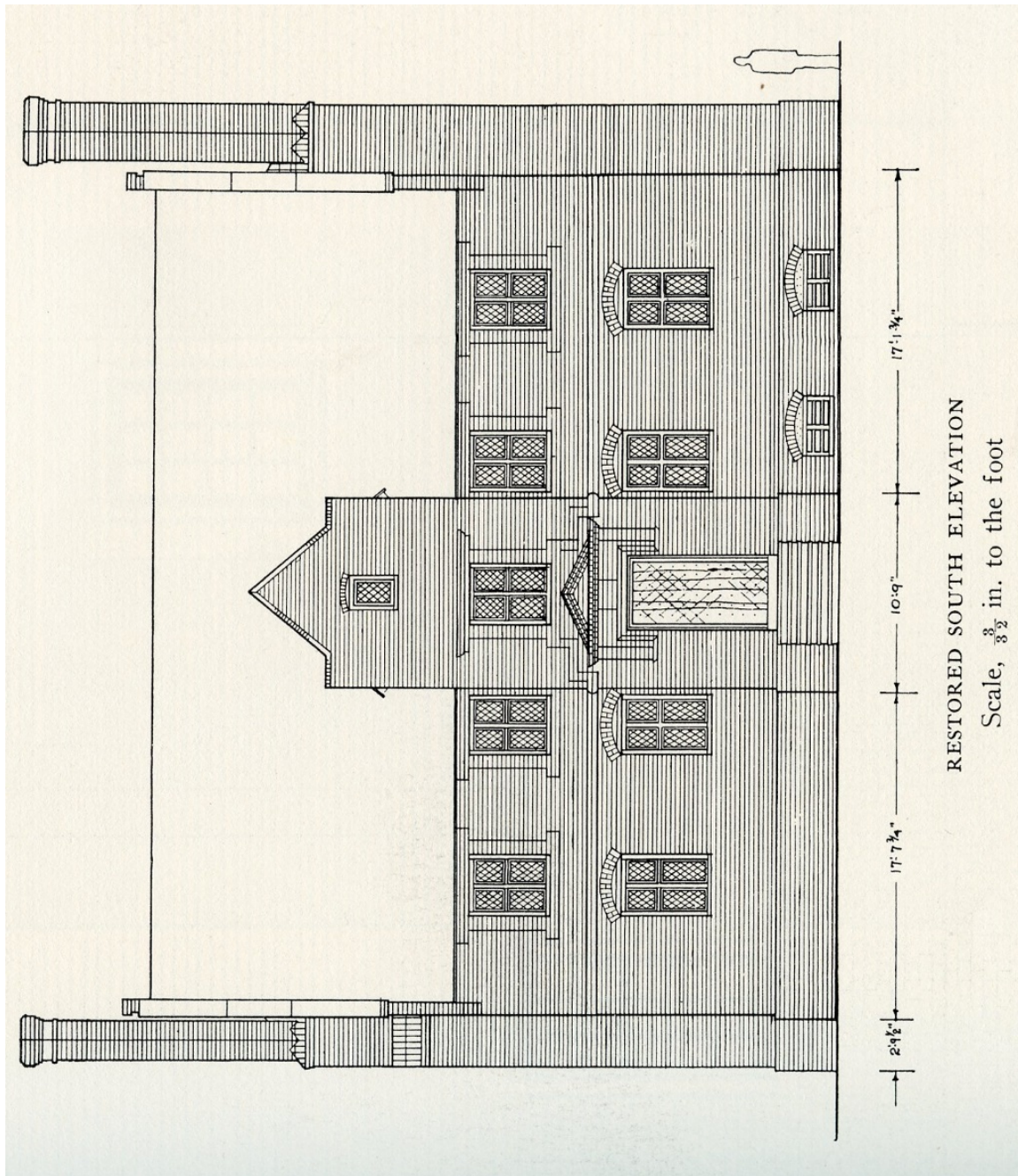


Figure 27: Restored South Elevation, 1932. Thomas T. Waterman and John A. Barrows, *Domestic Colonial Architecture of Tidewater, Virginia* (New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1932), 25.

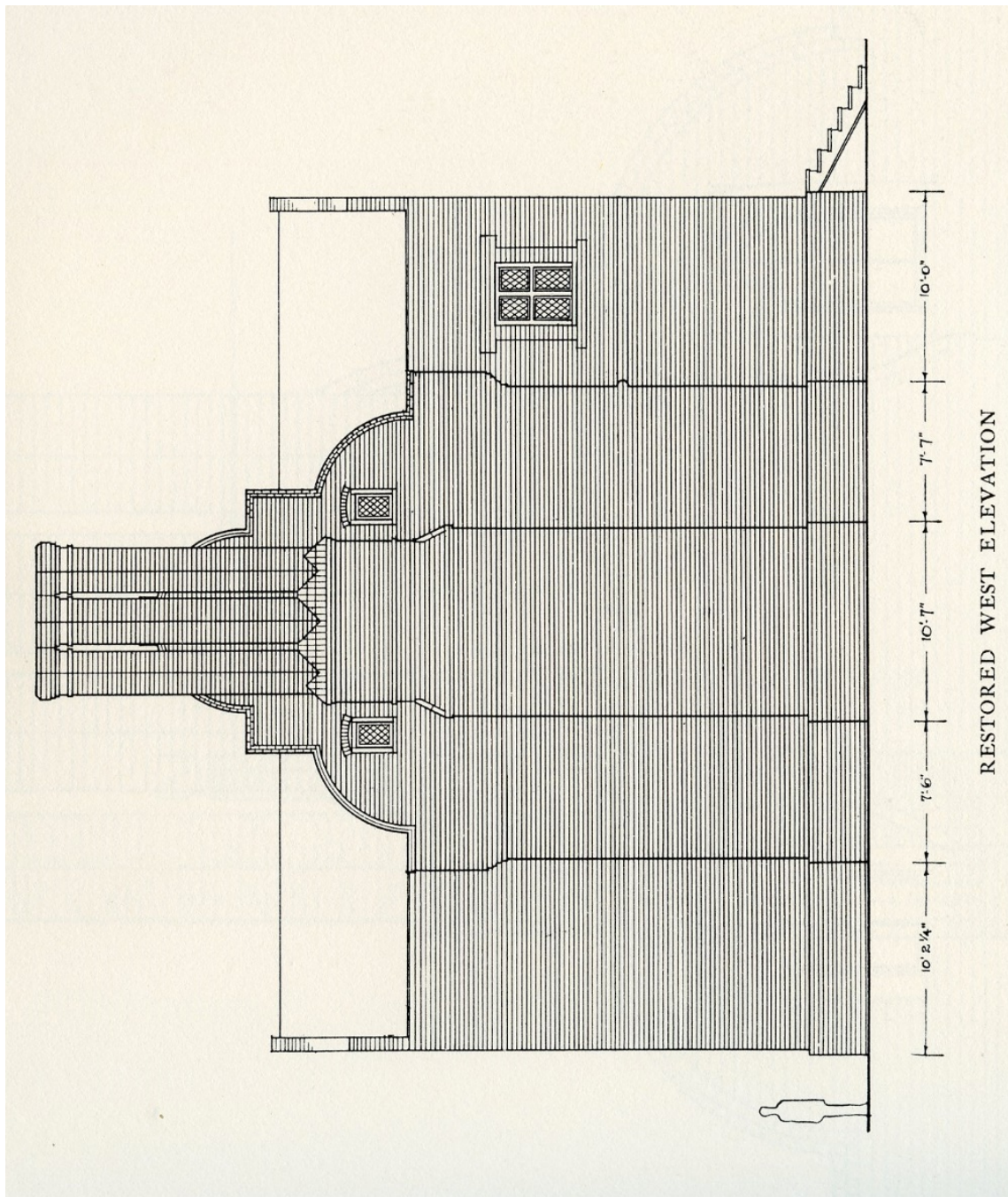


Figure 28: Restored West Elevation, 1932. Thomas T. Waterman and John A. Barrows, *Domestic Colonial Architecture of Tidewater, Virginia* (New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1932), 25.

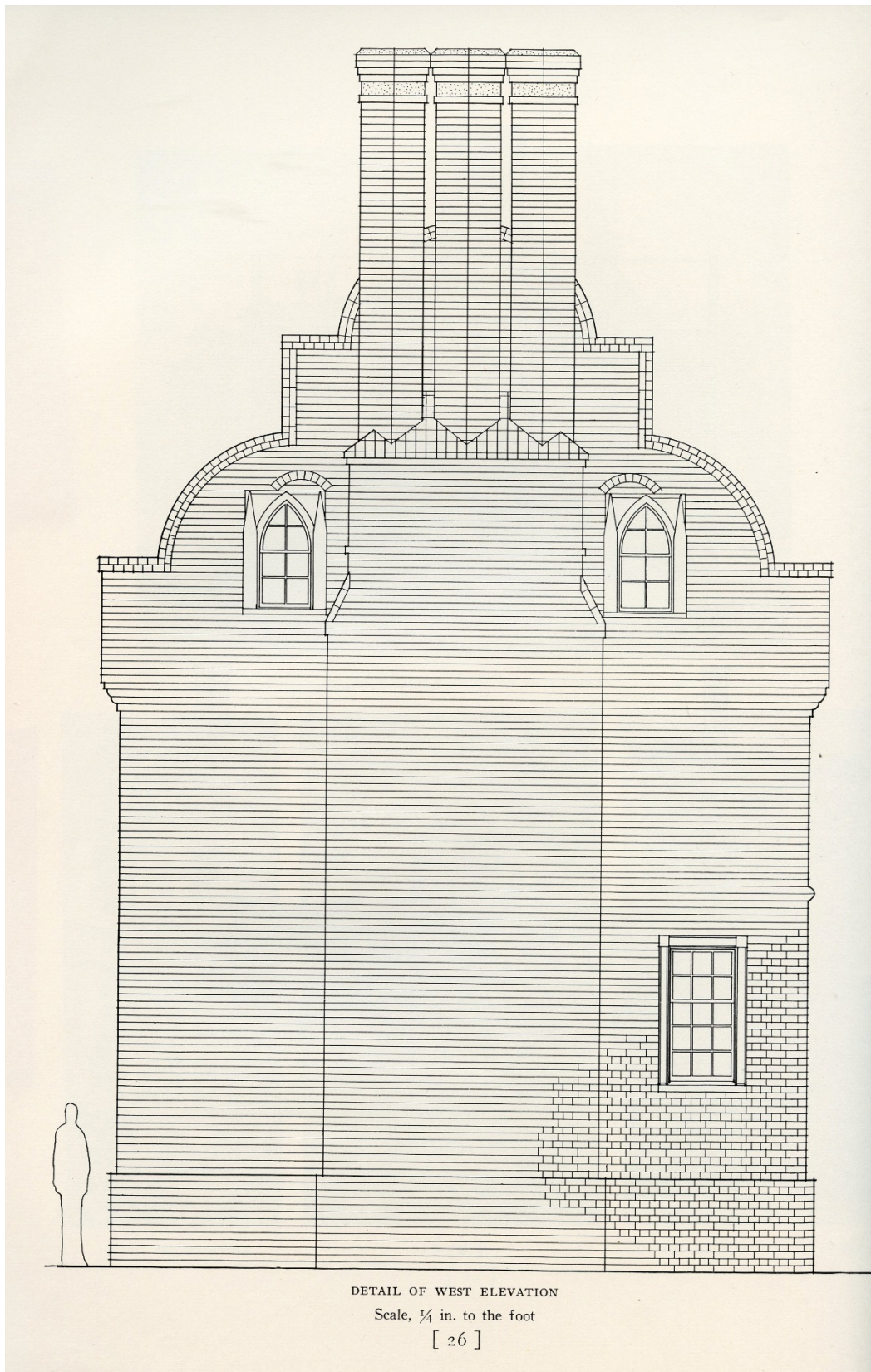


Figure 29: Detail of West Elevation, 1932. Thomas T. Waterman and John A. Barrows, *Domestic Colonial Architecture of Tidewater, Virginia* (New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1932), 26.

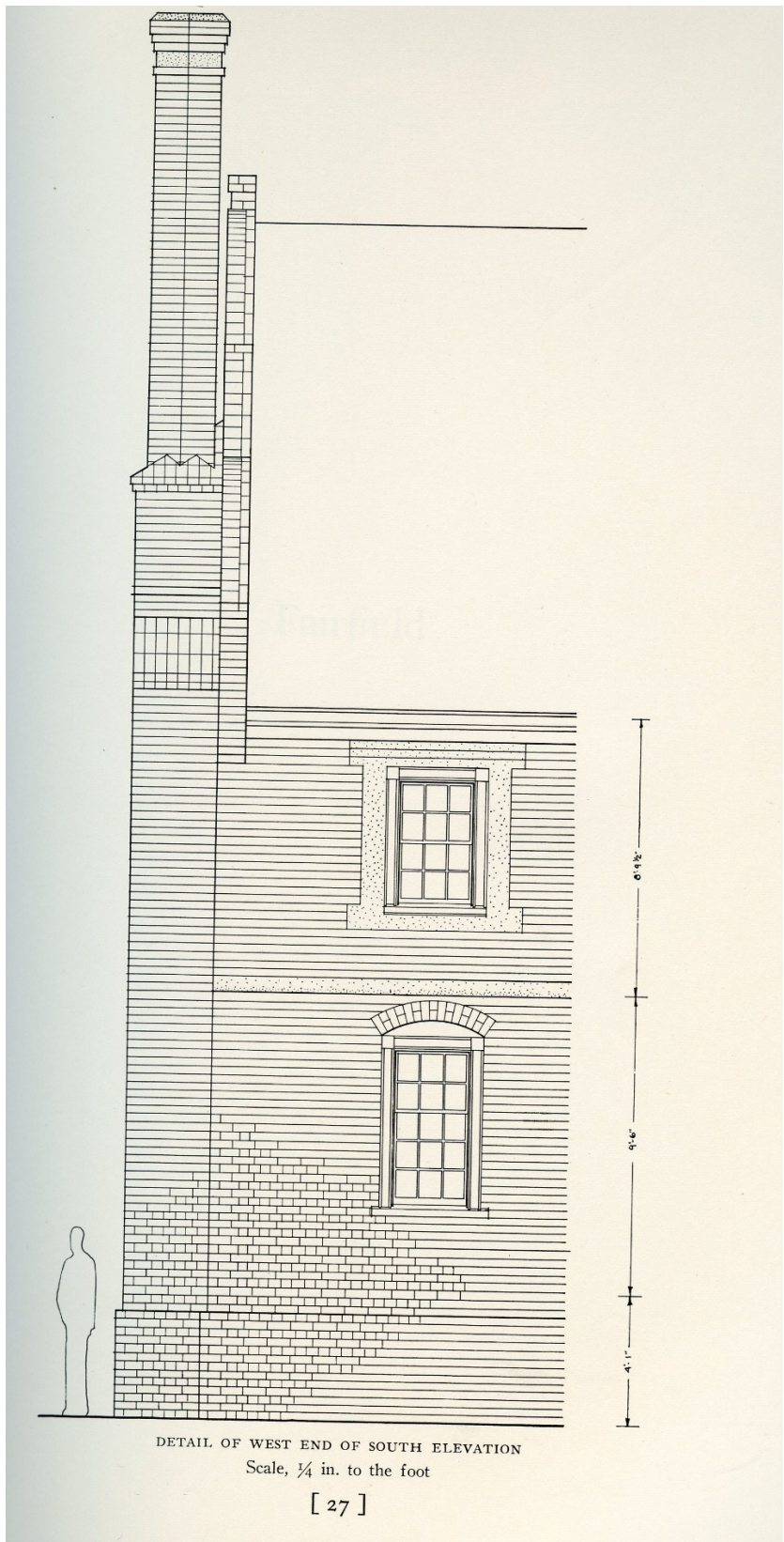


Figure 30: Detail of West End of South Elevation, 1932. Thomas T. Waterman and John A. Barrows, *Domestic Colonial Architecture of Tidewater, Virginia* (New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1932), 27.



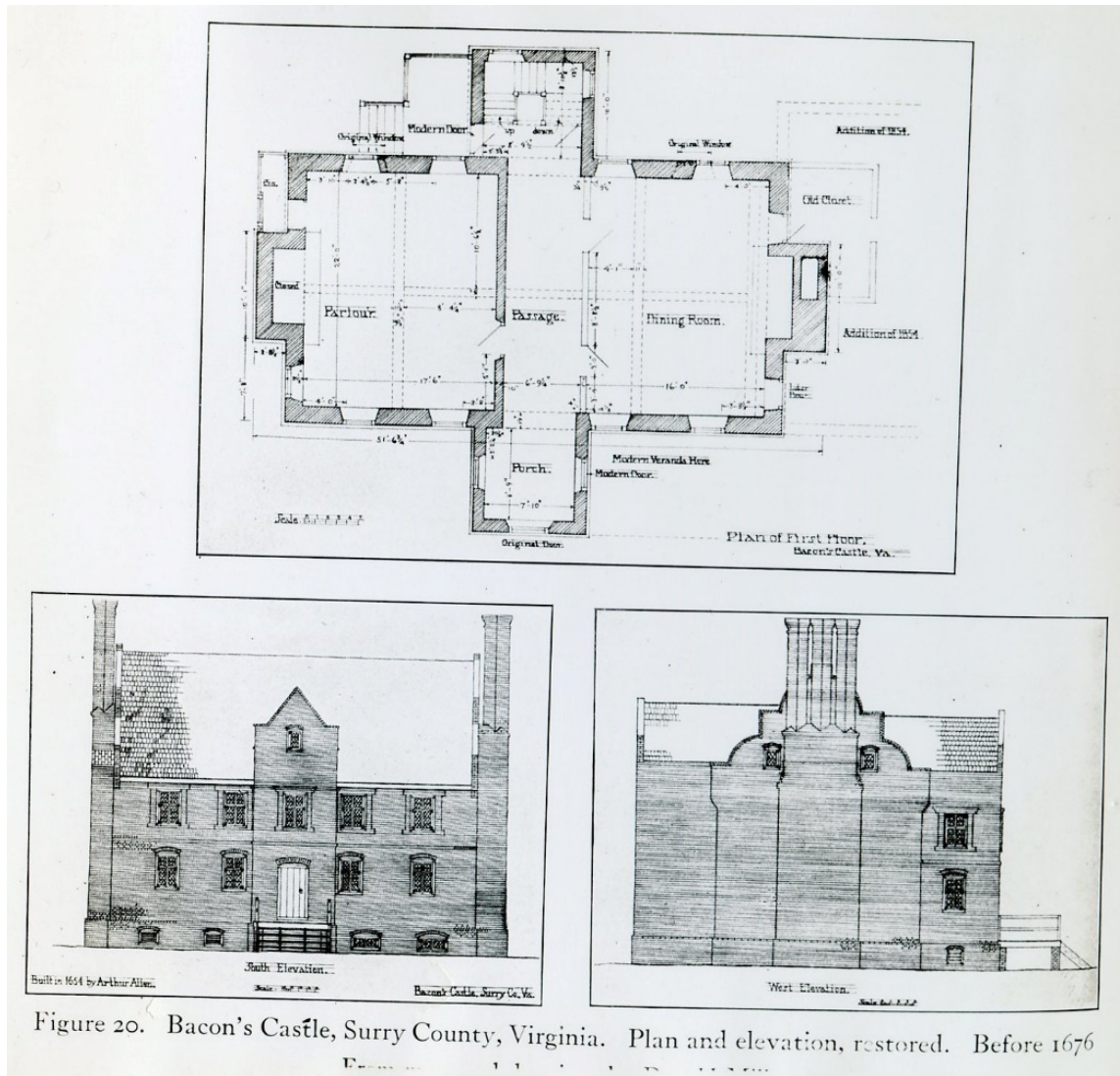


Figure 31: Bacon's Castle, first floor plan, south and west elevations, National Park Service, 1937.

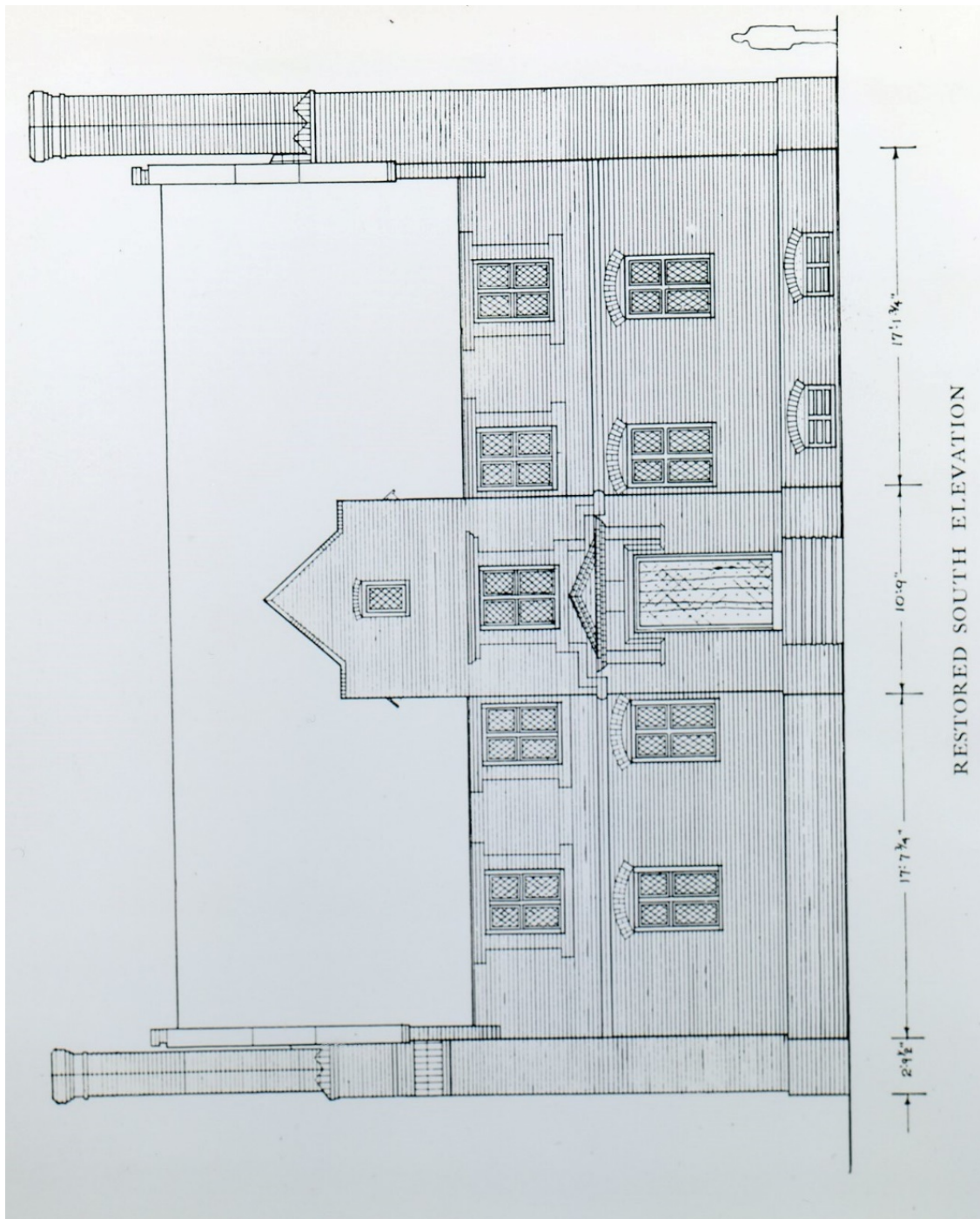


Figure 32: Bacon's Castle, restored south elevation, National Park Service, 1937.

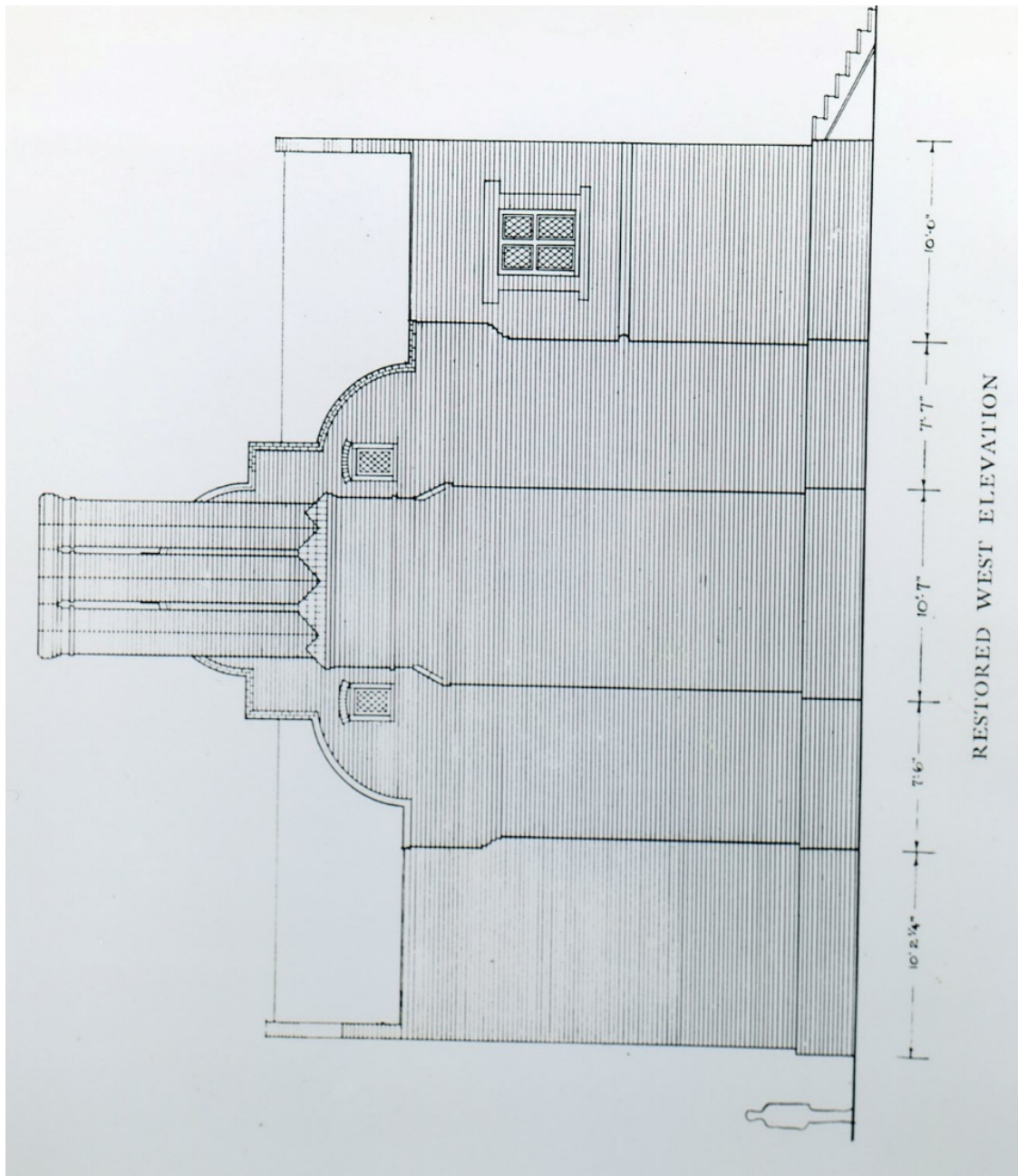


Figure 33: Bacon's Castle, restored west elevation, National Park Service, 1937.

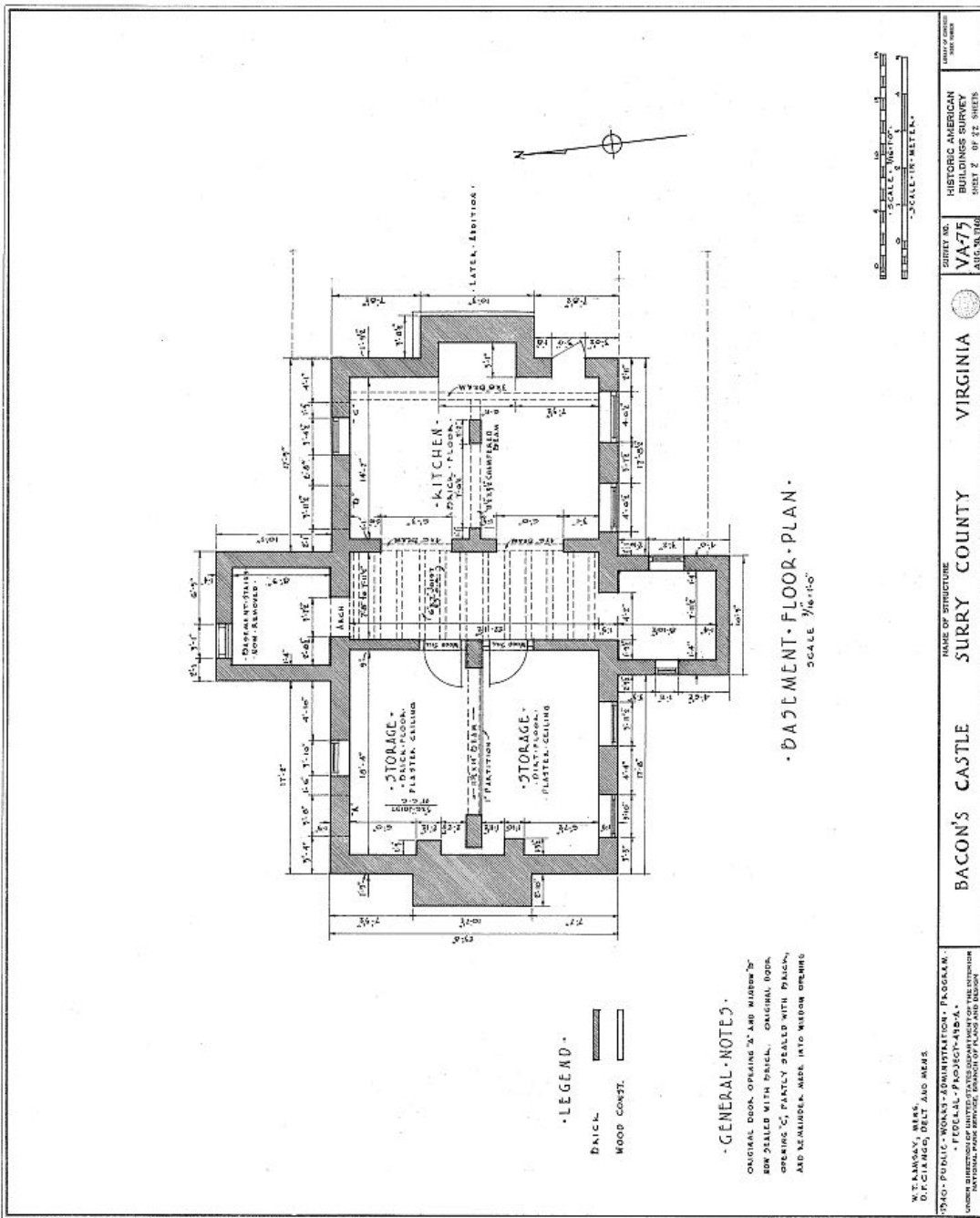


Figure 34: Bacon's Castle, basement floor plan, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

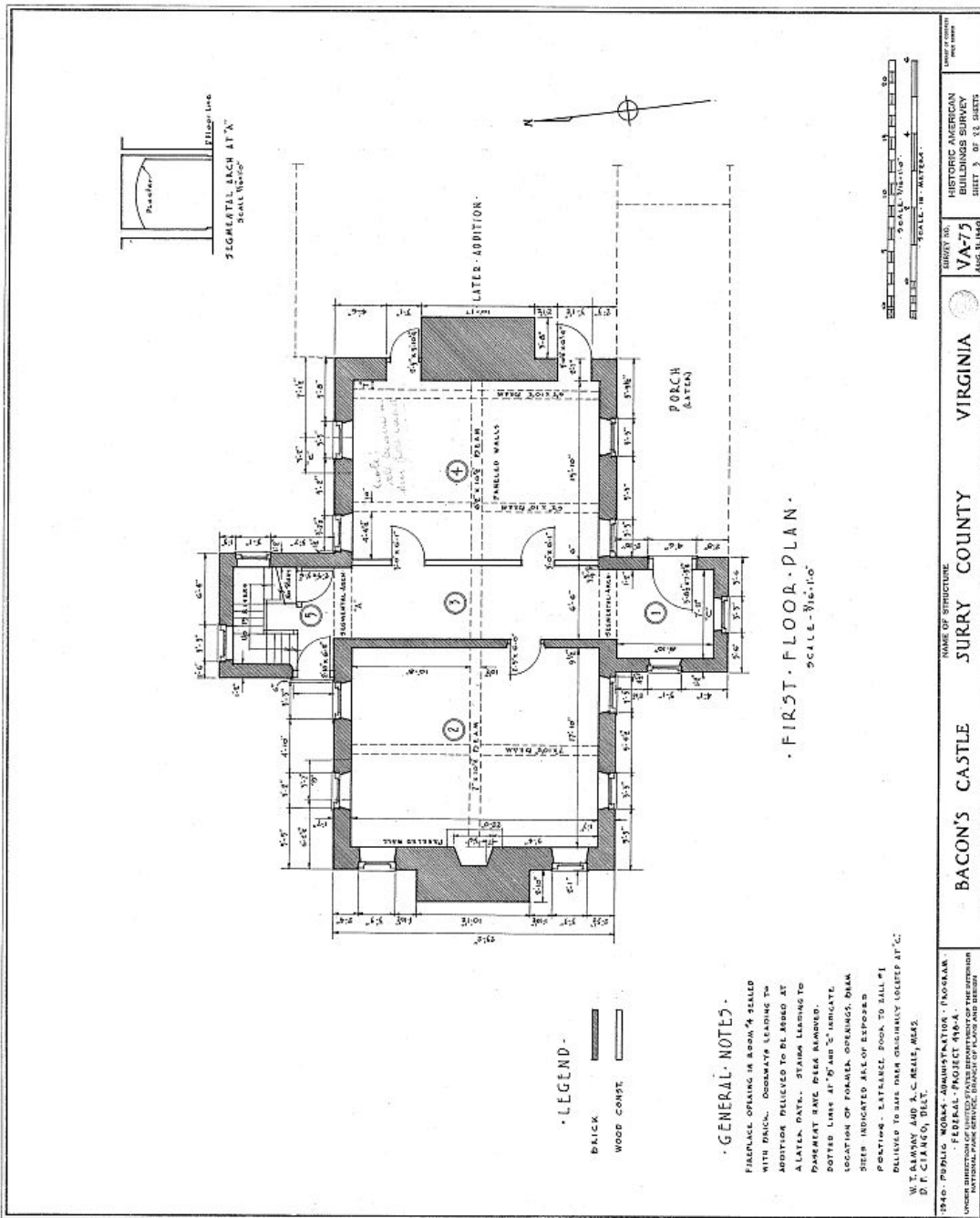


Figure 35: Bacon's Castle, first floor plan, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

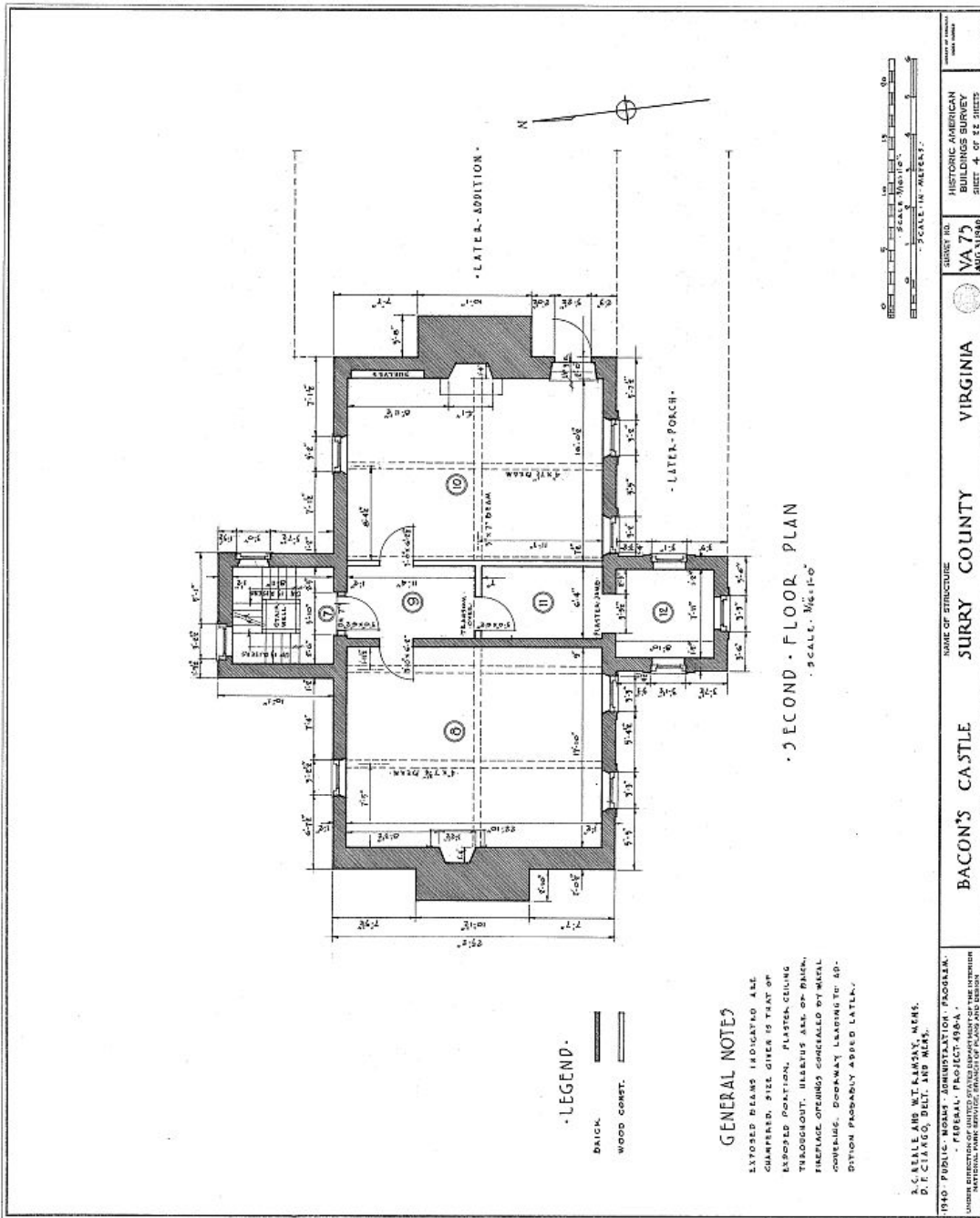


Figure 36: Bacon's Castle, second floor plan, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.







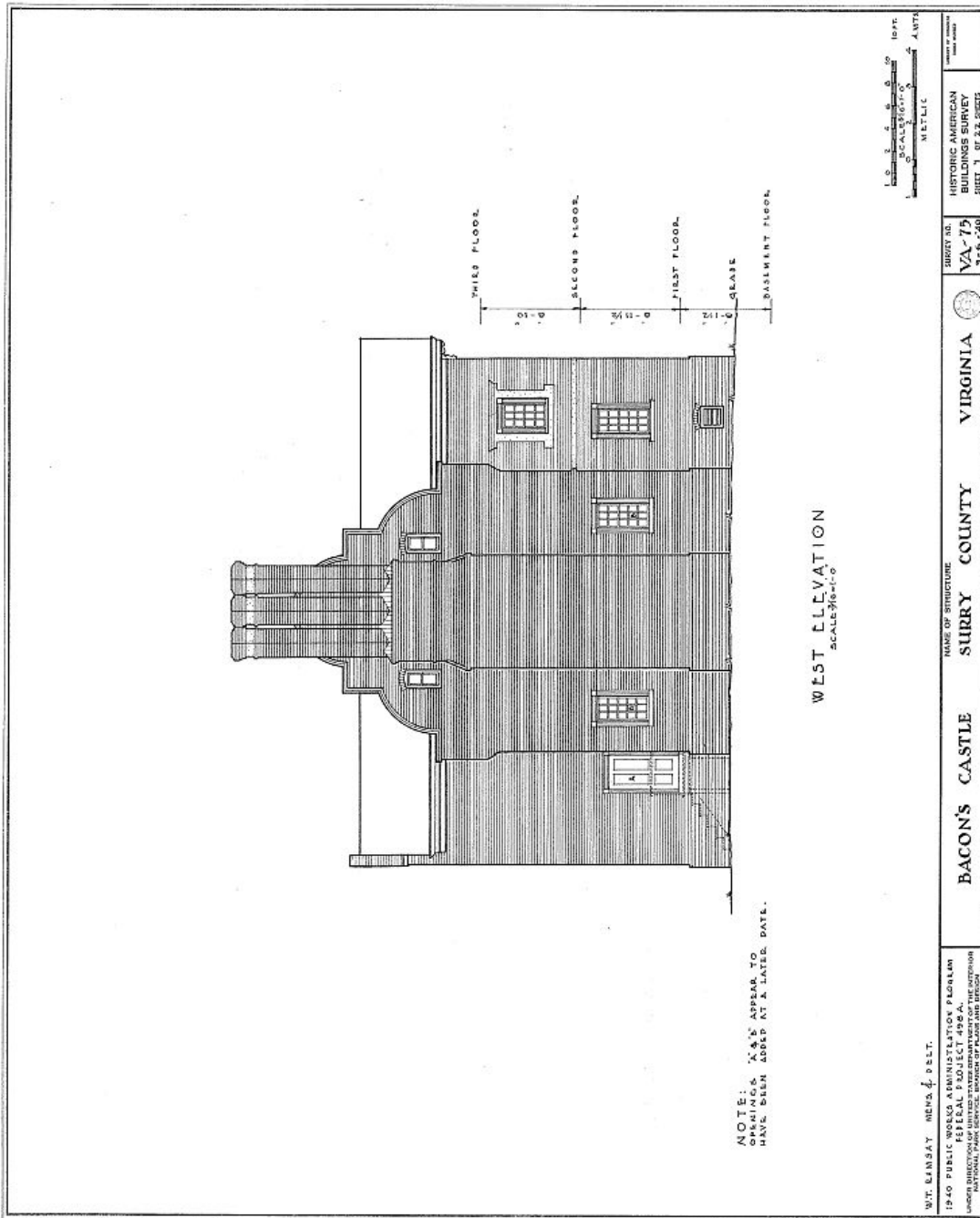


Figure 39: Bacon's Castle, west elevation, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

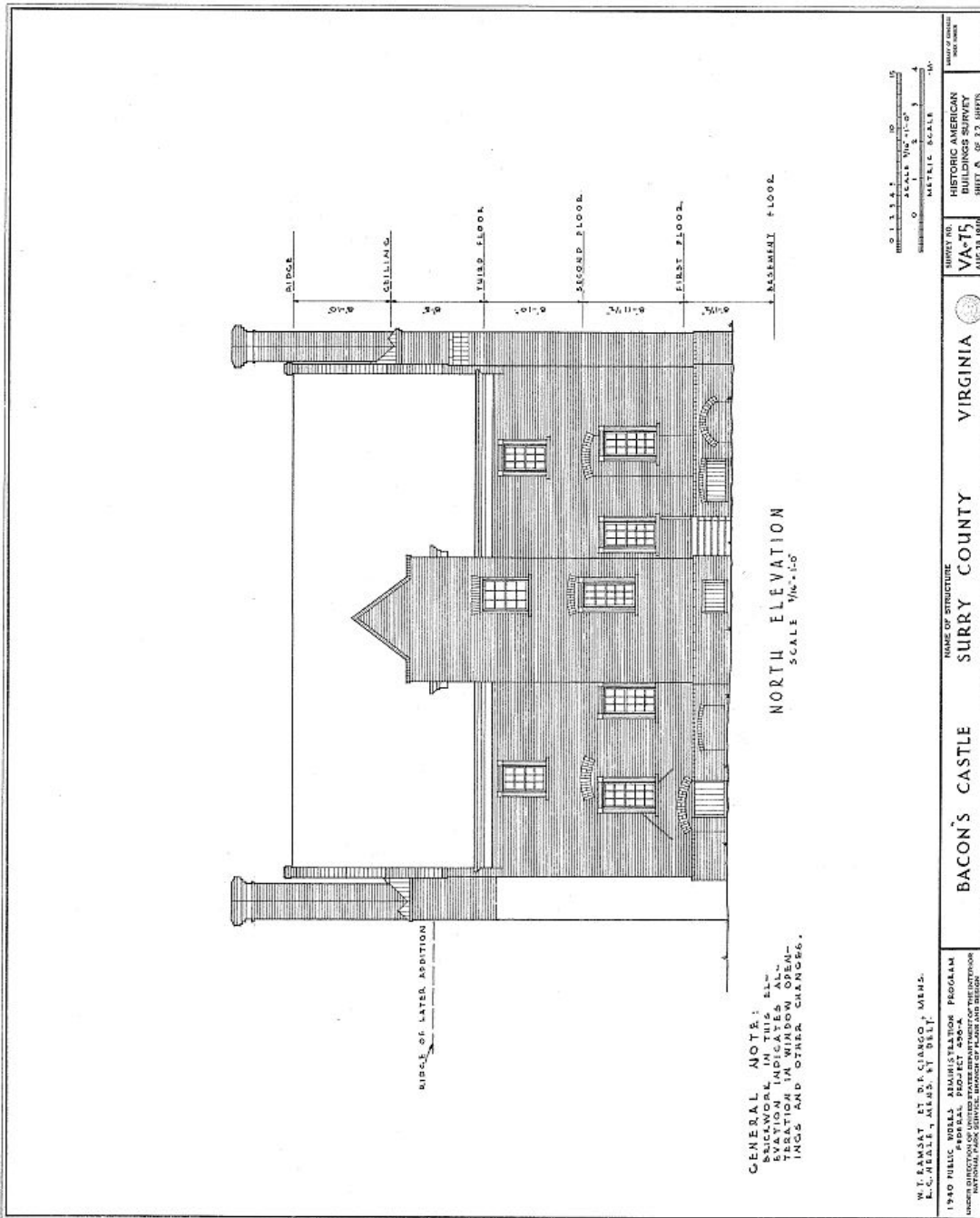


Figure 40: Bacon's Castle, north elevation, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

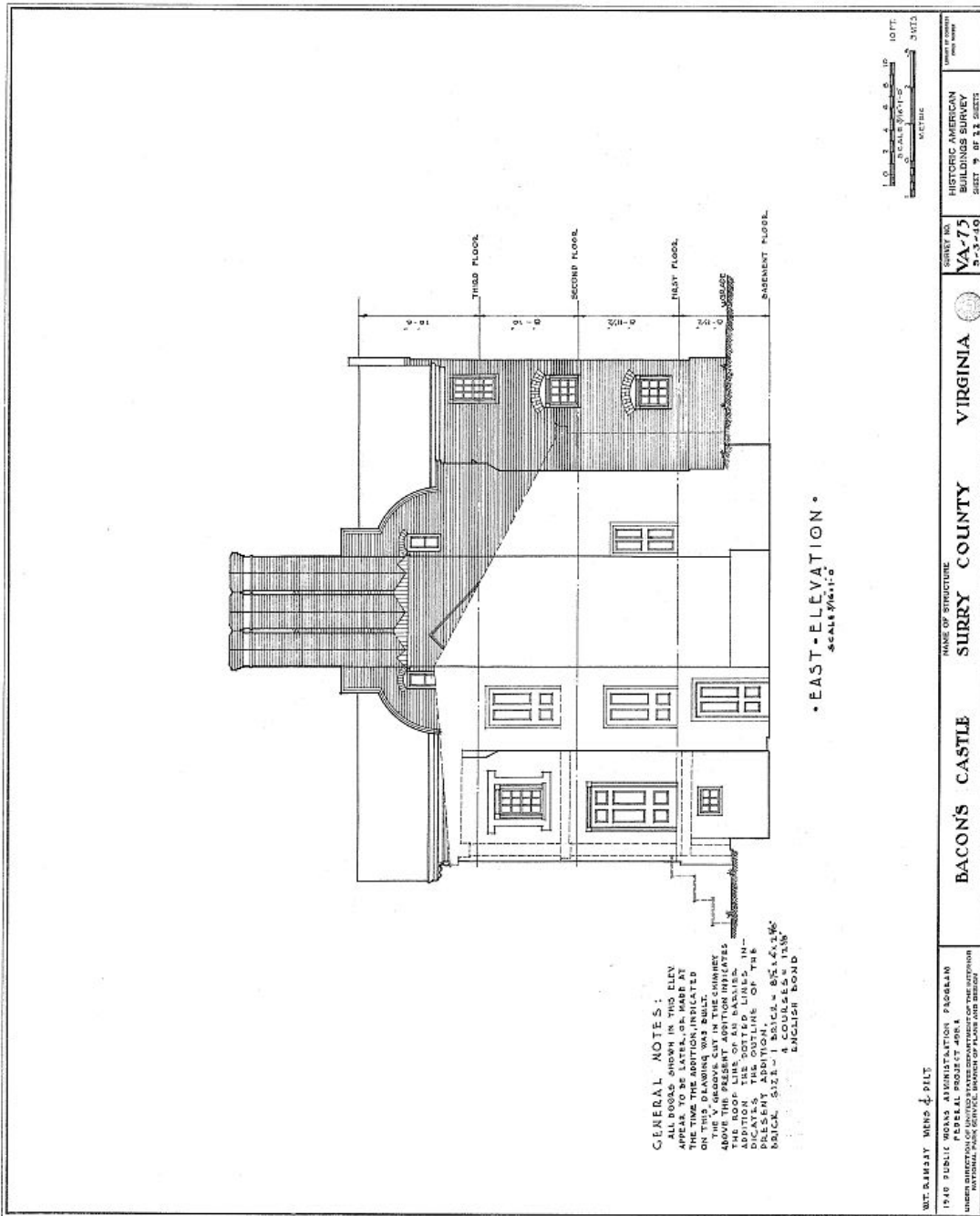


Figure 41: Bacon's Castle, east elevation, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

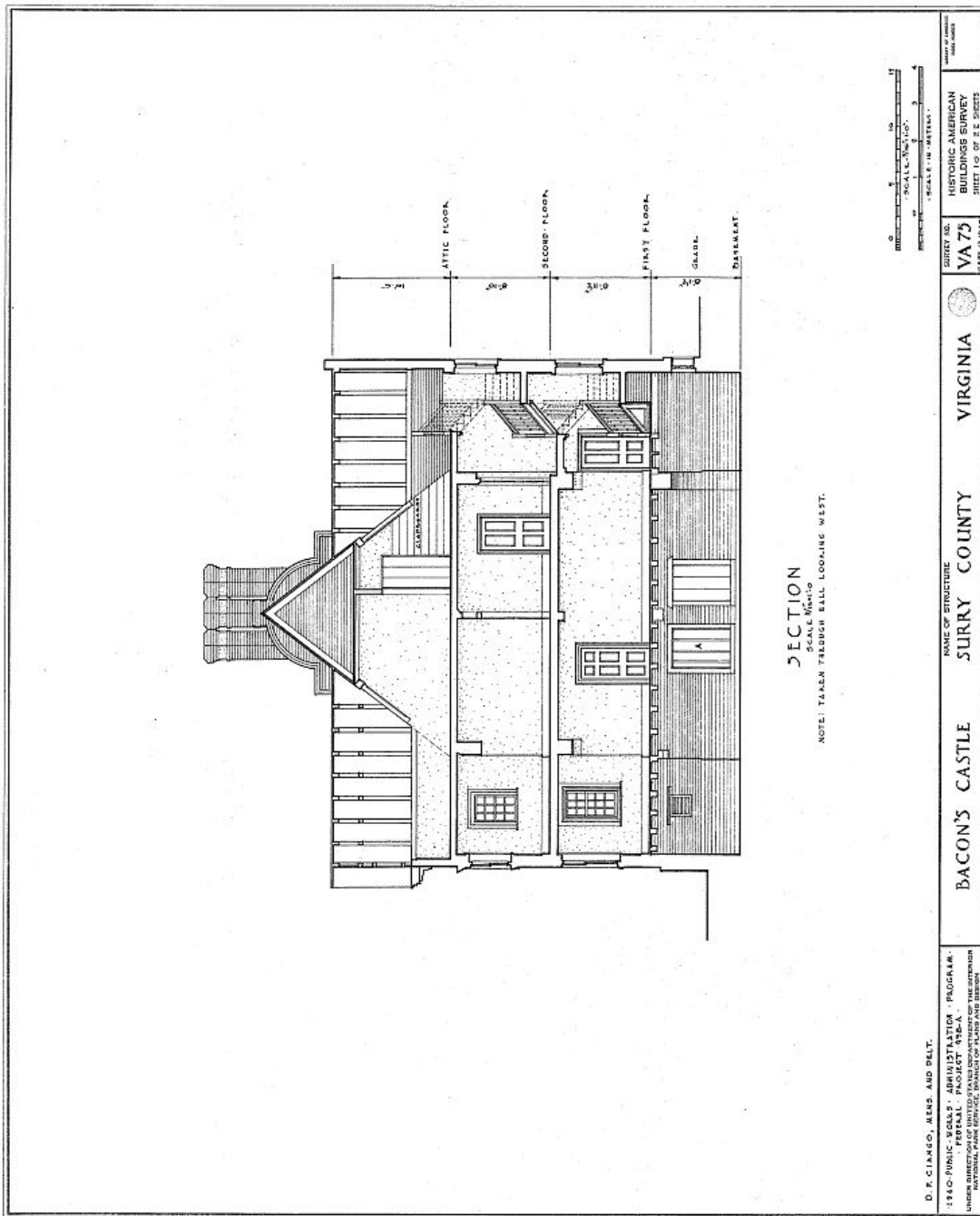


Figure 42: Bacon's Castle, section, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.



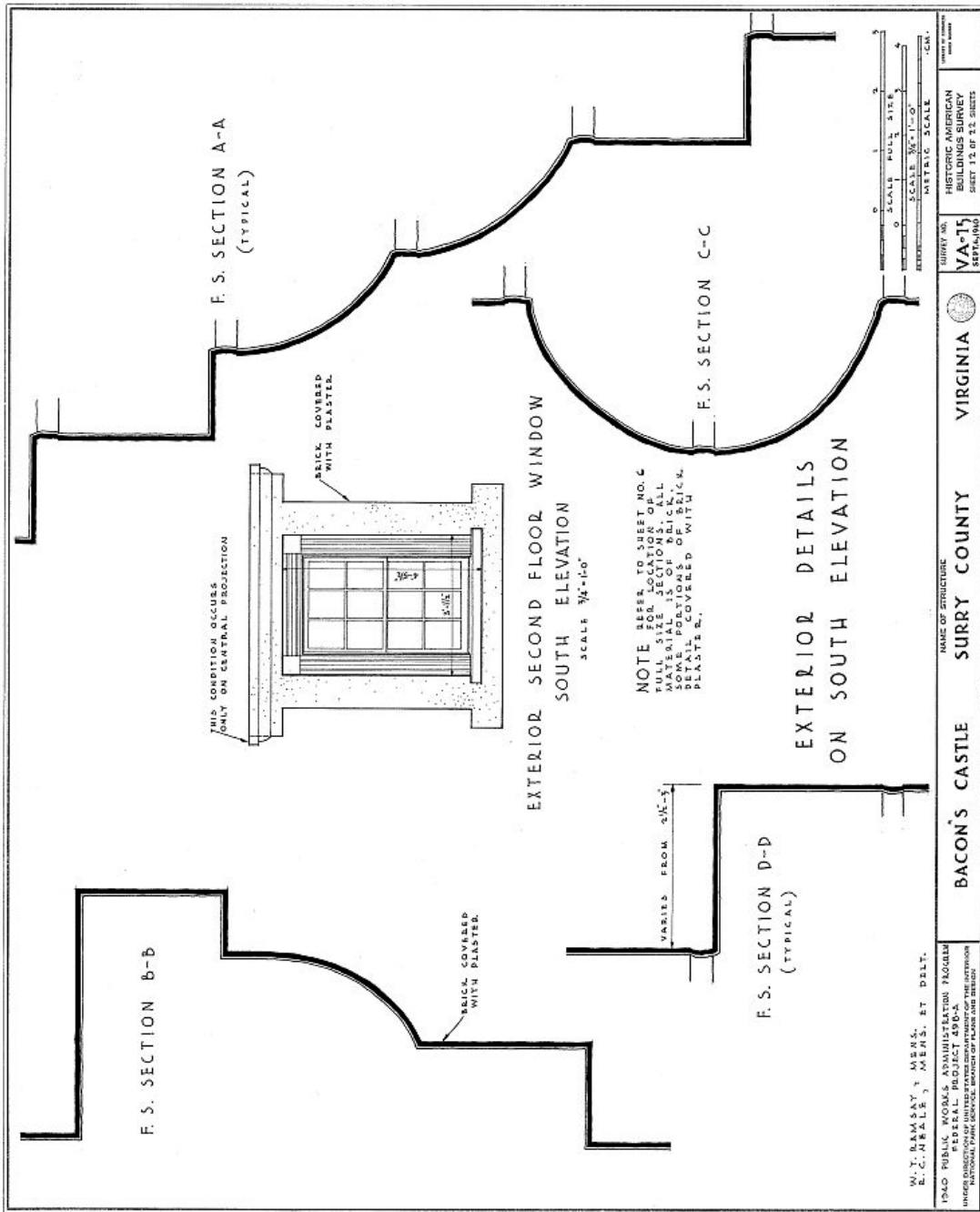


Figure 44: Bacon's Castle, exterior details on south elevation, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

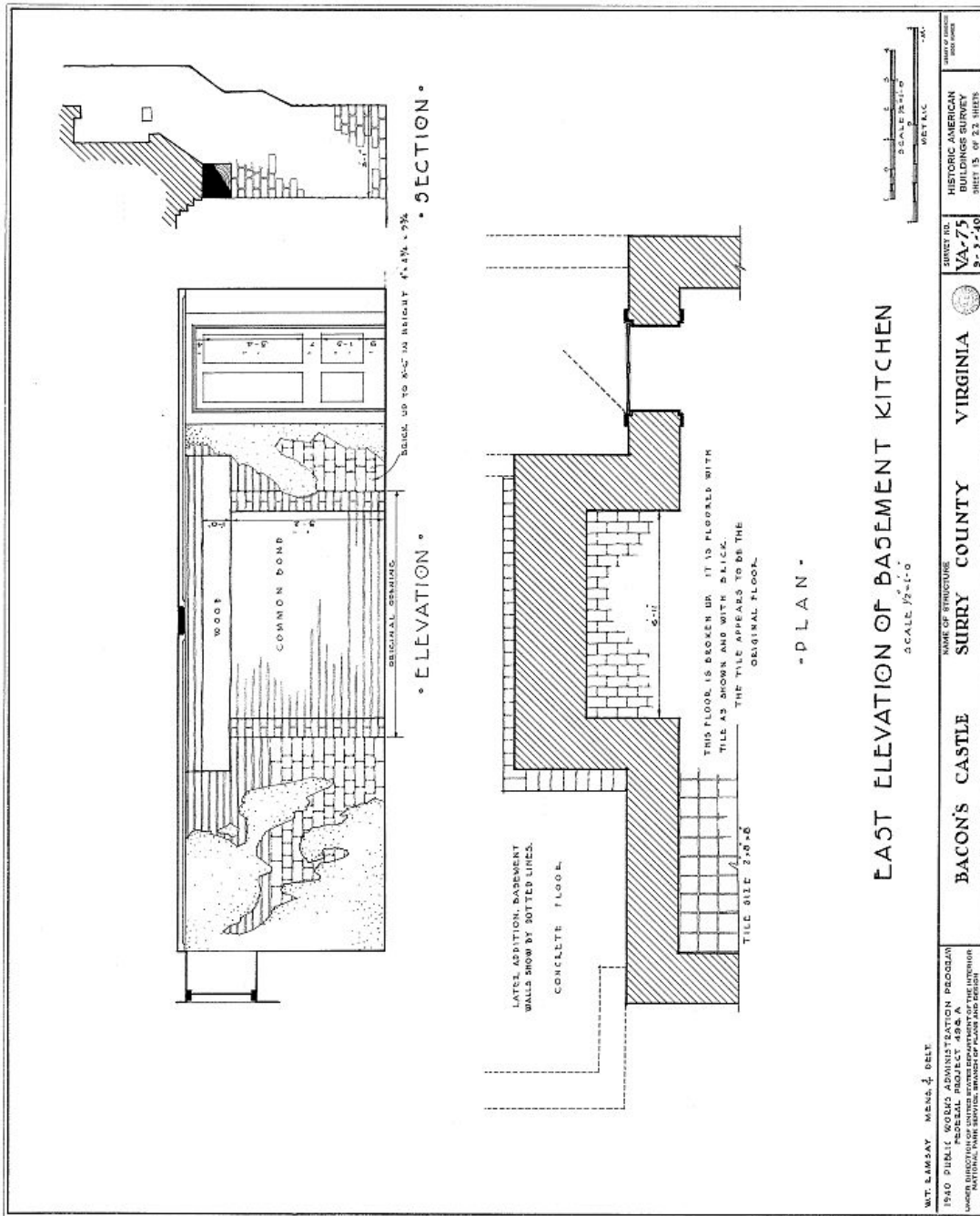


Figure 45: Bacon's Castle, east elevation of basement kitchen, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

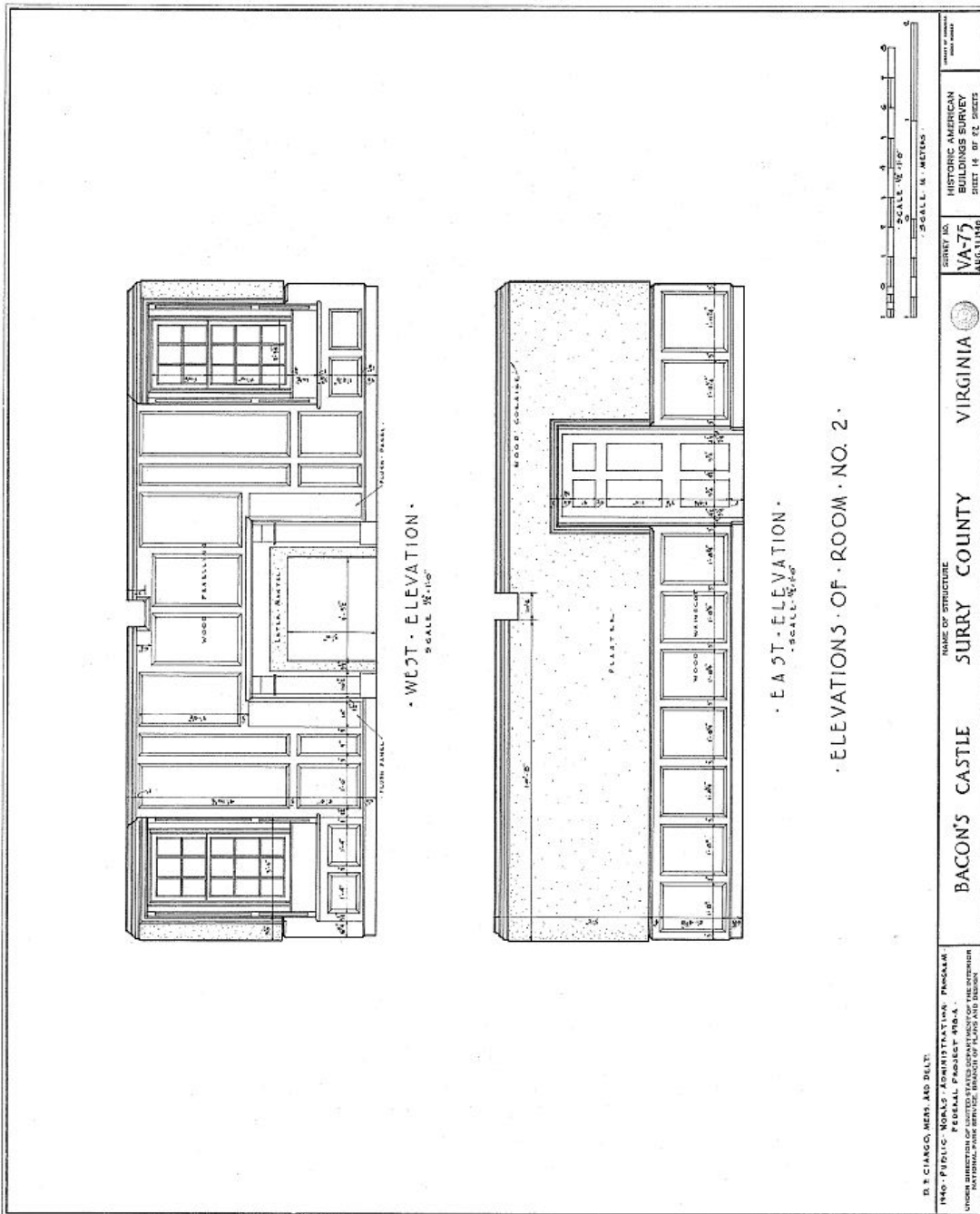


Figure 46: Bacon's Castle, interior elevations, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.





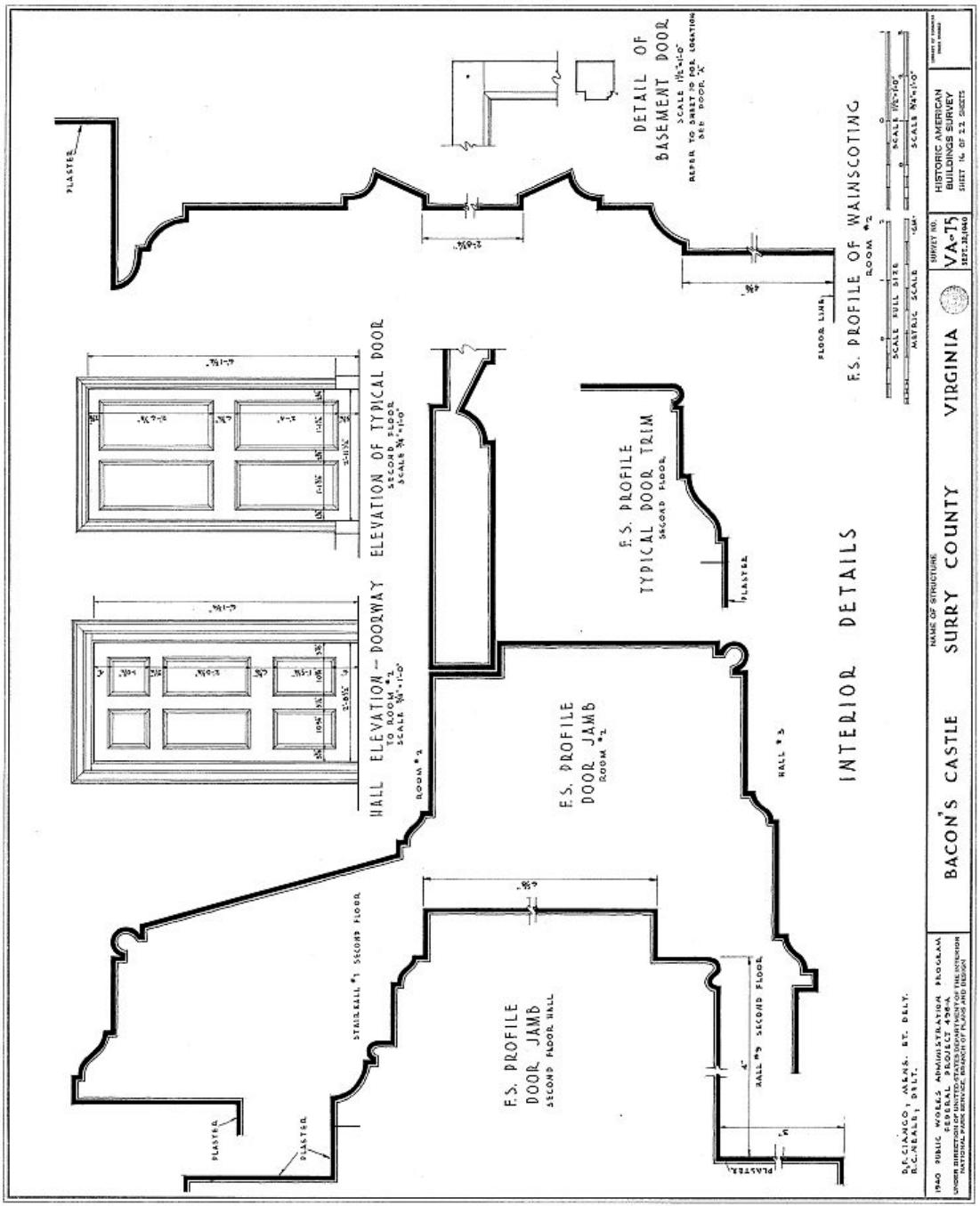


Figure 48: Bacon's Castle, interior details, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

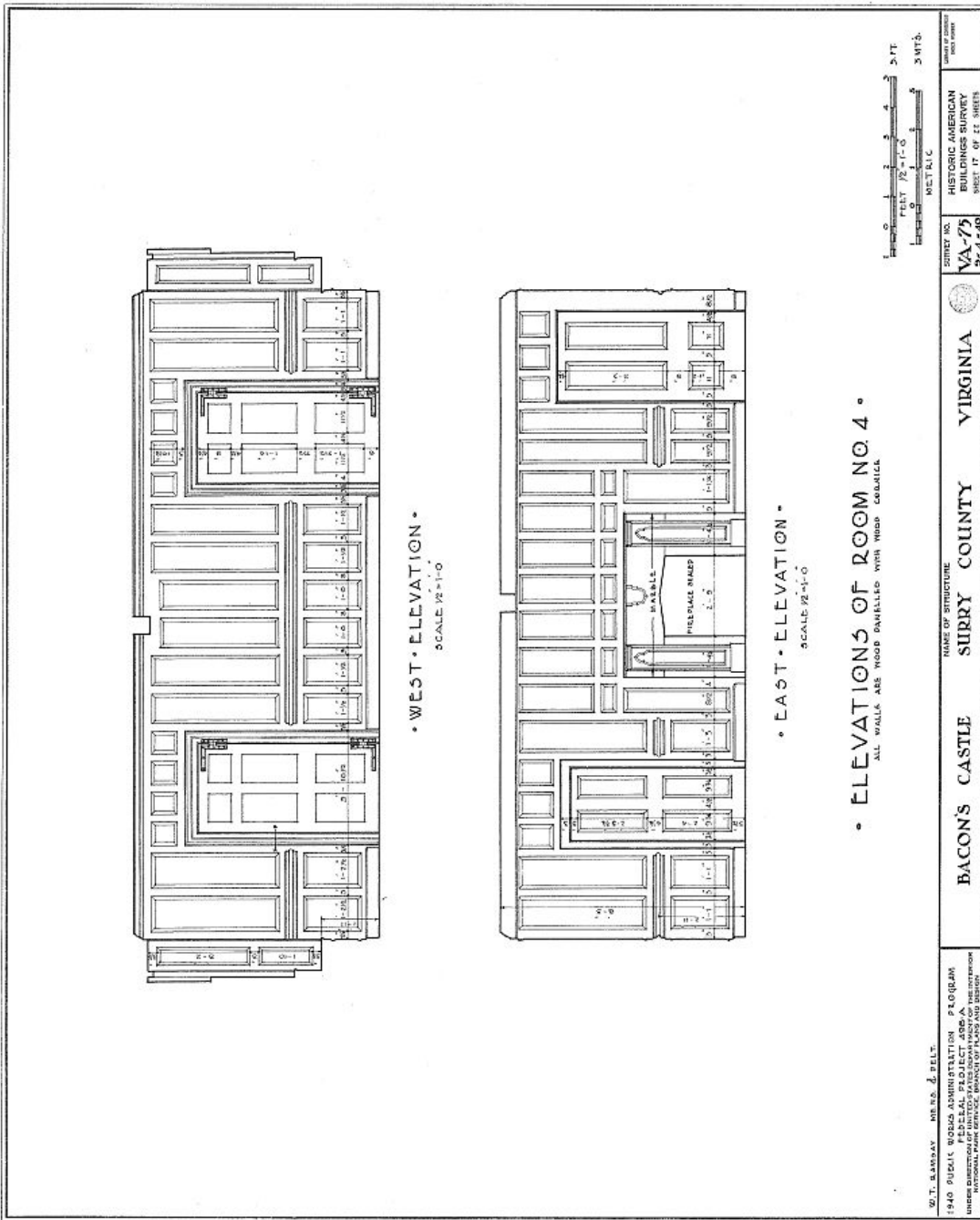


Figure 49: Bacon's Castle, interior elevations, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

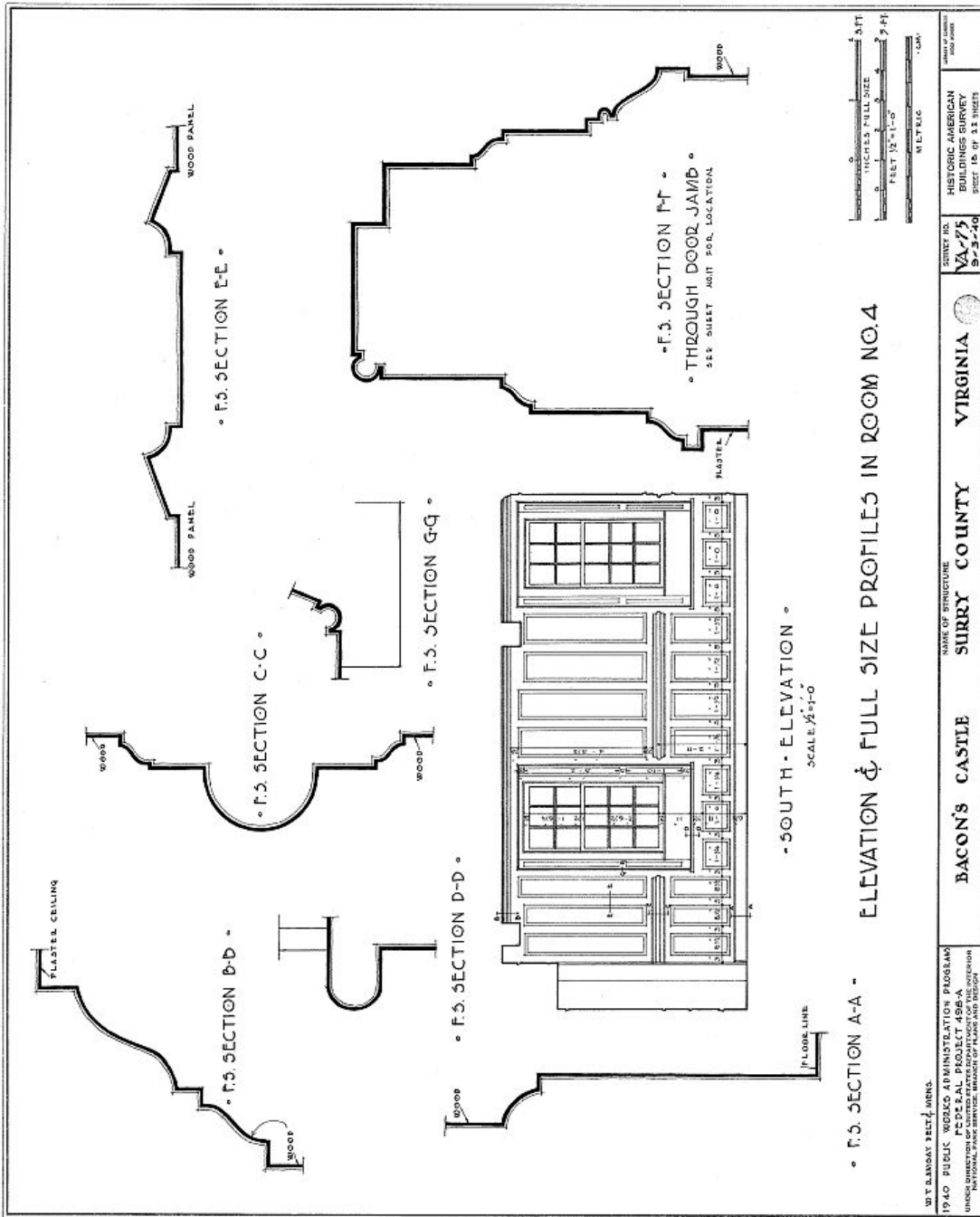


Figure 50: Bacon's Castle, interior details, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

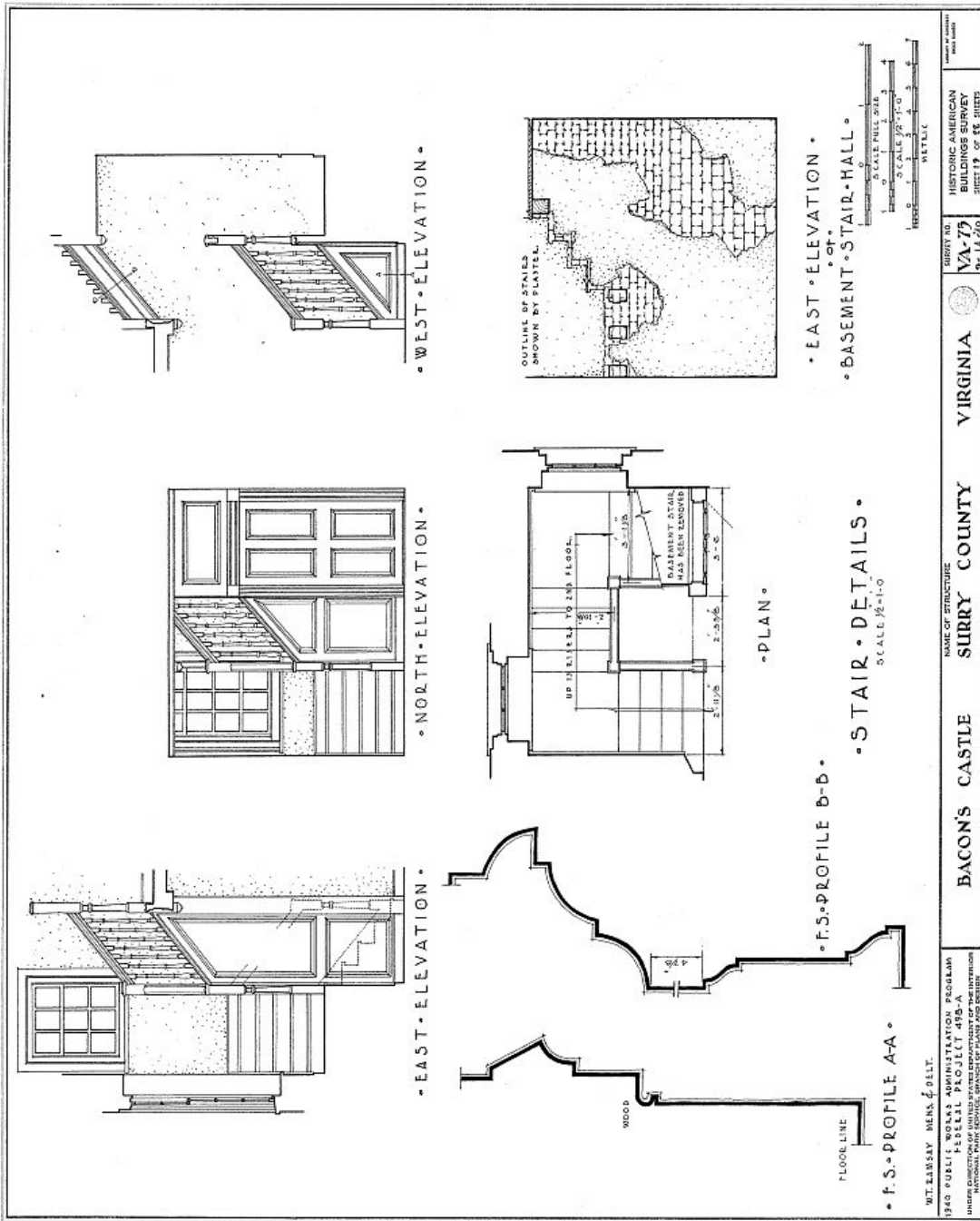


Figure 51: Bacon's Castle, interior stair details, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

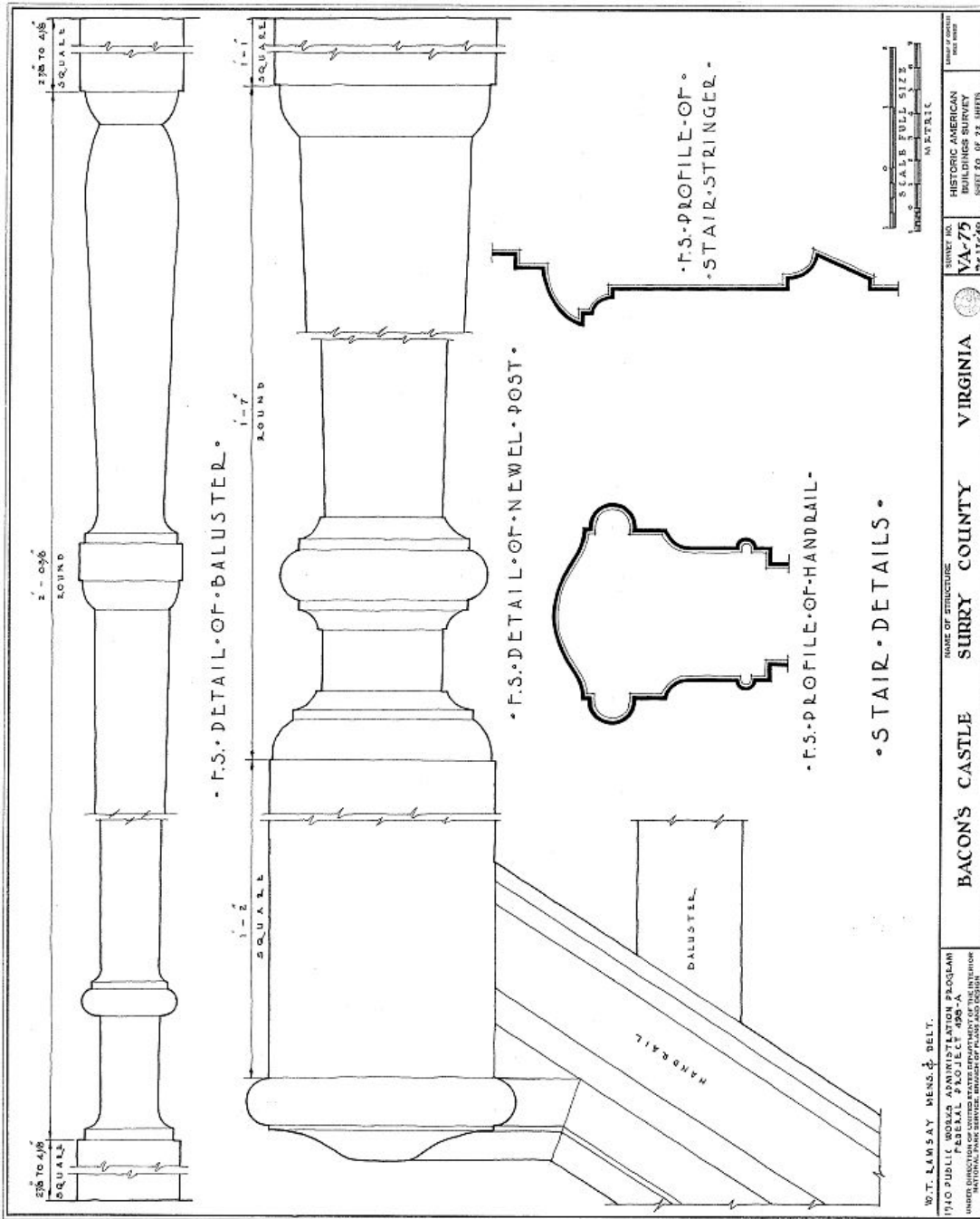


Figure 52: Bacon's Castle, interior stair details, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

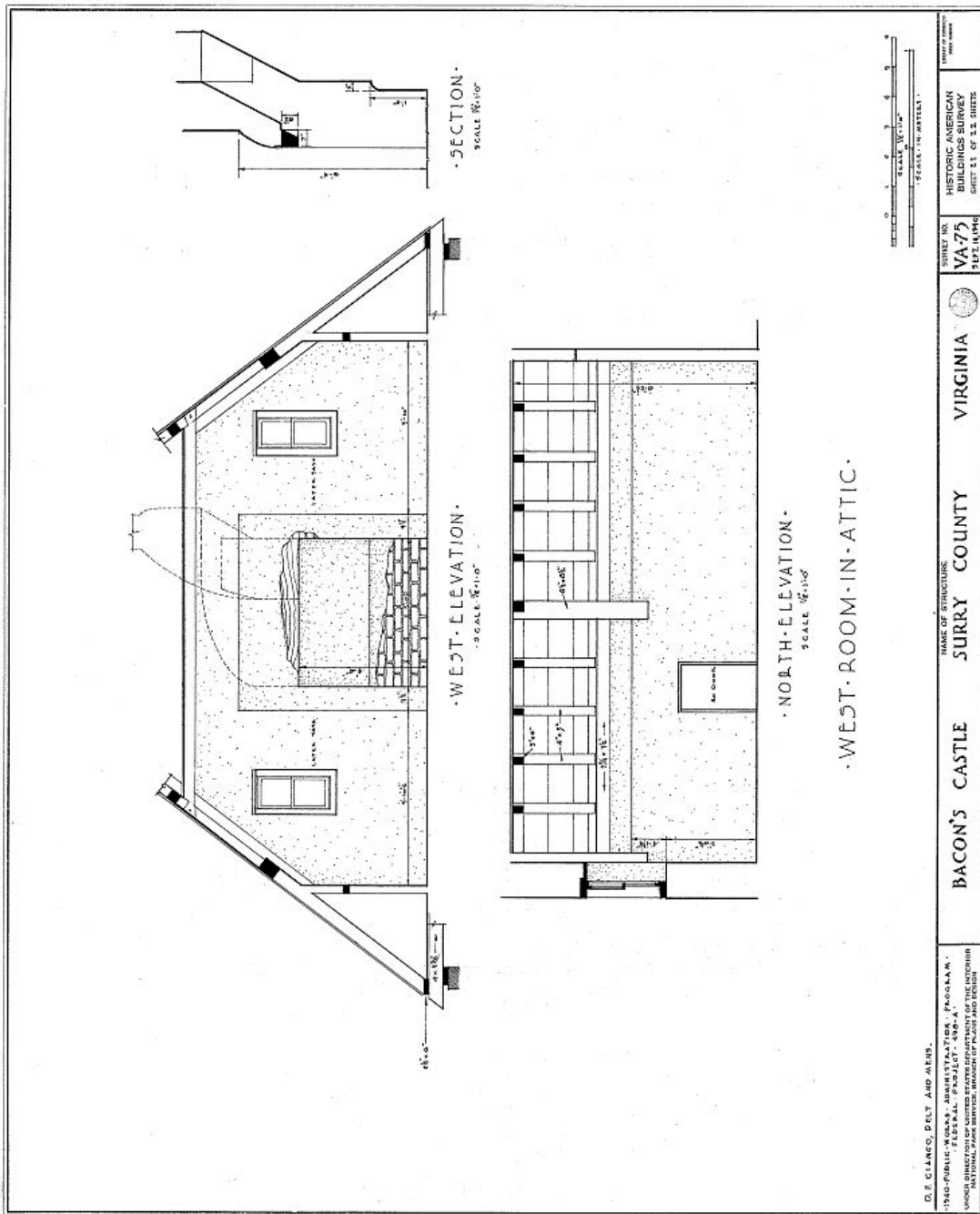


Figure 53: Bacon's Castle, attic elevations, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

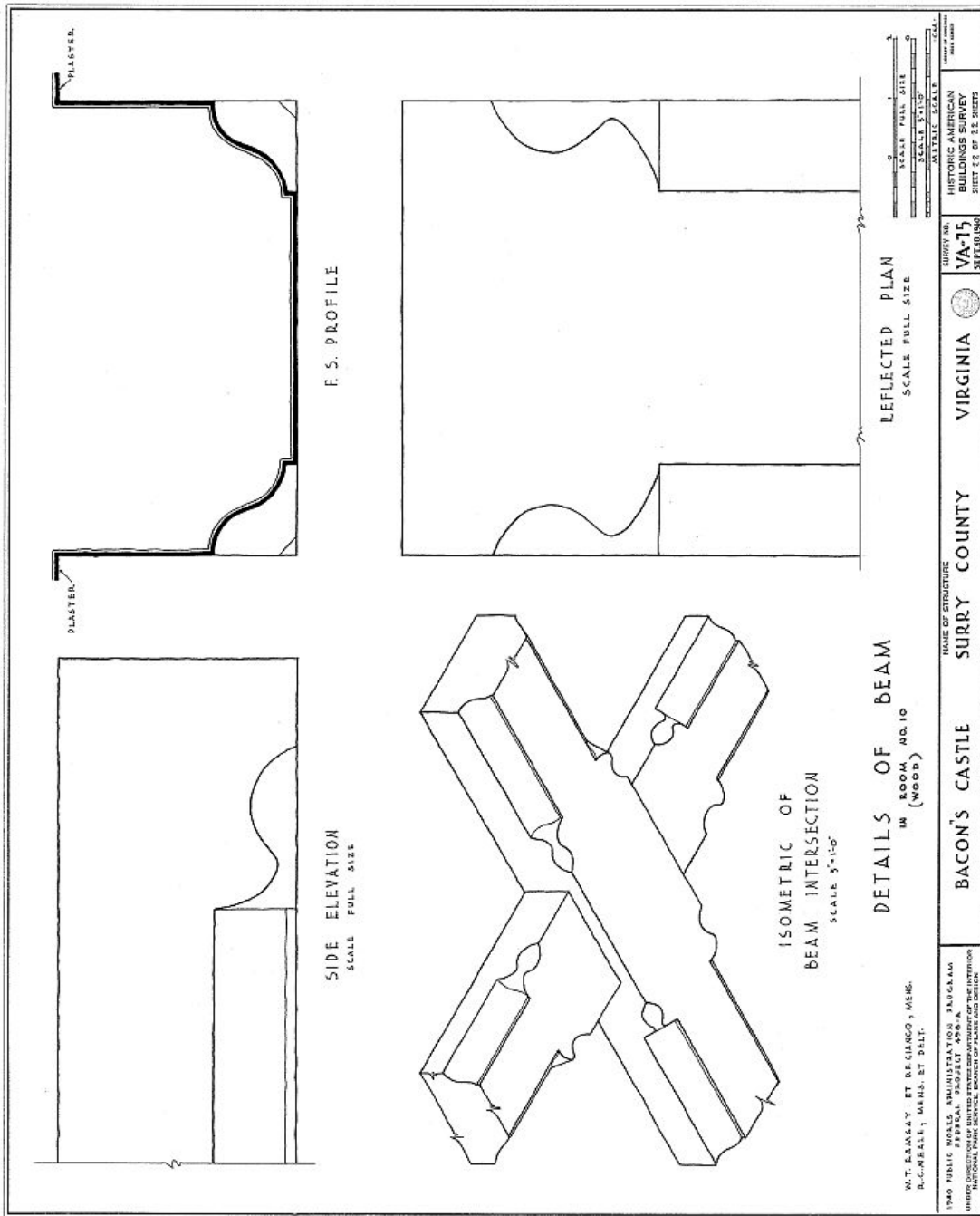


Figure 54: Bacon's Castle, beam details, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.



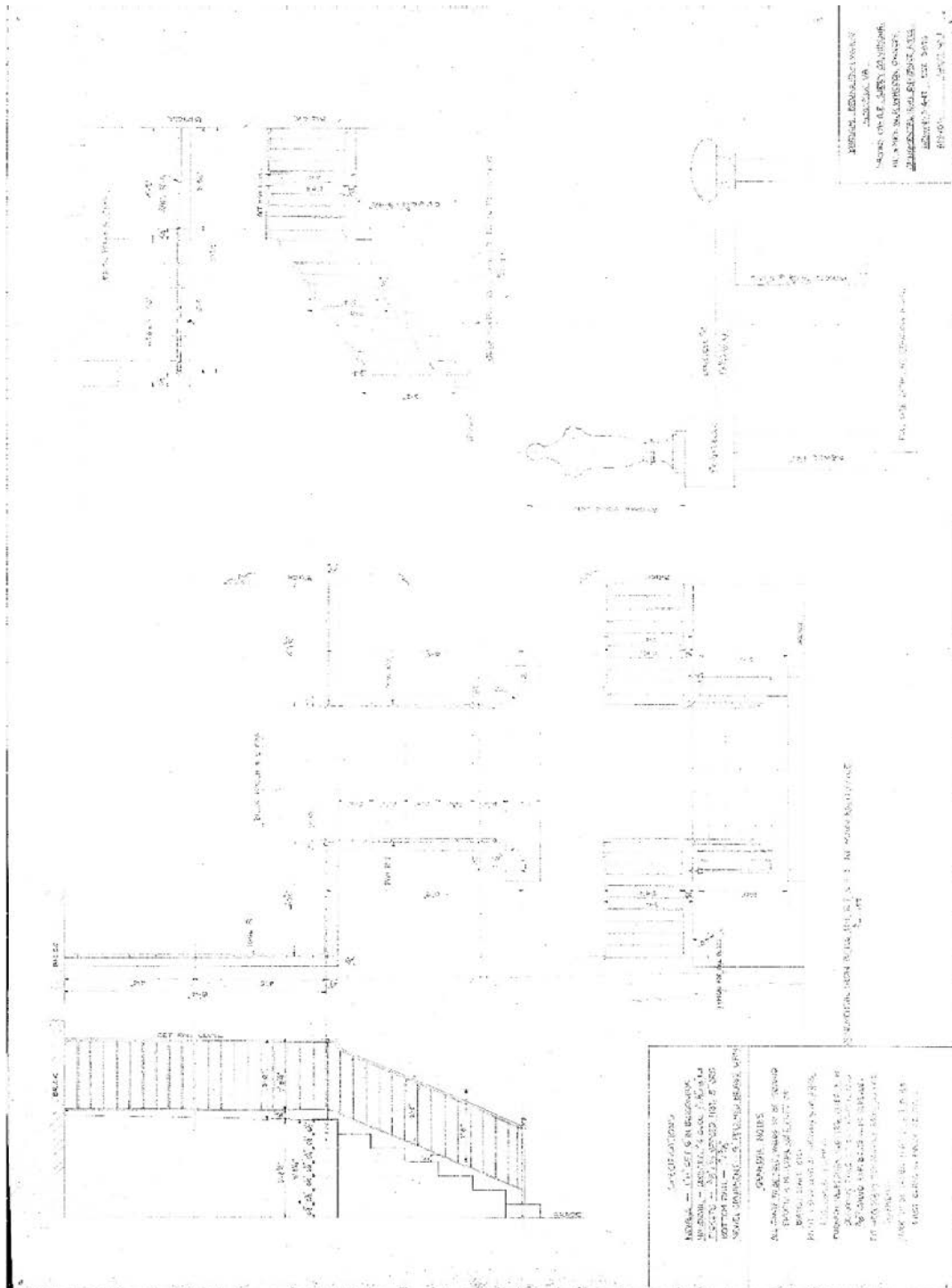


Figure 55: Bacon's Castle, ornamental iron rails at main and rear entries, Barnum-Bruns Iron Works for Mr. & Mrs. W.P. Warren, Owners, 1942.



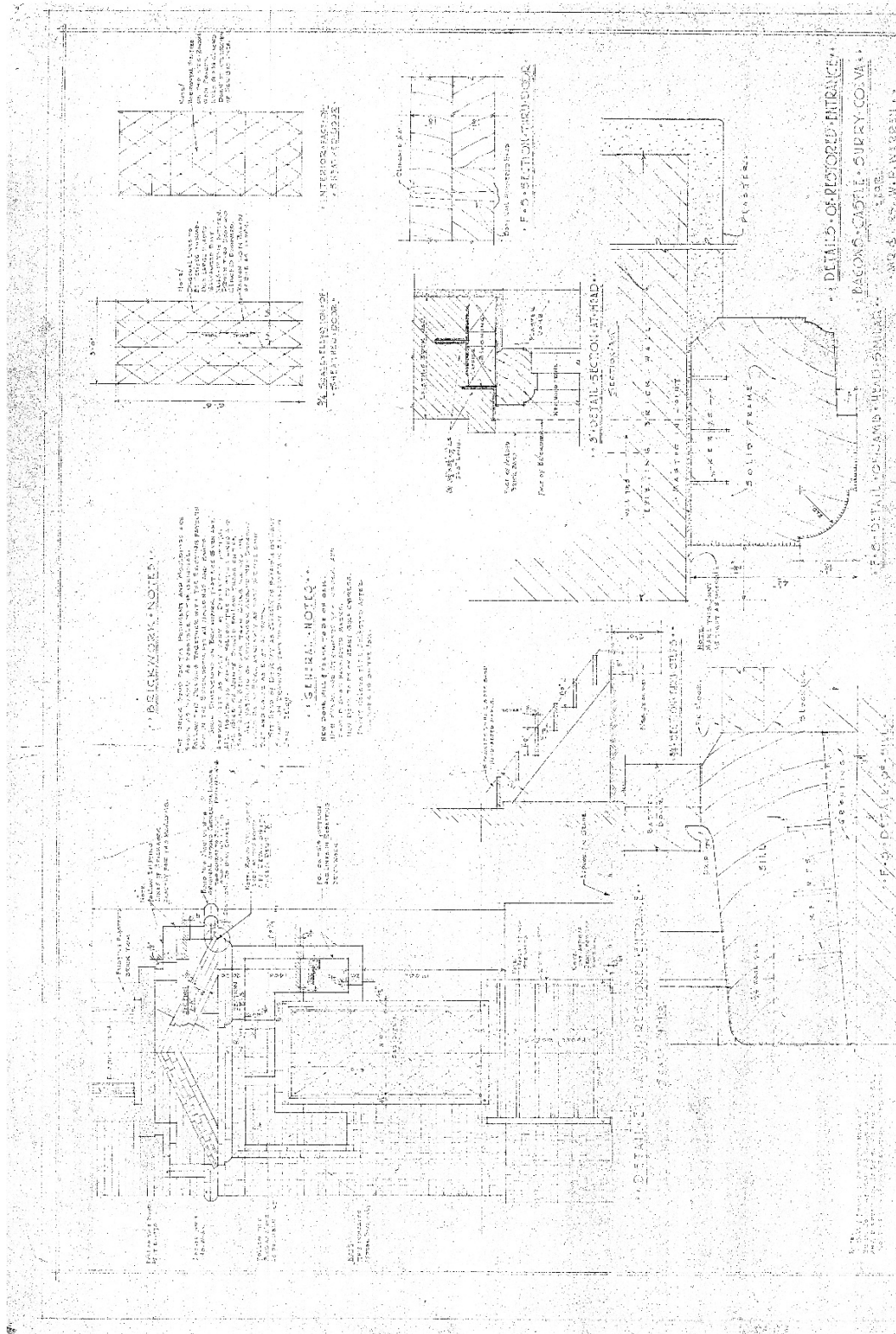
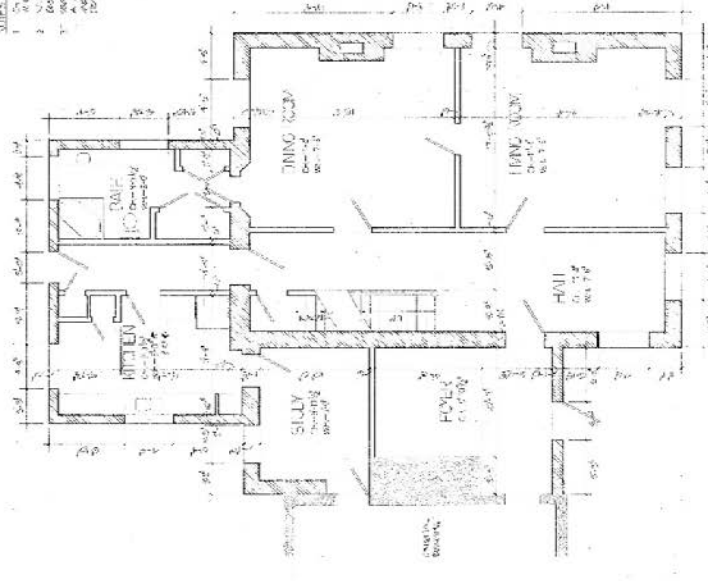


Figure 57: Bacon's Castle, details of restored entrance, Barnum-Bruns Iron Works for Mr. & Mrs. W.P. Warren, Owners, 1942.

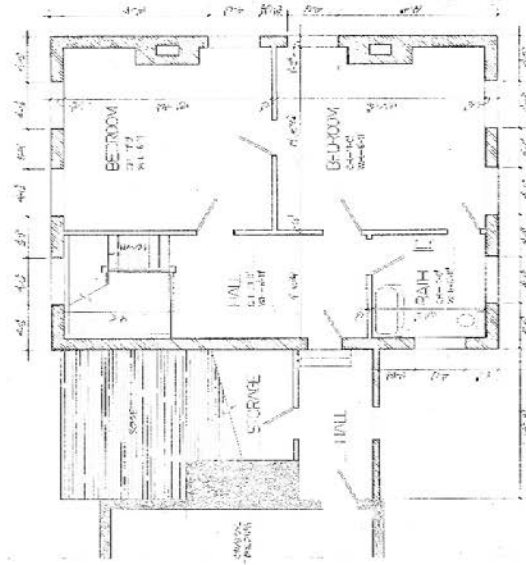
**BACON'S CASTLE ADDITIONS**  
 DRAWN BY THE A.P.A. NOV. 25, 1975

SCALE 1/4" = 1'-0"

- NOTES:
1. ALL ROOMS TO BE FINISHED WITH CARPETING.
  2. ALL WALLS TO BE FINISHED WITH PLASTER AND PAINT.
  3. ALL FLOORS TO BE FINISHED WITH POLISHED CONCRETE.
  4. ALL CEILING TO BE FINISHED WITH PLASTER AND PAINT.
  5. ALL DOORS TO BE FINISHED WITH HARDWOOD AND GLASS.
  6. ALL WINDOWS TO BE FINISHED WITH HARDWOOD AND GLASS.
  7. ALL LIGHT FIXTURES TO BE FINISHED WITH BRASS AND GLASS.
  8. ALL ELECTRICAL TO BE FINISHED WITH COPPER AND ALUMINUM.
  9. ALL MECHANICAL TO BE FINISHED WITH GALVANIZED STEEL.
  10. ALL ROOFING TO BE FINISHED WITH ASPHALT/FLYSH.



**FIRST FLOOR**



**SECOND FLOOR**

Figure 58: Bacon's Castle, first and second floor plans of 1854 addition, 1975.

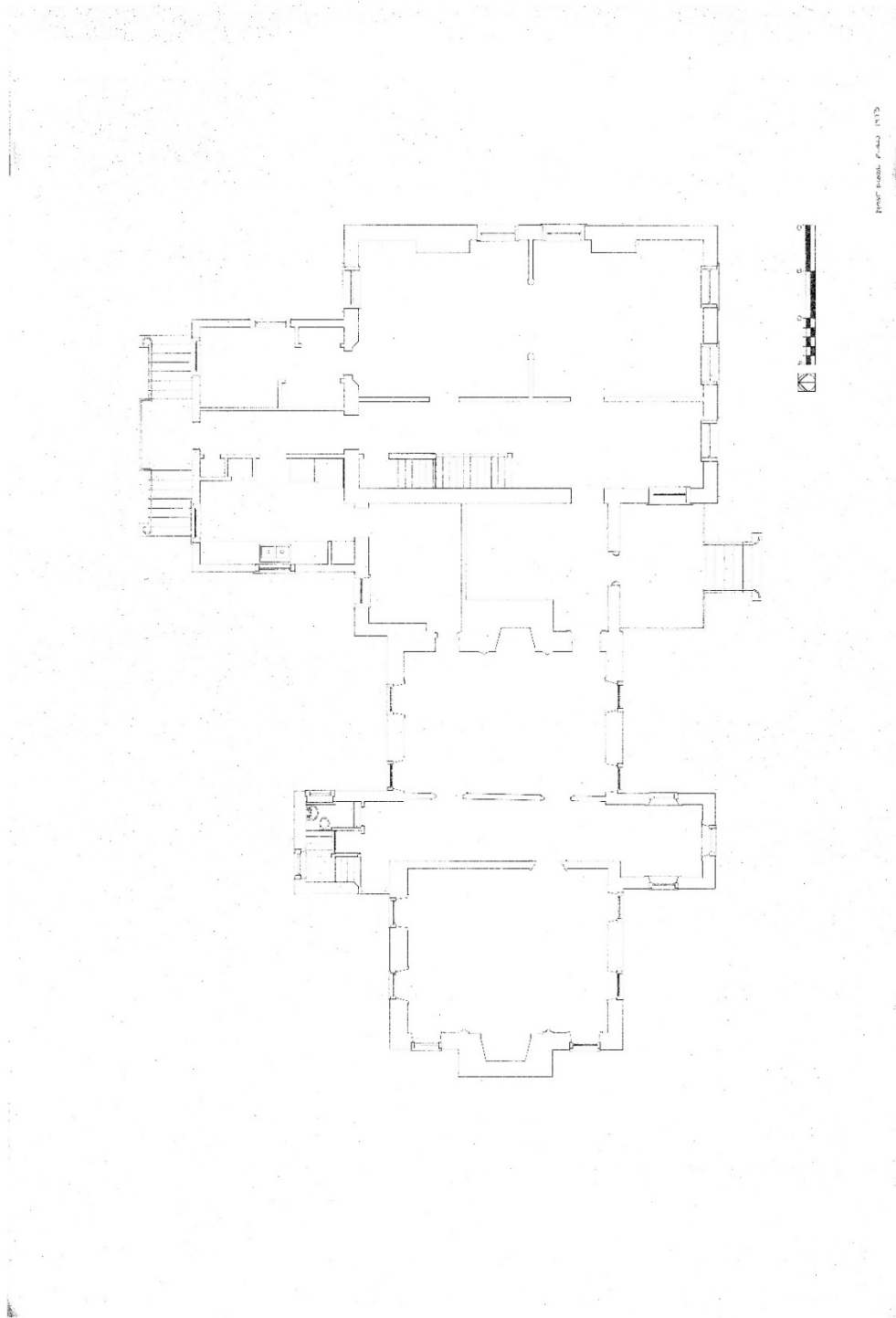


Figure 59: Bacon's Castle, first floor plan, 1975.

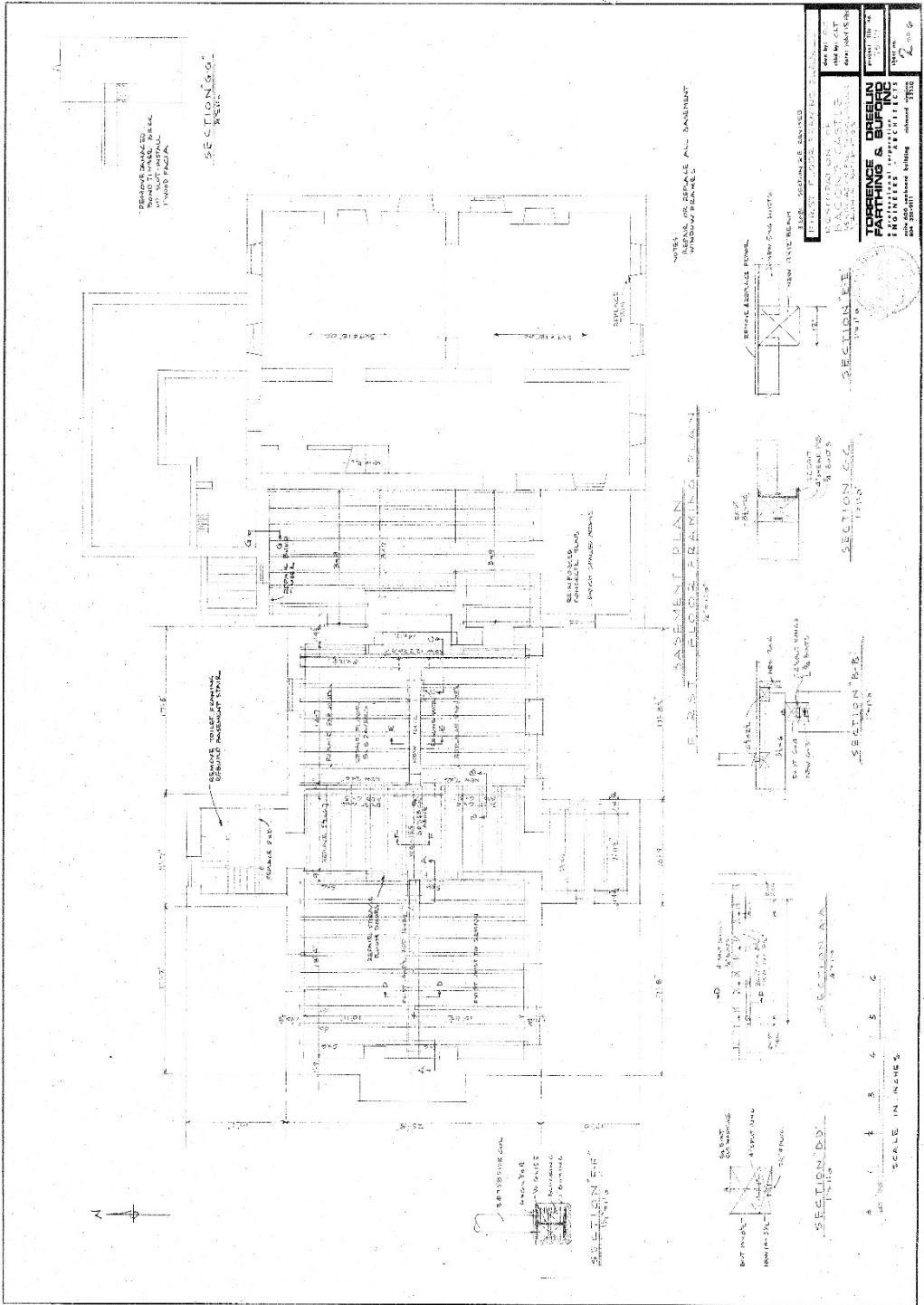


Figure 60: Bacon's Castle, restoration, first floor framing plan, Torrence Dreelin Farthing & Buford, Inc., 1980.

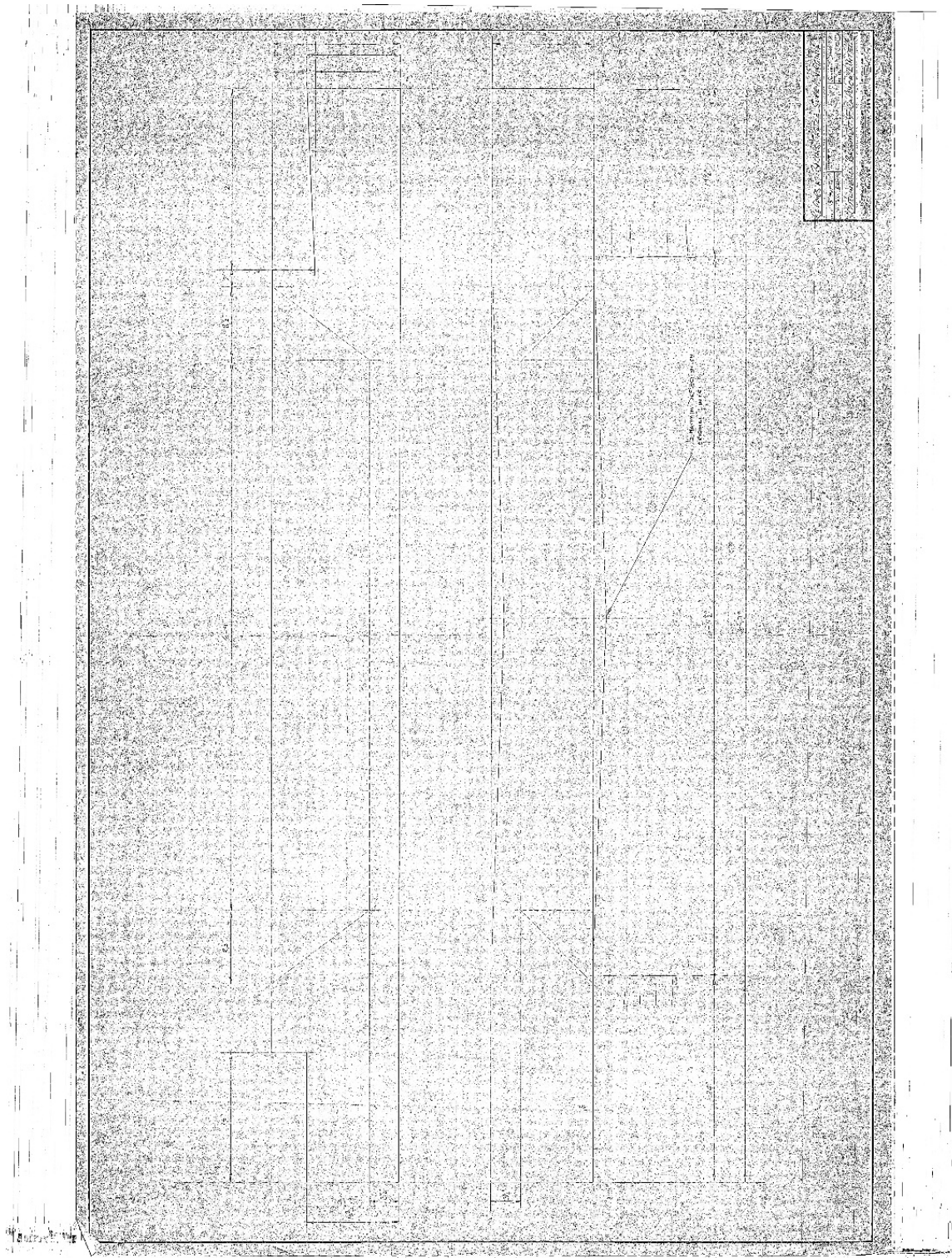


Figure 61: Bacon's Castle, repairs, outline of basement fireplace lintel, Derek Ogden, 1982.





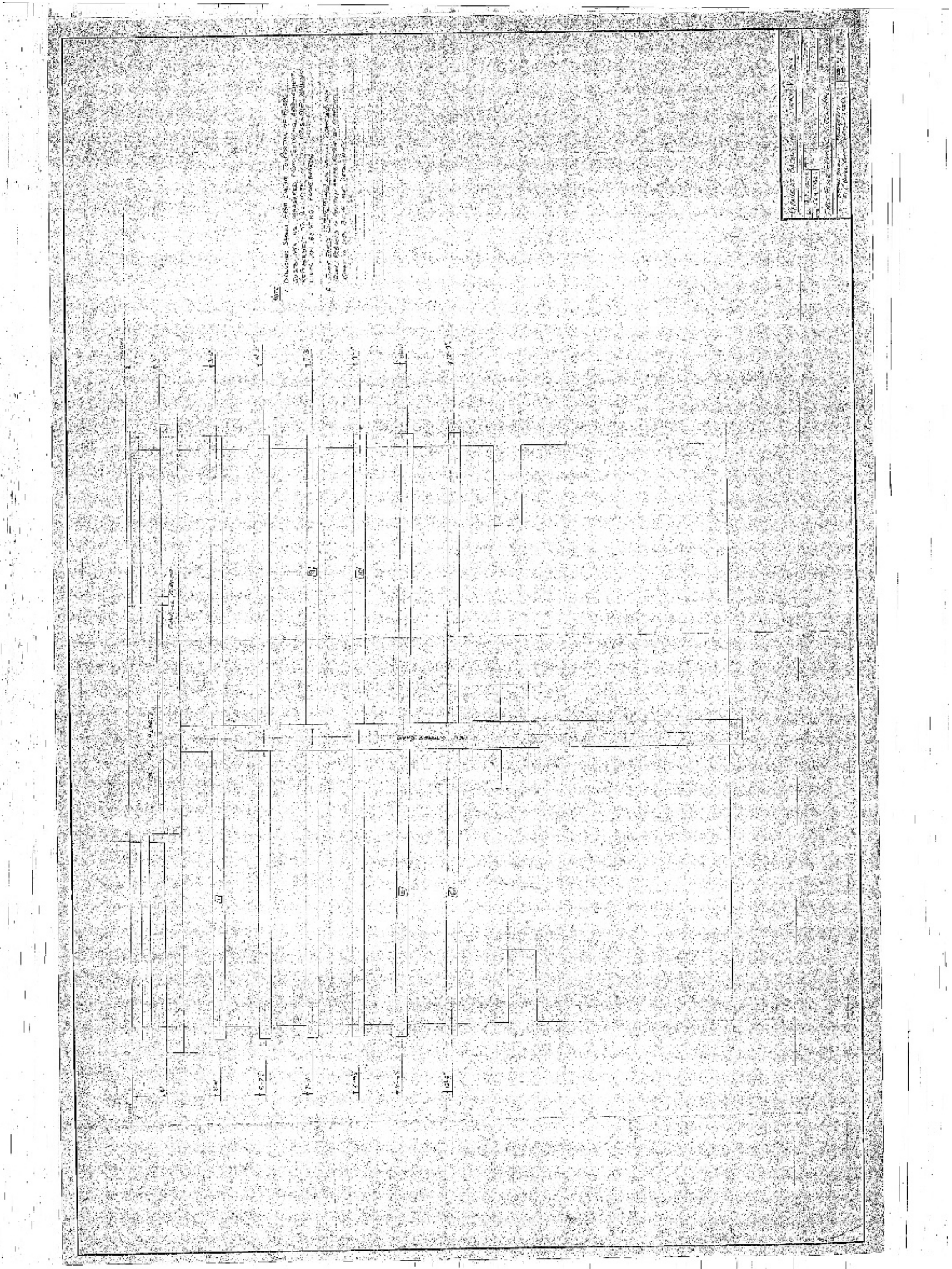


Figure 63: Bacon's Castle, repairs, first floor framing, great hall, Derek Ogden, 1982.

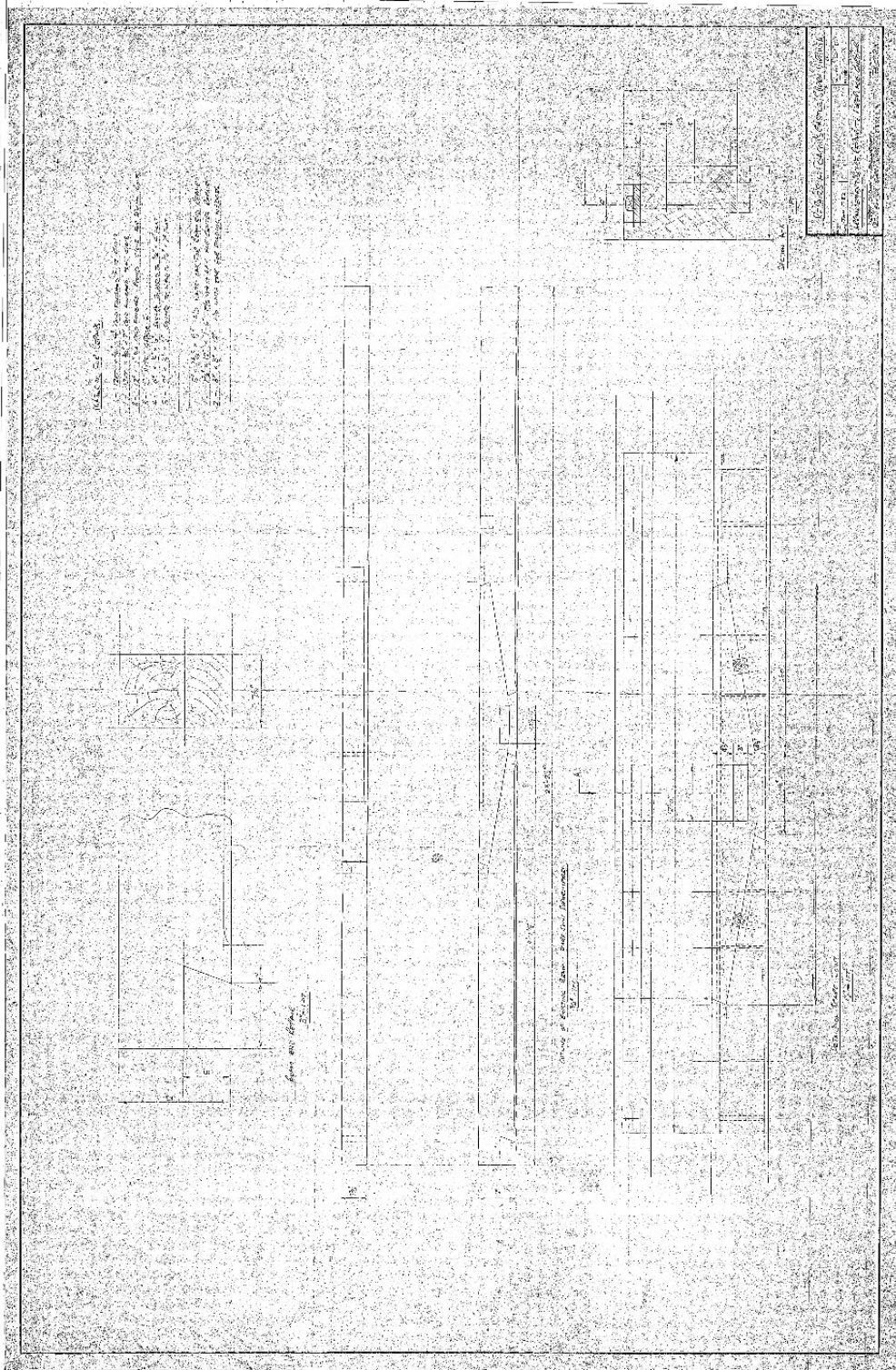


Figure 64: Bacon's Castle, repairs, arrangement scarf repair to fireplace girder, Derek Ogden, 1982.

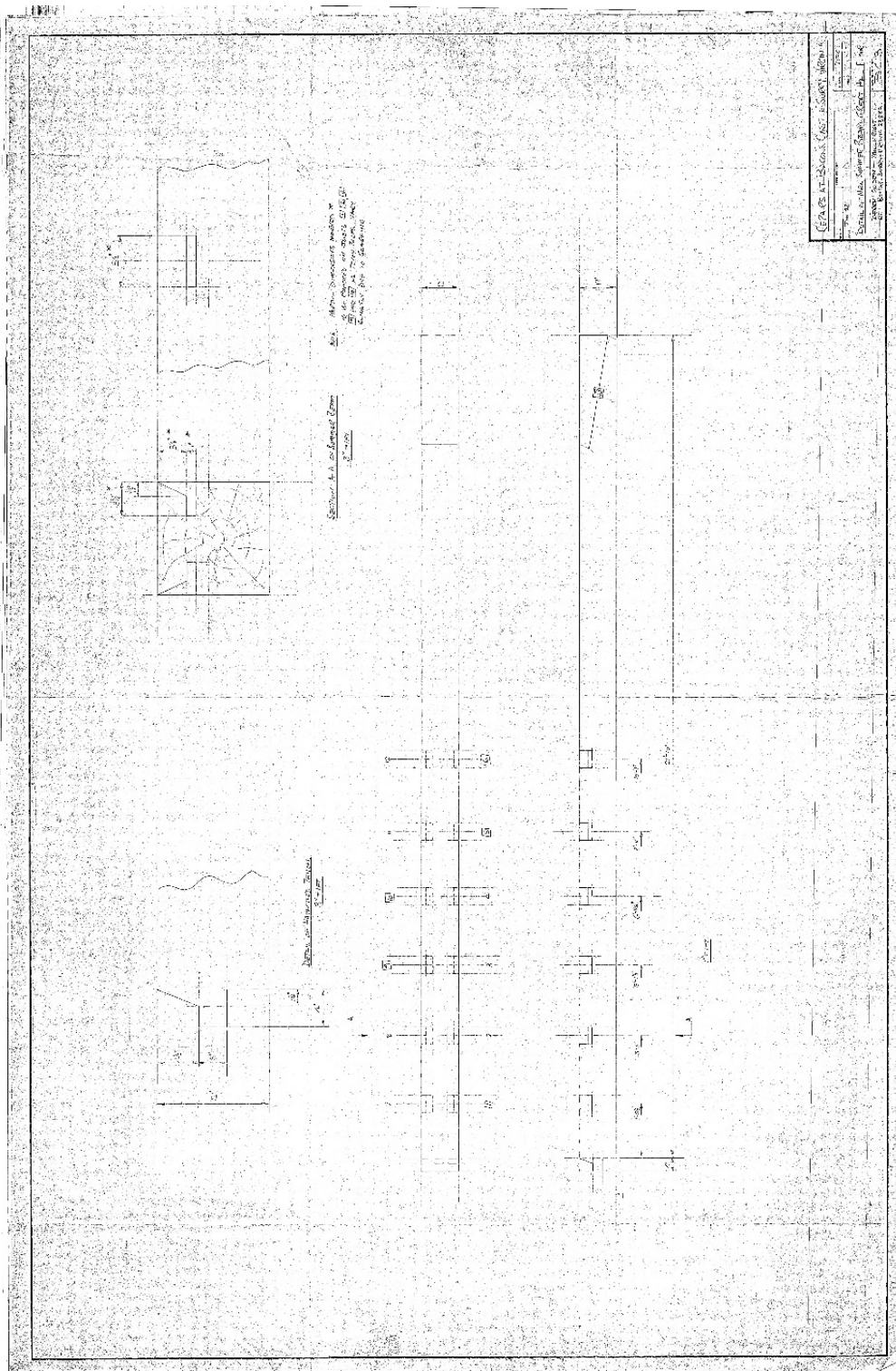


Figure 65: Bacon's Castle, repairs, detail of new summer beam, great hall floor, Derek Ogden, 1982.

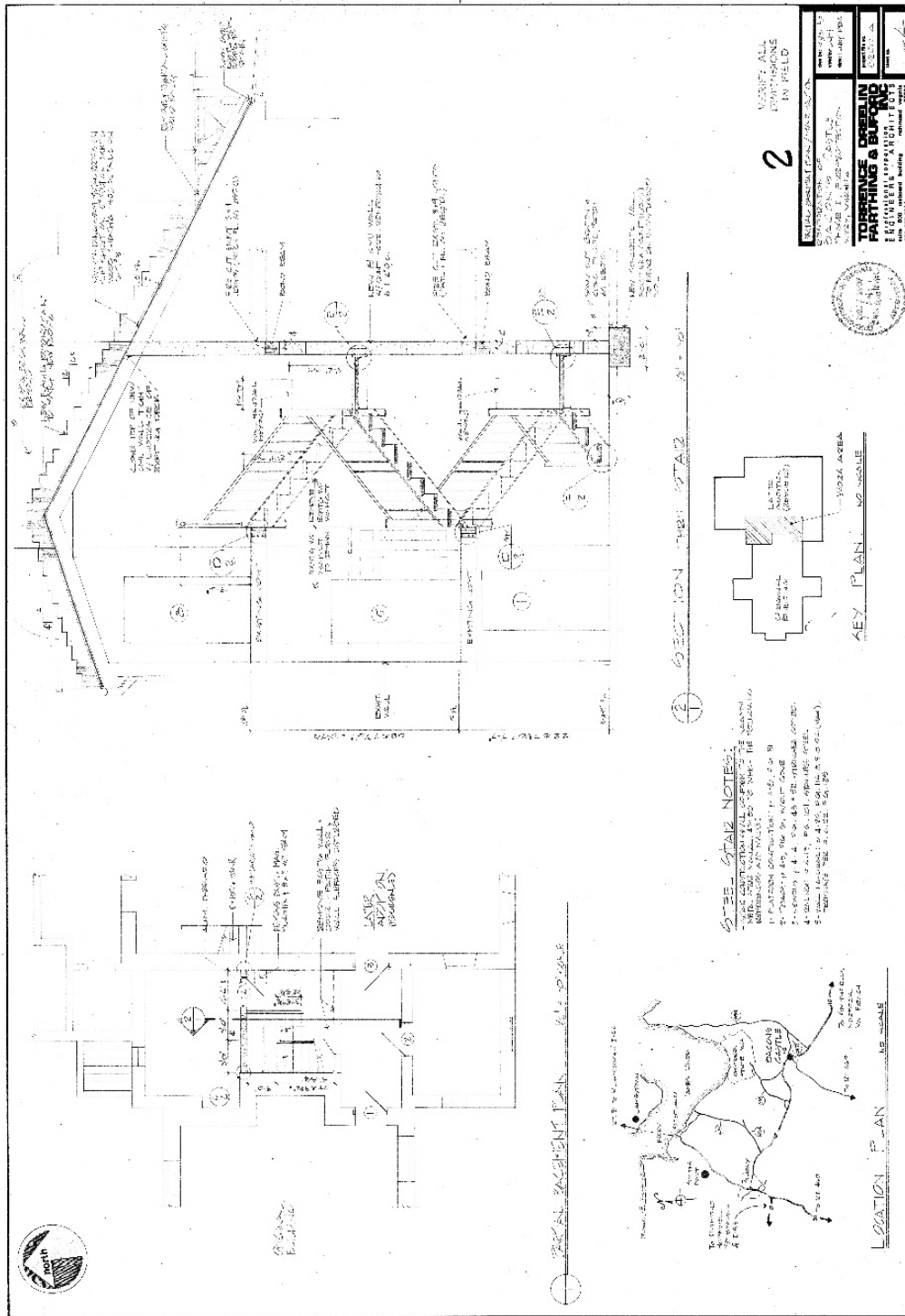


Figure 66: Bacon's Castle, phase I restoration, fire protection, partial basement plan/stair section, Torrence Dreelin Farthing & Buford, Inc., 1982.





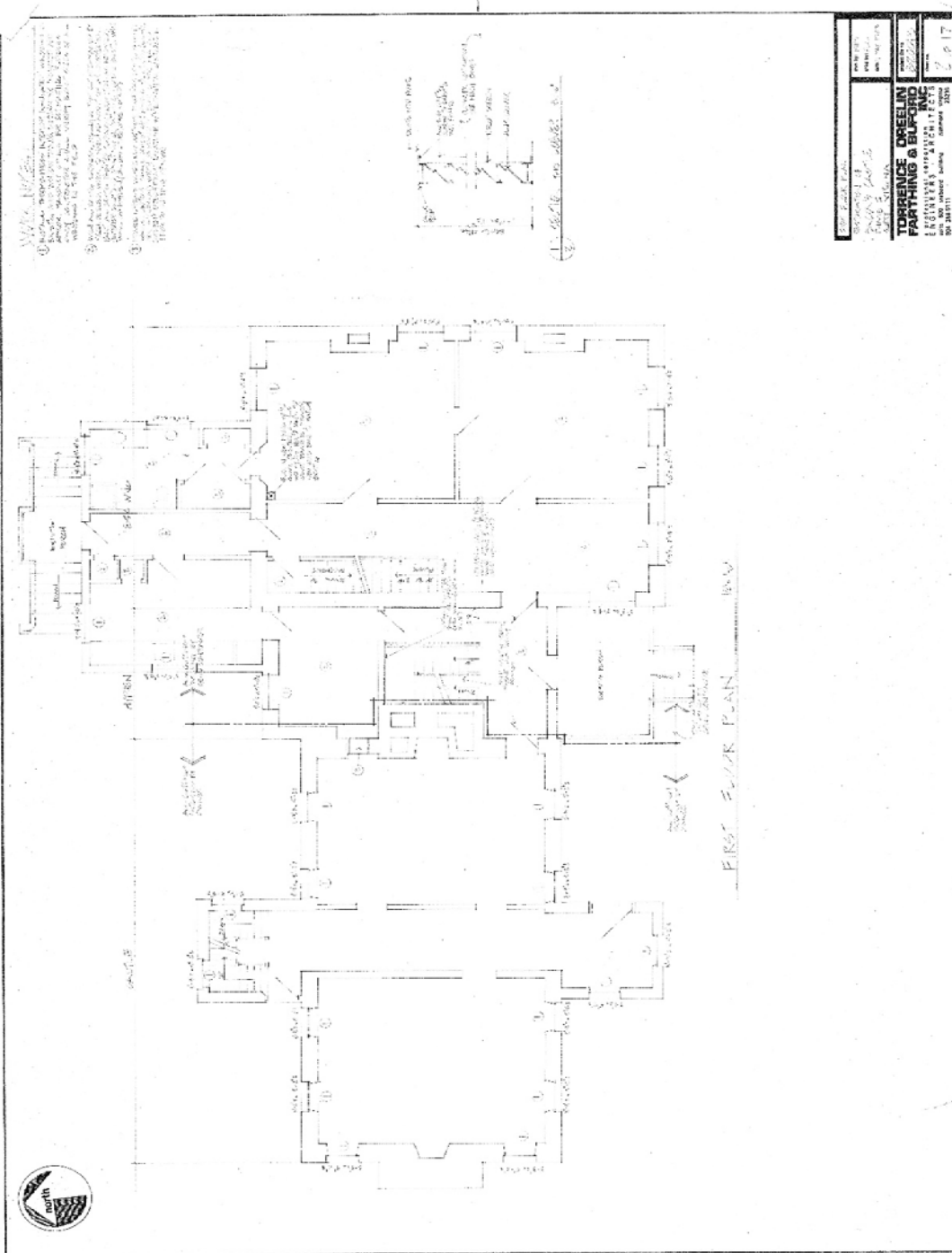


Figure 69: Bacon's Castle, phase II restoration, first floor plan, Torrence Dreelin Farthing & Buford, Inc., 1984.

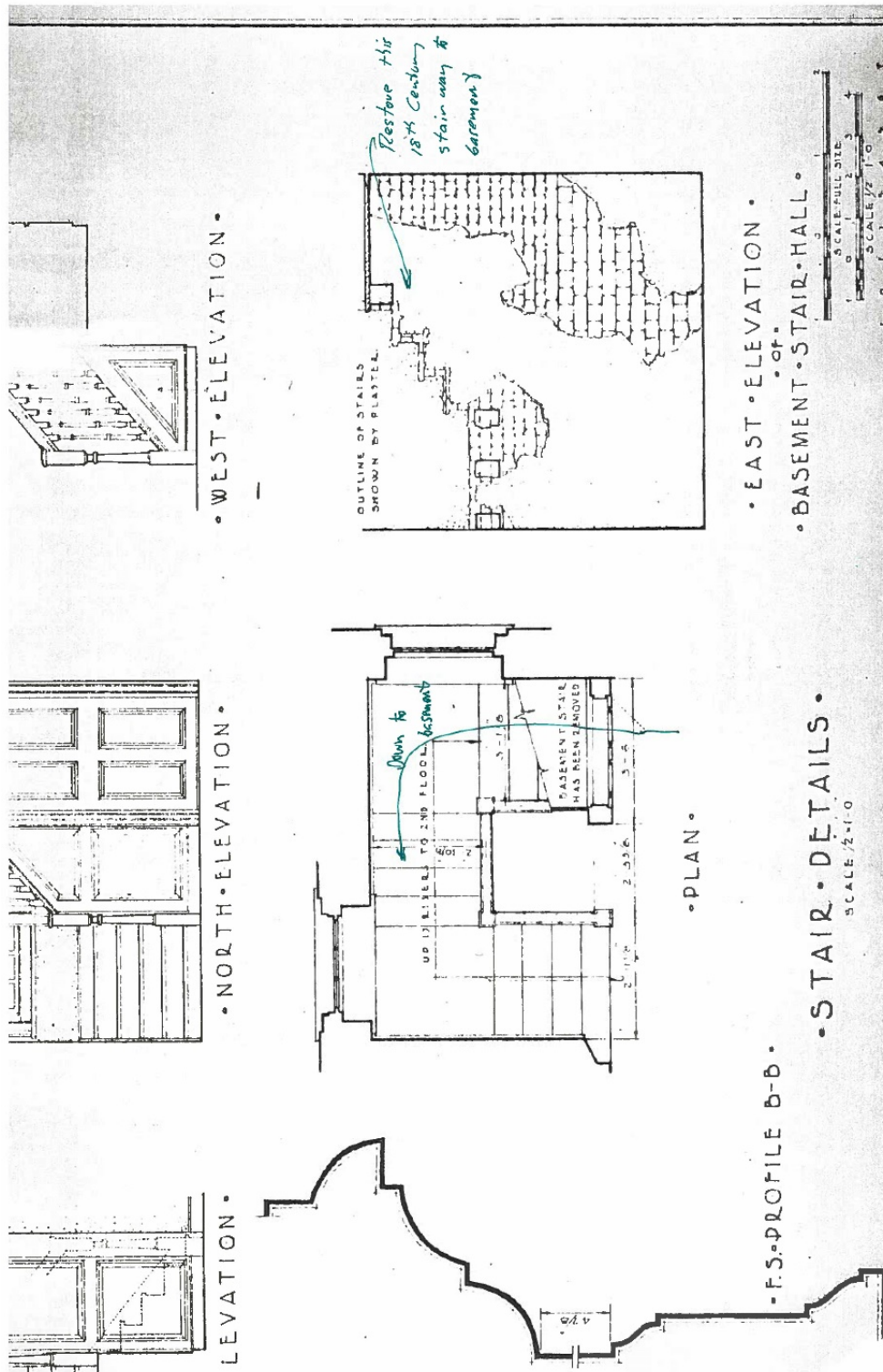


Figure 70: Bacon's Castle, basement stair drawings with markup, estimated date: 1970s-1980s.



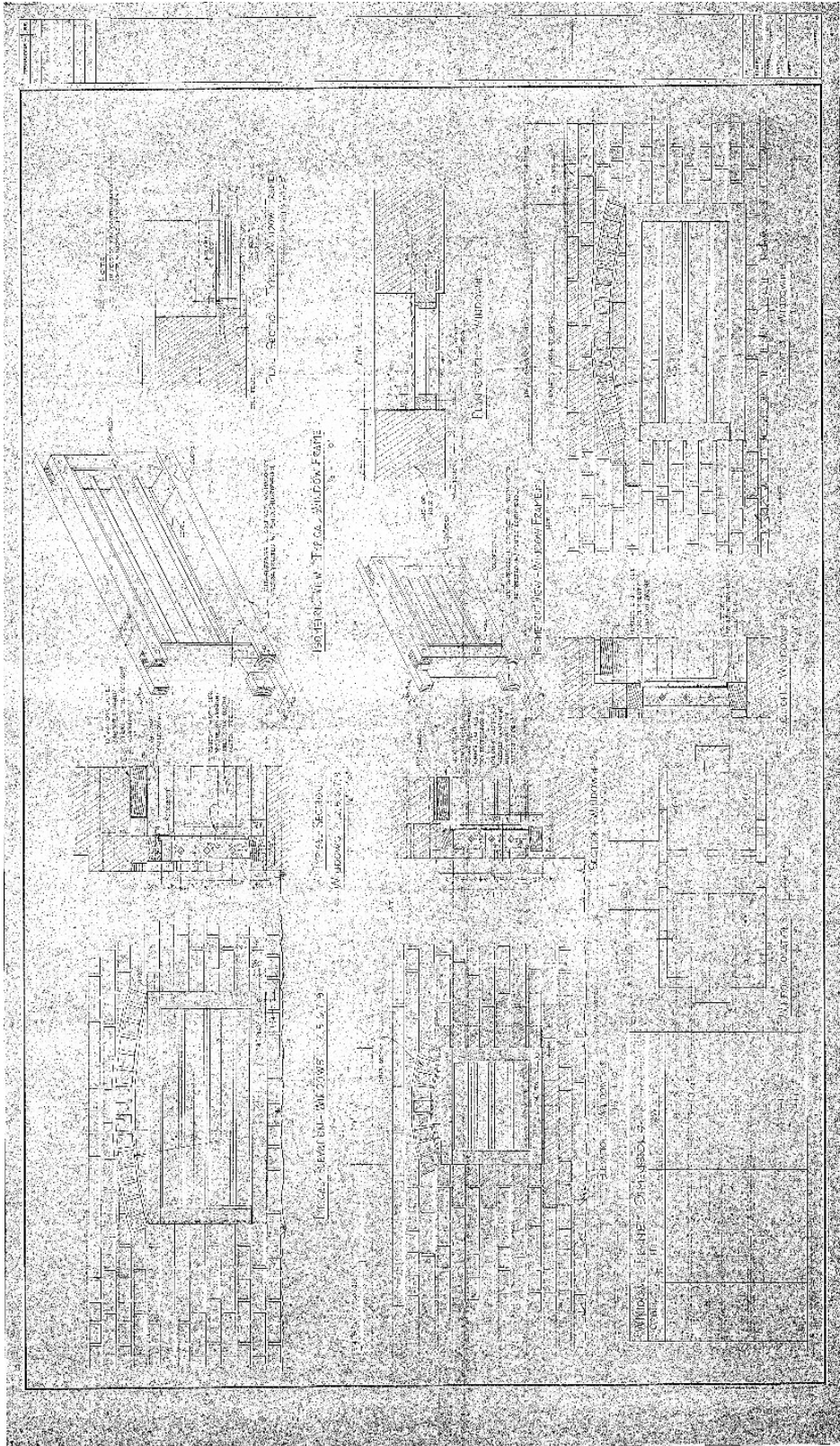


Figure 71: Bacon's Castle, basement window drawings, estimated date: 1970s-1980s.

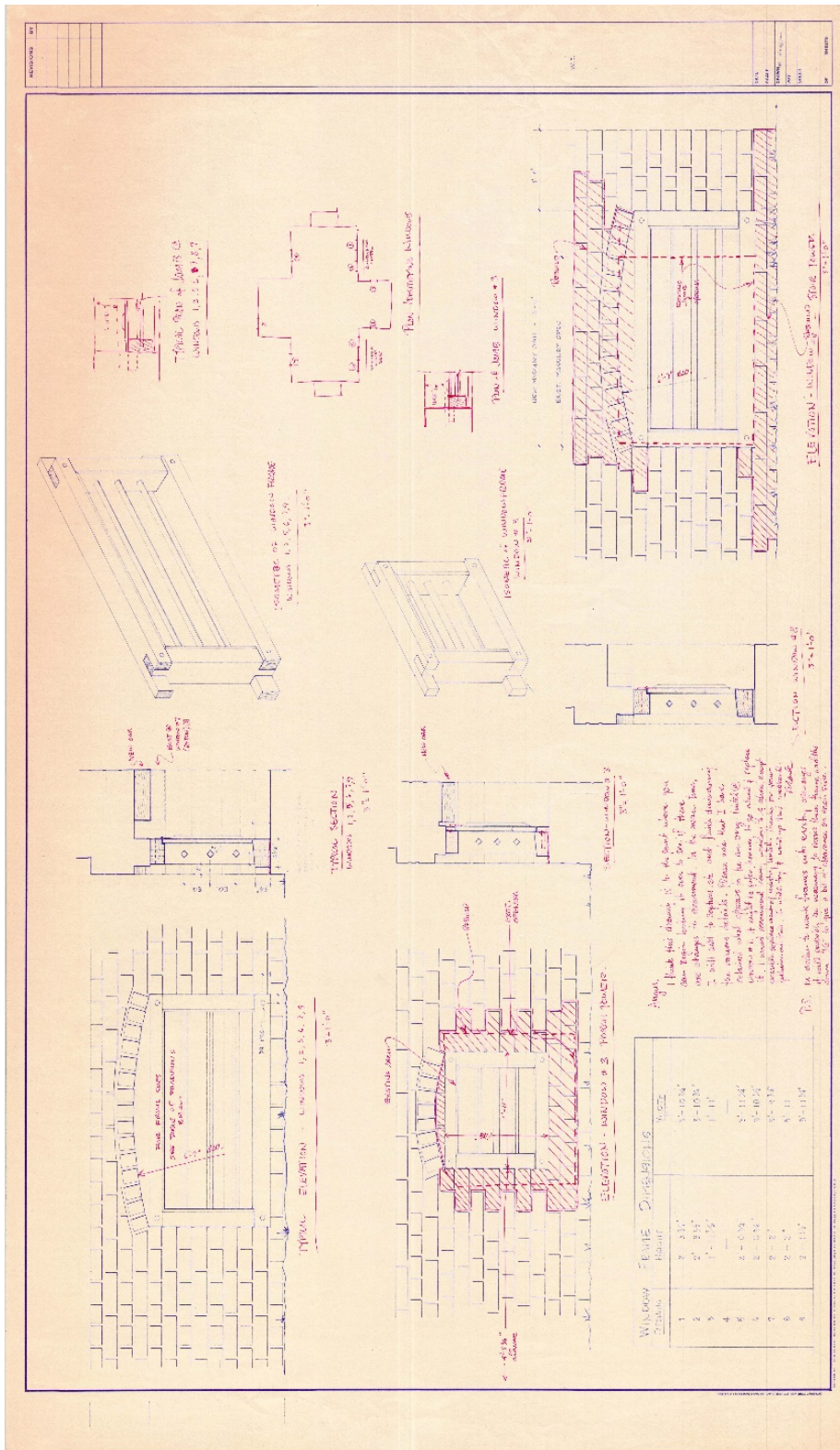


Figure 72: Bacon's Castle, basement window drawings with markup, estimated date: 1970s-1980s.

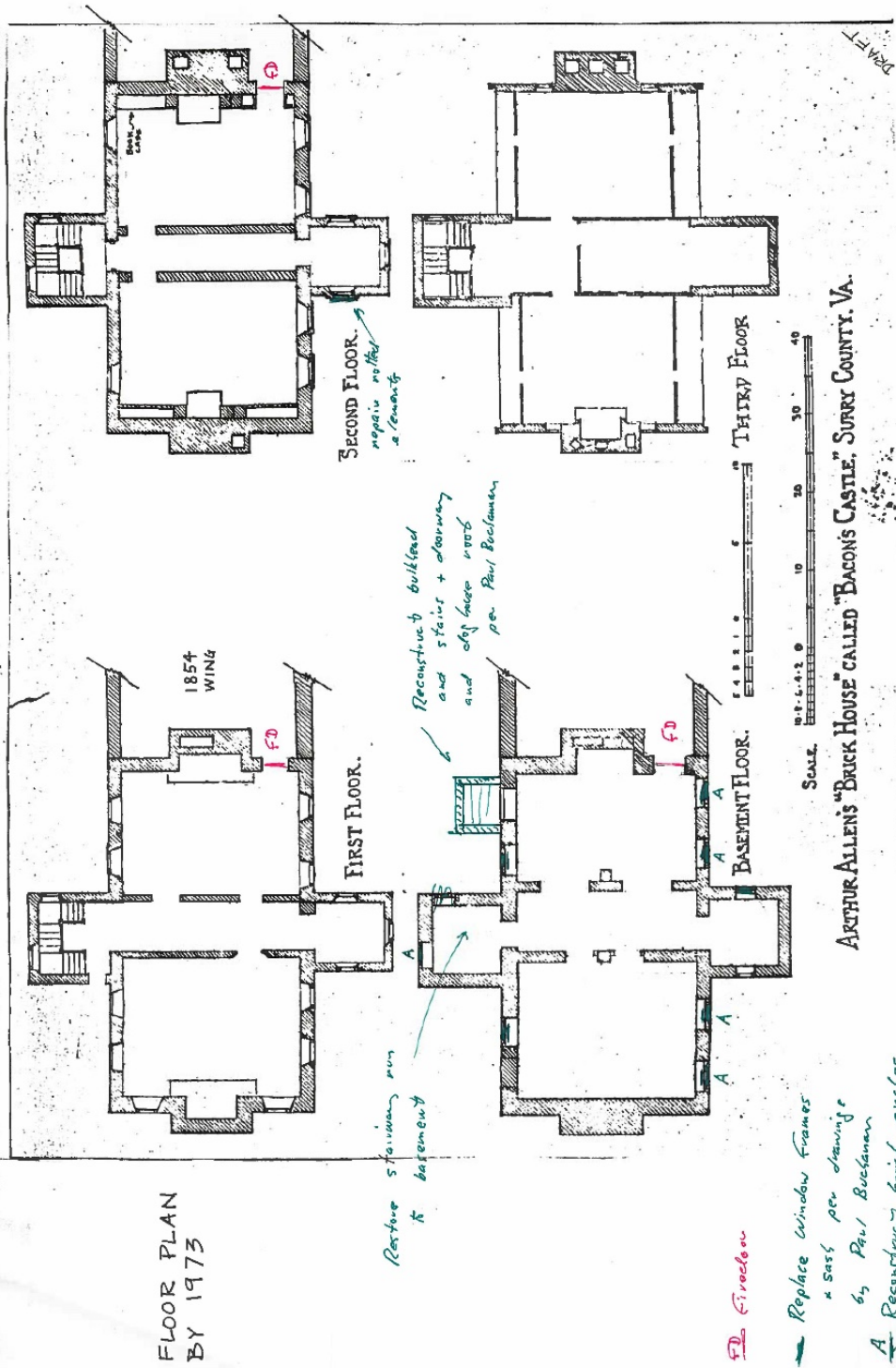


Figure 73: Bacon's Castle, floor plans with fire door locations and markup, estimated date: 1970s-1980s.

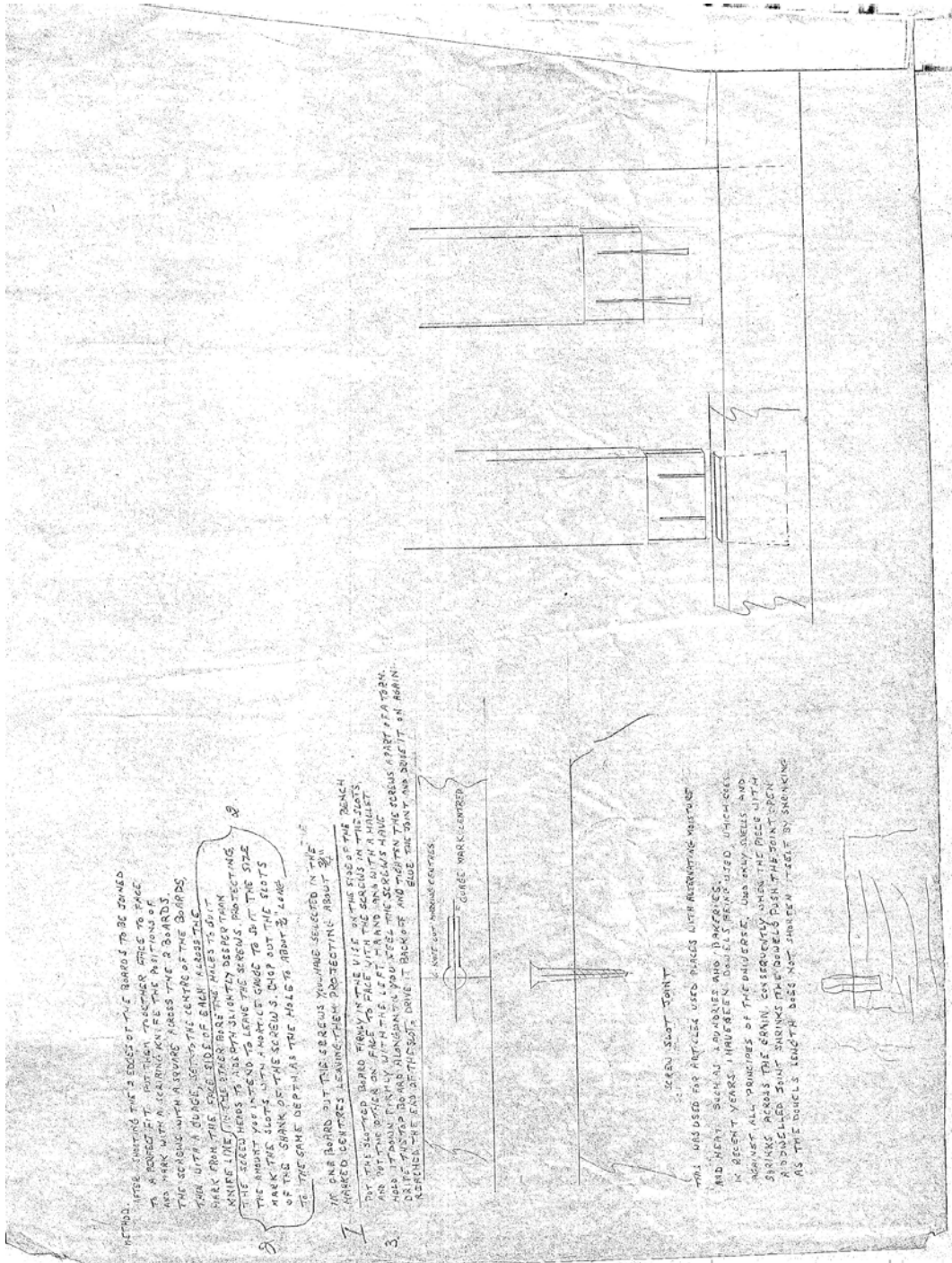


Figure 74: Bacon's Castle, wood splicing instructions, estimated date: 1970s-1980s.

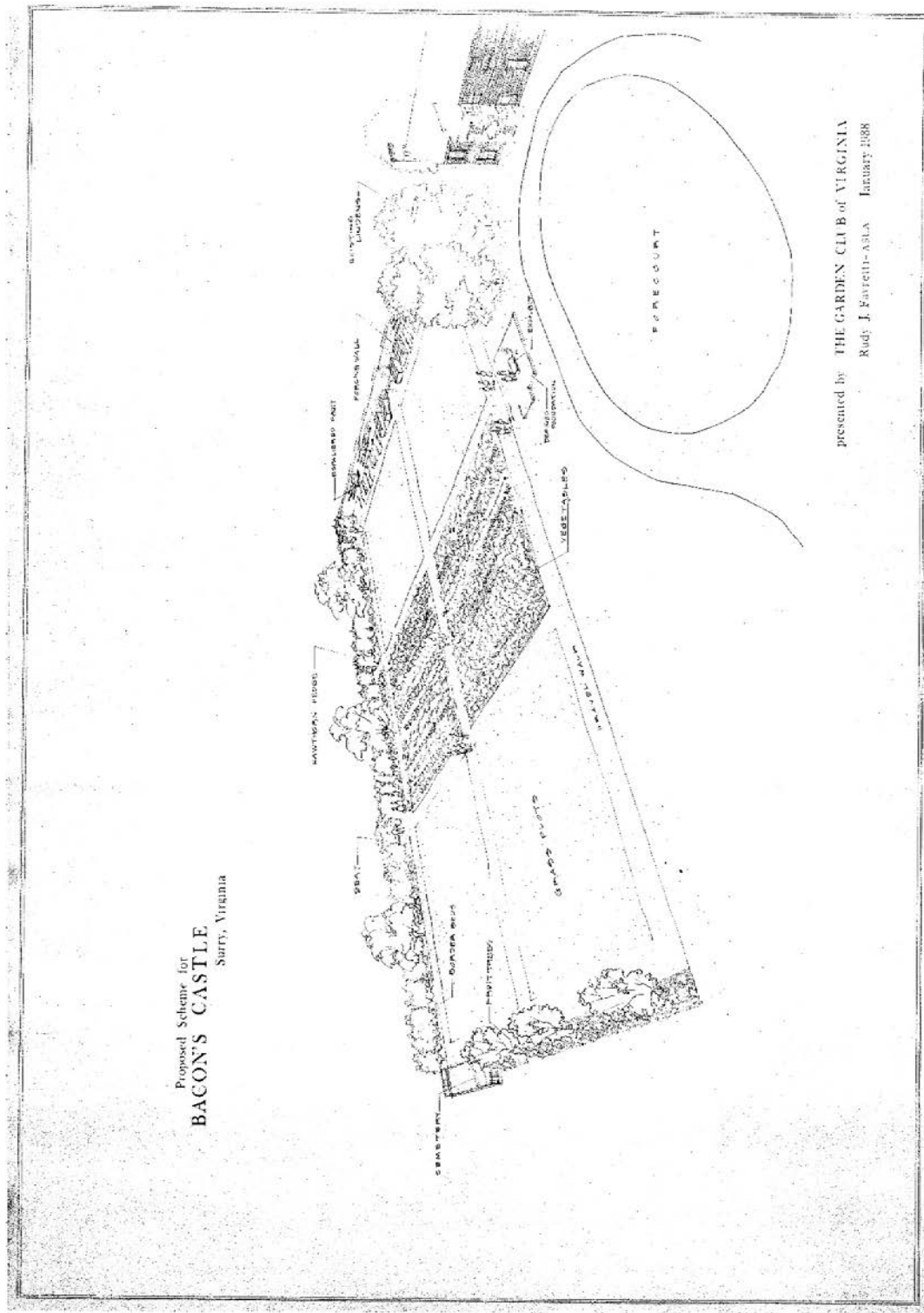


Figure 75: Bacon's Castle, proposed garden restoration, cover, The Garden Club of Virginia, 1988.

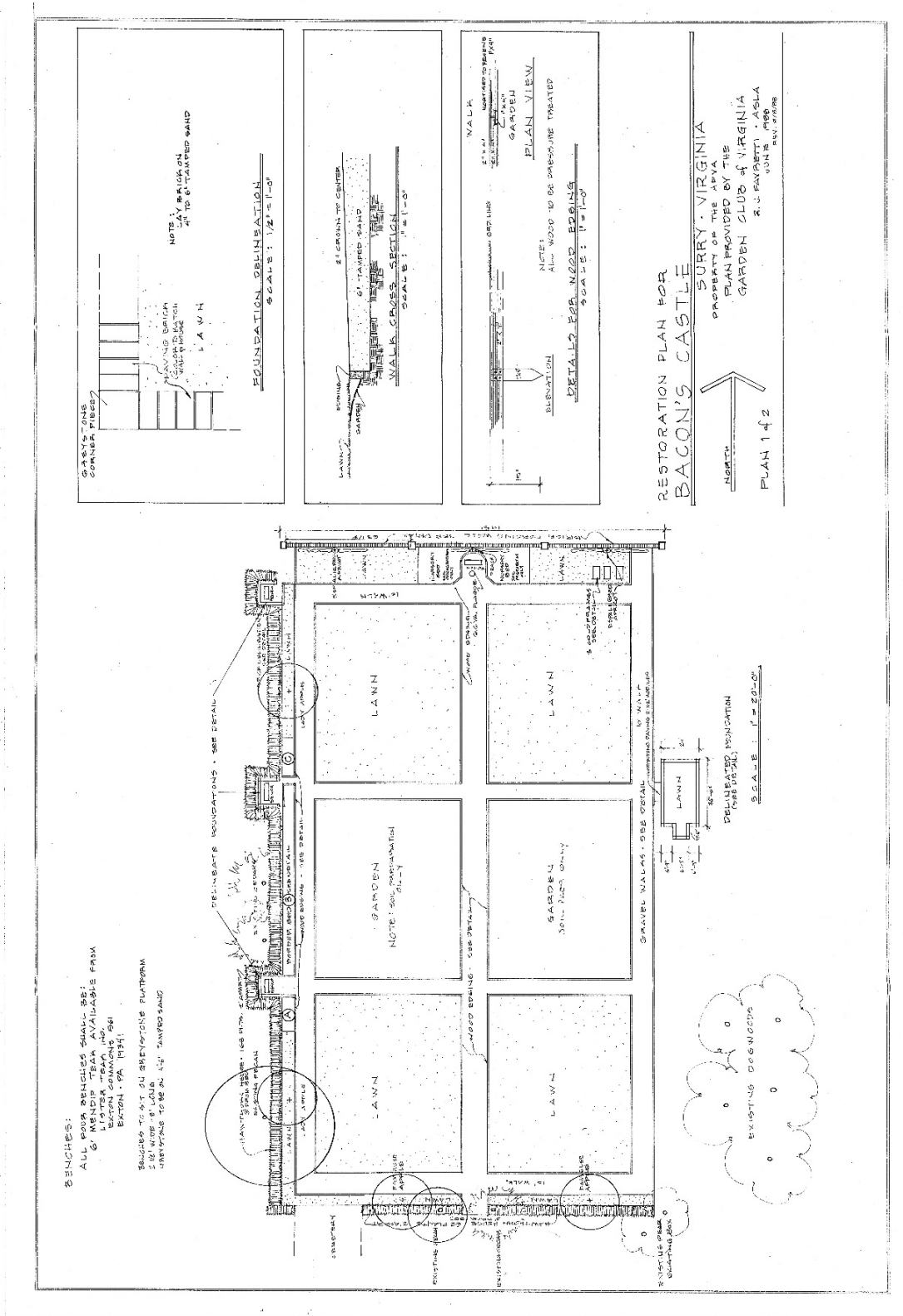
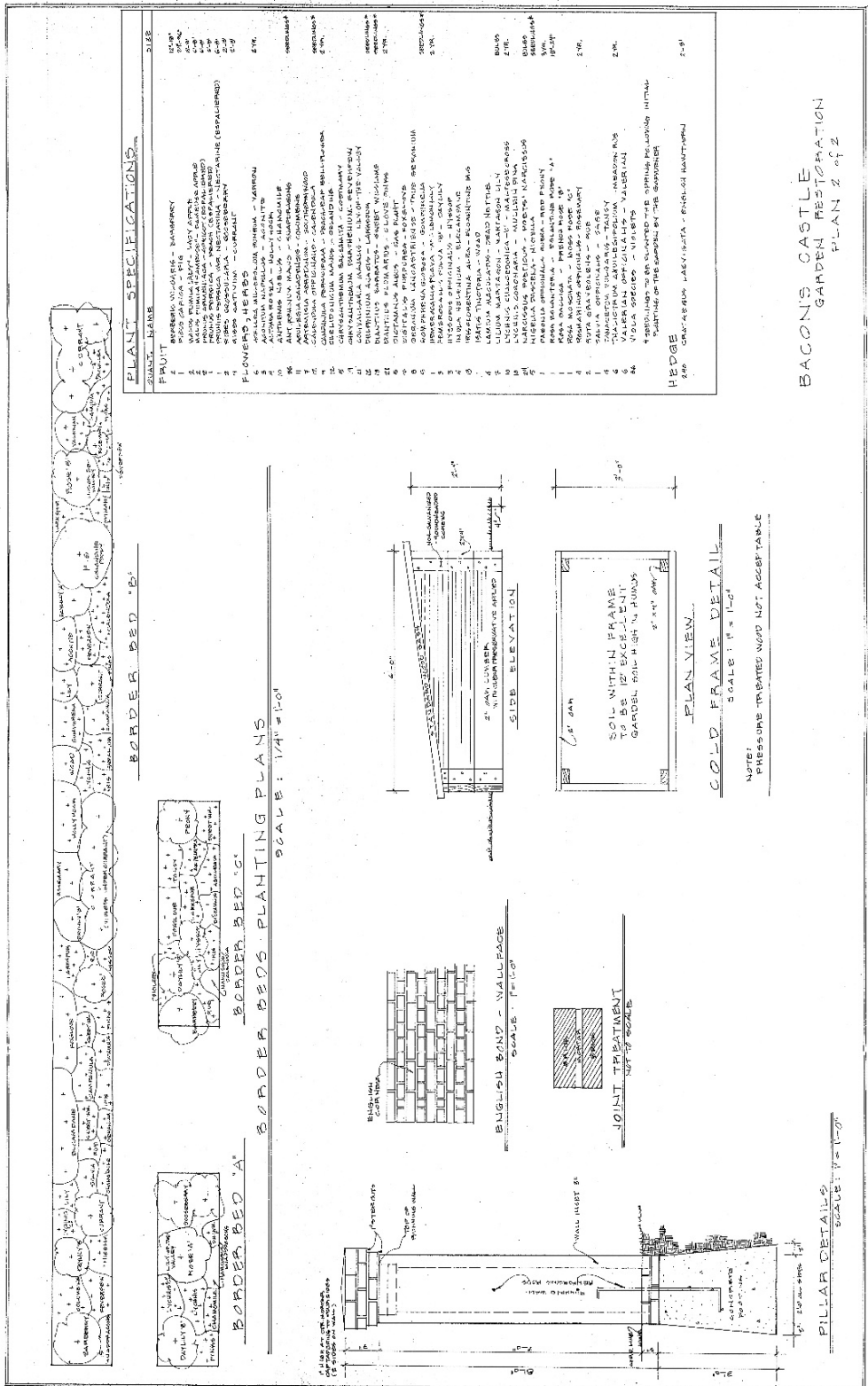


Figure 76: Bacon's Castle, proposed garden restoration, plan and details, The Garden Club of Virginia, 1988.



BACON'S CASTLE  
GARDEN RESTORATION  
PLAN 2 OF 2

Figure 77: Bacon's Castle, proposed garden restoration, details and plant specifications, The Garden Club of Virginia, 1988.



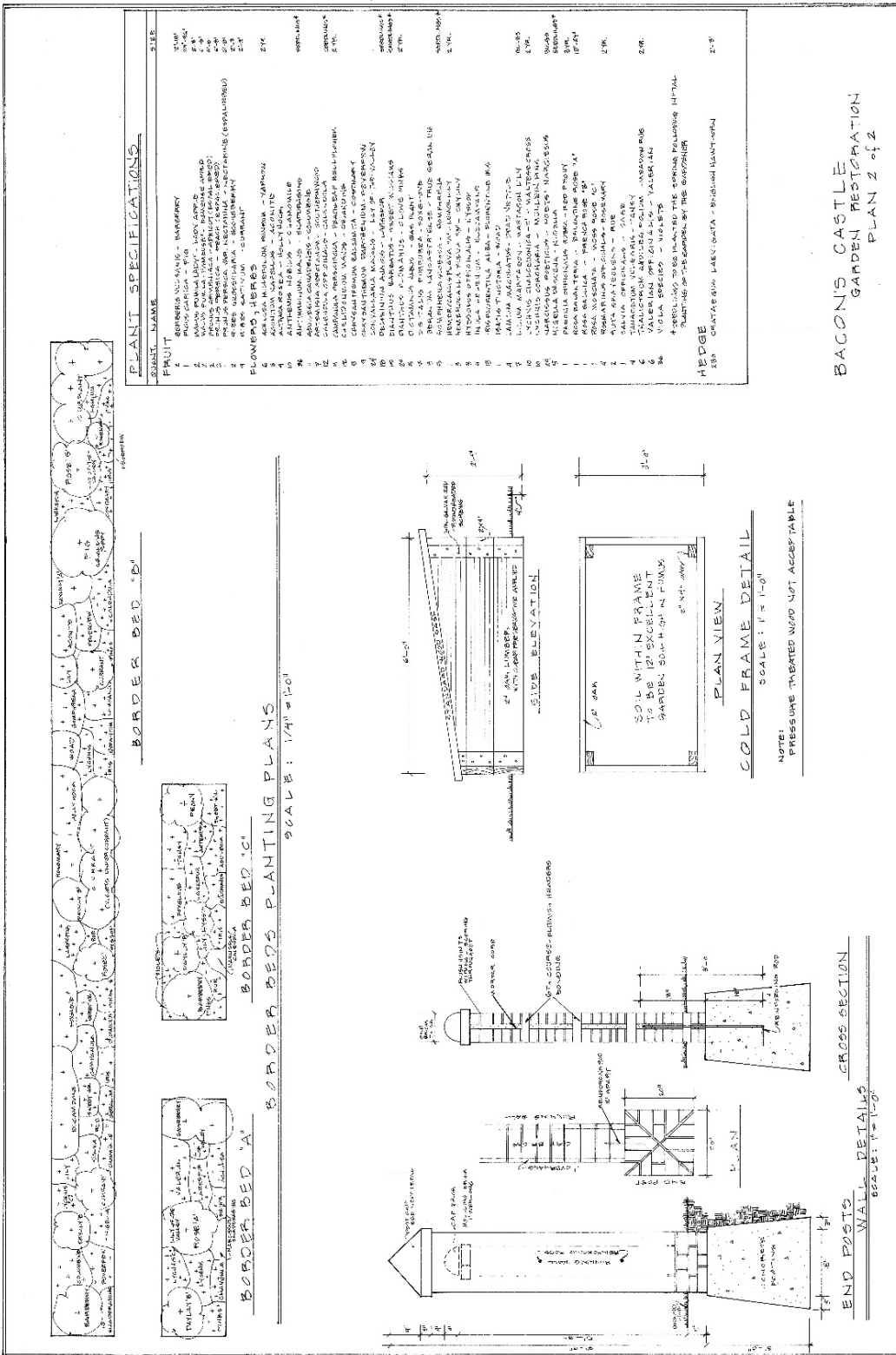


Figure 78: Bacon's Castle, proposed garden restoration, details and plant specifications, The Garden Club of Virginia, 1988.



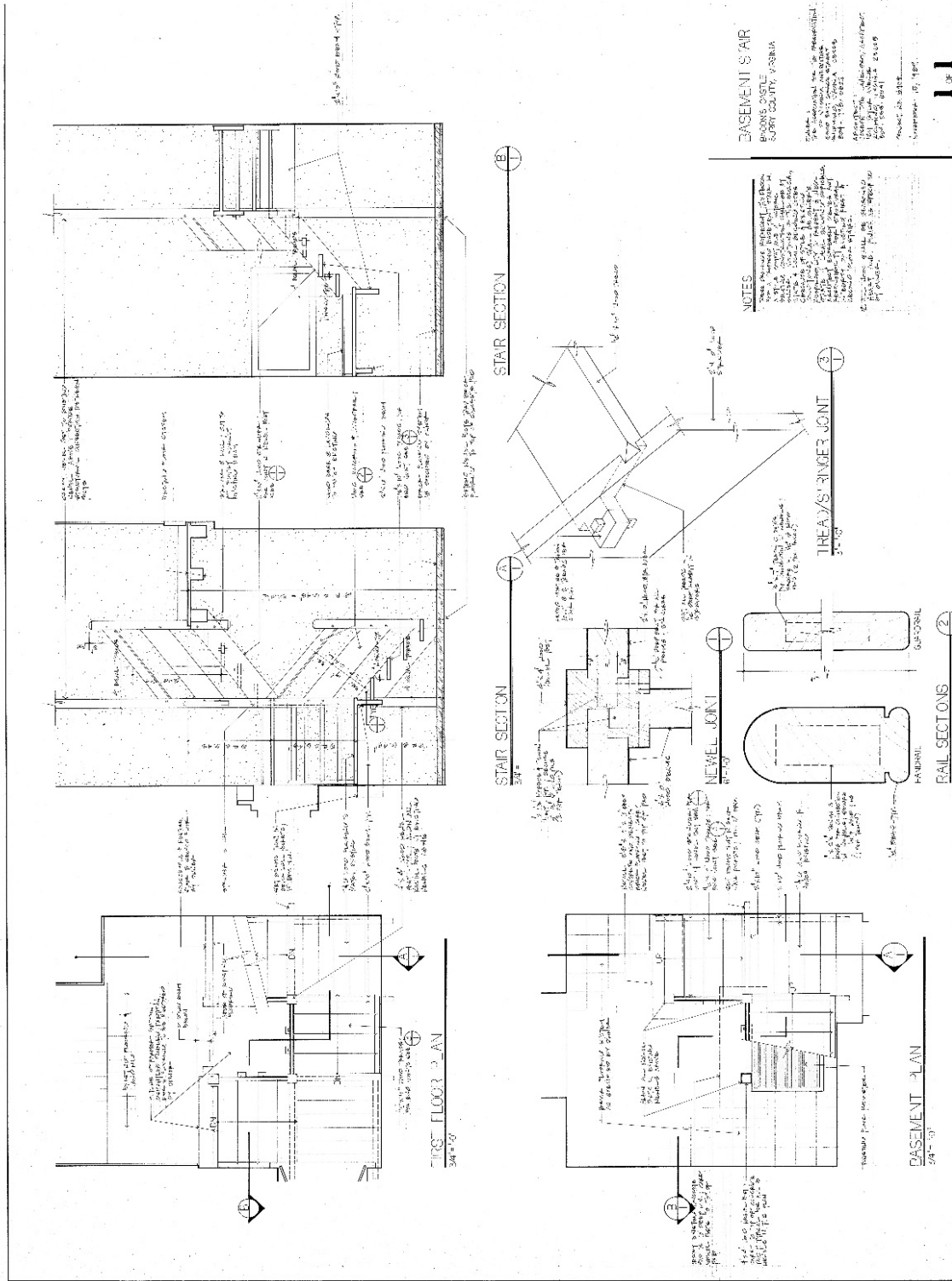


Figure 79: Bacon's Castle, proposed basement stair drawings, plans and sections, Joseph Dye Lahendro, Architect, 1989.

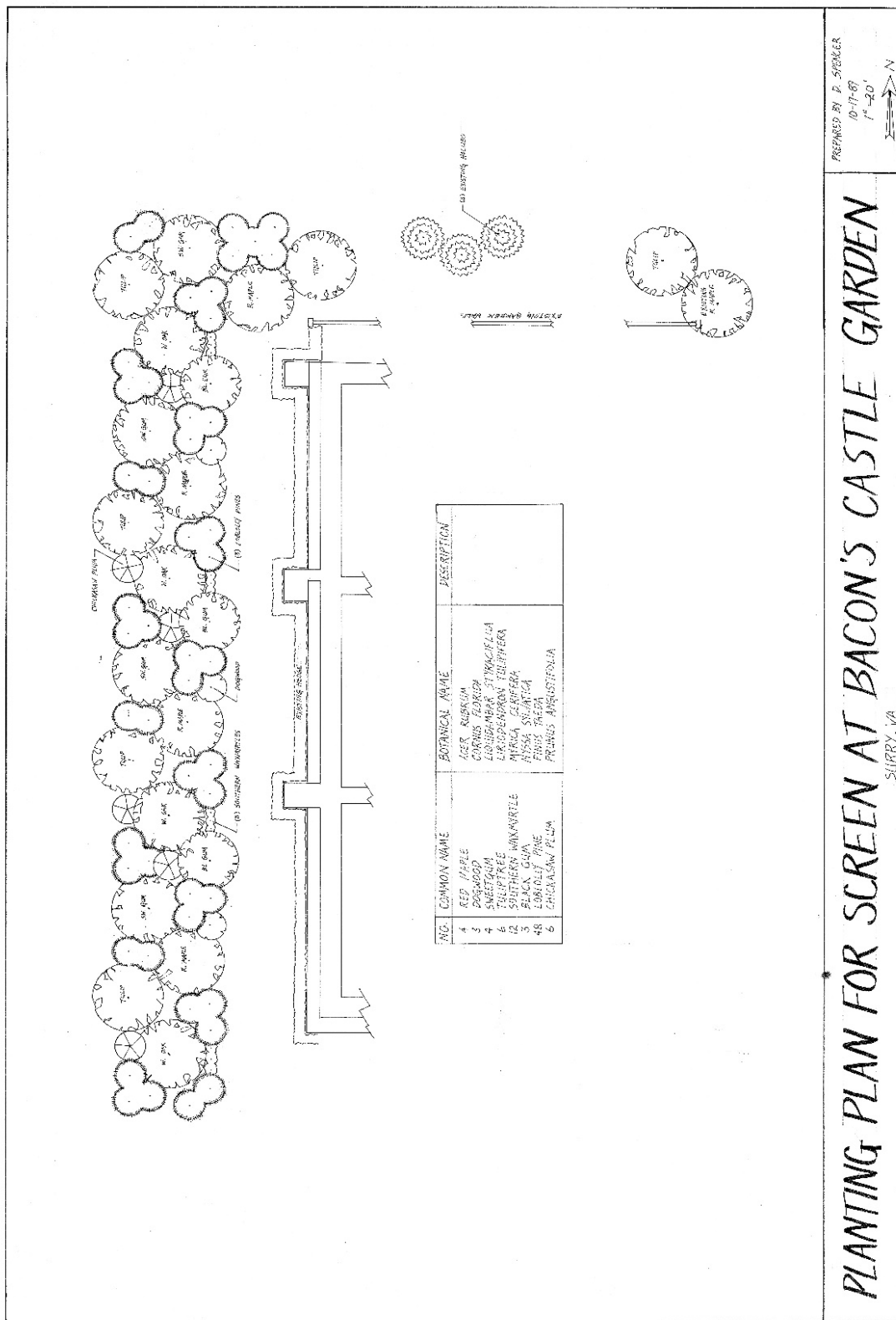


Figure 80: Bacon's Castle, planting plan for screen at garden, D. Spencer, 1989.

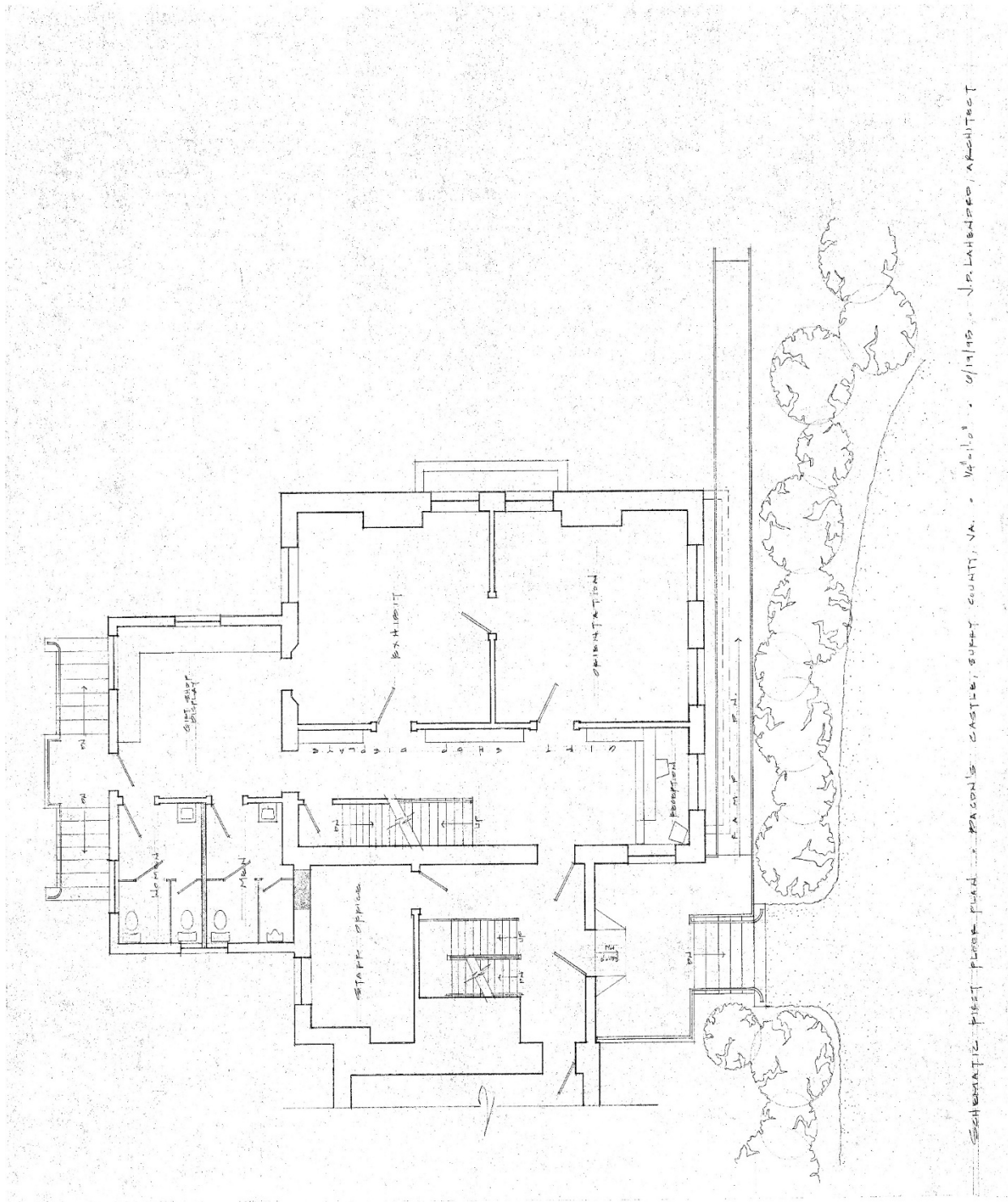


Figure 81: Bacon's Castle, schematic first floor plan for 1854 addition, Joseph Dye Lahendro, Architect, 1995.

## Appendix 7: Outbuildings – Photographs and Drawings



Figure 1: Early 18<sup>th</sup> century frame outbuilding, formerly the east addition at Bacon's Castle until removed and relocated in 1854; photo: National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 2: Photograph looking northeast from rear of Bacon's Castle toward outbuildings, including (right to left): slave quarters, shed, two barns, tool shed, stalls, and an additional barn. National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 3: Photograph looking northwest from rear of Bacon's Castle toward outbuildings, including (left to right): carriage house, peanut barn, and corn crib (according to 1940 Historic American Buildings Survey site plan). National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 4: Photograph of Castle Mill Run ruins, National Park Service, 1937.



Figure 5: Photograph of Castle Mill Run ruins, National Park Service, 1937.





Figure 6: Early 18<sup>th</sup> century frame outbuilding, formerly the east addition at Bacon's Castle until removed and relocated in 1854; photo: Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.



Figure 7: Photograph looking northeast from rear of Bacon's Castle toward outbuildings, including (right to left): smoke house, slave quarters, shed, two barns, tool shed, stalls, and an additional barn. Historic American Buildings Survey, ca. 1937.



Figure 8: Photograph looking northeast from east side of Bacon's Castle toward early 18<sup>th</sup> century frame outbuilding (far right; formerly the east addition at main house, which was moved twice) and additional outbuildings. Photo taken ca. 1900-1938. Courtesy Works Progress Administration Collection, Library of Virginia.



Figure 9: Photograph looking northeast from east side of Bacon's Castle toward early 18<sup>th</sup> century frame outbuilding (far right; formerly the east addition at main house, which was moved twice) and additional outbuildings. Photo taken ca. 1900-1938. Courtesy Works Progress Administration Collection, Library of Virginia.



Figure 10: Bacon's Castle outbuildings, aerial view looking southwest, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.



Figure 11: Early 18<sup>th</sup> century frame outbuilding, rear view, formerly the east addition at Bacon's Castle until removed and relocated in 1854. Photo taken ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.

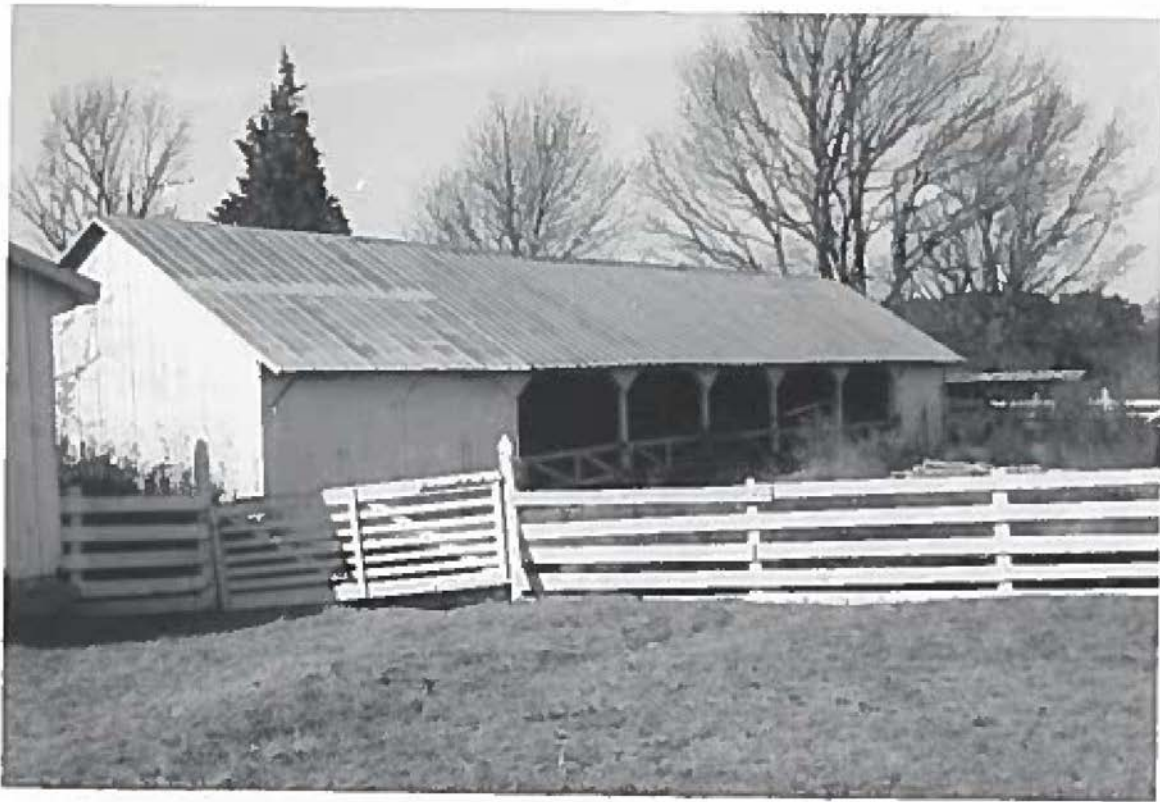


Figure 12: Tractor shed, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.



Figure 13: Smokehouse, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.





Figure 14: Barn, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.



Figure 15: Barn at far north end of property, looking northeast, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.



Figure 16: West row of outbuildings, looking northeast, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.

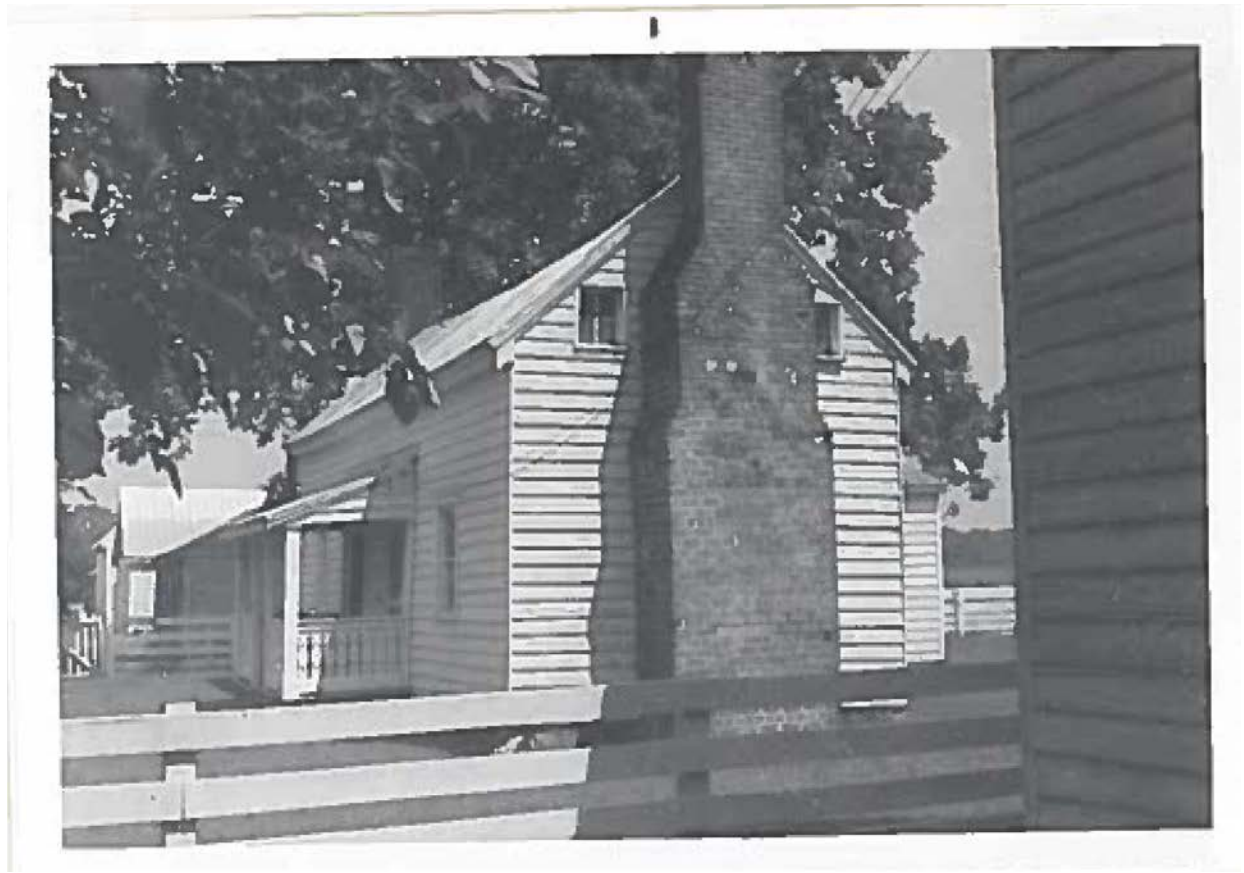


Figure 17: Slave quarters, view looking southwest, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.



Figure 18: East row of outbuildings, looking northwest, Bacon's Castle, ca. 1973. From Alexander P. Grice III, Appraisal Report, Bacon's Castle, A. P. Grice & Son, Realtors, 12 February 1973.



Figure 19: Outbuildings behind Bacon's Castle, view looking northeast, including (left to right): barn, stalls, tool shed, and an additional barn; photo taken 1975. Courtesy Virginia Department of Historic Resources.



Figure 20: Agricultural buildings project, drawing depicting Bacon's Castle and outbuildings, Colonial Williamsburg Foundation, 1981.

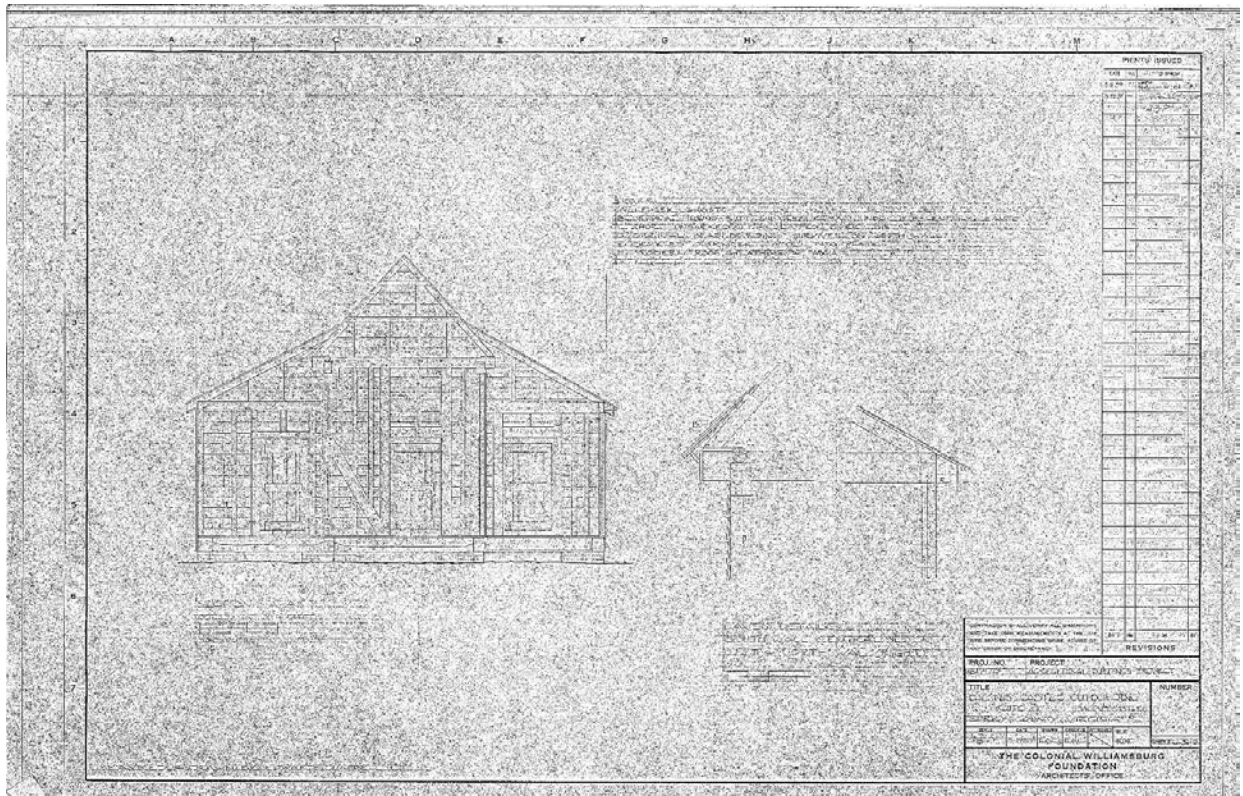


Figure 21: Agricultural buildings project, section of barn, Colonial Williamsburg Foundation, 1981.



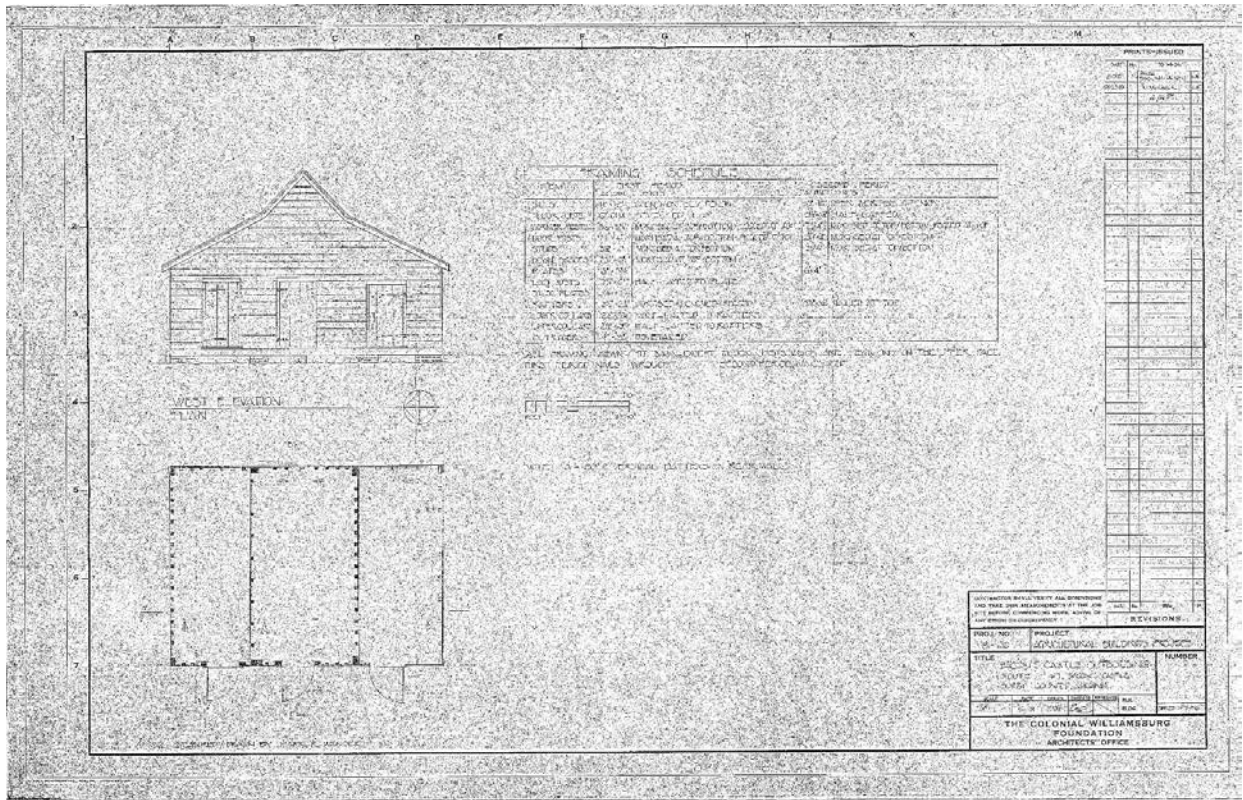


Figure 22: Agricultural buildings project, west elevation and plan of barn, Colonial Williamsburg Foundation, 1981.



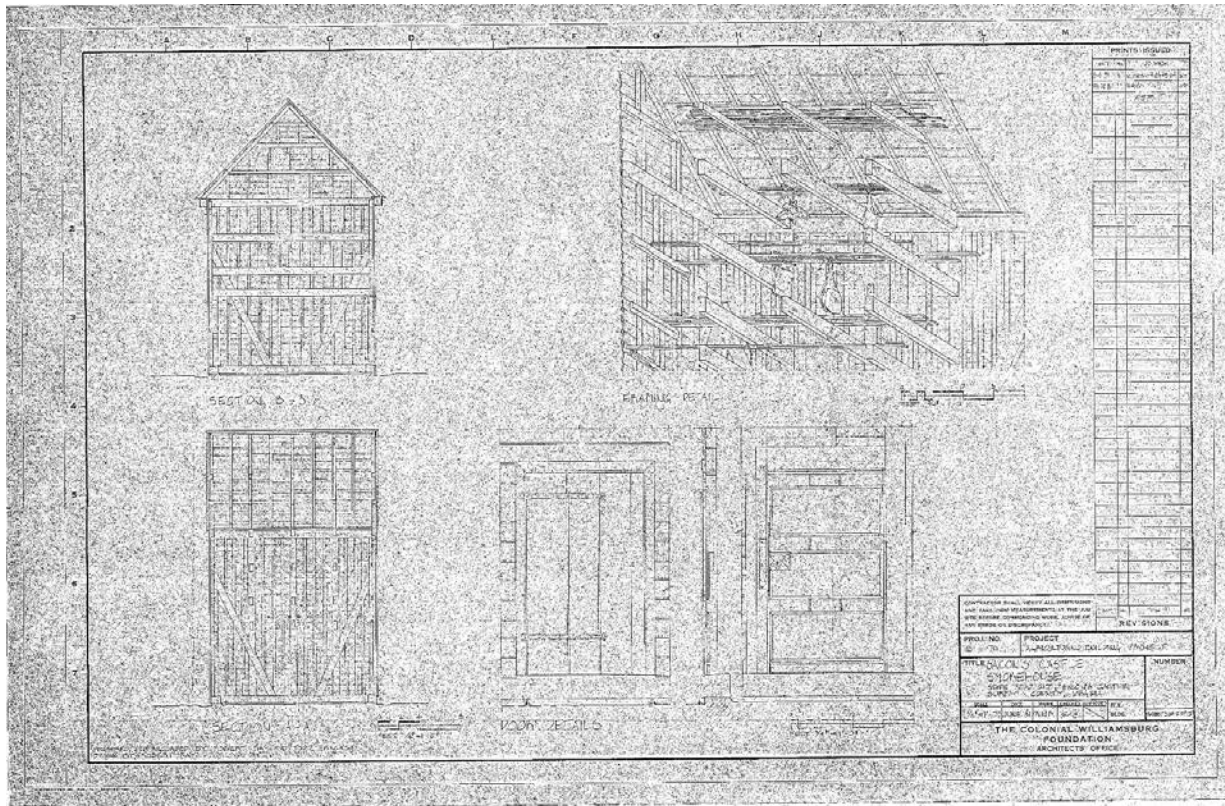


Figure 24: Agricultural buildings project, smokehouse, sections and details, Colonial Williamsburg Foundation, 1981.

## Appendix 8: Historic Site Plans

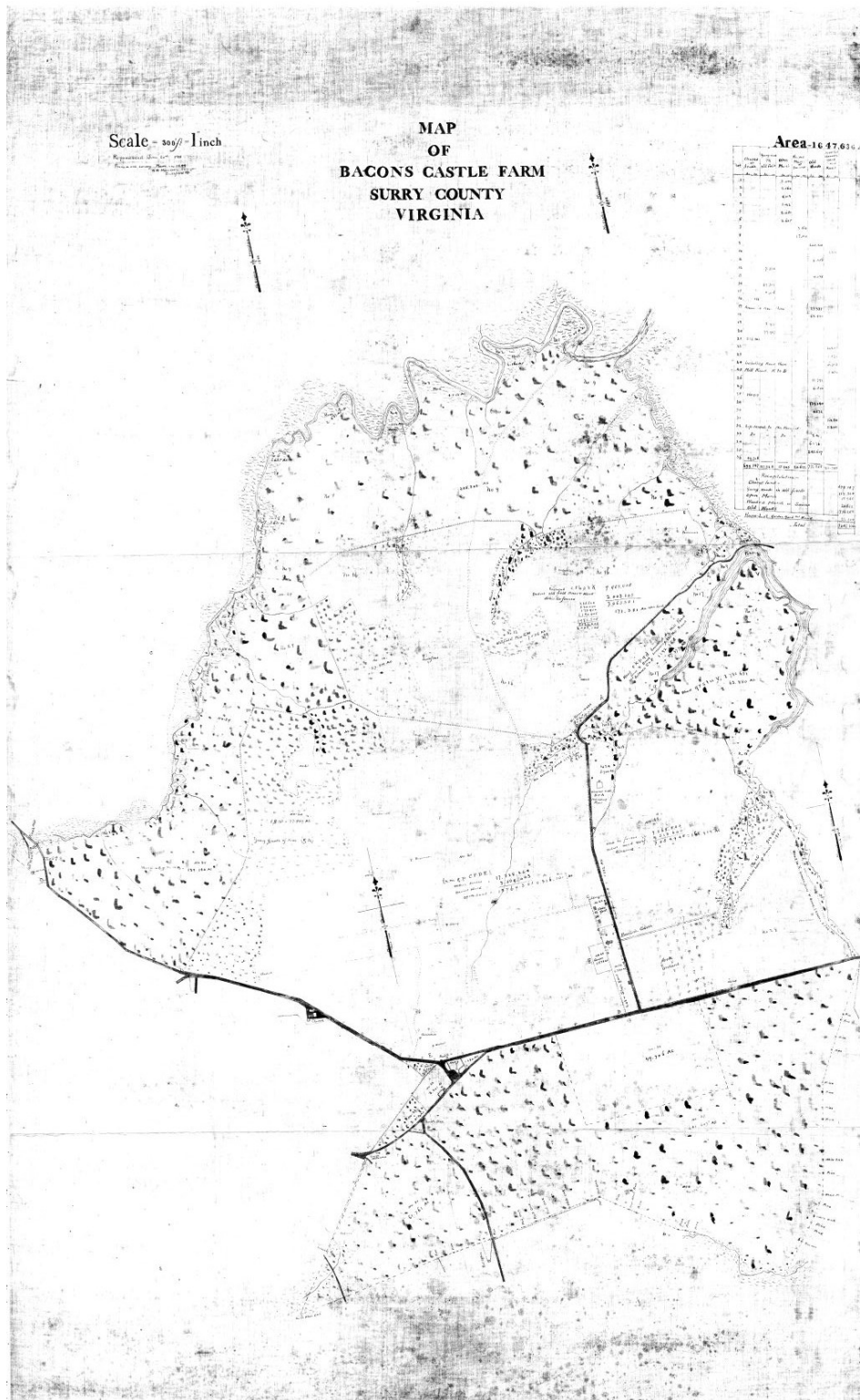


Figure 1: Bacon's Castle, site survey, 1911.

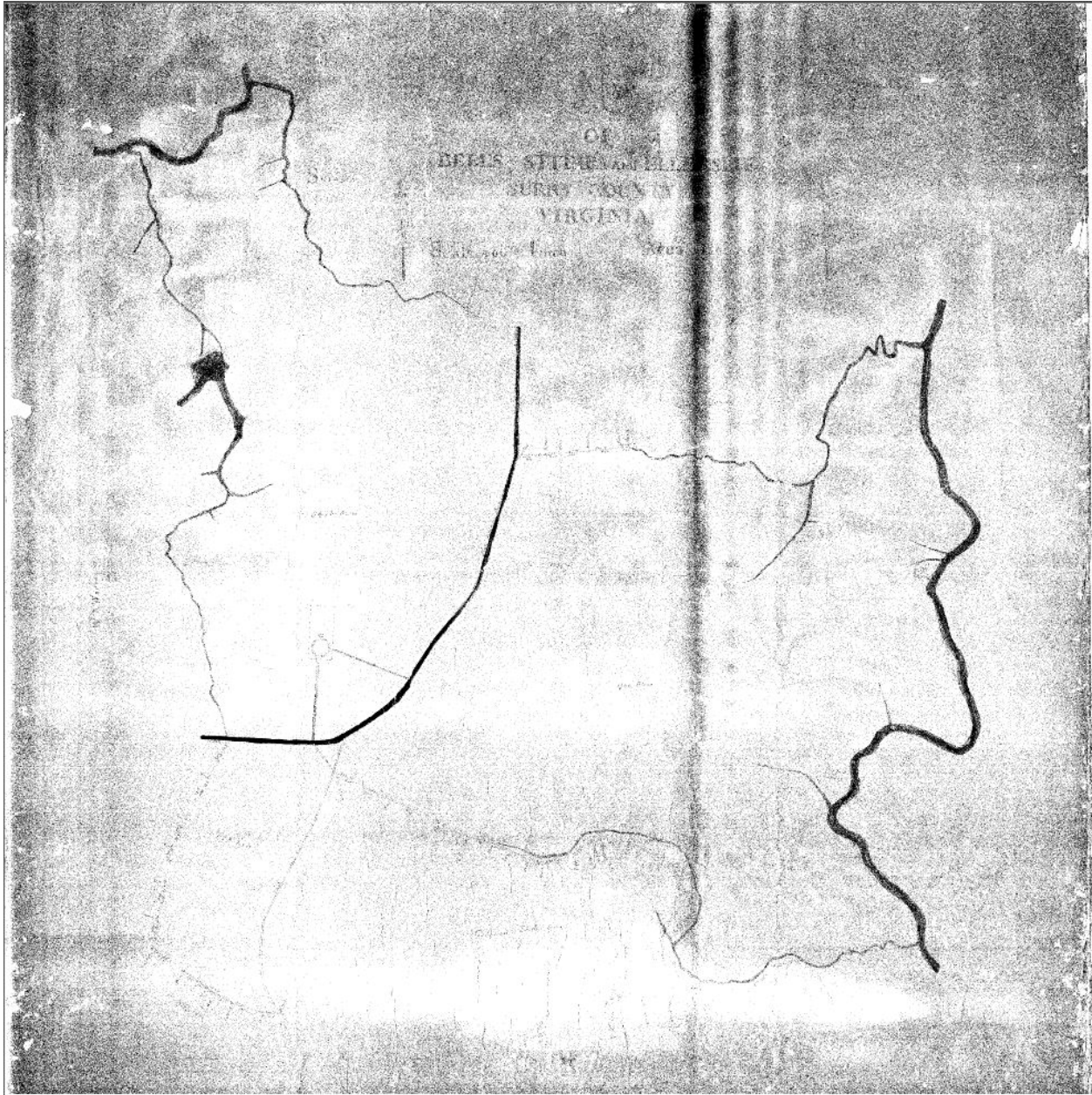


Figure 2: Bacon's Castle, site survey, 1911, reproduced from undated survey.

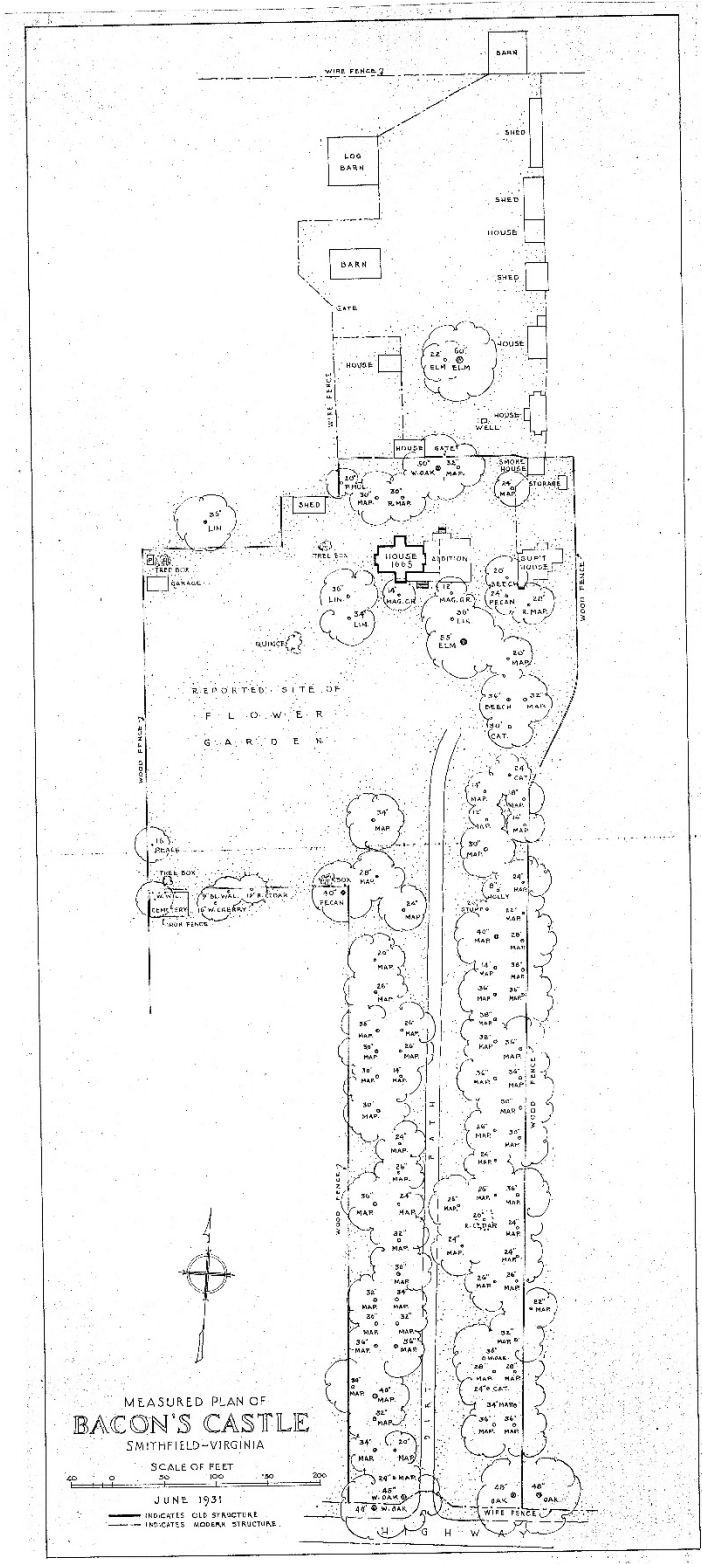


Figure 3: Bacon's Castle, site survey, 1931.

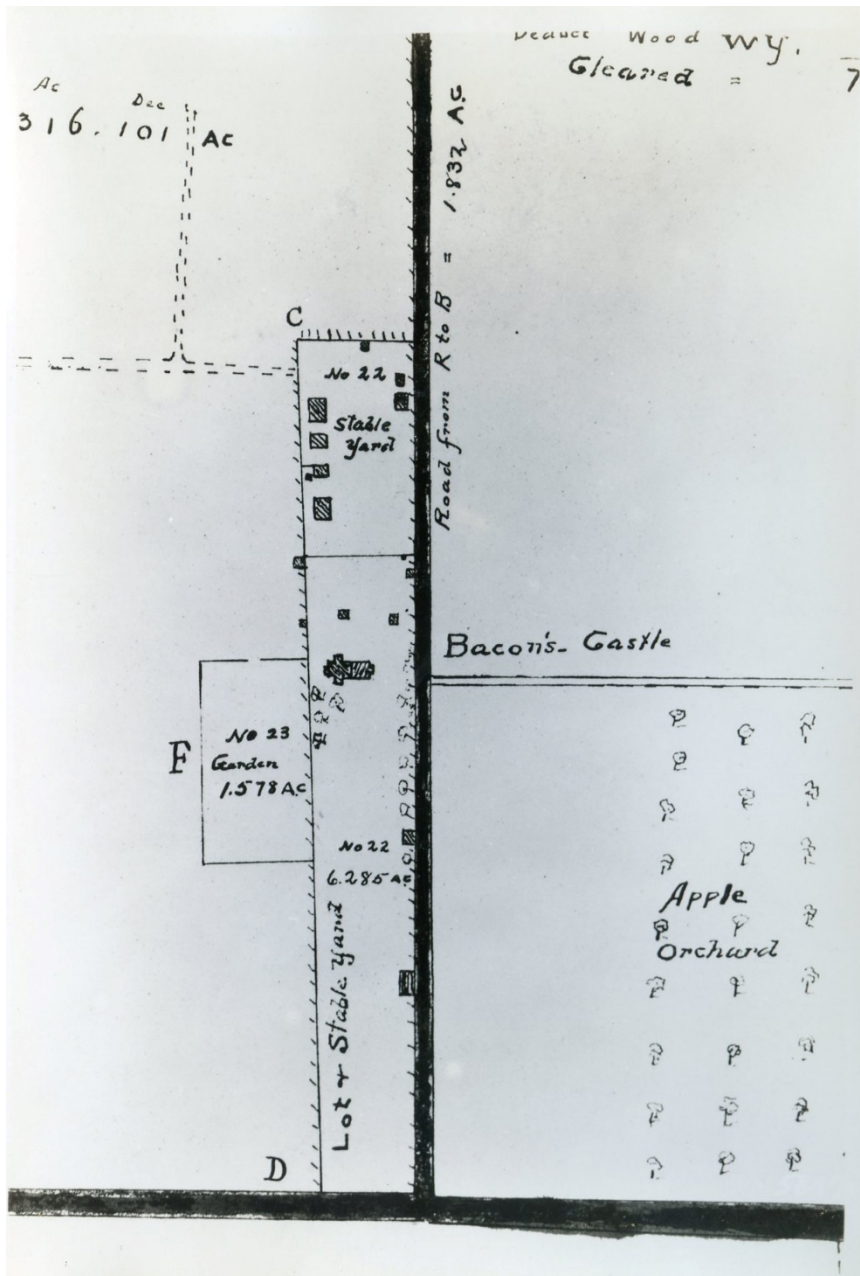


Figure 4: Bacon's Castle, site survey, National Park Service, 1937.

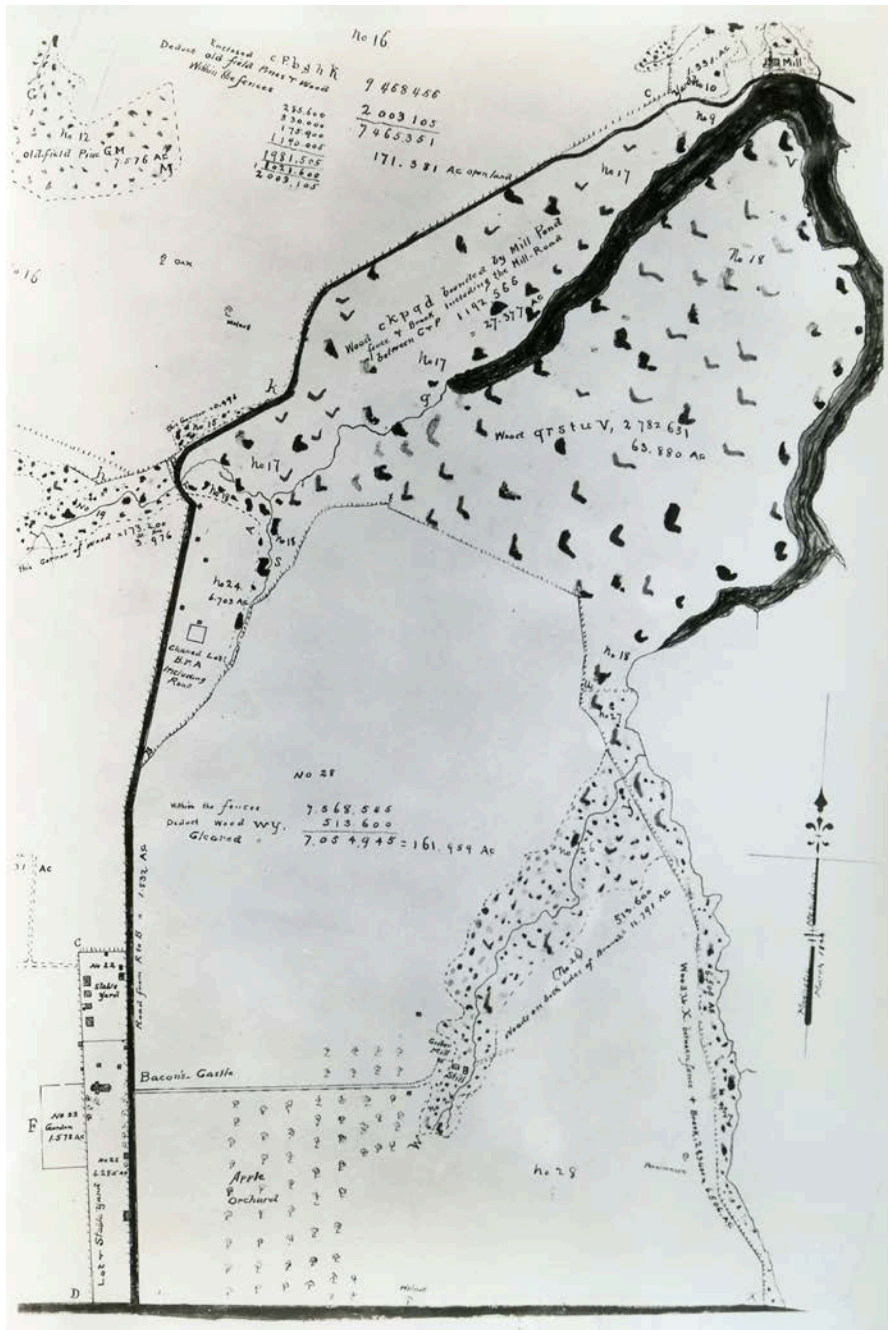


Figure 5: Bacon's Castle, site survey, National Park Service, 1937.



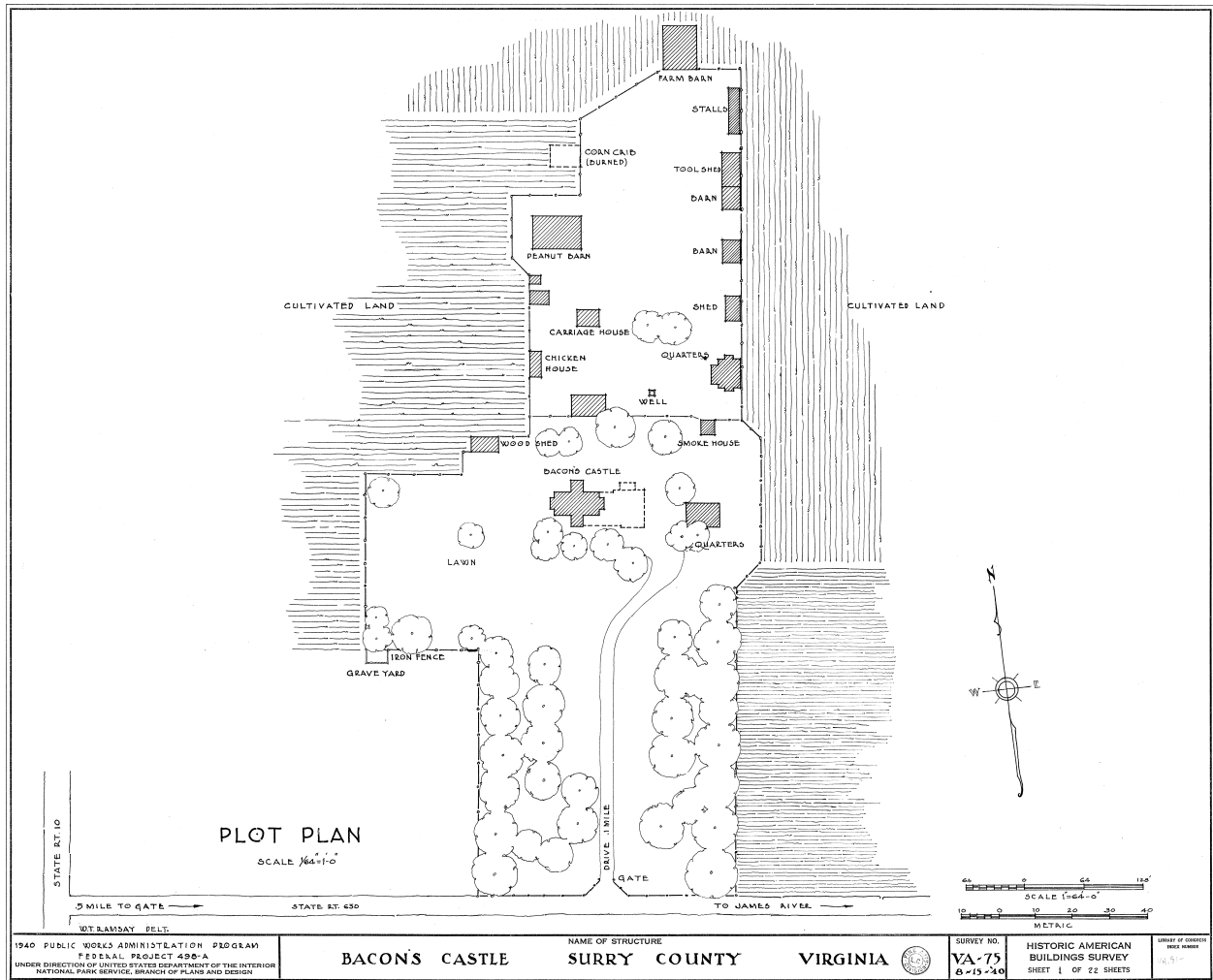


Figure 6: Bacon's Castle, site survey, Historic American Buildings Survey, 1940.

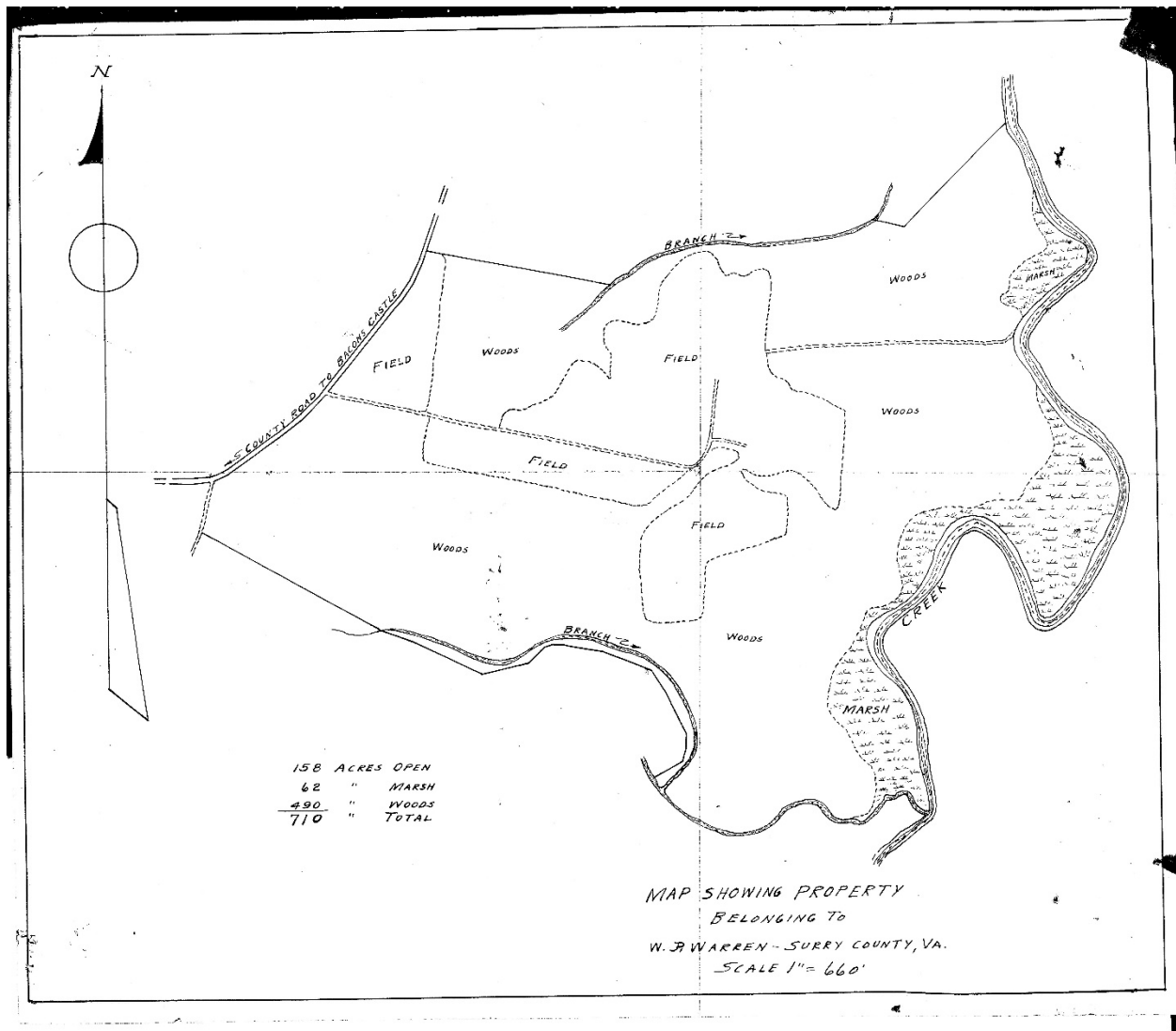


Figure 7: Bacon's Castle, site survey, ca. 1950s.

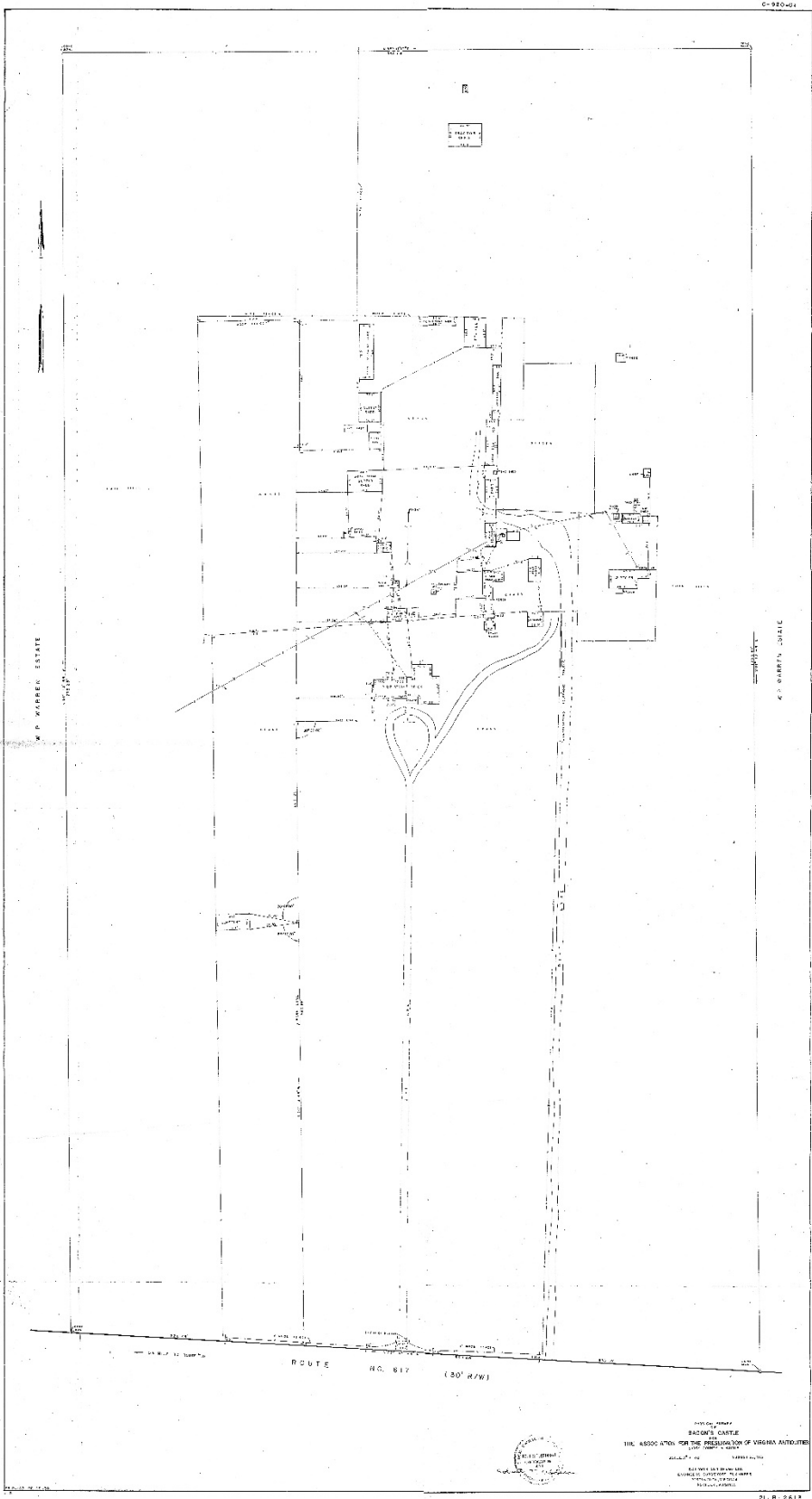


Figure 8: Bacon's Castle, site survey, Baldwin and Gregg, Ltd., 1973.

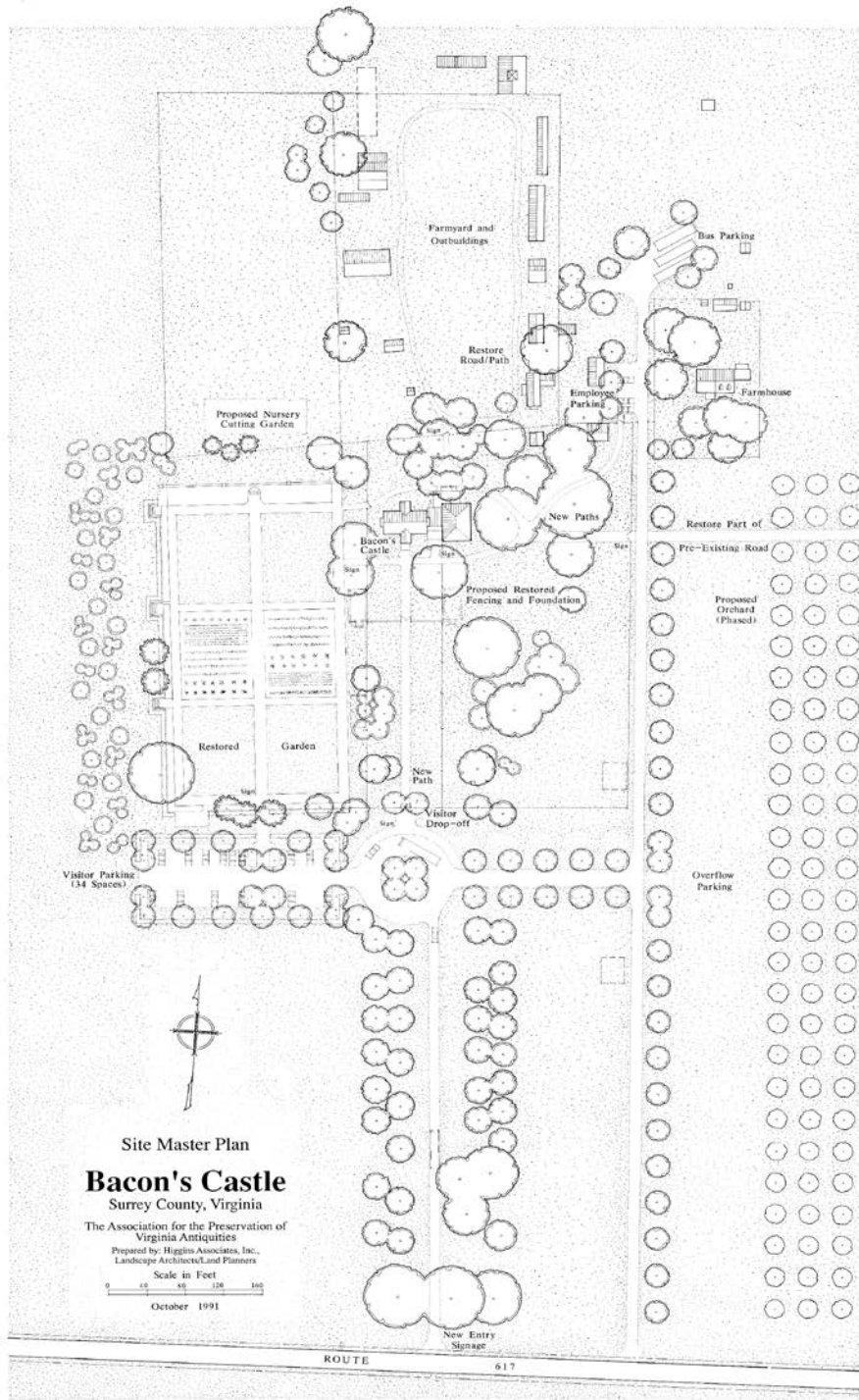


Figure 9: Bacon's Castle, site survey, Higgins Associates, Inc., 1991.

## Appendix 9: Historic Maps

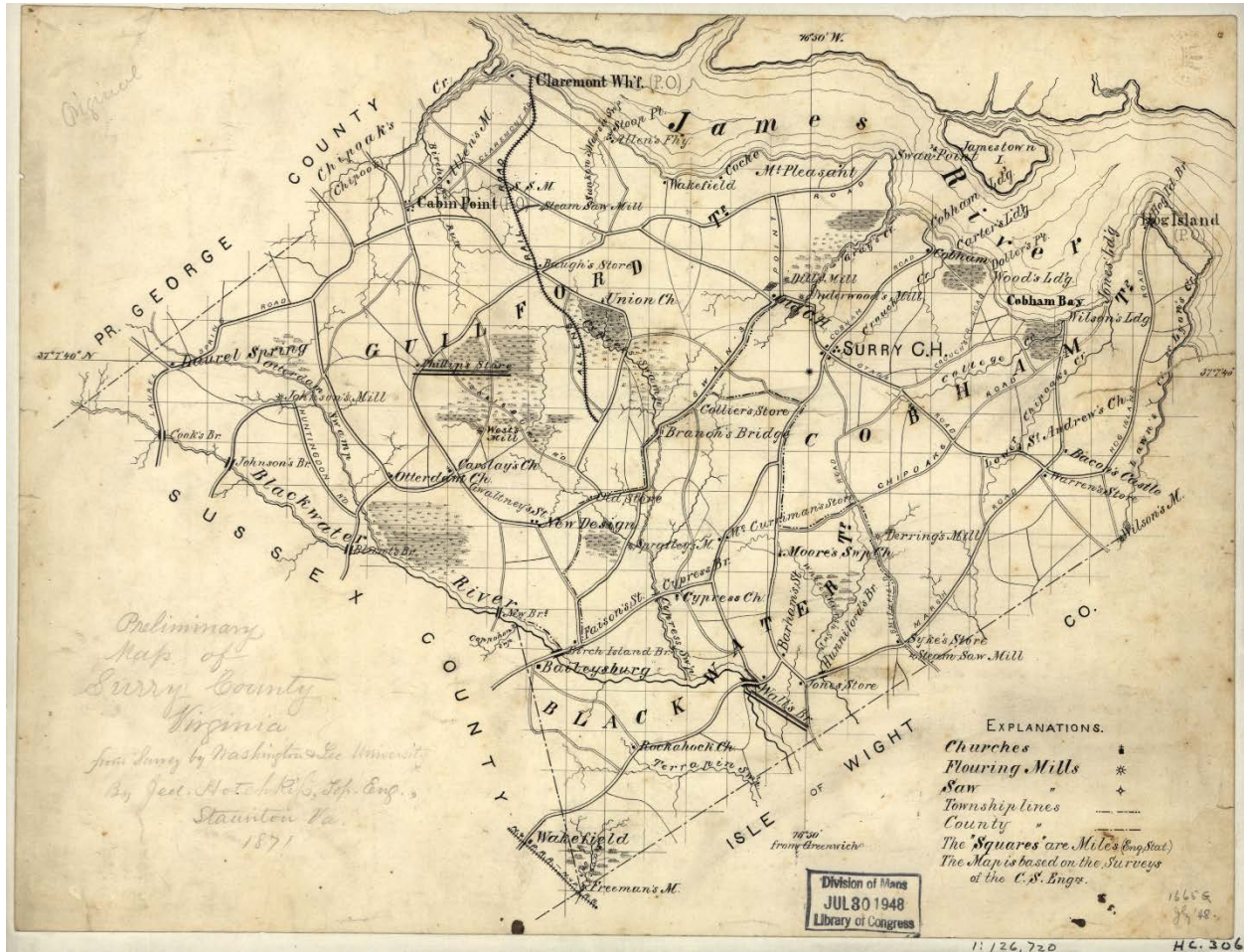


Figure 1: Preliminary Map of Surry County, Virginia, from survey by Washington & Lee University, by Jedediah Hotchkiss, Staunton, Virginia, 1871.



Figure 2: Map of Yorktown Quadrangle, Department of the Interior, U.S. Geological Survey, 1932 (reprint; original map dates to 1907).

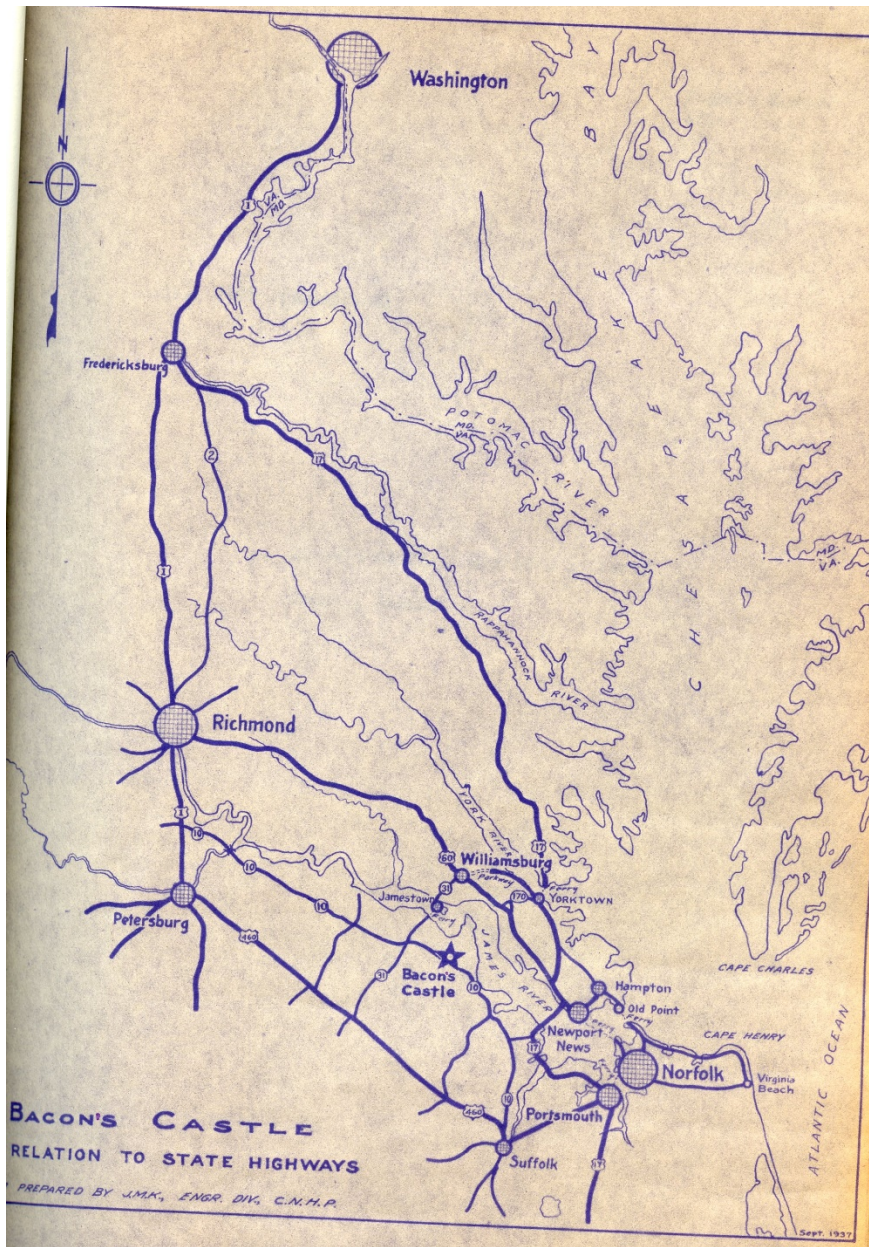


Figure 3: Map, Bacon's Castle: Relation to State Highways, National Park Service, 1937.

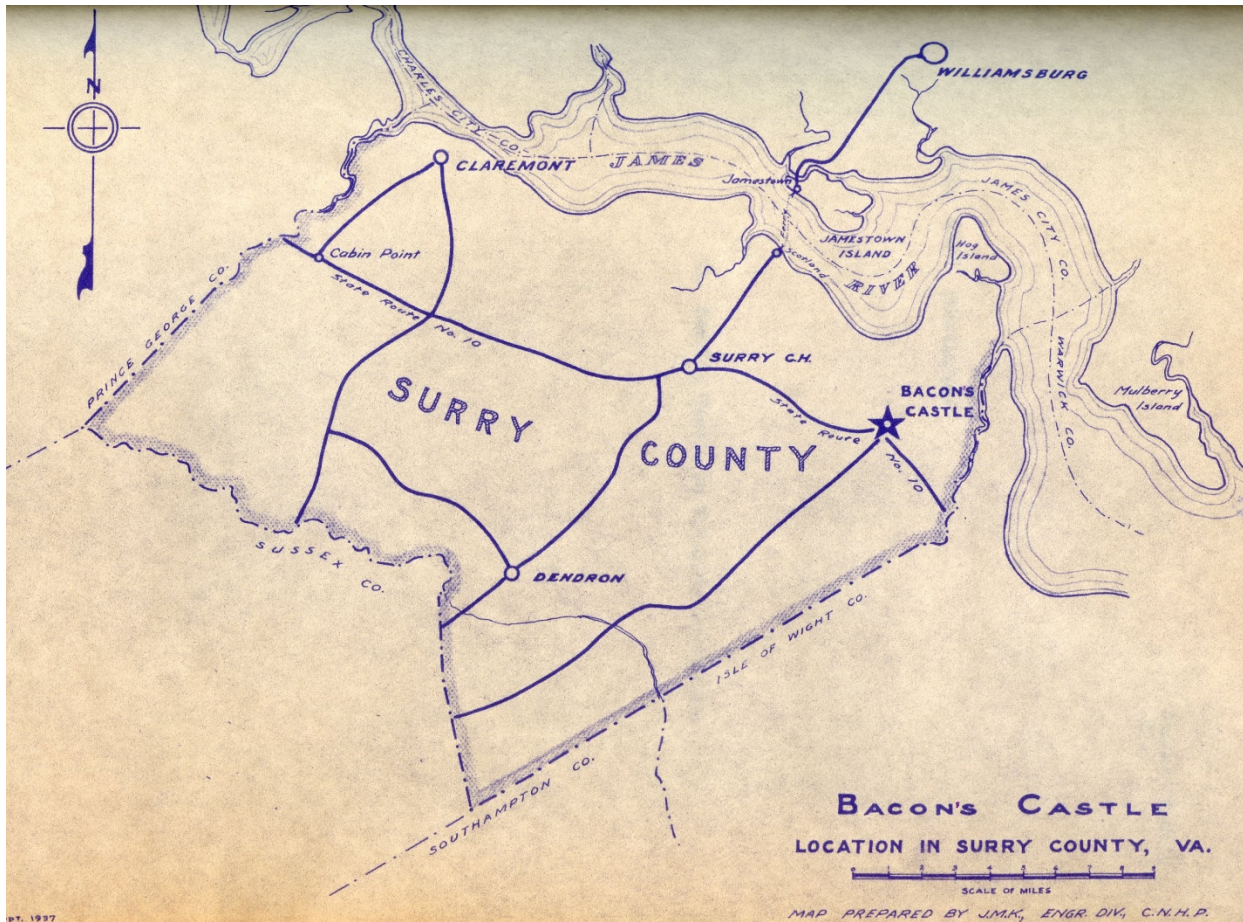


Figure 4: Map, Bacon's Castle: Location in Surry County, VA, National Park Service, 1937.



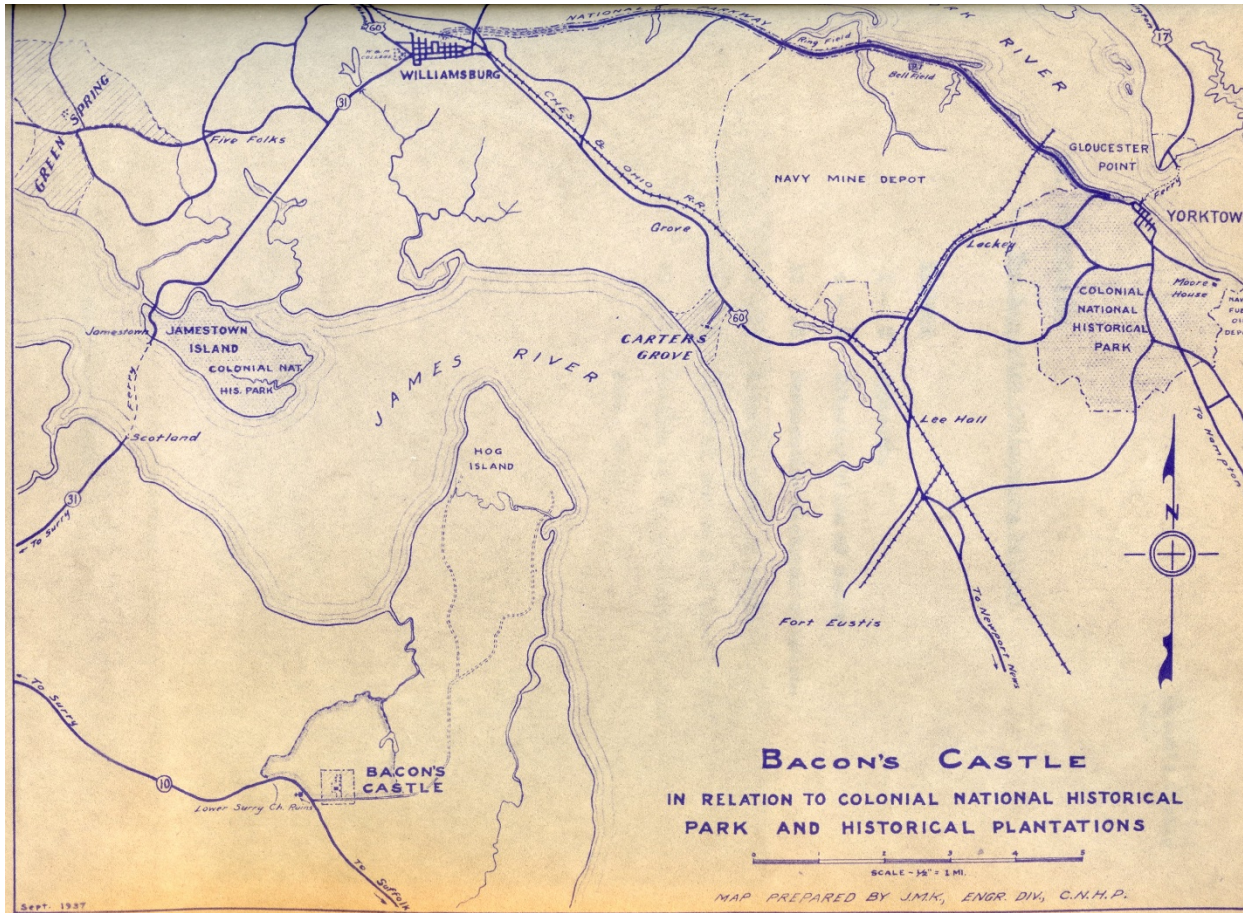


Figure 5: Map, Bacon's Castle in Relation to Colonial National Historical Park and Historical Plantations, National Park Service, 1937.

# Appendix 10: Museum Route

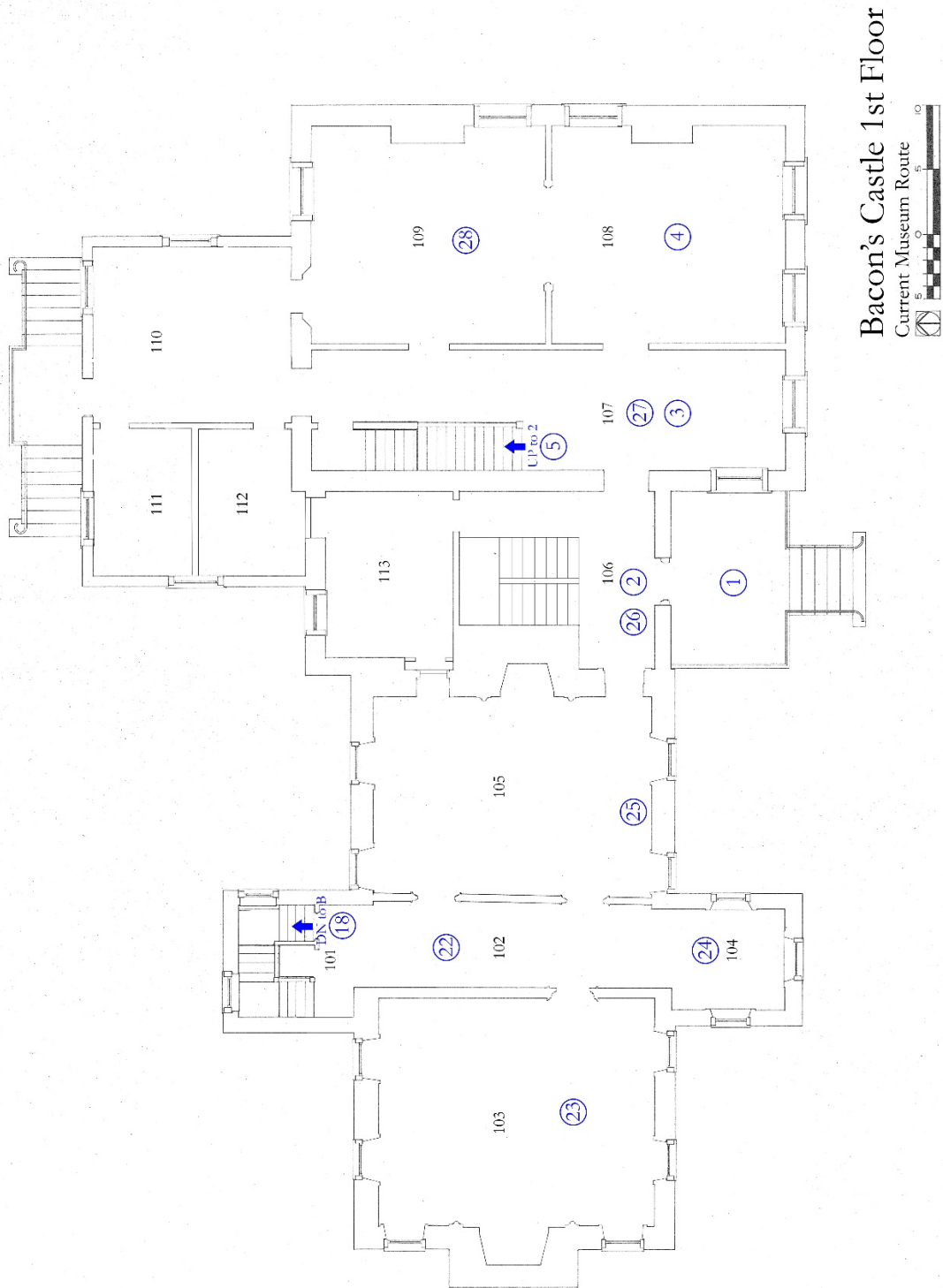
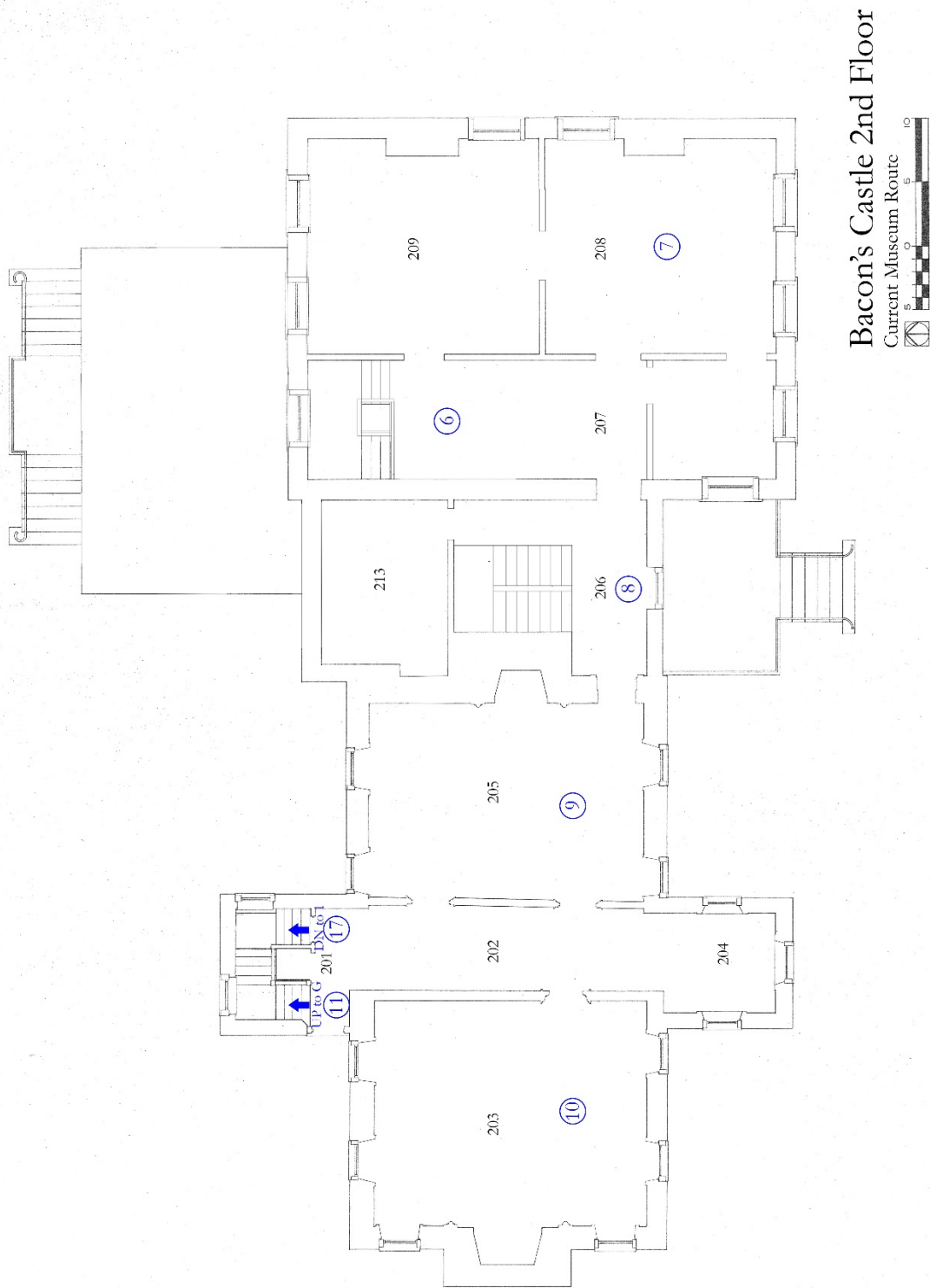


Figure 1: Current Museum Route, First Floor.





Bacon's Castle 2nd Floor

Current Museum Route

Figure 2: Current Museum Route, Second Floor.



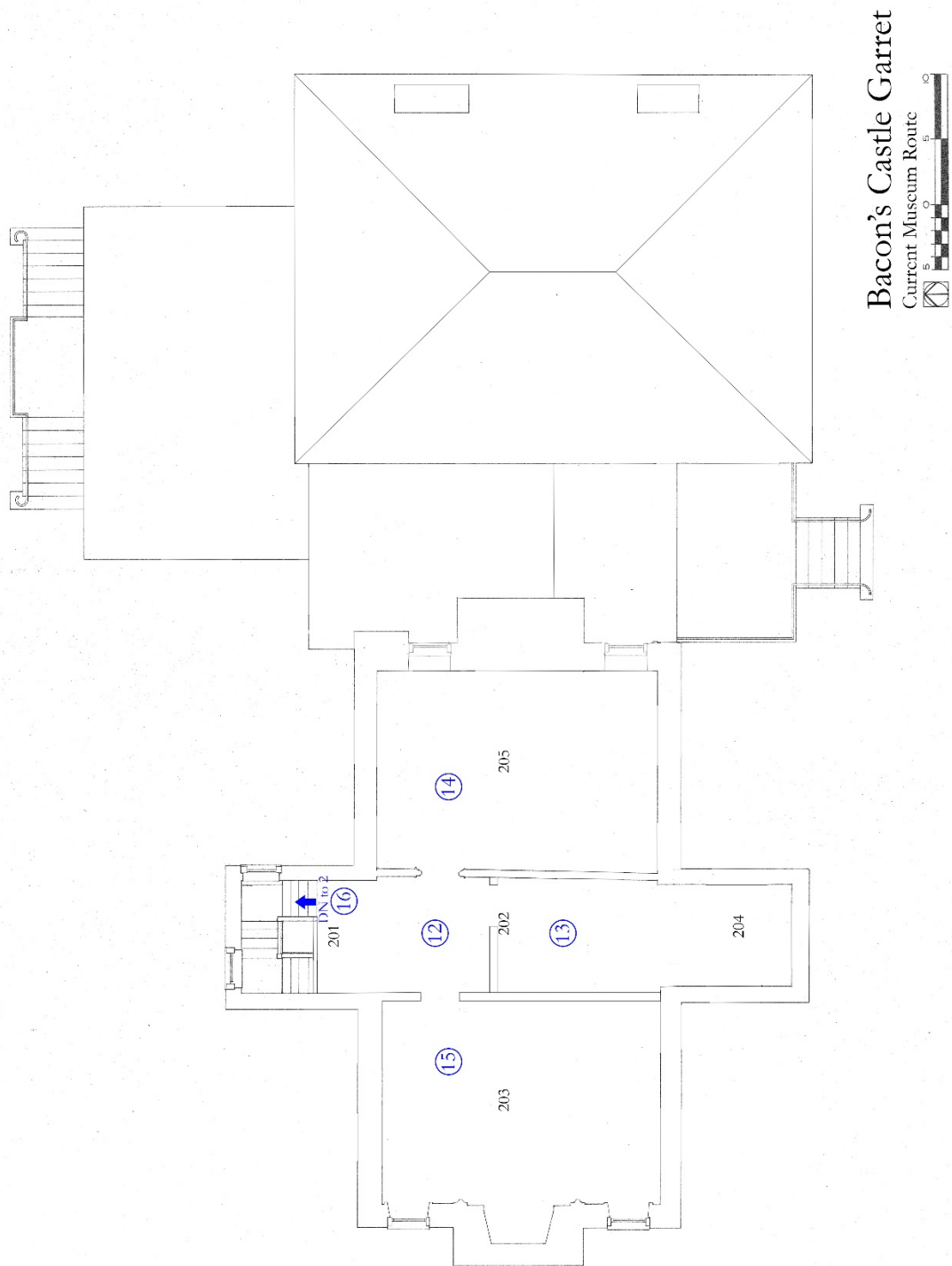


Figure 3: Current Museum Route, Garret.

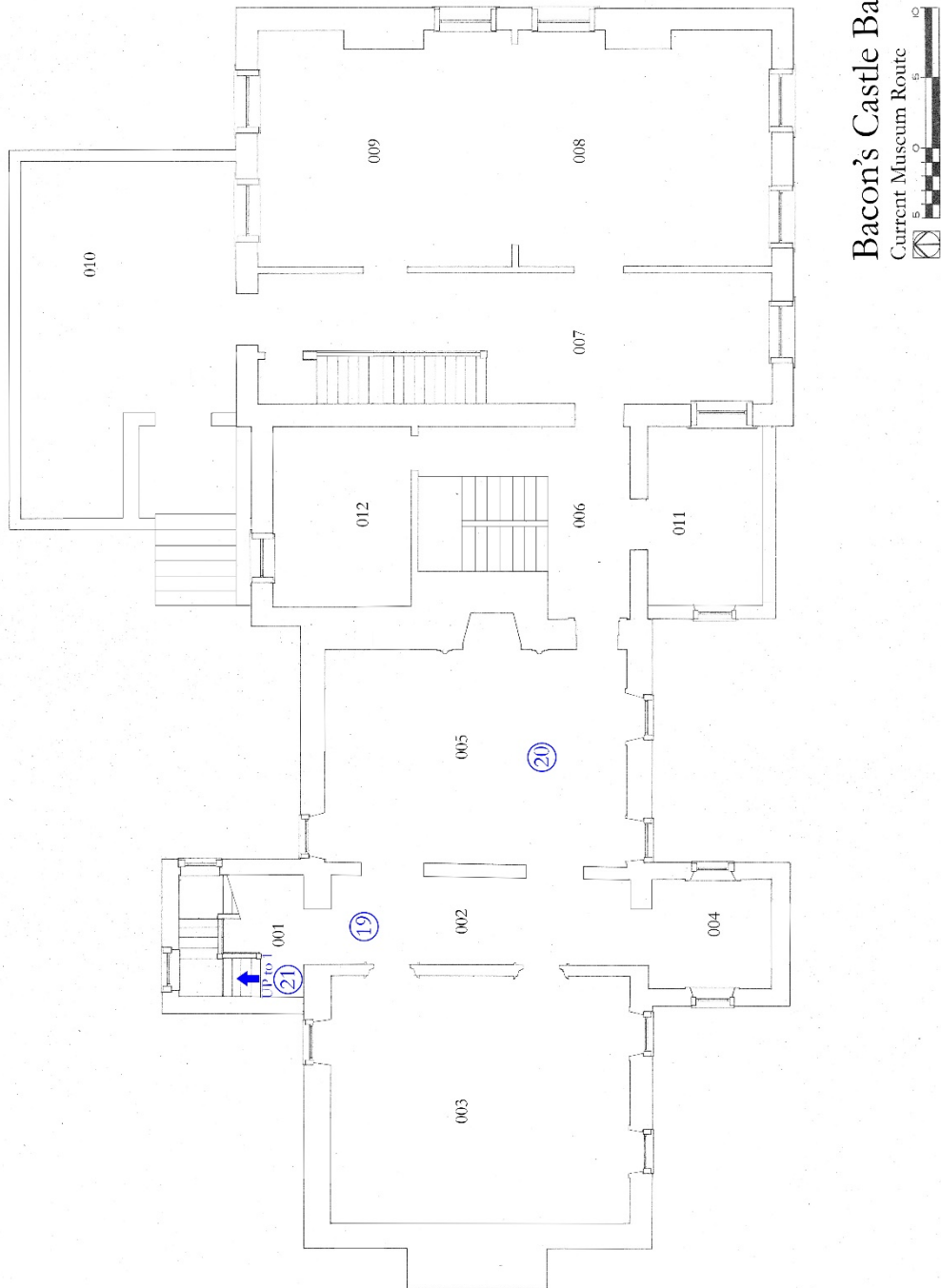


Figure 4: Current Museum Route, Basement.

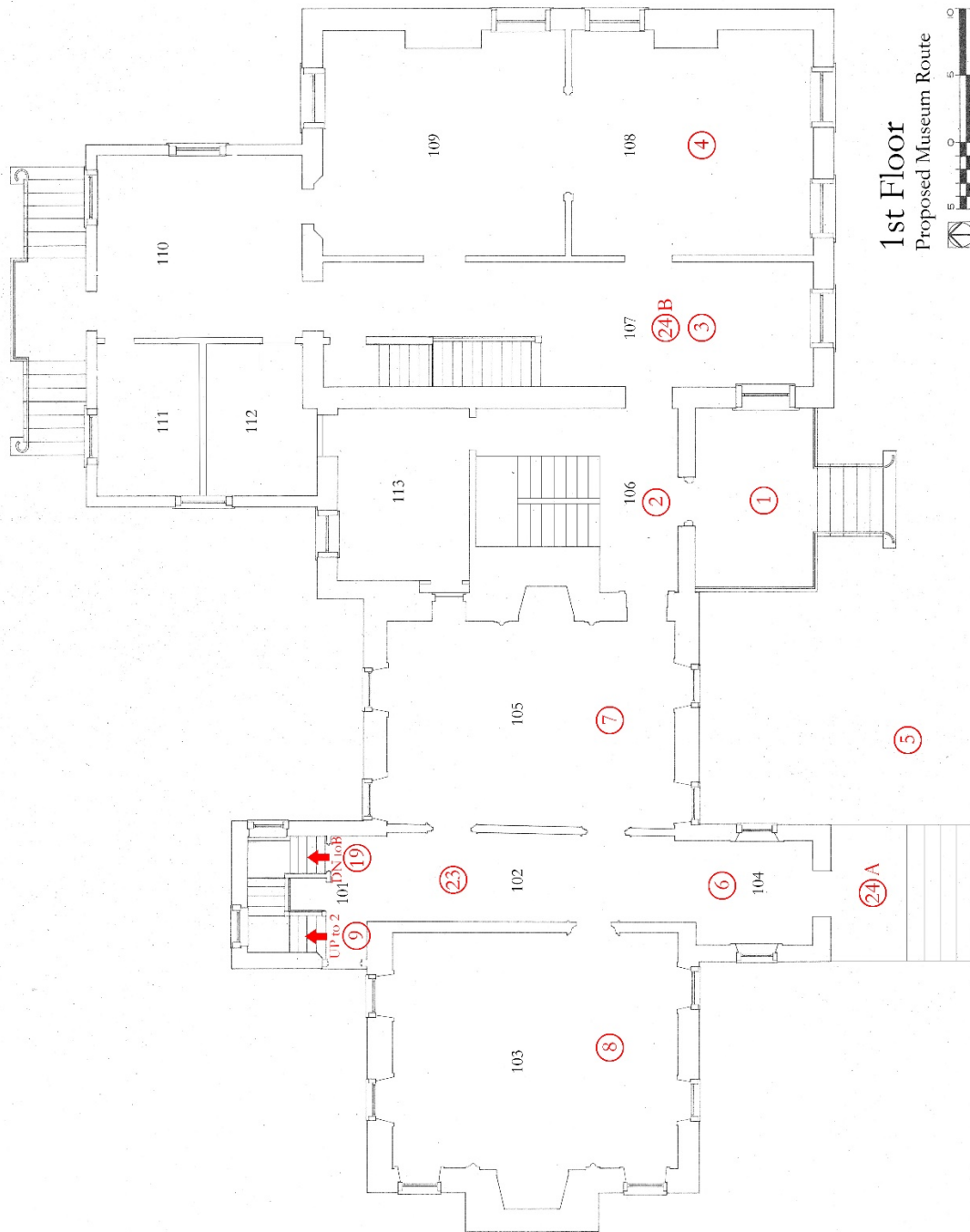
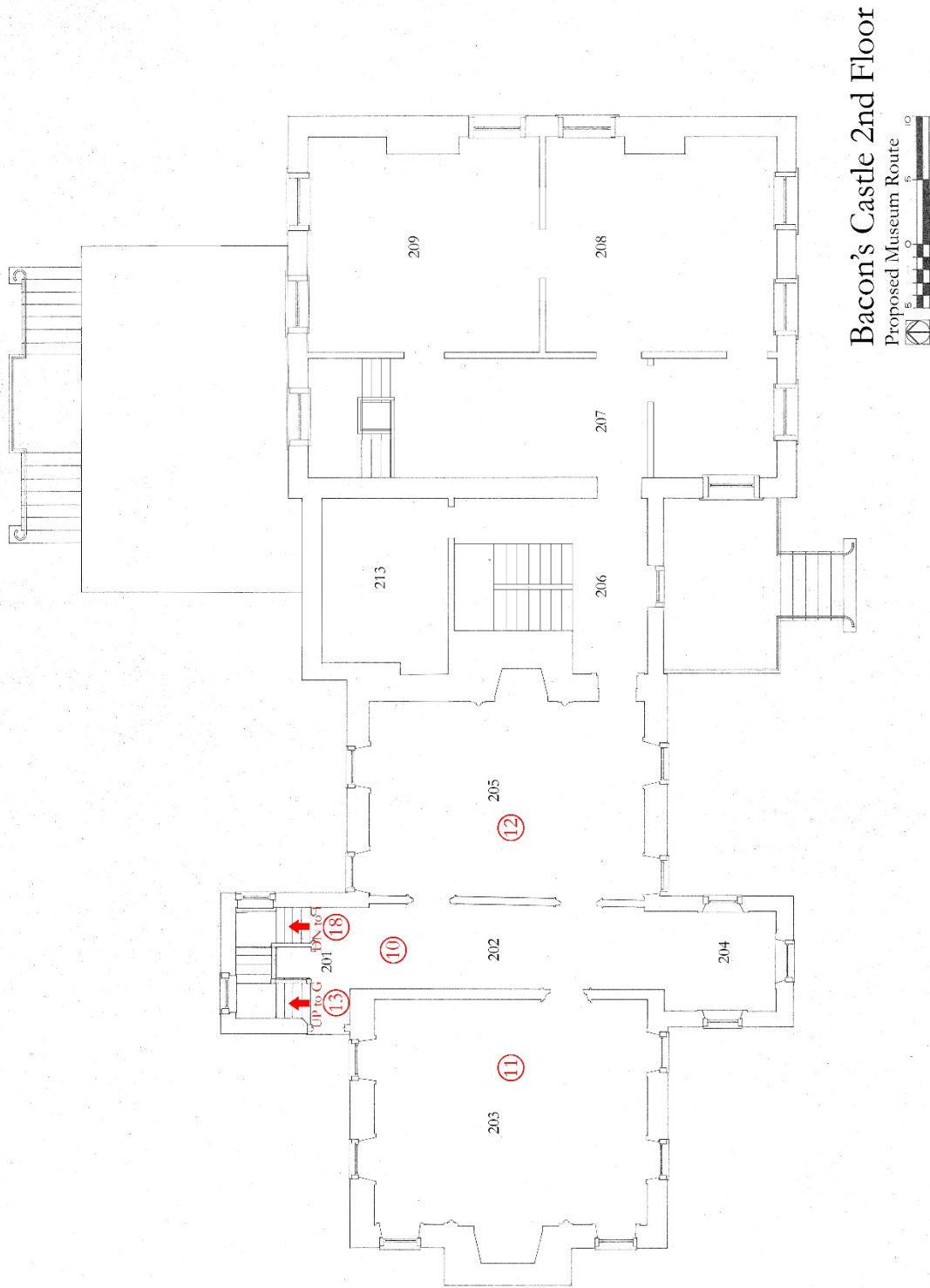


Figure 5: Proposed Museum Route, First Floor.



Bacon's Castle 2nd Floor

Proposed Museum Route

Figure 6: Proposed Museum Route, Second Floor.



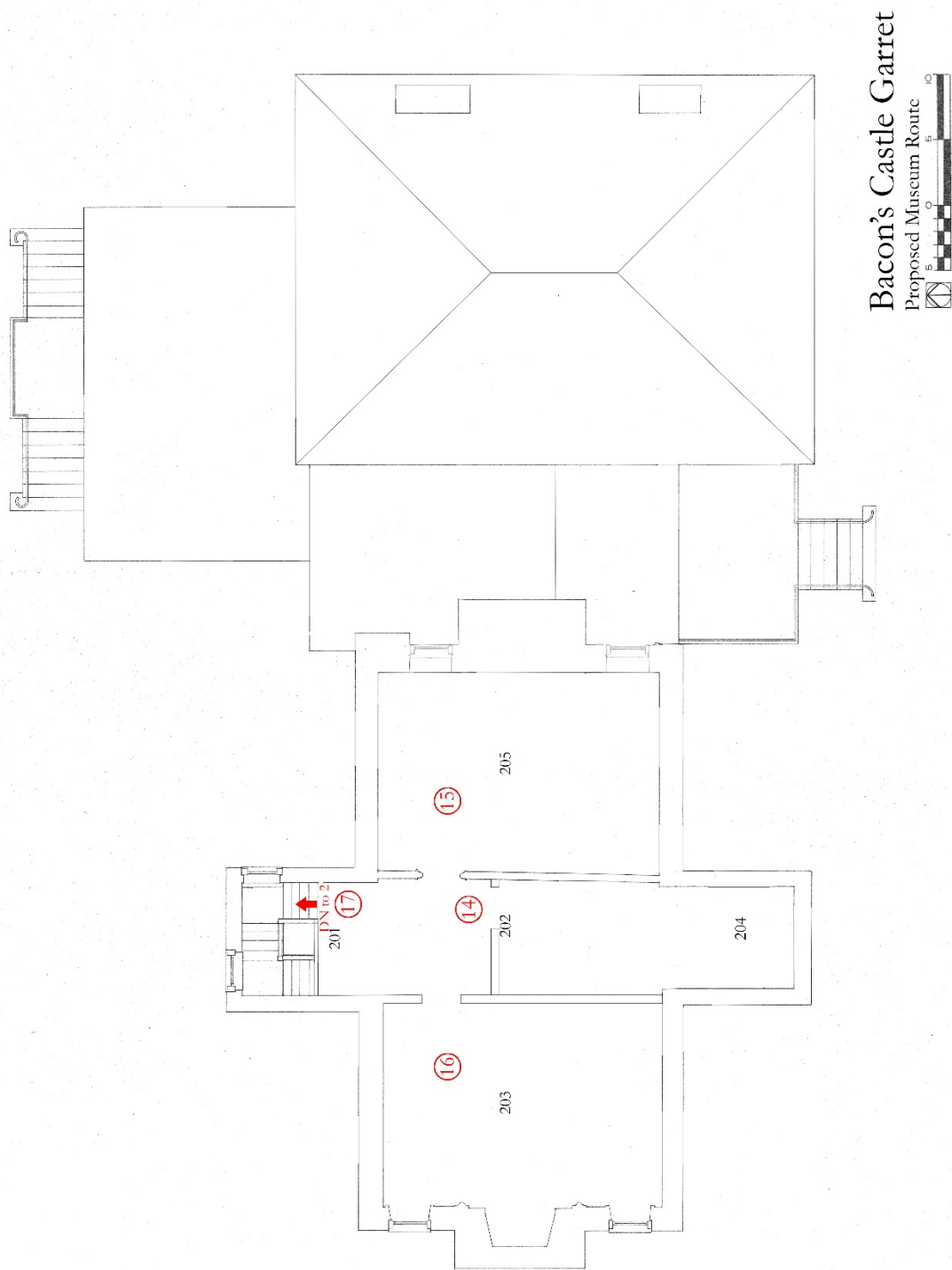


Figure 7: Proposed Museum Route, Garret.



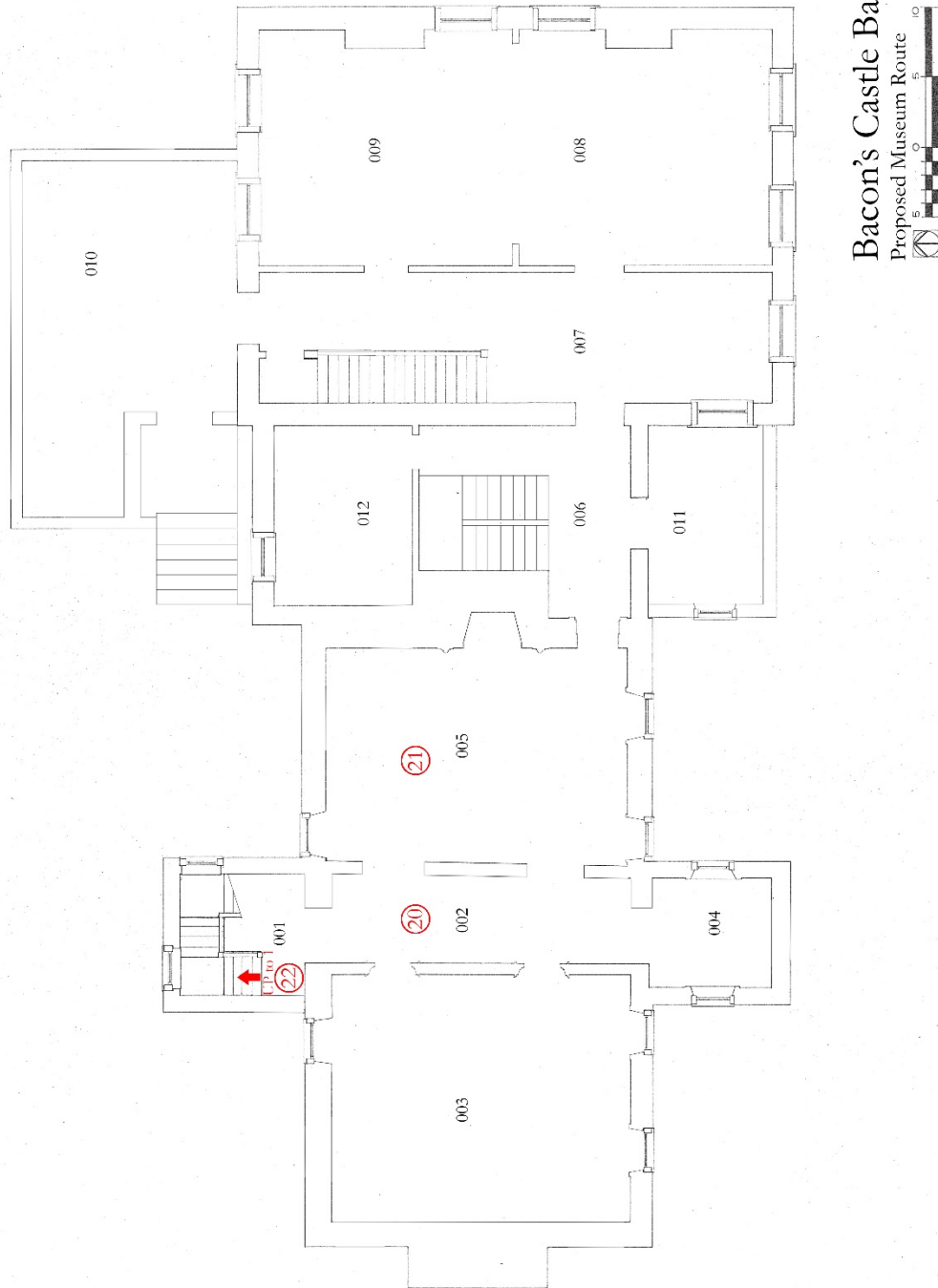


Figure 8: Proposed Museum Route, Basement.